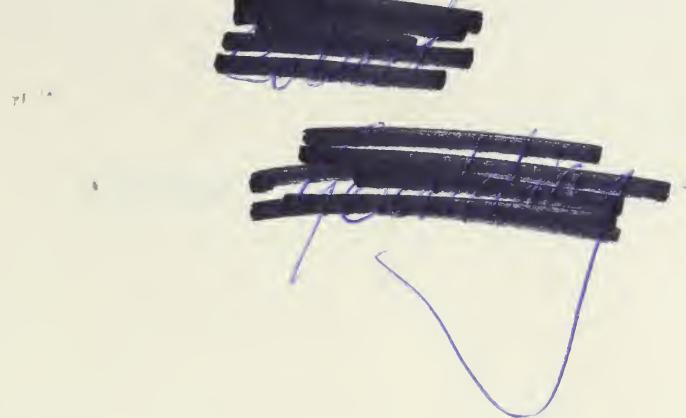


Floyd L. Moreland
and Rita M. Fleischer

Writing

An Intensive Course



71

LATIN: An Intensive Course



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015

https://archive.org/details/latinintensiveco00more_0

LATIN

An Intensive Course

by FLOYD L. MORELAND and RITA M. FLEISCHER
Brooklyn College of the City University of New York

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS
Berkeley Los Angeles London

University of California Press
Berkeley and Los Angeles, California

University of California Press, Ltd.

London, England

Copyright © 1977 by

The Regents of the University of California

ISBN 0-520-03183-0

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 75-36500

Printed in the United States of America

9th Printing, with corrections, 1990

10 11 12

CONTENTS

PREFACE TO THE PRELIMINARY EDITION	xi
PREFACE TO THIS EDITION	xiv
INTRODUCTION	1
A. The Alphabet and Pronunciation	1
B. Syllabification	2
C. Accentuation	3
D. Word Order	4
ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS BOOK	7
GRAMMATICAL REVIEW	8
A SELECTED GLOSSARY OF IMPORTANT TERMS	12
UNIT ONE	20
A. The Verbal System	20
B. The Tenses of the Indicative	20
C. The Infinitive	22
D. The Four Conjugations	23
E. The Principal Parts	23
F. The Present Active Indicative System of the First Two Conjugations	23
G. The Irregular Verb <i>sum</i> , 'be'	25
H. The Noun System	26
I. The First Declension	27
UNIT TWO	35
A. The Perfect Active Indicative System of All Verbs	35
B. The Subjunctive Mood	36
C. Formation of the Subjunctive	36
D. Present Subjunctive of the Verb <i>sum</i>	37
E. Conditional Sentences	38
F. Genitive with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning	39

UNIT THREE

- A. Nouns of the Second Declension 47
- B. First-Second Declension Adjectives 48
- C. Noun-Adjective Agreement 49
- D. Adjectives Used as Nouns 49
- E. Ablative of Means (Instrument) 50
- F. Ablative of Manner (Modal Ablative) 50
- G. Clauses of Purpose; Sequence of Tenses 50
- H. Indirect Commands 52

47

UNIT FOUR

- A. The Present Active System of All Four Conjugations 59
- B. The Present Passive System of All Four Conjugations 62
- C. The Perfect Passive System of All Four Conjugations 64
- D. Review of Verb Conjugations 65
- E. Ablative of Personal Agent 65

59

REVIEW: UNITS ONE TO FOUR

74

UNIT FIVE

- A. Participles: Definition and Formation 83
- B. Some Uses of the Participle 84
- C. Periphrastics 87
- D. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic 88
- E. Dative of the Possessor 88
- F. The Verb **possum**, 'be able' 88
- G. Complementary Infinitive 89

83

UNIT SIX

97

- A. Nouns of the Third Declension 97
- B. Infinitives 99
- C. Indirect Statement: Subject Accusative and Infinitive 100
- D. The Irregular Noun **vis** 102
- E. Ablative of Separation 102
- F. Accusative of Place to Which 103
- G. The Locative Case 103

UNIT SEVEN

110

- A. Demonstrative Adjectives 110
- B. Personal Pronouns 111
- C. Possessive Adjectives 113
- D. Relative Pronoun 114
- E. Interrogative Adjective 115
- F. Interrogative Pronoun 115
- G. Ablative of Accompaniment 116
- H. Ablative of Time When or Within Which 116
- I. Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space 116
- J. Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement 116

UNIT EIGHT	126
A. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Present Participles	126
B. Fourth Declension Nouns	128
C. Fifth Declension Nouns	128
D. Ablative of Respect (Specification)	128
E. The Irregular Verb <i>eō, ire</i> , 'go'	129
F. The Present Imperative	129
G. The Vocative Case	131
H. Datives of Purpose (Service) and Reference: The Double Dative Construction	131
REVIEW: UNITS FIVE TO EIGHT	140
UNIT NINE	150
A. Comparison of Adjectives	150
B. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives	151
C. Comparison with <i>quam</i> ; Ablative of Comparison	152
D. Ablative of Degree of Difference	152
E. Adverbs and Their Comparison	152
F. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs	153
G. Partitive Genitive	154
UNIT TEN	162
A. Ablative Absolute	162
B. Adjectives with Genitive Singular in <i>-ius</i>	164
C. Ablative of Cause	164
D. Ablative and Genitive of Description	165
E. The Irregular Verb <i>ferō</i> and Its Compounds	165
UNIT ELEVEN	176
A. Deponent Verbs	176
B. Semi-Deponent Verbs	178
C. Subjective and Objective Genitive	178
D. Predicate Genitive (Genitive of Characteristic)	179
E. Infinitive As Subject	179
F. The Irregular Verbs <i>volō, nōlō, mālō</i>	179
REVIEW: UNITS NINE TO ELEVEN	192
UNIT TWELVE	200
A. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive	200
B. Direct Questions	201
C. Indirect Questions	202
D. The Adjective <i>idem, eadem, idem</i> , 'same'	205
E. The Pronoun and Adjective <i>quidam</i> , 'certain'	205
F. The Intensive Adjective <i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</i> , 'self, very'	205
G. The Demonstrative Adjective <i>iste, ista, istud</i> , 'that (of yours)'	206

UNIT THIRTEEN

217

- A. The Indefinite Pronouns *aliquis*, *quis*, *quisquam*, *quisque* 217
- B. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs 218
- C. Impersonal Passives 219
- D. Dative with Compound Verbs 220
- E. The Verb *fiō*, 'be made, be done, happen, become' 220
- F. The Numerical Adjective *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, 'two' 221

UNIT FOURTEEN

232

- A. Clauses of Result 232
- B. Substantive Clauses of Result 233
- C. Relative Clauses of Characteristic (Generic Relative Clauses) 234
- D. Relative Clauses of Result 235
- E. Relative Clauses of Purpose and Purpose Clauses Introduced by Adverbs 236
- F. Indirect Reflexives 237

UNIT FIFTEEN

248

- A. *cum* Clauses 248
- B. *cum* Clauses and Ablatives Absolute 249
- C. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses 250
- D. Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive 250
- E. Clauses of Proviso 252
- F. Accusative of Exclamation 252

UNIT SIXTEEN

265

- A. The Gerund 265
- B. The Gerundive 266
- C. The Gerund and Gerundive Used to Express Purpose 266
- D. Impersonal Verbs 267
- E. The Impersonals *interest* and *rēfert* 269

UNIT SEVENTEEN

279

- A. Clauses of Fearing 279
- B. Clauses of Doubting 279
- C. Clauses of Prevention 280
- D. The Supine 281

UNIT EIGHTEEN

291

- A. Subjunctive by Attraction 291
- B. *futūrum esse ut*; *fore ut* 291
- C. The Historical Infinitive 292
- D. Shortened or Syncopated Forms of the Perfect Active System of Verbs 292
- E. -ēre for -ērunt in the Third Person Plural, Perfect Active Indicative 293
- F. The Greek Accusative: Accusative of Respect or Accusative After Verbs in the Middle Voice 293

G. Adverbial Accusative	293
H. Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting	294
I. Genitive of Indefinite Value	294
J. Ablative of Price	294
K. <i>quod</i> , 'the fact that'	294
REVIEW: UNITS TWELVE TO EIGHTEEN	308
APPENDIX	317
Nouns	317
Adjectives	321
Pronouns	325
Verbs	327
Formation of the Future Imperative	362
Review of the Syntax of Nouns	363
Review of the Syntax of Verbs	379
Participles	395
Gerunds	396
Gerundives	396
Supines	396
Conditions in Indirect Statement	397
Conditions in Other Subordinate Clauses	399
Additional Rules	400
Roman Names	401
A Note on Quantitative Rhythm	401
Numerals	405
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	411
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	434
INDEX	449

PREFACE

to the Preliminary Edition

These materials have been written to meet the needs of students who desire a comprehensive, intensive introduction to Latin forms and syntax in a relatively short period of time. They were originally structured to fit the specific format of the Latin Workshop of the University of California at Berkeley and the Summer Latin Institute of Brooklyn College of the City University of New York. Both of these programs aim to provide a rapid introduction to Latin forms and syntax in a period of approximately four weeks of concentrated study, leading to an additional six weeks in which selected classical and medieval texts are treated in depth. However, this book may also be used, at a slower pace, by instructors of less intensive or regular classes.

The introduction of the subjunctive early in the course will permit the supplementary reading of real or slightly altered texts at an early point in the student's career, given substantial vocabulary and syntactical glosses. Selections of connected reading (real, doctored, or manufactured, as need requires) will be found at the end of each Unit. Notes which will aid in the memorization of vocabulary as well as present some of the rules for word formation are provided after each new vocabulary list. In addition, the book contains a complete appendix, divided into two parts:

1. FORMS. All paradigms are included in full for reference and review. This will be particularly helpful in those cases where paradigms are not written out in full in the body of the text (e.g., *iste, ista, istud*, Unit 12G). The future imperative, which has been omitted from the actual text because of its infrequent use, appears in the appendix for the first time.

2. SYNTAX. An outline of syntax is presented for reference and review. Each construction is illustrated with several examples and so should supplement amply the explanations and illustrations in the main body of the text. In addition, several constructions which do not appear earlier in the book are included so as to make the text a more useful tool for those students who plan to continue with their study of Latin.

Each Unit was originally designed to be covered in a single day of the Berkeley and Brooklyn intensive summer programs, although regular-paced classes

may wish to spend an entire week on each one. Drills which illustrate the new morphological and grammatical concepts are supplied in the text for each Unit. Wherever possible, the vocabulary used in these drills has been limited to words which have already been met, and so the drills may be done without knowledge of the new vocabulary in the Unit. The exercises, in whole or in part, should be prepared by the student at home, and the connected readings, with their ample glosses, provide an excellent opportunity for sight reading in class.

The review Units consist of sentences which illustrate the morphological and grammatical principles taught in the lessons being reviewed. In the first three review Units, these sentences are followed by two review tests which the student may work out on his own or with the aid of an instructor. The six sample review tests in the book are followed by answer keys so as to enable the student to use them as a means of self-review. Maximum benefits may be obtained in reviewing the last Units by reading and carefully parsing the selections from Caesar which form the last part of Unit 18. By this time, students should be able to handle, with the aid of vocabulary glosses, any piece of reasonably straightforward Latin prose.

It is the belief of the authors that the best way to understand the structure of Latin is first through literal English translations, then smoother ones. For this reason, literal translations of illustrative sentences are almost invariably given first, followed by smoother English variants. For example,

Fēmina ā militibus visa domum cucurrit.

The woman having been seen by the soldiers ran home; after she had been seen by the soldiers, the woman ran home; since she had been seen by the soldiers, the woman ran home, etc.

Dicit sē fēlicem esse.

He says himself to be happy; he says that he is happy.

In preparing these materials, the following works have been consulted:

Allen and Greenough, *New Latin Grammar* (Boston, 1903)

Gildersleeve and Lodge, *Latin Grammar* (London, 1957)

Krebs and Schmalz, *Antibarbarus der Lateinischen Sprache* (Basel, 1905)

Lane, *A Latin Grammar* (New York, 1898)

Woodcock, *A New Latin Syntax* (London, 1959)

Lewis and Short, *A Latin Dictionary* (Oxford, 1962) is the authority for the meanings of words; long quantities are for the most part based on those found in Walde-Hofmann, *Lateinisches etymologisches Wörterbuch* (Heidelberg, 1938).

For help with the present volume, we are grateful to Ms. Judith Rosner for her contributions to the initial stages of the project, to Mr. Robert E. Kenney

for his kind assistance with xeroxing and duplication, to Ms. Stephanie Russell for help with typing part of the manuscript, and especially to Professors William S. Anderson of the University of California at Berkeley and Charles William Dunmore of New York University for reading through segments of the manuscript and offering many constructive criticisms. In addition, Mr. August Frugé of the University of California Press has been most cooperative and helpful. To Brooklyn College and Professor Ethyle R. Wolfe, Dean of the School of Humanities, go our thanks for encouragement, the opportunity to bring the program to New York City, and for a grant in the summer of 1972 which enabled us to begin the project. Gratitude must also be expressed to those colleagues in the Departments of Classics and Comparative Literature who gave us support, in particular to Professor Anna Griffiths, who has helped us in many ways. Last but not least, it would be remiss of us to conclude without a very special vote of thanks to the department chairman when this was being written, Professor Dennis J. Spininger. If it were not for his eager support of the program, the chances of completing this project would have been diminished severely.

There is one additional group of people, many of whom must remain nameless, who deserve perhaps the most recognition of all — those who have played a role in building the intensive summer Latin programs which inspired this book and for which it was originally written. To Professors W. Ralph Johnson and Alain Renoir of the University of California at Berkeley, Mary-Kay Gamel Orlandi of the University of California at Santa Cruz, John Wyatt of Beloit College, Ms. Catherine R. Freis, current director of the Berkeley Latin Workshop, and Ms. Joan Plotnick and Professor Gail Smith of Brooklyn College go our thanks for their many explicit and implicit contributions to the program and all for which it stands. Most of all, however, we are indebted to the students who have participated in the Berkeley Latin Workshop and the Brooklyn Summer Latin Institute. Their patience and dedication, met only by that of superb teaching staffs, were vital to the success which both programs have enjoyed. It is to them, and to all those who follow them, that this book is dedicated.

Needless to say, the errors and infelicities of style which remain in the following pages are the result of our own short-sightedness and do not bear in the least on the people mentioned above. We hope to iron them out in the final version of the text.

FLOYD L. MORELAND

RITA M. FLEISCHER

New York

February, 1974

PREFACE

to this Edition

Two summers and an academic year of use in beyond-the-intensive, intensive, accelerated, and regular courses have caused this book to be revised in a number of ways. Many errors have been eliminated and some sentences have been re-written to illustrate better the concepts under consideration as well as to bring them into line with correct Latin usage. Some of the Units have undergone revision, modification, or expansion in order to give a more complete picture of the various syntactical functions. Unit Seven has been reorganized in the interest of greater lucidity, and the treatment of clauses of result and characteristic has been considerably revamped. The Review Tests have been retitled "Self Review" and one of these has been added to the Review of Units 12-18.

So as to make the book adaptable to regular-paced classes which meet three or four times per week, a group of Preliminary Exercises has been added for the first seventeen Units. These will permit breaking down each Unit into two or more manageable parts. Several users have suggested the following arrangement for presentation: the first day is spent rendering (at sight) the reading selections from the previous Unit, while the vocabulary for the new Unit is assigned for homework. On the second day, the first segment of the new Unit is presented and the Preliminary Exercises are assigned. The third day is spent presenting the second segment of the new Unit and then assigning selected sentences from the Unit Exercises. Grammatical principles can be reinforced at any time by going through the Unit Drills. A fourth day can be used doing additional sentences from the Exercises, or the vocabulary for the next Unit might be assigned while the readings are done at sight in class. Of course, other arrangements may be preferred and some instructors will find it useful to spend more time on some Units than on others. The initial four Units, for example, are extremely compact and may well require more time.

A substantial number of the sentences beyond Unit Seven have been built around phrases or thought-patterns from the ancient authors (although references are consistently not given). They have been adapted (in some cases, very slightly) to fit the controlled vocabulary and to afford concentrated practice with new forms and syntax. The problem of including "real" Latin in a begin-

ner's text is a massive one, particularly in the light of the authors' efforts to control the vocabulary and the constructions. Selections with glosses have, however, been included in most of the Units for the benefit of those who prefer that their students have contact with the original sources at an early stage. These selections have been coordinated as much as possible to the forms and syntax of the Unit.

The introduction of the subjunctive and some sophisticated constructions near the beginning of the course will permit reading of unaltered texts early in the term. Rather than include a greater variety of suggested readings in the book, we felt it more useful to leave it to the individual instructor to provide the students with sight material which he or she deems appropriate and interesting. We have found that several of the poems of Catullus are easy to handle from Unit Seven onwards, but others will have different preferences.

There continue to be more than ample exercises and opportunity for practice. The Unit Drills do not, where possible, use the new vocabulary for the Unit and so they permit the drilling of new syntactical functions before the student has mastered the vocabulary. The Preliminary Exercises and the Exercises do use the new vocabulary and provide more than enough practice on forms and syntax. The readings (after Unit Five) attempt to integrate the material of the Unit with actual (or slightly altered) selections from the authors and so a consistent progression from grammar and forms, to practice with synthetic or slightly altered Latin, to exposure to actual excerpts is maintained.

Throughout this book, every attempt has been made to present the grammar in as lucid and clear a way as possible while not oversimplifying it. The exercises and readings tend to be complex from the beginning so as not to give the student a false sense of confidence, but rather to minimize the traditionally difficult transition into the continuous reading of ancient texts. The book does not presume to be a definitive grammar and so many points have of necessity been omitted in order not to overburden the student with a plethora of exceptions and alternate ways of expressing ideas. A great deal about the function of independent subjunctives in hypotaxis, for example, has been omitted on the assumption that this kind of information and analysis can either be supplied by the instructor or might profitably be delayed until such time as the student begins to read continuously and so to expand his or her knowledge of syntax and style.

The book has a complete appendix of morphology and syntax which not only reviews in capsule form the material included in the main text, but also includes other constructions and terms to aid the student as he or she goes on to read. In the few instances where complete paradigms are not included in the body of the text, they will appear in full in the Appendix. The vocabularies at the end are geared to the exercises in the book and by no means are to be considered complete either in their inclusiveness or in the definitions of words.

Users have stated that the book has proved useful both as a beginner's text and as a review text for intermediate Latin classes. The Appendix will be especially valuable as a reference for the latter.

Detailed notes and suggestions submitted by Professors John R. Clark, J. B. Clinard, Elizabeth Constantinides, Gerald M. Quinn, Mr. Steven Lund, Ms. Stephanie Russell, and others have proved most valuable and have caused us to rethink and revise many things; but we have remained stubborn about others. The difficulties involved in editing a text of this kind and in attempting to achieve some degree of consistency in the presentation were greater than we could possibly have imagined. The patient, efficient services of Ms. Susan Peters of the University of California Press and the trained eye and skill of our copy editor, Ms. Ramona Michaelis, have been indispensable in this regard. To them and to other colleagues, students, and friends, we extend our gratitude, not only for whatever polish this edition has acquired over the preliminary one, but also for the opportunity afforded us to reassess our own notions and to learn a great deal more about this language.

F.L.M.

R.M.F.

*New York
January, 1976*

An Additional Note:

In using the book at the Latin Institute of the City University of New York, we have found that the following poems of Catullus integrate nicely with the Units of the book as indicated below. We provide this information for the reference of instructors who may be looking for appropriate original material to supplement the exercises in the Units.

- Unit 8, Catullus 13
- Unit 9, Catullus 51
- Unit 10, Catullus 9
- Unit 11, Catullus 12
- Unit 13, Catullus 41 and 43
- Unit 14, Catullus 42
- Unit 15, Catullus 5 and 7
- Unit 16, Catullus 101
- Unit 17, Catullus 8
- Unit 18, Catullus 11

INTRODUCTION

A. The Alphabet and Pronunciation

There are twenty-four letters in the Latin alphabet. These are the same as in the English alphabet, except that there is no *j* or *w*. The letters *i* and *u* were used as both vowels and consonants (*u*, when used as a consonant, is written *v* in this book). The sounds for the letters correspond roughly to the sounds in English, but the following observations should be noted.

VOWELS: All vowels are either long or short by nature.

ā (as in father)	frāter, hās
a (as in alike)	multa, parentum
ē (as in the <i>a</i> in save)	valē, tētē
e (as in bet)	vectus, mūnere
ī (as in machine)	prīscō, dormīre
i (as in is, it)	mortis, miser
ō (as in oh, Ohio)	frāternō, mōre, dōnārem
o (as in often)	locus, adloquerer
ū (as in rude)	flētū, fortūna
u (as in the <i>oo</i> in look)	vectus, ut

DIPHTHONGS: (A diphthong occurs when two vowels are pronounced together as one sound.)

ae (as <i>i</i> in alike)	haec, aequora
au (as <i>ou</i> in foul)	laudō, aut
ei (as in rein)	deinde
eu (a combination of <i>e</i> as in bet and an <i>oo</i> sound as in food)	heu
oe (as <i>oi</i> in boil)	coepit, proelium
ui (as in twin)	huic, cui

CONSONANTS:

b	(+ s, pronounced like <i>p</i> ; otherwise like English <i>b</i>)	abstulit, barbarus, urbs
c	(always hard, like a <i>k</i>)	accipe, haec, cinerem
g	(always hard, as in <i>get</i>)	gentēs
h	(always pronounced as an aspirate, as in <i>hat</i>)	huius, haec, huic
i	(consonantal; pronounced like <i>y</i> in <i>yes</i>)	Iūnō, iūdex (In some texts, consonantal <i>i</i> is written as <i>j</i> .)
q(u)	(pronounced like <i>kw</i> as in <i>quick</i>)	aequora, nēquiquam
s	(always a sibilant, as in <i>seek</i>)	inferiās, abstulit, tristī
t	(always as in <i>tell</i>)	abstulit, tristī, trādita, mānāntia
v	(pronounced like <i>w</i>)	avē atque valē; adveniō, vivit (In some texts, <i>v</i> is written as <i>u</i> . This is called consonantal <i>u</i> .)
x	(pronounced like <i>ks</i>)	dixit
ch	(pronounced like the <i>k h</i> in <i>park here</i>)	character, charta
ph	(pronounced like the <i>p h</i> in <i>top hat</i>)	philosophia
th	(pronounced like the <i>t h</i> in <i>hot head</i>)	theātrum
gu	(pronounced like <i>gw</i>)	lingua

Every letter in a Latin word is pronounced; there are no silent letters.

B. Syllabification

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant after a vowel goes with the following syllable:

mū/tam; ta/men

When a vowel or diphthong is followed by two or more consonants, the first consonant goes with the first syllable, the remainder with the next syllable:

for/tū/na; ad/lo/que/rer

Thus:

fortūna	3 syllables
mānāntia	4 syllables
atque	2 syllables (que = qve)
nunc	1 syllable
mūtam	2 syllables
cinerem	3 syllables
tamen	2 syllables
postrēmō	3 syllables
īferiās	4 syllables

C. Accentuation

Every Latin word has one syllable which is slightly stressed over the others. In order to illustrate the rule by which accentuation is determined, it will be necessary to present some terminology.

ultima (syllaba ultima, 'last syllable') = the last syllable

penult (syllaba paene ultima, 'almost last syllable') = the second syllable from the end

antepenult (syllaba ante paene ultima,

'before the almost last syllable') = third syllable from the end

The only two syllables in a Latin word which may receive accent are the penult and the antepenult. Accent is determined by applying the *law of the penult*:

In words of two syllables, the *penult* receives the accent:

múltās géntēs vēctus

In words of more than two syllables, the *penult* receives the accent *if it is long*; *if the penult is short*, the accent is placed on the *antepenult*.

A syllable can be long in one of two ways:

1. *Length by nature.* If the syllable contains a long vowel or a diphthong, it is said to be long *by nature*.
2. *Length by position.* If the syllable contains a vowel which is followed by two consonants, it is said to be long *by position*. *x* (= *ks*) is said to be a double consonant.

postrēmō aéquora áccipe
paréntum frātérnō mūnere

Read the following poem aloud, applying the rules for pronunciation, syllabification, and accentuation that have just been presented:

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora vectus
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īferiās,
 ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis
 et mūtam nēquiquam adloquerer cinerem,
 quandoquidem fortūna mihi tētē abstulit ipsum,
 heu miser indignē frāter adempte mihi.
 Nunc tamen intereā haec, priscō, quae mōre parentum
 trādita sunt trīsti mūnere ad īferiās,
 accipe frāternō multum mānantia flētū,
 atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē atque valē.

(Catullus 101)

D. Word Order

The meaning of an English sentence is often dependent on the order of its words. For example, in the sentence:

Maria sees Anna

the word order tells us clearly that “Maria” is the subject of the verb “sees”, while “Anna” is its object. Switch the words around, and we have altered the sense:

Anna sees Maria.

And, given English idiom, other arrangements are not possible:

Sees Anna Maria Maria Anna sees Sees Maria Anna

Latin word order is far more flexible, for the order of words does not rigidly determine their grammatical relationship. Latin nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs are *inflected*; that is, they change their form, usually at the end of the word, to show their grammatical relationship to other words around them. The word *bends* (*flectere*, ‘to bend’) away from its original form in order to assume different grammatical relationships. The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and one is said to *conjugate* a verb. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*, and one is said to *decline* these words.

Thus, if we translate the sentence “Maria sees Anna” into Latin, we have **Marīa videt Annam**. The **-m** ending of **Annam** indicates that this word *must* function as the object of the verb **videt**. The words can appear in any order, but the basic meaning will still be clear:

Marīa Annam videt.

Annam videt Marīa.

Videt Annam Marīa.

Videt Marīa Annam.

. . . etc.

This does not mean that the order of words in a Latin sentence is strictly fortuitous. Word order shifts because of *emphasis*. The two really emphatic positions in a Latin sentence or clause are the *first* and the *last*. Since the subject and the verb are usually the most emphatic words in a sentence, the normal word order is subject first, verb last. But variations occur. The following will give some idea of what shifts of emphasis can do.

Marīa videt Annam.	Maria sees Anna.	(both "Maria" and "Anna" mildly emphasized)
Marīa Annam videt.	Maria sees Anna.	(normal or neutral order: subject and verb in equal emphasis)
Annam Marīa videt.	Anna is the one whom Maria sees.	("Anna" emphasized)
Videt Annam Marīa.	Maria sees Anna.	("Maria" actually sees "Anna"; emphasis on the verbal action)

Of course, the exact thrust or nuance of the emphasis achieved by word order must also be determined from the context in which a given arrangement appears.

What may emerge from this brief illustration is the observation that the more *unusual* a position is for any word, the more *emphatic* it is for that word.

In order to apply this observation, the following remarks about word order are offered:

1. The *subject* of the sentence stands at the beginning of or early in the sentence.
2. The *verb* (or some important part of the predicate) usually comes at the end. *But* forms of the verb **sum**, 'be', when used as a link verb, rarely come last.
3. The accusative and dative, expressing the direct and indirect objects of the verb, usually come *before* the verb. Latin in this respect differs decidedly from English:

Ego **librum** **filiō** dō. I give the **book** to (my) son.

accusative (direct object)	dative (indirect object)	accusative (direct object)	dative (indirect object)
----------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------

4. A genitive usually follows the word on which it depends:

librum fēminaē (a, the) book *of (a, the) woman*; (a, the) *woman's book*

5. Adjectives, when used to describe or give an attribute of the noun, regularly come *after* the noun; but demonstratives, interrogatives, numerals, and adjectives denoting size or quantity regularly come *before* their nouns:

vir bonus	(a, the) <i>good man</i>	(attributive adjective)
puella pulchra	(a, the) <i>beautiful girl</i>	(attributive adjective)
haec urbs	<i>this city</i>	(demonstrative adjective)
multī hominēs	<i>many men</i>	(adjective denoting quantity)
ūnus vir	<i>one man</i>	(numerical adjective)
quae fēmina?	<i>which woman?</i>	(interrogative adjective)

6. Adverbs and their equivalents regularly precede the word or words they qualify:

Ille miles diū vixit. That soldier lived *for a long time*.

Hominem gladiō interfēcit. He killed the man *with a sword*.

Tē nōn amō. I do *not* love you.

When writing sentences in Latin, we would suggest that, at the beginning, you observe the guidelines for word order listed above. As the course progresses, variations in word order will be called to your attention, and when your feel for Latin idiom and emphasis begins to grow, you will discover the multiple nuances you can create in a Latin sentence just by ordering its words skillfully and artistically.

ABBREVIATIONS

Used in This Book

The following abbreviations appear throughout:

Case

nom. (nominative)
gen. (genitive)
dat. (dative)
acc. (accusative)
abl. (ablative)

Tense

pres. (present)
imperf. (imperfect)
perf. (perfect)
pluperf. (pluperfect)
fut. (future)
fut. perf. (future perfect)

Parts of Speech

pron. (pronoun)
adj. (adjective)
adv. (adverb)
prep. (preposition)
interj. (interjection)
conj. (conjunction)

Number

sing. (singular)
pl. (plural)

Gender

masc. or M. (masculine)
fem. or F. (feminine)
neut. or N. (neuter)

Mood

indic. (indicative)
subj. (subjunctive)

Other abbreviations:

inf. (infinitive)
lit. (literally)
rel. (relative)

Note: A star (★) before a word denotes that the form is a hypothetical one.

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW

There are eight parts of speech: *noun, pronoun, adjective, verb, adverb, conjunction, interjection, preposition*.

A *noun* is a word used to express the name of a person, place, or thing.

Examples: boy, dog, horses, Chicago, window, feet.

A *pronoun* is a word used in place of a noun.

Examples: he, she, it, we, us, them, ours, mine.

An *adjective* is a word used to describe a noun.

Examples: big, small, red, tall, new, old.

A *verb* is a word used to express action or a state of being.

Examples: run, walk, eat, sleep, cough, chew, am, is, are, stand, was, were, appear, seem.

An *adverb* is a word used to describe a verb, adverb, or an adjective.

Examples: quickly, very, beautifully, happily, too.

A *conjunction* is a word used to connect sentences, clauses, phrases, or words.

Examples: and, if, or, but, since, although.

An *interjection* is a word or sound which expresses an emotion.

Examples: oh, ouch, phew, damn!, ugh.

A *preposition* is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun which is used to indicate position, direction, time, or some other abstract relation.

Examples: by, from, to, with, at, in, on, for.

NOUNS and pronouns have the qualities of *gender, number, and case*.

There are three *genders*: masculine, feminine, and neuter. In English, nouns are feminine if they are the name of a female creature: "woman, girl, mare, ewe,

hen, doe, aviatrix; actress, sow, cow, bitch"; masculine if they are the name of a male creature: "man, boy, gander, stallion, actor, aviator, rooster, bull"; neuter if the noun is neither masculine nor feminine. Usually, we think of a neuter noun as an inanimate one: "window, blackboard, chalk, chair, table". However, in English, we sometimes personify a neuter noun and change its gender; for example, many people speak of their car (a neuter word) as a feminine creature. They will say of a new car: "She's a beauty. She gets 38 miles to the gallon," etc. Ships, too, are often referred to as females: "She was listing at a forty-five degree angle." In Latin, the gender of each noun must be memorized as each noun is learned, since its gender is not readily apparent in many instances.

In Latin, there are two *numbers*: singular and plural. Singular refers to one object, plural, to more than one. In English, for the most part, the plural is formed by adding -s to the singular form: "house, houses"; "dog, dogs"; "girl, girls". However, some words change their spelling altogether to indicate that they are plural: "mouse, mice"; "foot, feet"; "die, dice". These forms have to be learned; they cannot be guessed at.

English has three *cases*: subjective, possessive, and objective. The subjective case is used for the subject of a verb: "I, he, we". The objective case is used for the object (either of a verb or a preposition): "me, him, us". The possessive case is used to show possession: "Mary's, mine, his, ours". Latin has six cases and some words show a trace of a seventh case.

VERBS have the qualities of *person*, *number*, *tense*, *voice*, and *mood*.

By *person* is meant first, second, or third. The *first* person is "I" in the singular, "we" in the plural. The *second* person is "you". (Note that in Latin there is no special polite form for the pronoun "you"; the singular is used for one "you" and the plural is used for more than one "you".) The *third* person is "he, she, it" in the singular, "they" in the plural.

By *number* is meant singular and plural.

Tense indicates *time* and *aspect*; we speak of the present tense, past tense, and future tense. In addition, we speak of simple aspect, continuous (progressive) aspect, and completed aspect. In Latin there are six tenses.

Latin has two *voices*: active and passive. A verb in the *active* voice has a *subject* which is *doing* the action of the verb:

The pitcher *is throwing* the ball.

The dog *bit* the child.

Will the ball *break* the window?

A verb in the *passive* voice has a subject which is *not doing* the action of the verb, but which is *having the action* of the verb *done* to it:

The ball *is being thrown* by the pitcher.

The child *was bitten* by the dog.

Will the window *be broken* by the ball?

The *mood* of the verb expresses *how* the action of the verb is conceived. If the action is conceived of as a *command*, then the *imperative* mood will be used:

Get me a drink of water.

If the action is conceived of as a statement of *fact*, then the *indicative* mood will be used:

She *got* me a drink of water.

If the action is conceived of as an *idea* or a *possibility* (rather than an actual fact), then the *subjunctive* mood will be used:

If I *were* thirsty (but I'm not; therefore, it is not a fact), would you get me a drink of water?

In Latin there are three moods.

An **ADJECTIVE** may be used as a noun; when it is, it is called a *substantive*.

Examples:

Only *the brave* deserve *the fair*.

Blessed are *the meek*.

Fortune favors *the brave*.

In Latin when the substantive is *masculine*, it refers to *men*; when it is *feminine*, it refers to *women*; and when it is *neuter*, it refers to *things*.

Latin does not have an article; there is no word for "a, an", or "the". Latin uses far fewer words than English does: it can omit such words as "his, her, its", and the verb "to be" may be omitted frequently. There need not be a separate word to express the subject of a verb; the subject may simply be indicated in the verb itself. Thus, it is conceivable that the following is a complete Latin sentence:

Docent. They are teaching.

Latin is an inflected language. *Inflection* is the change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relations. The inflection of a *noun*, *pronoun*, or *adjective* is called *declension*. The inflection of a *verb* is called *conjugation*. Inflection can be seen in English in the following ways:

boy	singular
boy's	singular possessive case
boys	plural
boys'	plural possessive case
I, he, she	subjective
me, him, her	objective

Note that, for nouns, -'s or -s' indicates possession.

In the conjugation of the verb "to be"

am
are
is

"am" is obviously first person singular and "is" is third person singular.

Inflection was more common in older English, where -st was the ending for the second person singular of the verb and -th was the ending for the third person singular present.

do say
dost sayest
doth saith

Nowadays, the only remnant of inflection in most verbs is the final -s of the third person singular in the present tense.

say want see
says wants sees

A SELECTED GLOSSARY

of Important Terms

This glossary is provided as a reference for some of the basic terminology which a student of Latin will encounter. Presented from the point of view of English, it will serve as a partial review of grammatical terms and as a foundation on which one's study of Latin may be built. It should be used in conjunction with the main text and the appendix.

A nominative *absolute* is a participial construction which is not in close grammatical connection with the main sentence. Example:

This being a legal holiday, ("This" is in the nominative (subjective) case, I refuse to work. as is the participle "being", which agrees with it.)

An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality or a general idea. Examples:

thoughtfulness, loyalty, freedom

Agreement is the correspondence in one or more categories between a noun and the adjective which describes it, a subject and its verb, or a pronoun and its antecedent. Examples:

much noise (noun and adjective both singular)

many noises (noun and adjective both plural)

he knows (subject and verb both singular)

The book which he lost is mine. (antecedent and pronoun both neuter)

Antecedent. The word for which the pronoun stands. Example:

The man whom you know is good.

Apodosis. The conclusion in a conditional sentence (cf. *Protasis*). Example:

If it should rain, I'll take an umbrella.

Apposition. A word placed next to another one which means or indicates the same thing. Example:

John, the farmer, is a good man.

The appositive must be in the same case as the word to which it refers.

Aspect. The category of the verb which indicates whether the action is simple, continuous (progressive), or completed. Examples from the point of view of present time:

he walks (simple)
 he is walking (continuous or progressive)
 he has walked (completed)

Attributive. An attributive adjective is one which describes or modifies a noun (as opposed to a substantive adjective). An adjective is said to be in attributive position if, in English, it precedes the noun it modifies ("the *brave* man"). This is in contrast with the predicate adjective which, in English, comes after the linking verb ("he seems *brave*").

Clause. A group of words which contains a subject and a verb but is in itself not a complete sentence, but a part of a complex or compound sentence.

A *causal* clause is introduced by "since" or "because".
 A *circumstantial* clause is introduced by "when" or "after" and stresses the circumstances in which the action occurs.
 A *concessive* clause is introduced by "although, though, granted that".
 A *temporal* clause indicates the time at which the action occurs and is introduced by "when, after, before, as, while".

A *collective noun* is a word in the singular which names a group of people. Examples:

group, crowd, populace, senate

The *comparative* degree of the adjective indicates an increased amount of the quality of the positive form of the adjective. In English, the comparative degree is shown by adding *-er* to the simple form of the adjective or by adding "more", "rather", or "too" to the positive degree. Examples:

fatter, more beautiful, rather pretty, too big

A *complementary infinitive* is used to complete the meanings of certain verbs such as "be able, try, ought". Example:

He ought *to go*.

A *complex sentence* is a sentence which contains at least one dependent and one independent clause. Example:

While we were away, our house was robbed.

A *compound sentence* is a sentence which contains two or more independent clauses. Example:

My sister went to the beach and I stayed home.

A *conditional* sentence is a sentence which contains two clauses: a protasis and an apodosis. Example:

If it should rain, I'll take an umbrella.

A *contradictive* (contrary-to-fact) condition is a condition which is not true. Example:

If I were an elephant, I would have a trunk (but I'm not an elephant; therefore, I don't have a trunk).

A *coordinating conjunction* is a conjunction used to join two elements of a sentence without subordinating one to the other. Examples:

and, but, or

Correlatives are words regularly used together which balance each other. Examples:

both...and; either...or; the more...the....

A *demonstrative* is a word which points out something. Examples:

this, that, these, those

A *denominative verb* is a verb made from a noun. Examples:

broadcast, flag (i.e., flag down a train).

A *dependent clause* is a clause which does not make a complete statement by itself. Example:

because we are busy

Diminutives are nouns which indicate a small size, endearment, or contempt. Examples:

duckling, pussykin, pup

The most common diminutive endings in English are: *-et* (*-ette*), *-y*, *-ie*, *-ey*. Examples:

piglet, statuette, Bobby, bookie, lovey

Ellipsis is the omission of a word or words which are necessary for grammatical completeness. Example:

The man we saw was drunk. *instead of* The man whom we saw was drunk.

An *enclitic* is a word which in pronunciation is so closely connected to the preceding word that it loses its own accent. Examples:

give me (often pronounced "gimme"), want to (often pronounced "wanna"), should have (often pronounced "shoulda").

An *epexegetical* infinitive is an infinitive which depends on and limits an adjective. Example:

difficult to imagine

An *expletive* is a word which serves no grammatical function, but which fills up a sentence or gives emphasis. Example:

There are five people here.

A *finite* verb is a verb which is limited by person, number, tense, voice, and mood. Examples:

was, am, eats

The *frequentative* (iterative) aspect of a verb expresses repeated action. Example:

He keeps walking.

A *gerund* is a verbal noun. Example:

Swimming is good exercise.

Hypotaxis (subordination) is the subordination of one clause to another.

An *idiom* is an expression which is peculiar to a language. Example:

to be on the up and up

Idiom also refers to the characteristic modes of expression of a given language.

An *impersonal* verb is a verb which lacks a personal subject and is found only in the third person singular. Example:

It is raining.

The *inchoative* (inceptive) aspect of a verb expresses the beginning of an action. Example:

He is beginning to crawl.

An *indefinite* pronoun refers to a not specific person or thing. Examples:

someone, somebody, anyone, anybody

An *independent* clause is a main clause, one that is not subordinate.

An *indirect object* is found with verbs of giving, telling, and showing. Someone gives or tells or shows something *to somebody*; the “somebody” is the indirect object. Example:

John gave Mary the book.

Indirect discourse is of three types:

An *indirect statement*, regularly introduced by the subordinating conjunction *that*, expresses what someone says, thinks, feels, or believes without using a direct quotation. Example:

“I do not feel good.” (direct statement)
He says *that he does not feel good.* (indirect statement)

An *indirect question*, introduced by an interrogative word, expresses what someone asks, considers, wonders, or states without using a direct quotation. Example:

“Why did you do that?” (direct question)
I wonder *why you did that.* (indirect question)

An *indirect command* expresses what someone commands, urges, warns, or begs without using a direct quotation. Example:

“Don’t go.” (direct command)
I urge you *not to go.* (indirect command)

The *infinitive* is the form of the verb which is not limited by person or number. Example:

to see, to have done

Inflection is the change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relationship to the other words around it.

The *intensive adjective* is used to emphasize the word it describes. Example:

He is the *very* man I meant.

An *interrogative* asks a question. An interrogative sentence is a sentence which asks a question. The interrogative pronoun in English is “who” or “what”; the interrogative adjective is “what, which”.

An *intransitive verb* is a verb which does not take a direct object. Examples:

fall, go, die

A *macron* is a mark (‐) placed above a long vowel to mark its quantity.

Morphology is the study of the basic formations of words.

The *object* receives the action of the verb. Example:

The child broke the *pitcher.*

A *paradigm* is a model or pattern which contains all the inflectional variations of a given word. Examples:

man, man's, men, men's; he, his, him, they, their (theirs), them

Parataxis (coordination) is the absence of subordination and the arrangement of several clauses side by side. Example:

We left; she stayed.

A *participle* is a verbal adjective. Example:

The *screaming* woman caught our attention.

Periphrasis (circumlocution) is a roundabout expression of a simple idea. Example:

Illumination is required to be extinguished *is a periphrasis for* Lights must be put out.

Phonology is the study of the sounds of a language.

A *phrase* is a group of words without a subject or verb. It may be used as an adjective or an adverb. Examples:

on time, without money, by whom

A *possessive* pronoun or adjective shows ownership. Example:

mine, yours, my, your, his

The *predicate*, in English, is the verb and the part of the sentence that comes after the verb. A *predicate nominative* is a noun or pronoun which follows a linking verb (such as the verbs "to be, seem, appear") and which is the same as the subject. Example:

Tom is a *farmer*.

The same case follows the linking verb as precedes it; the linking verb can *not* take an object. Thus, in the example given above, both "Tom" and "farmer" are in the nominative case. A *predicate adjective* is an adjective which follows a linking verb. Example:

Tom is *tall*.

Once again, "tall" is in the nominative case; the verb "to be" can *not* take an object. -

Protasis is the clause containing the condition in a conditional sentence (cf. *Apodosis*). Example:

If it should rain, I'll take an umbrella.

Proviso. A clause of proviso expresses a conditional or a provisional idea. Example:

They will come, *provided that we invite them.*

A *reflexive* pronoun refers to the subject of the main verb. Example:

He cut *himself.*

A *relative* pronoun, “who, which, that”, introduces an adjectival clause which modifies the antecedent of that pronoun. Example:

The man *whom* we saw was very tall.

The relative pronoun has the same gender as its antecedent, but it takes its case from its use in its own clause.

The *root* of a word is the basic element that gives the meaning of the word. Examples:

export, reporter, transportation

A *sentence* is a group of words with a subject and a verb; it expresses a complete thought, feeling, question, or command.

The *stem* is that part of a word to which endings are added. Example:

annihilated, annihilation

The *subject* performs the action of the verb. Example:

The *pitcher* threw the ball.

A *subordinate* clause is a dependent clause.

A *subordinating conjunction* is a conjunction used to join two elements of a sentence in a way in which one will be subordinate to or dependent upon the other. Examples:

since, when, although, that

A *substantive* is an adjective or any other word or clause used as a noun. Example:

Blessed are *the meek.*

What you have done is troublesome to me.

It is also any noun.

The *superlative* degree of an adjective indicates the greatest amount of the quality of the positive form of that adjective. In English, the superlative degree is shown by adding *-est* to the simple form of the adjective, or by adding “most, very” or “extremely” to the positive degree. Examples:

youngest, most expensive, very tall, extremely handsome

A *synopsis* is a summary outline of a given verb that shows at a glance the major inflectional variations of that verb.

Syntax is the portion of grammar which deals with the relationship of words to each other in the sentence.

A *transitive* verb is a verb which may take an object. Examples:

see, eat, hit

UNIT ONE

A. The Verbal System

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and one is said to *conjugate* a verb. Finite verb forms have the qualities of person, number, tense, voice, and mood.

1. PERSON: The Latin verb form, without the aid of pronouns, indicates whether the subject is in the *first* ("I, we"), *second* ("you"), or *third* ("he, she, it, they") persons.
2. NUMBER: The inflection of a verb shows whether the subject is *singular* or *plural*.
3. TENSE: The tense of a verb tells us *when* the action occurs, has occurred, or will occur. The simplest categories of tense (time) are *present*, *past*, and *future*, but since there is the additional concern as to the completeness or the continuation of the stated act, some refinements of the present, past, and future divisions are required.
4. VOICE: There are two grammatical voices in Latin: the *active* indicates that the subject is the doer of the act; the *passive* shows the subject as the recipient of the verbal action.
5. MOOD: There are three moods or tones of verbal action. By mood we refer to the manner in which the speaker conceives of the action. The *indicative* mood is the mood of *fact* and is used for making direct statements and asking direct questions. The *subjunctive* is the mood used to express *idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, or anticipation*. The *imperative* mood expresses the action as a *command*.

B. The Tenses of the Indicative

There are six tenses in the indicative mood.

1. PRESENT: The present tense indicates an action which is going on now or is habitual.

optat he desires, he is desiring, he (always) desires, he does desire

NOTE: The Latin form makes no distinction between the simple present tense and the present progressive.

2. **IMPERFECT**: (**imperfectum** = 'not completed'): The imperfect describes an action which was going on or was habitual in the past. The imperfect is in some respects a motion picture of past action.

optābat he desired (continually, habitually), he was desiring, he used to desire, he kept on desiring

3. **FUTURE**: The future refers to an action which will occur at some later time.

optābit he will desire, he will be desiring

NOTE: Again, the Latin form makes no distinction between the simple future and the future progressive.

4. **PERFECT** (**perfectum** = 'completed'): The perfect tense describes one of two types of action:

a. one which took place at some point in the past.

optāvit he desired

NOTE: This aspect of the perfect is most nearly equivalent to the English past tense. It is a snapshot of past action.

b. one which is completed from the point of view of the present.

optāvit he has desired

NOTE: This aspect is most nearly equivalent to the English present perfect.

5. **PLUPERFECT [PAST PERFECT]** (**plūs quam perfectum** = 'more than completed'): This tense describes an action which was already completed at some time in the past.

optāverat he had desired

6. **FUTURE PERFECT**: The future perfect indicates an action which will be completed before some point of time in the future.

optāverit he will have desired (i.e., by next week)

The six Latin tenses in the indicative, then, express not only matters of *time* but also those of *aspect*. The following chart will illustrate the uses of the tenses in these terms.

TENSES

ASPECTS	Present	Past	Future
Simple	optat he desires (Present)	optāvit he desired (Perfect)	optābit he will desire (Future)
Continuous (Progressive)	optat he is desiring (Present)	optābat he was desiring (Imperfect)	optābit he will be desiring (Future)
Completed	optāvit he has desired (Perfect)	optāverat he had desired (Pluperfect)	optāverit he will have desired (Future Perfect)

The tenses in the second vertical column, that is, all those which refer to past time, are called *secondary* tenses. Those in the first and third columns, which refer to present and future time, are called *primary* tenses.

PRIMARY TENSES OF INDICATIVE

Present

Future

Future Perfect

Perfect (when equivalent to
English present perfect)

SECONDARY TENSES OF INDICATIVE

Imperfect

Perfect (when equivalent to English
past tense)

Pluperfect

Both lists above will prove very valuable to you as you progress with your study of Latin. Refer to them frequently.

C. The Infinitive

The verb forms discussed above are *finite* forms. The Latin word *fīnis* means 'boundary' or 'limit', and so finite forms are those which are bounded or limited by person, number, tense, voice, and mood. The infinitive is *not* limited as to person, number, and mood, but it does show tense and voice.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	optāre to desire	optārī to be desired
Perfect	optāvisse to have desired	optātus esse to have been desired
Future	optātūrus esse to be going to desire	optātūm īrī to be going to be desired (this form is rare in classical Latin)

The infinitive is in fact an abstract verbal noun. *Optāre* can thus be translated not only as 'to desire' but as 'desiring' and so expresses a verbal activity.

D. The Four Conjugations

With the exception of the verb “to be”, every verb in Latin belongs to one of four classes or *conjugations*: the first, second, third, or fourth. These conjugations are distinguished from one another by the form of the present infinitive.

Verbs of the first conjugation have a present infinitive in **-āre**.

optāre to desire

Verbs of the second conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ēre**.

implēre to fill

Verbs of the third conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ere**.

incipere to begin

Verbs of the fourth conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ire**.

sentire to feel, perceive

E. The Principal Parts

Most verbs in Latin have four principal parts. For example, the vocabulary entry for the verb *optō*, ‘to desire’, appears thus:

optō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus

The forms, written in full, are

optō, optāre, optāvi, optātus

and are explained as follows.

optō	first person singular, present active indicative	I desire
optāre	present active infinitive	to desire
optāvi	first person singular, perfect active indicative	I desired, I have desired
optātus	perfect passive participle	having been desired, de- sired

It is essential that the four principal parts for each verb be learned as part of the vocabulary, for without these parts it will not be possible to conjugate the verb fully. This fact will become obvious shortly.

F. The Present Active Indicative System of the First Two Conjugations

1. A Latin verb usually consists of a stem, a tense sign, and an ending.
2. The stem for the present, imperfect, and future tenses is called the *present stem* and is derived from the second principal part of the verb, i.e., from the present infinitive: the *-re* ending is dropped. This is true for all four conjugations.

STEM

optō, -āre	optā/re
impleō, -ēre	implē/re
incipiō, -ere	incipe/re
sentiō, -ire	senti/re

3. The present tense has no tense sign. However, the tense sign of the imperfect for all conjugations is **-bā-**, and that of the future for the first and second conjugations is **-bi-**. These tense signs are added to the stem.

optō, optāre:

optā- (present), optābā- (imperfect), optābi- (future)

impleō, implēre:

implē- (present), implēbā- (imperfect), implēbi- (future)

4. Finally, the personal endings are added, indicating the person (first, second, or third) and number (singular or plural) of the verb. The endings for the active voice are as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION:

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Future
1 -ō or -m	optō	optābam*	optābō
2 -s	optās	optābās	optābis
3 -t	optat*	optābat	optābit

PLURAL

1 -mus	optāmus	optābāmus	optābimus
2 -tis	optātis	optābātis	optābitis
3 -nt	optant*	optābant	optābunt

* Note that a long vowel is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, or **-nt**.

SECOND CONJUGATION:

SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Future
1 -ō or -m	impleō	implēbam	implēbō
2 -s	implēs	implēbās	implēbis
3 -t	implet	implēbat	implēbit

PLURAL

1 -mus	implēmus	implēbāmus	implēbimus
2 -tis	implētis	implēbātis	implēbitis
3 -nt	implent	implēbant	implēbunt

The only irregularities which are obvious above are really not problematic. In the first person singular of the first conjugation, the **-ā** of the stem is absorbed into the **-ō** personal ending. This is true of all verbs of the first conjugation, but there is no trouble with this since the first person singular form is learned as a vocabulary item. Note that the **-ō** and **-m** endings for the first person singular are *not* interchangeable. The paradigms will illustrate which ending is to be used for each tense. (The future of the first and second conjugations and the present indicative of all conjugations use the **-ō** endings in the first person singular. All other tenses in the present system use the **-m** ending.)

In the future of the first two conjugations, the **-i** of the tense sign is absorbed into the **-ō** personal ending and changes to **-u** in the third person plural.

Therefore, in order to interpret a Latin verb form in the present system, one reads backwards:

optābant -nt = 'they'

-ba- = imperfect tense

optā- = 'desire'

THEREFORE: 'they used to desire' (third person plural imperfect active indicative)

clāmābis -s = 'you' (sing.)

-bi- = future tense

clāmā- —'shout'

THEREFORE: 'you will shout' (second person singular future active indicative)

terrēmus -mus = 'we'

-- = present tense (no tense sign)

terrē- = 'frighten'

THEREFORE: 'we frighten' (first person plural present active indicative)

G. The Irregular Verb *sum*, 'be'

As in all Indo-European languages, the verb "to be" is somewhat irregular and must be learned thoroughly. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of this verb are given below. Despite the irregularities, note that the personal endings are those which one would normally expect.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, 'be'

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

H. The Noun System

The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*, and such words are said to be *declined*.

Every Latin noun belongs to one of three grammatical *genders*: *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*. The gender of each noun must be learned as a vocabulary item, for it is important in the matter of noun and adjective agreement.

The inflection, or declension, of nouns shows the qualities of *number* and *case*. The case endings indicate the grammatical and syntactical relationship of the given noun to the other words in the sentence. Whereas English relies largely on word order to illustrate such relationships, Latin relies on its inflections. In addition, where the English uses a prepositional phrase, the Latin frequently needs only the one inflected word. See examples under **GENITIVE** and **DATIVE** below.

There is no definite or indefinite article in Latin. The articles “the, a, an” are frequently supplied in an English translation.

There are five cases which will be of concern to us at the present. These are: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative. The basic uses of each case are described below.

1. **NOMINATIVE**: This is the case of the subject and the predicate nominative.

Fēmina optat. *The woman* desires.

Fēmina est rēgina. *The woman* is a queen.

2. **GENITIVE**: In general, the genitive case is used for a noun which is dependent upon another noun and is often introduced by the preposition “of” in English (except where “of” means ‘concerning’).

patria fēminae the native land of *the woman*, *the woman's* native land

timor aquae fear of water

urna pecūniae a jar of money

3. **DATIVE**: This case generally expresses the person (or thing), with the exception of the subject and object, *with reference to* whom (or what) the action or idea of the main verb is relevant. It is usually rendered in English by the prepositions “to” or “for”, and one of its uses includes the indirect object.

Taedam fēminae dat. He gives the torch *to the woman*. (*Fēmina* is the *referent* of the action; that is, the action of the verb occurs *with reference to her*.)

Taedam fēminae optat. He chooses a torch *for the woman*.

4. ACCUSATIVE: Essentially, the accusative case is used as the direct object of a verb or as the object of certain prepositions.

Fēminam videt.

He sees *the woman*.

Fēmina in aquam ambulābit. The woman will walk into *the water*.

5. ABLATIVE: The ablative generally expresses notions connected with the English prepositions "from, with, in", and "by". Sometimes prepositions are required to express these notions; other times the case ending alone serves this purpose. Distinctions will be pointed out in later Units.

Cum fēminā ambulat.

He walks with *the woman*.

Fēmina est in aquā.

The woman is in *the water*.

Nauta fēminam taedā terret. The sailor frightens the woman *with a torch*.

I. The First Declension

There are five basic groups of nouns in Latin. Each of these is called a *declension*. These declensions are distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular: for the first declension, this is **-ae**, for the second, **-i**, for the third, **-is**, for the fourth, **-ūs**, and for the fifth, **-eī**. At present we shall be concerned only with the first of these groups, the first declension.

Noun entries in the vocabulary lists are given in three parts:

fēmina, **-ae**, **F.**

The first of these parts is the nominative singular form; the second indicates the ending of the genitive singular; the third reveals the gender of the noun (*M.* for masculine, *F.* for feminine, *N.* for neuter). Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, but there are a few which are masculine.

A noun form consists of a stem and a case ending. In order to arrive at the stem of any noun in Latin, take the full genitive singular form and drop the ending.

fēmin / **ae**
(stem) (ending)

For the first declension, it may seem pointless to go to the genitive form to arrive at the stem when the same results might be obtained by using the nominative form. But for many nouns the genitive form is significantly different from the nominative, so that the stem for all nouns can only be found by this procedure.

To this stem the endings of the particular declension are added. The endings for the first declension are:

SINGULAR

Nominative	-a	fēmina	(the, a) woman (subject)
Genitive	-ae	fēminae	of (the, a) woman, (the, a) woman's
Dative	-ae	fēminae	to/for (the, a) woman
Accusative	-am	fēminam	(the, a) woman (object)
Ablative	-ā	fēminā	from/with/in/by (the, a) woman

PLURAL

Nominative	-ae	fēminae	(the) women (subject)
Genitive	-ārum	fēminārum	of (the) women, (the) women's
Dative	-is	fēminis	to/for (the) women
Accusative	-ās	fēminās	(the) women (object)
Ablative	-is	fēminis	from/with/in/by (the) women

UNIT ONE — VOCABULARY

ambulō (1)*	walk
aqua , -ae, F.	water
clāmō (1)	shout
corōna , -ae, F.	crown, wreath
corōnō (1)	crown
cum (prep. + abl.)	with
cūra , -ae, F.	care, concern, anxiety
dē (prep. + abl.)	concerning, about; (down) from
dō , dare , dedi , datus	give, grant
dōnō (1)	give, present, reward
ē , ex (prep. + abl.)	out of, from
enim (postpositive conj.)	indeed, of course; for
et (conj.)	and
et...et	both...and
(adv.)	even
fāma , -ae, F.	talk, report, rumor, fame, reputation
fēmina , -ae, F.	woman
fōrma , -ae, F.	form, shape, figure, beauty
habeō , -ēre, habuī , habitus	have, hold, possess, consider
implēō , -ēre, implēvī , implētus	fill, fill up
in (prep. + acc.)	into, onto (motion toward)
(prep. + abl.)	in, on (place where)
īnsula , -ae, F.	island
nauta , -ae, M.	sailor

-ne (enclitic)	(added to the first word of an interrogative sentence or clause; it indicates a question) ²
nōn (adv.)	not
optō (1)	desire, wish (for); choose
patria, -ae, F.	native land, country
pecūnia, -ae, F.	money
poena, -ae, F.	penalty, punishment
poenās dare	to pay a penalty
poēta, -ae, M.	poet
porta, -ae, F.	gate
-que (enclitic)	and ³
rēgina, -ae, F.	queen
sed (conj.)	but
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus	be, exist
taeda, -ae, F.	torch
terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus	frighten, alarm, terrify
timeō, -ēre, timuī, --	fear, be afraid (of)
turba, -ae, F.	crowd, uproar
via, -ae, F.	way, road, path, street
videō, -ēre, vidi, vīsus	see

* The entry (1) after a verb indicates that the verb belongs to the first conjugation and has the regular principal parts in **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**.

¹ ē before a word beginning with a consonant; ex before a vowel or h and sometimes before a consonant.

² e.g., *Timetne?* Is he afraid?

Fēmīnāsne vidēs? Do you see the women?

³ e.g., *poēta rēginaque* = *poēta et rēgina*

UNIT ONE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Many verbs in Latin derive from nouns. For example, **corōnō**, **corōnāre**, **corōnāvī**, **corōnātus**, ‘crown’, comes from **corōna**, **corōnae**, F., ‘crown’. Such verbs are called denominatives.

The preposition **cum**, ‘with’, always takes the ablative case: **cum cūrā**, ‘with care’, **cum fēmīnā**, ‘with a woman’.

Note that **dē** has both the meaning ‘concerning’ and ‘down from’. It always takes the ablative case.

Although most first conjugation verbs follow the pattern **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, the verb **dō**, **dare**, ‘give’, does not. The **-a-** in the infinitive is short and the other principal parts are **dedī**, **datus**. When an infinitive is used with this verb, it is best to use the meaning ‘grant, allow’ for **dō**. For example:

Rēgina fēminās vidēre corōnam dat. The queen grants (allows) the women to see (her) crown.

The first conjugation verb **dōnō**, 'give, present, reward', may govern an accusative and a dative or an accusative and ablative. In other words, with **dōnō**, one may present something to someone or present someone with something:

Aquam nautis dōnābimus. We shall give water to the sailors.

Nautās aquā dōnābimus. We shall present the sailors with water.

Enim, 'indeed, of course', is a postpositive conjunction. This means that it cannot be the first word of a clause. Usually, a word that is postpositive is placed as the second word of a clause. **Enim** generally introduces a statement which corroborates what precedes.

Et means 'and'. In a series, the first **et** means 'both'. For example:

Et fēminae et nautae in viā ambulant. Both the women and the sailors are walking in the street.

As an adverb, **et** means 'even':

Et rēgina poenās dabat. Even the queen was paying the penalty.

One cannot know for sure exactly what the principal parts of a verb in the second conjugation will be:

habeō, habērē, habui, habitus	have
impleō, implērē, implēvi, implētus	fill
videō, vidēre, vidi, visus	see

Thus, each verb must be learned thoroughly; one cannot simply guess at the principal parts.

The preposition **in** may take either the accusative or the ablative case, with a difference in meaning. The accusative case is used to express movement toward; thus **in** with the accusative means 'into' or 'onto': **in turbam**, 'into the crowd'. Sometimes this movement can be in a hostile sense, as 'The man led his troops against the sailors' (**in nautās**). The ablative case, on the other hand, is not associated with movement, but with location. Thus **in** with the ablative means 'in' or 'on': **in turbā**, 'in the crowd'.

A vowel before **-ns-** is long; thus, **insula**, **insulae**, F., 'island'.

Literally, the idiom **poenās dare** means 'to give punishments', but the actual meaning is the opposite, 'to pay a penalty'. Of course, the verb is conjugated:

Poenās dabit. He will pay the penalty.

Although most nouns of the first declension are feminine, **poēta**, **poētae**, 'poet', and **nauta**, **nautae**, 'sailor', are masculine. These words are declined in the same way as the feminine nouns of the first declension.

An enclitic is attached to the end of a word and is pronounced with it. In English we translate **-que**, 'and', *before* the word to which it is attached:

poētae nautaeque the poets and sailors
 Fēminās vidēbunt rēginamque corōnābunt. They will see the women and
 crown the queen.

The verb "to be" is irregular in most languages; Latin is no exception. Note that **est** may be translated 'there is' as well as 'he, she, it is'. Thus, **erat**, 'there was'; **erit**, 'there will be'. Since the verb "to be" cannot logically have a passive voice, it does not have a perfect passive participle (which, for most verbs, is given as the fourth principal part). In its place, the future active participle has been provided. Translate **futūrus** as 'going to be'. Of course the verb "to be" cannot take an object. When this verb is used as a "linking" verb, one finds the same case preceding and following it.

Nauta est poēta. The sailor is a poet.

Timeō, **timēre**, **timuī**, --, 'fear', lacks a fourth principal part. In order not to confuse the meanings of **terreō**, **terrēre**, **terrui**, **territus**, 'frighten', and **timeō**, remember that **terreō** means 'terrify' and that a timid person is one who is afraid.

Caesar's famous expression, **Vēni**, **vīdi**, **vīci**, 'I came, I saw, I conquered', is a very handy way of remembering the third principal parts of these verbs (**veniō**, 'come', Unit Two; **videō**, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus**, 'see'; and **vincō**, 'conquer', Unit Fourteen).

Note that the **-ī** in the perfect tenses of **videō** is long (**vīdī**). Very often in Latin the short vowel in the present stem lengthens in the perfect.

UNIT ONE — DRILL

I.

Translate:

1. Fēminaē in viā ambulant.
2. Fēminaene in viā ambulābunt?
3. Fēminaē in viā nōn ambulābant.
4. Estne rēgina in īnsulā?
5. Rēgina in īnsulā nōn erat sed erit.
6. Pecūniām habētis? Nōn habēmus.
7. Pecūniām habēs? Nōn habeō.
8. Et pecūniām et fāmam habēbis.
9. Pecūniām habēbāmus sed fāmam habēbātis.

10. Pecūniām nōn habēbō sed fāmam habēbimus.
 11. Turbamne terrēbās? Nōn terrēbam.
 12. Aquam nautis dabitis?

II.

A. Decline **porta**, **turba**, and **rēgīna** fully.
 B. Change each of the following from the singular to the plural (in some instances there may be two possible answers):

1. rēgīnam 3. fēminā 5. nauta
 2. fāmae 4. corōna

III.

Translate into Latin:

1. with the queens	6. I am
2. to the poet	7. we shall shout
3. of women	8. they used to be afraid
4. on the gates	9. you (pl.) are desiring
5. crown (object)	10. to give

UNIT ONE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES **(SECTIONS A, B, C, D, E, F, G)**

I.

A. What are the stems of **impleō**, **implēre**; **corōnō**, **corōnāre**; **dō**, **dare**; **videō**, **vidēre**?
 B. Conjugate **dōnō** in the imperfect active indicative.
 C. Conjugate **timeō** in the future active indicative.
 D. Conjugate **habeō** in the present active indicative.
 E. Give the second person singular of **clāmō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active indicative.

II.

A. Identify each of the following forms:

1. vidētis	6. es
2. vidēbās	7. erat
3. vidēbis	8. erit
4. clāmātis	9. est
5. ambulābātis	10. habēre

B. Change from singular to plural:

1. ambulat	6. implēs
2. corōnō	7. optās
3. habēs	8. sum
4. erit	9. videt
5. est	10. erō

UNIT ONE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Nauta in patriā poenās rēgīnae timet.
2. Poēta pecūniām fāmamque nōn optat.
3. Pecūniām poētārum habēmus.
4. Poētisne rēgīna pecūniām dabit?
5. Rēgīnam īnsulae cum turbā nautārum vidēre optābāmus.
6. Fēminae enim poētās corōnīs corōnābunt.
7. Fēminās in viis vidēbātis, sed dē fōrmā nōn clāmābātis. Poenās dabitis.
8. Poētae rēgīnam patriae ē turbā fēminārum optant.
9. Est cūra dē poenā poētae.
10. Taedās in viā vidēre timēbō.
11. Taedamne in īnsulā vidētis?
12. Turbamne fēminārum in īnsulā vidēs (vidēbās)?
13. Cum poētā ē portis in viam ambulō (ambulābam).
14. Poētae et poenam et fāmam timent.
15. Viās turbā implēbunt.
16. Nautae fēminās taedis terrēbant.
17. a) Et pecūniām et corōnās poētis dōnābis.
b) Et pecūniā et corōnīs poētās dōnābis.
18. Erisne (eruntne, erantne, suntne) in īnsulā cum rēgīnā?
19. Fēminae est fōrma, fāma nautae; fēminis est fōrma, fāma nautis.
20. Poena nautārum erat cūra rēgīnae.
21. Rēgīnaene corōnam vidēre optābās?
22. Rēgīnae dē patriā cūram habent.
23. Nauta enim poenās dare nōn optat.
24. Ex aquā ambulāmus.
25. Patria poētae est īnsula.
26. īnsulam esse patriam habēbat.
27. Vidēre taedās patriae est nautis cūra.

II.

1. The poets will crown a queen from the women of the island.
2. Shall we be with the poet on the island?
3. The sailors kept on shouting about the punishment of the women.
4. We fear the reputation of the poet.
5. You [pl.] kept on giving money to the crowds of sailors.
6. We desire to see women in (our) native land.
7. The sailor was a poet, but he kept on fearing both money and fame.

III. Reading

Poēta fābulam¹ nārrat² dē rēginā et nautā. Rēgina cum turbā incolārum³ ē patriā exit⁴ et ad⁵ Africam⁶ appropinquat.⁷ Ibi⁸ novam⁹ patriam aedificābat¹⁰ sed nōn timēbat. Subitō¹¹ nauta cum turbā et incolārum³ et fēminārum ē patriā Trōiā¹² ad⁵ rēgīnae patriam appropinquat.⁷ In Africā⁶ diū¹³ manent.¹⁴ Rēgina nautam amat¹⁵ et nauta rēginam. Fāma enim rēgīnae nōn erat cūra. Postrēmō¹⁶ nauta rēginam relinquit¹⁷ et rēgina vitam.¹⁸

¹ fābula, -ae, F., 'story' ² nārrō (1), 'tell' ³ incola, -ae, M., 'inhabitant' ⁴ exit, 'goes out' (3rd person sing.) ⁵ ad (prep. + acc.), 'to, toward' ⁶ Africa, -ae, F., 'Africa' ⁷ appropinquō (1) (+ ad + acc.), 'approach' ⁸ ibi (adv.), 'there' ⁹ nova (adj.) 'new' ¹⁰ aedificō (1), 'build' ¹¹ subitō (adv.), 'suddenly' ¹² Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy' ¹³ diū (adv.), 'for a long time' ¹⁴ maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, 'remain' ¹⁵ amō (1), 'love' ¹⁶ postrēmō (adv.), 'finally' ¹⁷ relinquit, 'abandons' (3rd person sing.) ¹⁸ vita, -ae, F., 'life'

UNIT TWO

A. The Perfect Active Indicative System of All Verbs

1. All verbs in Latin, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong, are formed identically in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses respectively. As in the present system, the verb form in these tenses usually consists of a stem, a tense sign, and an ending.
2. The perfect stem is derived by dropping the **-i** from the third principal part of the verb.

This process also applies to the few irregular verbs in Latin; irregularities do not appear in the perfect system.

3. There is a special set of personal endings which is used *only* for the perfect tense. These endings are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	-i	-im̄us
2	-ist̄i	-ist̄is
3	-it̄	-ērunt̄

The *perfect* tense is formed by adding these endings to the perfect stem. Note that there is no tense sign for the perfect.

4. The *pluperfect* tense is formed by adding the tense sign *-erā-* to the perfect stem and then adding the personal endings *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*. It is perhaps easier, however, to regard the formation of the pluperfect indicative as the perfect stem plus the forms of the imperfect indicative of the verb *sum*.

5. The *future perfect* tense is formed by adding the tense sign *-eri-* to the perfect stem and then the personal endings *-ō**, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*. As in the pluperfect, it is easier to regard this formation as the perfect stem plus the forms of the future indicative of the verb *sum* (with *-erint* in the third person plural instead of *-erunt*). Thus:

SINGULAR	PLURAL				
Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.	Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.
1 optāvī	optāveram	optāverō	optāvimus	optāverāmus	optāverimus
2 optāvisti	optāverās	optāveris	optāvistis	optāverātis	optāveritis
3 optāvit	optāverat	optāverit	optāvērunt	optāverant	optāverint

* As with the future tense, the *-i-* in the first person singular is assimilated into the *-ō*. Thus, *optābō*, *optāverō*.

B. The Subjunctive Mood

The indicative mood is used to make statements of fact or to ask direct questions. The subjunctive mood is connected with notions involving idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, anticipation, or the like. There are many uses of the subjunctive which will be encountered as this course progresses. In this unit we shall be concerned with only one of these uses.

C. Formation of the Subjunctive

While the indicative mood in Latin has six tenses, the subjunctive has only four: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. A subjunctive verb has no one equivalent in English and can only be translated according to the construction in which it occurs. By the same token, the translations of the tenses in the subjunctive do not necessarily correspond with those in the indicative.

1. PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

The conjugation of the present subjunctive is very similar to that of the present indicative. Begin with the present stem, change the *-ā-* to *-ē-*, and add the personal endings *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*.

optā- (stem)

optē- (mutated stem for present subjunctive)

optem optēmus

optēs optētis

optet optent

2. IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

The imperfect subjunctive is easily formed for *all* verbs (including irregular verbs) by taking the full present active infinitive, lengthening the final *-e*, and

adding the personal endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**. (Note that, as always, a long vowel is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, or **-nt**.)

optāre/m	implēre/m	incipere/m	sentire/m
optārē/s	implērē/s	inciperē/s	sentirē/s
optāre/t	implēre/t	incipere/t	sentire/t
optārē/mus	implērē/mus	inciperē/mus	sentirē/mus
optārē/tis	implērē/tis	inciperē/tis	sentirē/tis
optāre/nt	implēre/nt	incipere/nt	sentire/nt

3. PERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

To the perfect stem, add **-eri-** and then the personal endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

optāv/eri/m	implēv/eri/m	incēp/eri/m	sēns/eri/m
optāv/eri/s	implēv/eri/s	incēp/eri/s	sēns/eri/s
optāv/eri/t	implēv/eri/t	incēp/eri/t	sēns/eri/t
optāv/eri/mus	implēv/eri/mus	incēp/eri/mus	sēns/eri/mus
optāv/eri/tis	implēv/eri/tis	incēp/eri/tis	sēns/eri/tis
optāv/eri/nt	implēv/eri/nt	incēp/eri/nt	sēns/eri/nt

4. PLUPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

To the perfect stem, add the tense sign **-issē-** and then the personal endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

optāv/isse/m	implēv/isse/m	incēp/isse/m	sēns/isse/m
optāv/issē/s	implēv/issē/s	incēp/issē/s	sēns/issē/s
optāv/isse/t	implēv/isse/t	incēp/isse/t	sēns/isse/t
optāv/issē/mus	implēv/issē/mus	incēp/issē/mus	sēns/issē/mus
optāv/issē/tis	implēv/issē/tis	incēp/issē/tis	sēns/issē/tis
optāv/isse/nt	implēv/isse/nt	incēp/isse/nt	sēns/isse/nt

D. Present Subjunctive of the Verb *sum*

While the endings are what we should expect, the stem is irregular:

sim	sīmus
sis	sītis
sit	sint

The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctives of this verb are formed according to the rules given under C above. The principal parts of the verb, it must be remembered, are **sum**, **esse**, **fūi**, **futūrus**.

E. Conditional Sentences

The sentence “If he works, he is happy” is a conditional sentence. It is composed of two clauses, the *if* clause (sometimes called the *protasis*) and the *concluding* clause (called the *apodosis*). The protasis is introduced in Latin by *sī*, ‘if’, or *nisi*, ‘unless, if not’.

Conditional sentences may be broken up into three basic categories and are formed in Latin according to a specific formula for each category.

1. SIMPLE (GENERAL) CONDITIONS

If (i.e., whenever) he works, he desires money.

Such conditions may also be expressed in past time:

If (i.e., whenever) he worked, he desired money.

FORMULA: Indicative in both clauses.

Sī labōrat, pecūniam optat.

Sī labōrābat, pecūniam optābat.

Sī labōrāvit, pecūniam optāvit.

2. FUTURE CONDITIONS

a. MORE VIVID

If he works, he will desire money.

This type of condition is expressed in English by the present indicative in the *if* clause and the future in the concluding clause.

FORMULA: Future indicative in both clauses.

Sī labōrābit, pecūniam optābit.

NOTE: Occasionally, when the speaker wishes the implications of the condition to be exceptionally emphatic, the future perfect indicative is used in the protasis instead of the simple future.

Sī labōrāverit, pecūniam optābit. *If* he works (will have worked),
he will desire money.

In such cases it is emphasized that the action in the protasis *must* be completed in order for the action in the apodosis to occur. Frequently, in English, it is difficult to illustrate the difference between the future and the future perfect in such clauses, except by giving special intonation to the voice, or, in printing, by using italics.

b. LESS VIVID

If he should work, he would desire money.

These conditions, while they refer to future time, conceive of the future act less vividly, or less certainly, than future more vivid conditions.

FORMULA: Present subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *should* . . . *would* . . .)

Sī labōret, pecūniam optet.

NOTE: Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used instead of the present, but this is rare, and so its discussion has been omitted from these materials.

3. CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS

a. PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT

Contrary-to-fact conditions state something which is untrue and hypothesized.

If he were (now) working (but he is not), he would be desiring money (he would desire money).

FORMULA: Imperfect subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *were* —*ing*, . . . *would be* . . . *ing* / *would* . . .)

Sī labōrāret, pecūniam optāret.

b. PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT

If he had (in the past) worked (but he did not), he would have desired money.

FORMULA: Pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *had* . . . *would have* . . .)

Sī labōrāvisset, pecūniam optāvisset.

4. MIXED CONDITIONS

In addition to the strict formulae given above, occasionally one finds a mixed condition where the protasis and the apodosis belong to different categories. Such conditions are constructed as logical thought requires. For example:

If he had (in the past) worked (but he did not), he would (now) be desiring money (he would desire money).

This sentence is past contrafactual in the protasis, but the apodosis refers to present time. Consequently, the protasis must have its verb in the pluperfect subjunctive, while the verb of the apodosis will be imperfect subjunctive.

Sī labōrāvisset, pecūniam optāret.

F. Genitive with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning

The genitive is used with verbs of accusing and condemning to express the charge or the penalty.

Genitive of the charge:

Puellam **cūrae** culpat. He blames the girl [*of*] for (*her*) concern.
[**culpō** (1), 'blame']

Genitive of the penalty:

Nautam **pecūniae** dāmnāvit. He sentenced the sailor [*of money*] to pay money.

UNIT TWO — VOCABULARY

ā, ab (prep. + abl.)	(away) from; by (only with living beings) ¹
ad (prep. + acc.)	to, toward
anima , -ae, F.	soul, spirit, life force
āra , -ae, F.	altar
capiō , -ere, cēpī , captus	take, capture
cella , -ae, F.	storeroom, (small) room
cēlō (1)	hide, conceal
cōgitō (1)	think, ponder, consider
culpa , -ae, F.	guilt, fault
dāmnō (1)	condemn, sentence
dubitō (1)	doubt, hesitate
glōria , -ae, F.	glory, renown
incipiō , -ere, incēpī , inceptus	begin
incola , -ae, M. (occasionally F.)	inhabitant
incolō , -ere, -ui, --	inhabit
insidiae , -ārum, F. (used only in pl.)	ambush, plot, treachery
invidia , -ae, F.	envy, jealousy
labōrō (1)	work
lacrima , -ae, F.	tear (<i>as in</i> 'teardrop')
lūna , -ae, F.	moon, moonlight
moneō , -ēre, monūi , monitus	warn, remind
mora , -ae, F.	delay
mūtō (1)	change, exchange
nātūra , -ae, F.	nature
neque or nec (conj.)	and not, nor (<i>replaces</i> et . . . nōn)
neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)	neither . . . nor
nihil or nīl , N. (indeclinable noun)	nothing
nisi (conj.)	unless, if . . . not; except

¹ **ā** before a word beginning with a consonant; **ab** before a vowel or **h**

noxa, -ae, F.	harm, injury
nunc (adv.)	now
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus	push, drive (off)
expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus	push out, drive out
per (prep. + acc.)	through
prōvincia, -ae, F.	province
puella, -ae, F.	girl
semper (adv.)	always
sententia, -ae, F.	feeling, thought, opinion
sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus	feel, perceive
sī (conj.)	if
sub (prep. + acc.)	under (i.e., going to a place under)
(prep. + abl.)	under (i.e., at or in a place under)
superō (1)	overcome, conquer
taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitus	be (or keep) silent
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus	hold, keep, possess
terra, -ae, F.	earth, land
unda, -ae, F.	wave
veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus	come
vīta, -ae, F.	life

UNIT TWO — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The preposition **ā (ab)** is used only with the ablative case. It has two different meanings, ‘away from’ and ‘by’ (‘through the agency of’, *not* ‘near’). It means ‘by’ only when it is used with words representing living beings, for example, **ā nautā**, ‘by the sailor’, **ā rēgīnā**, ‘by the queen’; ‘by tears’ or ‘by delay’ would not use **ā (ab)**, but simply the ablative case without a preposition.

Since **ad** means ‘to’ or ‘toward’, it governs the accusative case (the case which expresses movement toward). The preposition **per**, ‘through’, also provides the idea of motion toward and so takes the accusative.

Incipiō, incipere, incēpī, incep̄tus is a compound of the preposition **in-**, ‘on’, plus the verb **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**. The **-a-** of the uncompounded verb changes to **-i-** in compounds; this is always the case in Latin. It is very common for the **-a-** in a perfect passive participle to change to **-e-** when the verb is compounded. **Incipiō** means literally ‘take on’, thus, ‘begin’. (Cf. He *takes on* a new task. He *begins* a new task.)

There are many compounds of **capiō**: **ad + capiō** is **accipiō**, ‘take to (oneself), receive’. The prefix **re-** has the meaning ‘back’; thus, **recipiō**, ‘take back’. The imperative form **recipe** ‘take back’, is our English word “*recipe*”. The Romans

used a line to indicate an abbreviation, and so the sign for a prescription Rx is not Rx, but an abbreviation for **recipe**, 'take back'. **Repellō** (re- + **pellō**, 'drive') means 'drive back'. A water-repellent raincoat drives back the rain so that it does not go through the coat. **Excipiō** (ex + **capiō**) means 'take out', and **suscipiō** (sub, 'under' + **capiō**) means 'undertake'.

Cōgitō, a first conjugation verb, means 'think, ponder, consider'. To *think about* something is **cōgitāre dē** (+ ablative) or **cōgitāre** (+ accusative).

Dubitō (1) means 'hesitate' when it is used with an infinitive, otherwise 'doubt'.

Incolō, **incolere**, **incolui**, 'inhabit', is obviously related to **incola**, **incolae**, M. or F., 'inhabitant'; it lacks a fourth principal part.

Insidiae, **insidiārum**, F., 'ambush, plot, treachery', although plural in Latin and governing a plural verb, is translated as singular in English.

There is no distinction between **neque** and **nec**; either spelling may be used. **Neque...neque** means 'neither...nor': **Rēgīnam neque videt neque timet**, 'He neither sees nor fears the queen'. The sentence could also be written **Rēgīnam nec videt nec timet**.

In the same way, the spellings of the word 'nothing', **nihil** and **nil**, are interchangeable.

Pellō, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, 'push, drive off', forms its third principal part by the process of reduplication. Some verbs have such reduplicated third principal parts, which are formed by prefixing the word with the initial consonant, followed either by -e- or the vowel of the root. Some other examples of reduplicated perfects are:

canō, canere, cecini, cantus	sing (of)
currō, currere, cūcurri, cursus	run
poscō, poscere, poposci, --	beg, demand

Expellō, **expellere**, **expulī**, **expulsus** is a compound of **pellō** (ex + **pellō**) and so it means 'push out, drive out'. Often a verb that is compounded will lose its reduplicated form in the perfect (cf. **pepulī**, **expulī**).

Very frequently, first declension nouns that end in -tia come over into English with the spelling -ce or -cy (cf. **sententia**, 'sentence'; **grātia**, 'grace'; **diligentia**, 'diligence'; **beneficentia**, 'beneficence'; **cōstantia**, 'constancy').

The perfect forms of **sentiō**, **sentire**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, 'feel, perceive', have a long -ē- because of the -ns- which follows.

Sub takes either the accusative or the ablative case depending upon whether the idea of movement toward or location is involved. In other words, if one were drilling down under the earth, in Latin **sub terram** would be used, but if one were to speak of the rock lying under the earth, **sub terrā** would be used.

Again notice the lengthening of the -e- in **veniō**, **venire** to -ē- in the perfect active, **vēni**.

A good way of remembering the principal parts of verbs is to associate both the present stem and the perfect passive stem with English words. For example:

incipiō	<i>incipient</i>	<i>inception</i>
expellō	<i>expel</i>	<i>expulsion</i>
sentiō	<i>sentient</i>	<i>sensual</i>
veniō	<i>convene</i>	<i>convention</i>

UNIT TWO — DRILL

I.

Verb identification: Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives by so labeling them, and appending information as to person, number, tense, and voice.

1. ambulat, ambulāret, ambulāvit, ambulāverat
2. clāmābunt, clāmant; clāment, clāmāvērunt
3. vidērunt, viderant, viderint (two possibilities), vidissent
4. optāverās, optāveris (two possibilities), optēmus, optāvimus
5. timērēmus, timēmus, timuimus, timēbāmus
6. dedissem, dem, dabam, dedi

II.

Translate:

1. Si in insulā eritis, pecūniām habēre optābitis.
2. Si in insulā sītis, aquam optētis.
3. Si in patriā essētis, fēminās vidērētis.
4. Si in patriā fuissētis, clāmāre timuissētis.
5. Si fēminam vidēbit, clāmābit.
6. Si fēminam viderit, clāmābit.
7. Si fēminam vidēret, clāmāret.
8. Si fēminam vidisset, clāmāvisset.
9. Si fēminam optet, clāmet.
10. Si taedam nautae det, portam vidēbō.
11. Si taedam nautae dabit, portam vidēbō.
12. Si taedam nautae dederit, portam vidēbō.
13. Si taedam nautae dedisset, portam vidissem.
14. Si taedam nautae daret, portam vidērem.

III.

Ellipsis. Note the following progression, and how the verb “to be” is omitted.

Est fāma fēminis. Est fōrma fēminīs.

Est fāma fēminis et est fōrma fēminīs.

Est fāma fēminīs et fōrma.

Fāma fēminīs et fōrma.

UNIT TWO — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D)

I.

1. *Incolaene dē glōriā patriae tacuērunt?*
2. *Rēginam dē incolārum īsidiis monū.*
3. *Glōriam enim optāverint.*
4. *Nil nisi glōriam optāverō.*
5. *Puellae neque lacrimās neque culpam cēlāverant.*
6. *Sententiās dē animā mūtāre incēperāmus sed sententiās nōn mūtāverātis.*
7. *Invidiamne ex animā expulisti?*
8. *Noxam ab incolis pepulerimus.*
9. *Per undās ad terram vēnistis, sed in patriā semper fuimus.*
10. *Pecūniām rēginae ē terrā cēperat.*

II.

A *synopsis* is a summary outline of a given verb that shows at a glance the major inflectional variations of that verb. In Latin, a synopsis gives all the forms of a given verb in a specified person and number. Writing synopses is an excellent way to solidify one's knowledge of the verbal system in Latin.

The following example is a synopsis of *cēlō* (1) in the third person singular:

cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus, 'hide, conceal'

ACTIVE VOICE		
	INDICATIVE MOOD	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
Present	<i>cēlat</i>	<i>cēlet</i>
Imperfect	<i>cēlābat</i>	<i>cēlāret</i>
Future	<i>cēlābit</i>	---
Perfect	<i>cēlāvit</i>	<i>cēlāverit</i>
Pluperfect	<i>cēlāverat</i>	<i>cēlāvisset</i>
Future Perfect	<i>cēlāverit</i>	---

Write synopses of the following verbs:

1. *dubitō* (1), second person plural; third person singular
2. *labōrō* (1), third person plural; first person singular

UNIT TWO — EXERCISES

I.

1. *cum puellā; dē lūnā; ē cellis; in āram; in turbā; ab incolā; ā prōvinciā; ad undam; per terrās; sub portam; sub undīs.*

2. Sententiam mūtābit. Sententiam mūtāre dubitat. Sententiam mūtāre incēperat. Sententiam mūtāvit.
3. Nisi fēminaē nautās sententiārum dē incolis dāmnābunt (dāmnāverint), incolae in prōvinciā nōn labōrābunt.
4. Incolae sī fēminās insulae dāmnārent, nautae ad terram venire nōn dubitārent.
5. Incolae sī insulae fēminās dāmnāvissent, nautae ad terram venire nōn dubitāvissent.
6. Incolae sī insulae fēminās insidiārum dāmnent, nautae ad prōvinciam venire nōn dubitent.
7. Incolae sī fēminās in turbā dāmnābunt, nautae ad insulam venire nōn dubitābunt.
8. Incolae sī fēminās invidiae dāmnāverint, nautae sententiam dē fāmā incolārum mūtāre nōn dubitābunt.
9. Si nautae undās timēbunt, in terrā semper erunt.
10. Puella dē glōriā et fāmā poētārum cōgitat.
11. Nautae noxās ā puellis pepulerant (pepulērunt).
12. Si nautae noxās ā puellis pepulissent, et glōriam et fāmam cēpissent.
13. Dē nātūrā animae nec cum poētā sēnseram nec sententiam mūtāre optāveram. [sentiō cum, 'agree with']
14. Terram si poētae incoluissent, nautās ē prōvinciā expulissent et nātūram patriae mūtāvissent.
15. Si nautās rēginae superāvissem, prōvinciam tenērem.
16. Undae ārās cēlāre incēpērunt.
17. Si undae ārās cēlāre inciperent, incolās monērem.
18. Nautārum fāma sententiam dē insulārum incolis mūtāverit.
19. Nisi in cellā labōrāvissētis, nautae ē prōvinciā puellās nōn pepulissent.
20. Si Hannibal ad portās prōvinciae vēnisset, incolās taedis monuissem. [Hannibal, nom., the name of a Carthaginian general]
21. Nisi pecūniā in cellā cēlāvissēs, rēgina nautās nec dāmnāvisset nec ē prōvinciā expelleret.
22. Et glōria incolis prōvinciae et culpa, sed poēta dē nātūrā incolārum tacuit.
23. Nisi pecūniā optāvissent, nautae neque per prōvinciam vēnissent neque insulam nunc superārent.
24. Sub lūnā labōrāverāmus.
25. Sub portās ambulāre dubitābam.
26. Puella tacēbat, neque lacrimās cēlāvit.
27. Vita rēginae nihil dedit nisi glōriam fāmamque.
28. Puellāsne dē morā nautārum monuistī? Puellās monui, sed nil timent.
29. Nisi insidiās incolārum nunc sentirent, incolās ē prōvinciā nōn expellerent.

II.

1. If I had changed (my) opinion about the nature of the soul, I would have kept silent.
2. If they were changing (their) opinion about the nature of the soul, they would be keeping silent (they would keep silent).
3. If you are silent, I shall work.
4. You [pl.] had driven the poets from the island.
5. You [pl.] have filled the altar with (your) tears.
6. If they should hide the money, the queen would condemn the inhabitants for treachery.

III. Reading

Aenēās,¹ id² enim nōmen³ nautae fuit, dum⁴ incoluit Africam cum rēgīnā incolās rēxit.⁵ Patriam aedificāvērunt.⁶ Tum,⁷ subitō,⁸ deus⁹ vēnit et nautam monuit: “Nāvigā¹⁰ nunc,” nārrāvit,¹¹ “antequam¹² rēgīnae sit¹³ īra.¹⁴ Si nunc manēbis,¹⁵ tē¹⁶ semper manēre¹⁵ optet.” Nautam terruit et sub lūnā Aenēās¹ turbam monuit, “Sententiam mūtāvī. Parābimus¹⁷ et ab Africā nāvigābimus.”¹⁰ Nōn fuit mora. Aenēae¹ pāruērunt¹⁸ et nāvigāvērunt.¹⁰ Rēgīna māne¹⁹ lacrimāvit²⁰ quod²¹ Aenēās¹ cum turbā incolārum patriam reliquerat.²² Rēgīnam īra¹⁴ implēvit. “Nisi manēre¹⁵ optāverit, nil habēbō,” Annae²³ nārrat.¹¹ “Vītam nōn optō sine²⁴ Aenēā. Nisi mē²⁵ amat, esse nōn optō.” Sic²⁶ nārrāvit¹¹ et sē²⁷ necāvit.²⁸ Anima rēgīnae discessit.²⁹ Incolae Africæ dē culpā nautae cōgitāvērunt et lacrimāvērunt.²⁰ Nautam noxae rēgīnae dāmnāvērunt. Dē īnsidiis cōgitābant. Ad ārās vēnērunt et deōs³⁰ poenās Aenēās¹ turbaeque īrōvērunt.³¹

¹ Aenēās, -ae, M., ‘Aeneas’, a Greek name in the first declension ² id, pronoun in the neuter sing., ‘this’, referring to Aenēās and agreeing with nōmen ³ nōmen (nom.), ‘name’
⁴ dum (conj.), ‘while’ ⁵ regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, ‘rule’ ⁶ aedificō (1), ‘build, establish’
⁷ tum (adv.), ‘then’ ⁸ subitō (adv.), ‘suddenly’ ⁹ deus (nom.), ‘god’ ¹⁰ nāvigō (1), ‘sail, set sail’. Nāvigā is the command (i.e., imperative), ‘set sail!’. ¹¹ nārrō (1), ‘tell, speak’
¹² antequam (conj.), ‘before’ ¹³ sit, ‘is’. This form is the 3rd person sing. present subjunctive because of the anticipation of the queen’s anger. ¹⁴ īra, -ae, F., ‘anger’ ¹⁵ manēō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, ‘remain’ ¹⁶ tē (acc.), ‘you’ ¹⁷ parō (1), ‘get ready’ ¹⁸ pārēō, -ēre, -ūi, -itus, ‘obey’ (+ dat.) ¹⁹ māne (adv.), ‘early in the morning’ ²⁰ lacrimō (1), ‘cry, weep, shed tears’ ²¹ quod (conj.), ‘because’ ²² relinquō, -ere, reliqui, relictus, ‘leave behind’ ²³ Anna, -ae, F., ‘Anna’, the queen’s sister ²⁴ sine (prep. + abl.), ‘without’ ²⁵ mē (acc.), ‘me’ ²⁶ sic (adv.), ‘in this way’ ²⁷ sē (acc.), ‘herself’
²⁸ necō (1), ‘kill’ ²⁹ discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, ‘withdraw’ ³⁰ deōs (acc.), ‘gods’
³¹ īrō (1), ‘beg for’ (with two accusatives: i.e., one begs someone in the accusative for something in the accusative)

UNIT THREE

A. Nouns of the Second Declension

Nouns of the second declension are distinguished by the genitive singular ending **-i**.

nātus, -i, M. son, child

puer, pueri, M. boy

saxum, -i, N. rock, stone

While most nouns of the first declension are feminine, most of the second declension are masculine or neuter.

In order to decline a noun of the second declension, add the case endings for this declension to the stem. As usual, the stem is found by dropping the ending from the full genitive singular form. The endings are:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASCULINE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	NEUTER
Nom.	-us*	-um	-i
Gen.	-i	-i	-ōrum
Dat.	-ō	-ō	-īs
Acc.	-um	-um	-ōs
Abl.	-ō	-ō	-īs

* The **-us** ending occurs for the masculine singular in most instances. Occasionally, however, nouns ending in **-r** or **-er** will occur, as will be seen in the vocabularies (e.g., *vir*, *puer*).

NOTE CAREFULLY:

1. The neuter differs from the masculine of the second declension in three places:
 - a. nominative singular
 - b. nominative plural
 - c. accusative plural
2. In all neuter nouns in the language, the nominative and accusative forms of each number are *always* identical.

3. In all neuter nouns in the language, the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**.

By applying these rules we can decline **nātus**, **puer**, and **saxum** as follows:

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
Nom.	nātus	puer	saxum	nātī	pueri	saxa	
Gen.	nātī	puerī	saxī	nātōrum	puerōrum	saxōrum	
Dat.	nātō	puerō	saxō	nātīs	puerīs	saxīs	
Acc.	nātum	puerum	saxum	nātōs	puerōs	saxa	
Abl.	nātō	puerō	saxō	nātīs	puerīs	saxīs	

B. First-Second Declension Adjectives

An adjective is a word which describes or modifies a noun. In Latin, adjectives must *agree* with the nouns they modify in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and so adjectives, like nouns, are *declined*.

First-second declension adjectives utilize the case endings of the first two declensions. When the endings of the first declension are used, the adjective is said to be feminine and will modify feminine nouns; when the endings of the second declension are used, the adjective is said to be masculine or neuter and will modify masculine or neuter nouns respectively.

In the dictionary, the adjectival forms given are the nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter (in that order):

magnus, -a, -um large, big, great

The full forms are

magnus, magna, magnum

The entire declension is:

	SINGULAR				PLURAL			
	M.		F.	N.	M.		F.	
Nom.	magnus	magna		magnum	magnī	magnae		magna
Gen.	magnī	magnae		magnī	magnōrum	magnārum		magnōrum
Dat.	magnō	magnae		magnō	magnīs	magnīs		magnīs
Acc.	magnum	magnam		magnum	magnōs	magnās		magna
Abl.	magnō	magnā		magnō	magnīs	magnīs		magnīs

Some first-second declension adjectives exhibit the *-er* ending in the masculine nominative singular (e.g., **dexter**, **dextra**, **dextrum**, 'right' [as opposed to left], 'favorable'). The stem in such words may be derived from the feminine nominative form by dropping its ending:

dextr/a

The entire declension will be formed on this stem:

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dexter	dextra	dextrum
Gen.	dextri	dextrae	dextri
Dat.	dextrō	dextrae	dextrō
		...etc.	

C. Noun-Adjective Agreement

As noted under B above, an adjective must agree with the noun it modifies in *gender, number, and case*.

‘of a rock’ (genitive) = *saxi*

‘of a large rock’ = *magni saxi*

(The noun is neuter, singular, genitive; the adjective must be neuter, singular, genitive.)

‘to/for a woman’ (dative) = *fēminaē*

‘to/for a wretched woman’ = *fēminaē miserae*

(The noun is feminine, singular, dative; the adjective must be feminine, singular, dative.)

At first glance it may seem needless to go through the considerations of gender, number, and case, for agreement appears to be achieved simply by matching endings. But this is generally not true. Consider the following example:

poēta, -ae, M., ‘poet’

‘great poet’ (nominative): The noun is masculine, singular, nominative; thus, the adjective must be *masculine*, singular, nominative.

Thus: *poēta magnus*

‘great poets’ (nominative): The noun is masculine, plural, nominative; thus, the adjective must be masculine, plural, nominative.

Thus: *poētae magni*

More often than not, the endings of words which go together are *not* identical; therefore, one should not look for such correspondence.

D. Adjectives Used As Nouns

As in English, an adjective may be used without a noun if that noun can be understood. Cf.:

The good (men) and the just (men) voted for freedom. Fortune favors the brave (men). Examples:

magnus (masculine)	a great man
magna (feminine)	a great woman
magnum (neuter)	a great thing
Magna optō.	I desire great things.
Multa bona habet.	He has many good things; he has many goods; he has much property.
Rōmānōs timet.	He fears the Romans.

E. Ablative of Means (Instrument)

The ablative *without* a preposition is used to express the *means* or *instrument* by which something is done.

Nautae gladiis pūgnant.	The sailors fight <i>with</i> (<i>by means of</i>) swords.
Oculis vidēmus.	We see <i>with</i> (<i>by means of</i>) [our] eyes.
Fēminās taedā terruit.	He frightened the women <i>with</i> (<i>by means of</i>) a torch.

F. Ablative of Manner

The ablative case may be used *with* or *without* the preposition **cum** to denote the *way* or *manner* in which something is done. The **cum** is required in this construction when the noun in the ablative is *not* modified by an adjective; when it is modified, **cum** is optional.

Verba misera cum veniā audivisti.	You heard (my) wretched words <i>with indulgence</i> (<i>indulgently</i>).
Verba misera magnā (cum) veniā audivisti.	You heard (my) wretched words <i>with great indulgence</i> (<i>very indulgently</i>).

Note that phrases of this type can usually be translated by an English adverb ending in *-ly*.

G. Clauses of Purpose; Sequence of Tenses

In the sentence “I fight to overcome the sailor,” “to overcome the sailor” expresses the *purpose* for which the subject is fighting. Purpose is frequently expressed in English by the infinitive; in Latin a subordinate clause is normally required: “I fight in order that I may overcome the sailor”. Purpose clauses are frequently introduced by the subordinating conjunctions **ut** (in this case, meaning ‘in order that’) or **ne** (‘in order that...not’); they have their verbs in the subjunctive.

In Unit One the various tenses of the indicative were divided into two categories: primary and secondary. The tenses of the subjunctive, as well, may be so divided. The scheme follows:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRIMARY	Present	Present
TENSES	Future	Perfect
	Perfect ("have" or "has")	
	Future Perfect	
SECONDARY	Imperfect	Imperfect
TENSES	Perfect (English past)	Pluperfect
	Pluperfect	

In most subordinate clauses in which the subjunctive is used, a system called *sequence of tenses* occurs. That is, if the verb of the main (independent) clause is in a primary tense, the verb of the subordinate (dependent) subjunctive clause must be primary. This is called *primary sequence*. Likewise, if the verb of the main clause is in a secondary tense, the verb of the subordinate clause must be secondary. This is called *secondary sequence*.

In primary sequence, the *present subjunctive* regularly denotes an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb or will occur at some time *subsequent* to that of the main verb. The *perfect subjunctive* denotes an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

In secondary sequence, the *imperfect subjunctive* regularly denotes an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb or will occur at some time *subsequent* to that of the main verb. The *pluperfect subjunctive* denotes an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

Thus:

Present and Imperfect Subjunctive — contemporaneous or subsequent action (with reference to the main verb)

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive — prior action (with reference to the main verb)

It will be observed, then, that the tenses of the subjunctive frequently have no specific English tense values of their own but are *relative* to the tense of the main verb of a given sentence.

Since purpose clauses must logically refer to an action which will occur subsequent to the main verb, only the present and imperfect subjunctives are used in this construction.

PRIMARY SEQUENCE:

Pūgnō **ut** nautam **superem**. I fight *in order that I may overcome* the sailor.

Pūgnābō **ut** nautam **superem**. I shall fight *in order that I may overcome* the sailor.

Pūgnāvī **ut** nautam **superem**. I have fought *in order that I may overcome* the sailor.

Pūgnāverō **ut** nautam **superem**. I shall have fought *in order that I may overcome* the sailor.

SECONDARY SEQUENCE:

Pūgnābam **ut** nautam **superārem**. I was fighting *in order that I might overcome* the sailor.

Pūgnāvī **ut** nautam **superārem**. I fought *in order that I might overcome* the sailor.

Pūgnāveram **ut** nautam **superārem**. I had fought *in order that I might overcome* the sailor.

Negative purpose clauses are introduced by the subordinating conjunction **nē** instead of **ut**.

Pūgnō **nē** nauta fēminam **superet**. I fight *in order that the sailor may not overcome* the woman.

Pūgnābam **nē** nauta fēminam **superāret**. I was fighting *in order that the sailor might not overcome* the woman.

H. Indirect Commands

Consider the sentence, “I beg that you overcome the sailor”. “That you overcome the sailor” is an indirect command and represents a direct imperative: “I beg you. Overcome the sailor!” Many verbs of *ordering*, *warning*, *begging*, *urging*, *asking*, and the like, take such a construction. The indirect command is really a substantive clause which functions as the direct object of the main verb.

Ōrō **ut** nautam I beg *that you overcome* the sailor.
superēs.

Ōrābam **ut** nautam I begged (was begging) *that you overcome* the sailor.
superārēs.

Ōrāvī **ut** verba cum I begged *that you hear* (my) words with indulgence.
veniā audīrēs.

Ōrābam **nē** verba I begged *that you not hear* the words of the sailor.
nautae audīrēs.

UNIT THREE — VOCABULARY

acerbus , -a, -um	bitter, harsh
ager, agrī , M.	field
audiō , -īre, -īvī, -ītus	hear, listen (to)
bellum , -ī, N.	war
bonus , -a, -um	good
caecus , -a, -um	blind, hidden, secret
campus , -ī, M.	plain, level surface
clārus , -a, -um	bright, clear, famous
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right (as opposed to left), favorable
dextra , -ae, F.	right hand
ad dextram	to the right
diligentia , -ae, F.	diligence
dōnum , -ī, N.	gift
gerō , -ere, gessī , gestus	conduct, manage, wage
gladius , -ī, M.	sword
laetus , -a, -um	happy
liber, libera, liberum	free
magnus , -a, -um	large, big, great
malus , -a, -um	evil, bad, wicked
Marcus , -ī, M.	Marcus (proper name)
miser, misera, miserum	miserable, unhappy, wretched
multus , -a, -um	much, many
nātus , -ī, M.	son
nē (conj.)	(in purpose clauses) in order that...not; (in indirect commands) that...not
oculus , -ī, M.	eye
ōrō (1)	beg (for)

petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus	seek (with ā + abl.), ask (for) (cf. 'I ask for [seek] money from my son', Pecūniām ā nātō petō.)
portō (1)	carry
puer, puerī, M.	boy; child
pūgnō (1)	fight; (with cum + abl.), fight with (i.e., against)
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful
Rōmānus, -a, -um	Roman
saxum, -ī, N.	rock, stone
scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus	write
servus, -ī, M.	slave
spectō (1)	look at
ut (conj.)	(in purpose clauses) in order that; (in indirect commands) that
validus, -a, -um	strong, healthy
vēlūm, -ī, N.	cloth, covering, sail
vēla dare	to set sail
venia, -ae, F.	indulgence, favor, kindness, (obliging) disposition
ventus, -ī, M.	wind
verbum, -ī, N.	word
vir, virī, M.	man

UNIT THREE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Associating an English word with the Latin will be helpful in remembering when the **-e-** of a second declension masculine word remains and when it drops out: e.g., agriculture (**ager, agrī, M.**, 'field'), pulchritude (**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**, 'beautiful'), liberal (**liber, libera, liberum**, 'free').

Gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus means 'conduct, manage'; when it is used with **bellum**, it means 'wage (war)'; **Rōmānī multa bella gessērunt**, 'The Romans waged many wars'.

Gladius, gladiī, M., 'sword' has a diminutive **gladiōlus**, 'little sword', which gives the name of the flower whose leaf looks like a little sword. The diminutive endings will be discussed later.

Multus, multa, multum usually means 'much' in the singular and 'many' in the plural. However, one can say in Latin: **Multus Rōmānus gladiō pūgnāvit**, 'Many a Roman fought with a sword'.

Nātus, nātī, M. is really the passive form of the perfect participle of a verb meaning 'to be born'; thus **nātus** is 'the one having been born, the son, child'.

Orō, orāre, orāvī, orātus, 'beg (for)' may govern two accusatives: the thing begged for and the person begged: **Rēginam pecūniām orāvit**, 'He begged the queen for money'.

Petō, petere, petīvī, petītus means 'ask' or 'ask for'. If one asks someone for

something in Latin using the verb **petō**, he asks something from somebody: **Nātus dōnum ā Marcō petivit**, '(His) son asked Marcus for a gift'.

Pūgnō, **pūgnāre**, **pūgnāvī**, **pūgnātus**, 'fight' is an intransitive verb and is used with **cum** to mean 'fight against': **Multī cum Rōmānīs pūgnāvērunt**, 'Many (men) fought with the Romans'. (Note that "with" in this sense means 'against', *not* 'on the side of'.) **Repūgnō** is a compound of **pūgnō** (re- + **pūgnō**) and means 'fight back, resist'.

Scribō, **scribēre**, **scripsī**, **scriptus** means 'write'; thus, **īnscribō**, 'write in or on'; **rescribō**, 'write back'.

Spectō, a first conjugation verb, 'look at' has many compounds:

aspectō (ad + spectō)	look toward, face
exspectō	look out for, await
respectō	look back
	...etc.

There is another verb in Latin closely related to **spectō**: **speciō**, **specere**, **spēxi**, --, which also means 'look at' and has many compounds:

aspiciō	look at <i>or</i> toward
dēspiciō	look down upon
inspiciō	look into, examine
respiciō	look back, consider

Vēlum, **vēli**, N. is a 'cloth' or 'covering'; it can also mean a 'sail'. The idiom **vēla dare** means 'to set sail': **Vēla ab īsulā dedērunt**, 'They set sail from the island'.

UNIT THREE — DRILL

I.

Change these noun forms to the plural. In some cases there may be several possibilities.

1. bellum	3. oculum	5. veniae
2. nātī	4. saxō	

II.

Change these noun forms to the singular:

1. bellōrum	3. saxa	5. fēminās
2. puerōs	4. viris	

III.

A. Decline **caecus**, **-a**, **-um** in the singular.

Decline **bonus**, **-a**, **-um** in the plural.

B. For each of the following, supply the proper form of **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**:

1. fēmina	3. puerō	5. campus	7. nautārum
2. bellum	4. poētae	6. aquam	8. ager

IV.

Translate the following sentences, all of which contain clauses of purpose or indirect commands:

1. Puella dē noxā tacet ut cum nautā ambulet.
2. Puella cūram fāmae cēlāvit ut pecūniām habēret.
3. Poēta tacet ut dē nātūrā animae cōgitet.
4. Poēta tacuit ut dē nātūrā animae cōgitāret.
5. Fēmina pecūniām optābant ut ad prōvinciam venīrent.
6. Tacuērunt incolae nē rēgīna sententiam mūtāret.
7. Tacent incolae nē rēgīna sententiam mūtēt.
8. Monēmus ut dē vitā cōgitētis.
9. Cum lacrimīs monuit nē dē vitā cōgitārēmus.
10. Nil clāmāvit nē incolās terrēret.
11. Nil clāmāvit nē fēmina oculōs lacrimīs implērent.
12. Nil clāmāvit nē fēmina oculōs lacrimīs implēre inciperent.
13. Cum cūrā labōrābāmus ut nautās ē prōvinciā pellerēmus.
14. Dē morā nautārum clāmāre dubitābat nē fēmina timērent.
15. Monēbimus ut sententiam mūtētis.
16. Monuistis ut pecūniām cēlem.

V.

Translate the following sentences which contain adjectives used as nouns and/or ablatives of means or manner.

1. Nōtus cum cūrā labōrat. [**Nōtus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'well-known, famous']
2. Nōtōs taedīs pepulērunt.
3. Pecūniāmne nōtae cēlāvistī?
4. Nōta cum invidiā cēlāvimus.
5. Nōta magnā (cum) invidiā cēlāvimus. [**magnus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'great']
6. Puellās monēbāmus nē nōtās taedīs terrērent.

UNIT THREE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D, E, F)

1. Puer laetus dōna multa ā servīs petīvit.
2. Multa ā servīs petīvistī sed dōna virō bonō veniā bonā dedērunt.

3. Saxum magnum in aquā erat sed in terrā erant saxa magna et multa.
4. Si nauta miser ventōs bonōs ḍrāvisset, laetusne fuisset?
5. Si liberi magnā cum diligentiā in agrō pūgnābunt, malōs superābunt.
6. Si pulchrae poētam caecum audirent, sententiās malās dē vītā mūtārent.
7. Verba acerba poētae caeci audivistis et miserī esse incēpistis.
8. Nātis servōrum gladiōs magnōs dedimus.
9. Rōmānī bella multa acerbaque gessērunt.
10. Malumne est bellum gerere?
11. Si viri mali in campis clāris Marci pūgnent, incolās bonōs terrae superent.
12. Cum glōriā pueri gladiis pūgnābant.

UNIT THREE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Nautae validi magnā cum cūrā pūgnābant ut incolās insulae superārent.
2. Saxis pūgnāverāmus nē nautae acerbi fēminās poētarum clārōrum spectārent.
3. Viri magnā diligentiā labōrant nē cum pueris malis in prōvinciā pūgnent.
4. Rēgina magnum gladium virō bonō dabit ut cum Rōmānī in campō pūgnet.
5. Marcus, vir magnus et bonus, corōnam ad poētam portāvit.
6. Nautae Rōmānī vēla ventis dextris dabant nē viri mali campōs tenērent.
7. Viri liberi bellum cum diligentiā gessērunt ut liberi semper essent.
8. Liberi malōs multis gladiis superābunt nē servī miserī sint.
9. Rēgina pulchra poētae caecō dōnum bonum dederat ut verba clāra semper audīret.
10. Turba magna rēginam bonam gladiis terruit ut et prōvinciam et insulam superāret.
11. Viri validi nautās ḍrāvērunt ut incolās prōvinciae bellō et gladiis superārent.
12. Si dōnum bonum poētae Marcō darētis, magna verba cum diligentiā scriberet.
13. Si verba mala puerōrum audīvistis, laeti nōn erātis.
14. Liberi prōvinciae servī fuissent, nisi nautae Rōmānī bellum in patriā gessissent.
15. Nisi tacuisset, miserum monuissem ut lacrimās cēlāret.
16. Nisi tacuerint, miserōs monēbō ut lacrimās cēlent.
17. Sententiās rēgina prōvinciae mūtāvit nē poētae timērent.
18. Rēgina virōrum sententiās mūtāvit ut nātī in agrīs labōrāre optent.
19. Poētae bonō sī pecūniām dedissēs, multa dē agris prōvinciae scripsisset ut incolis magna fāma esset.
20. Validi incolae patriam et fāmam in dextris tenent. Per dextram ḍrāmus ut magnā diligentiā cum malis pūgnent ut semper Rōmānī sīmus līberi. [per, 'by' (in oaths)]

21. Pueri ad dextram spectāverant ut gladiōs malōrum oculis vidērent.
22. Vīdistisne magnum bellum in campīs? Fēminaē sī bellum vīdissent, nātōs magnīs cum lacrimīs monuissent ut malōs ex agrīs patriae expellerent.
23. Nīsī verba poētārum audīvissēs, nihil dē nātūrā animae et vītāe nunc sentīrēs et vītam miseram nōn mūtāvissēs.
24. Nīsī malōs saxīs gladiīsque ē cellā pepulissēmus, patriam cum glōriā nōn tenuissēmus, et nunc servī essēmus.
25. Ā rēgīnā petīvisti ut venīam incolis daret.
26. Poēta validōs in agrīs monuit ut clārum glādium sub saxō pēterent.

II.

1. The Romans conquered the inhabitants of the island in order that they might frighten the free men of the province.
2. The wretched child desires to listen to the words of the poet in order that he may be happy.
3. The strong men were silent in order that they might not frighten the beautiful children.
4. The Romans very diligently (with great diligence) conquered the free men with swords and the slaves with kindness.
5. If you had looked at the girl with (your) eyes, she would have begged very tearfully (with many tears) that you not set sail.
6. The great queen had given swords to the strong sailors in order that they might fight with the wicked inhabitants of the island.

III. Reading

Postquam¹ Aenēās ab Africā vēla dedit, sub terrām īvit² ut patrem³ mortuum⁴ vīdēret. Ut in Orcum⁵ venīret, dōnum rēgīnae Orcī⁵ dedit. In Orcō⁵ animōs⁶ et laetōs et miserōs multōrum mortuōrum⁴ oculis vīdit. Ibi⁷ rēgīna mortuām⁴ vīdit et ūrāvit nē sē⁸ insidiārum dāmnāret, sed rēgīna neque spectāvit neque Aenēān⁹ audīvit. Aenēās viā¹⁰ ambulāvit; ad dextram erat ager laetōrum, sed ad laevam¹¹ erant animī⁶ malōrum. In agrum laetōrum vēnit et patrem³ vīdit. Pater¹² nātō verba multa dē vītā et dē Rōmānīs cum veniā dīxit.¹³ Aenēās patrem³ audīvit laetus. Posteā¹⁴ ad Italiam¹⁵ vēla dedit et ibi⁷ bellum cum incolīs gessit. Et gladiīs et saxīs magnā cum diligētiā pūgnāvērunt. Aenēās cum turbā incolās Italiae¹⁵ superāvit et ab Aenēā pācem¹⁶ petīvērunt.

¹ postquam (conj.), 'after' ² eō, īre, īvī, itus, 'go' ³ patrem (acc.), 'father' ⁴ mortuus, -a, -um, 'dead' ⁵ Orcus, -i, M., 'the land of the dead' ⁶ animus, -i, M., 'soul' ⁷ ibi (adv.), 'there' ⁸ sē (acc.), 'him' ⁹ Aenēān (acc.), 'Aeneas' ¹⁰ viā, 'along the road' ¹¹ laevus, -a, -um, 'left' ¹² pater (nom.), 'father' ¹³ dicō, -ere, dīxi, dictus, 'say' ¹⁴ posteā (adv.), 'afterward' ¹⁵ Italia, -ae, F., 'Italy' ¹⁶ pācem (acc.), 'peace'

UNIT FOUR

A. The Present Active System of All Four Conjugations

1. PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

In order to illustrate the inflections of the entire verbal system, we shall use the following verbs:

1.	optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	desire
2.	impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus	fill
3.	$\begin{cases} dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus \\ incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} lead \\ begin \end{cases}$
4.	sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus	feel

Note that *two* verbs have been listed for the third conjugation. These differ from one another in the *-i-* which appears before the final *-ō* in the first person singular form of one of them. This *-i-* will appear in various other places throughout the conjugation. Such verbs are called *i-stems*. It will be observed that all verbs of the fourth conjugation also have an *-i-* before the ending, and so *i-stems* of the third conjugation will have something in common with verbs of the fourth conjugation. (The major difference is the length of the vowel: in the third conjugation it is short; in the fourth it is generally long.)

The conjugation of the present indicative can best be illustrated by the following table:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4	Ending
optō	impleō	dūcō	incipiō	sentiō	-ō
optās	implēs	dūcis	incipis	sentīs	-s
optat	implet	dūcit	incipit	sentīt	-t
optāmus	implēmus	dūcimus	incipimus	sentīmus	-mus
optātis	implētis	dūcitis	incipitis	sentītis	-tis
optant	implent	dūcunt	incipiunt	sentīunt	-nt

The personal endings are identical for all four conjugations. The difficulty

in the third conjugation lies in the stem vowel: we should expect it to be **-e-** (**dūce/re**), but it appears as **-i-** or, in the third person plural, **-u-**. Also, note that for i-stem verbs, the **-i-** appears in the first person singular and the third person plural.

2. PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The sign for the present subjunctive of the first conjugation is the vowel **-ē-**; for the second, third, and fourth conjugations, it is **-ā-**, but this **-ā-** in some conjugations appears in conjunction with another vowel. It will be easiest to form the present subjunctive for all conjugations as follows:

- Arrive at the stem.
- Drop the stem vowel.
- In place of the original stem vowel, substitute **-ē-** for the first conjugation, **-eā-** for the second, **-ā-** for the third, **-iā-** for i-stems of the third, and **-iā-** for the fourth.
- Add the endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

The following will illustrate:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optem	impleam	dūcam	incipiam	sentiam
optēs	impleās	dūcās	incipiās	sentiās
optet	impleat	dūcat	incipiat	sentiat
optēmus	impleāmus	dūcāmus	incipiāmus	sentiāmus
optētis	impleātis	dūcātis	incipiātis	sentiātis
optent	impleant	dūcant	incipiant	sentiant

These forms should now be compared to those of the present indicative, so that the differences may be discerned readily.

One will observe at once some difficulties in the recognition of forms and will understand how important it is to know the principal parts of verbs, particularly the second part which indicates to which conjugation the verb belongs. **Dūcat**, for example, looks dangerously like **optat**. Only by knowing that **dūcō** belongs to the third conjugation, while **optō** belongs to the first, can one tell that the **-a-** in **dūcat** is the sign of the present subjunctive, while in **optat** it is the sign of the present indicative.

3. IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

The sign for the imperfect indicative of all conjugations is **-bā-**. In the third conjugation, the stem vowel lengthens (from **-e-** to **-ē-**). In i-stem verbs of the third conjugation and in all verbs of the fourth conjugation, **-iē-** appears before the tense sign throughout:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optābam	implēbam	dūcēbam	incipiēbam	sentiēbam
optābās	implēbās	dūcēbās	incipiēbās	sentiēbās
optābat	implēbat	dūcēbat	incipiēbat	sentiēbat
optābāmus	implēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	incipiēbāmus	sentiēbāmus
optābātis	implēbātis	dūcēbātis	incipiēbātis	sentiēbātis
optābant	implēbant	dūcēbant	incipiēbant	sentiēbant

4. IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect active subjunctive for all conjugations has been illustrated in section C2 of Unit 2 (page 36 above).

5. FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

The sign for the future of the first two conjugations is **-bi-** (with **-bō-** in the first person singular and **-bu-** in the third person plural). The sign for the future of the third and fourth conjugations is **-ē-** (with **-a-** in the first person singular). This vowel replaces the original vowel of the stem. I-stems show the **-i-** throughout.

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optābō	implēbō	dūcam	incipiam	sentiam
optābis	implēbis	dūcēs	incipiēs	sentiēs
optābit	implēbit	dūcet	incipiet	sentiet
optābāmus	implēbāmus	dūcēmus	incipiēmus	sentiēmus
optābātis	implēbātis	dūcētis	incipiētis	sentiētis
optābānt	implēbānt	dūcēnt	incipient	sentient

Again, some possible difficulties in interpretation will be noted:

dūcet; optet; implet

Dūcō, **-ere** is a third conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the sign of the future; therefore, **dūcet** is third person singular future active indicative.

Optō, **-āre** is a first conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the sign of the present subjunctive; therefore, **optet** is third person singular present active subjunctive.

Impleō, **-ēre** is a second conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the vowel of the present stem; therefore, **implet** is third person singular present active indicative.

Frequently, however, the syntactical structure of a sentence will help determine the form of the verb, even if the conjugation to which the verb belongs is not known.

Ōrō ut urnam impleās.

The **ōrō ut** indicates that a subjunctive clause is being introduced; hence, the **-ā-** in **impleās** must be the sign of the present subjunctive and not the vowel of the present indicative of the first conjugation. Therefore:

Ōrō ut urnam impleās. I beg you to fill the urn.

B. The Present Passive System of All Four Conjugations

If one can conjugate a verb in the active voice, he can do it easily in the passive. Instead of appending the personal endings **-ō (-m)**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt** to the appropriate stem or tense sign, he will append a special set of *passive* personal endings. These are:

-or, -r	-mur
-ris (-re)	-minī
-tur	-ntur

The active and passive forms are placed side by side in the following paradigms to illustrate this formation.

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
optō	I desire	optor*	I am desired
optās	you desire	optāris (optāre)	you are desired
optat	he desires	optātūr	he is desired
optāmūs	we desire	optāmūr	we are desired
optātīs	you desire	optāmīnī	you are desired
optant	they desire	optantūr*	they are desired

* Note that a long vowel is shortened before final **-r** and **-ntur**.

2

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
impleō	impleor	dūcō	dūcor
implēs	implēris (implēre)	dūcis	dūceris (dūcere)*
implet	implētūr	dūcit	dūcitur
implēmūs	implēmūr	dūcīmūs	dūcīmūr
implētīs	implēmīnī	dūcītīs	dūcīmīnī
implēnt	implētūr	dūcūnt	dūcūntūr

3 i-stem

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiō	incipior	sentiō	sentior
incipis	inciperis (incipere)*	sentīs	sentīris (sentire)
incipit	incipitūr	sentīt	sentītūr

4

* Note that the short **-i-** becomes short **-e-** before the **-ris (-re)** ending.

incipimus	incipimur	sentimus	sentimur
incipitis	incipimini	sentītis	sentīmini
incipiunt	incipiuntur	sentiunt	sentiuntur

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE

optābam	I was desiring
optābās	you were desiring
...etc.	

PASSIVE

optābar	I was being desired
optābāris	you were being desired
(optābāre)	

2

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
implēbam	implēbar
implēbās	implēbāris (implēbāre)
...etc.	

3

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
dūcēbam	dūcēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris (dūcēbāre)
...etc.	

3 i-stem

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiēbam	incipiēbar
incipiēbās	incipiēbāris (incipiēbāre)
...etc.	

4

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
sentiēbam	sentiēbar
sentiēbās	sentiēbāris (sentiēbāre)
...etc.	

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
optābō	I shall desire	optābor	I shall be desired
optābis	you will desire	optāberis (optābere)*	you will be desired
optābit	he will desire	optābitur	he will be desired
optābimus	we shall desire	optābimur	we shall be desired
optābitis	you will desire	optābimini	you will be desired
optābunt	they will desire	optābuntur	they will be desired

PASSIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
implēbō	implēbor	dūcam	dūcar
implēbis	implēberis (implēbere)*	dūcēs	dūcēris (dūcēre)
implēbit	implēbitur	dūcēt	dūcētūr

2

3

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
implēbō	implēbor	dūcam	dūcar
implēbis	implēberis (implēbere)*	dūcēs	dūcēris (dūcēre)
implēbit	implēbitur	dūcēt	dūcētūr

* Note that the short -i- becomes short -e- before the -ris (-re) ending.

implēbimus	implēbimur	dūcēmus	dūcēmur
implēbitis	implēbimini	dūcētis	dūcēminī
implēbunt	implēbuntur	dūcent	dūcentur

3 i-stem

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiam	incipiar	sentiam	sentiar
incipiēs	incipiēris (incipiēre)	sentīes	sentīēris (sentīēre)
incipiet	incipiētur	sentīet	sentīētur
incipiēmus	incipiēmur	sentīēmus	sentīēmur
incipiētis	incipiēminī	sentīētis	sentīēminī
incipient	incipientur	sentient	sentientur

4

4. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVES

As one would expect, the present and imperfect subjunctives are formed in the same way as the active, except that the *passive* personal endings are used instead of the active ones. For an illustration of this, see the review chart on page 66.

C. The Perfect Passive System of All Four Conjugations

All verbs in Latin, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong, are conjugated identically in the perfect system.

In the perfect system the passive is a *compound* form; that is, it is composed of two words: a participle and a helping verb, *sum*. The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part of most verbs. This form, while given in the vocabularies with a *-us* ending (*optātus*), is, in fact, an adjective and so can be declined. It might be written *optātus*, *-a*, *-um* just like the adjective *magnus*, *-a*, *-um*.

1. PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

The perfect passive indicative is composed of the fourth principal part of the verb (perfect passive participle) and a form of the present indicative of the verb *sum*. The ending of the participle is declined to show the number and gender of the subject. Since it refers to the subject, it is in the nominative case.

optātus sum	I (masc.) have been desired, I was desired
optāta sum	I (fem.) have been desired, I was desired
optātus est	he has been desired, he was desired
optāta est	she has been desired, she was desired
optātum est	it has been desired, it was desired
optātī sunt	they (masc.) have been desired, they were desired

The paradigm for the perfect passive indicative is:

optātus (-a, -um) sum	optātī (-ae, -a) sumus
optātus (-a, -um) es	optātī (-ae, -a) estis
optātus (-a, -um) est	optātī (-ae, -a) sunt

2. PLUPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus imperfect of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) eram	optātī (-ae, -a) erāmus
optātus (-a, -um) erās	optātī (-ae, -a) erātis
optātus (-a, -um) erat	optātī (-ae, -a) erant

3. FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus future of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) erō	optātī (-ae, -a) erimus
optātus (-a, -um) eris	optātī (-ae, -a) eritis
optātus (-a, -um) erit	optātī (-ae, -a) erunt

4. PERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus present subjunctive of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) sim	optātī (-ae, -a) sīmus
optātus (-a, -um) sis	optātī (-ae, -a) sītis
optātus (-a, -um) sit	optātī (-ae, -a) sint

5. PLUPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus imperfect subjunctive of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) essem	optātī (-ae, -a) essēmus
optātus (-a, -um) essēs	optātī (-ae, -a) essētis
optātus (-a, -um) esset	optātī (-ae, -a) essent

D. Review of Verb Conjugations

The chart on page 66 will illustrate the forms of all the tenses of the indicative and the subjunctive of all four conjugations.

E. Ablative of Personal Agent

The *agent* (*agō*, -ere, *ēgi*, *āctus*, 'do') or *person* who performs the action of a passive verb is regularly expressed in the ablative case preceded by the preposition *ā* or *ab*, 'by'.

Puella *ā rēgīnā* terrētur. The girl is frightened *by the queen*.

Review of Verb Conjugations

(Shown in each box are the *active* forms of the 1st and 2nd person singular, followed by the *passive* forms.)

	1ST CONJUGATION	2ND CONJUGATION	3RD CONJUGATION	3RD CONJUGATION: i-stem	4TH CONJUGATION
Present Indic.	optō, optās optor, optāris (optāre)	implēō, implēs implor, implēris (implēre)	dūcō, dūcīs dūcor, dūceris (dūcere)	incipiō, incipis incipior, inciperis (incipere)	sentiō, sensis sentior, sentiris (sentire)
Imperfect Indic.	optābam, optābās optābar, optābāris (optābare)	implēbam, implēbās implēbar, implēbāris (implēbare)	dūcēbam, dūcēbās dūcēbar, dūcēbāris (dūcēbare)	incipiēbam, incipiēbās incipiēbar, incipiēbāris (incipiēbare)	sentiēbam, sentiēbās sentiēbar, sentiēbāris (sentiēbare)
Future Indic.	optābō, optābīs optābor, optāberis (optābere)	implēbō, implēbīs implēbor, implēberis (implēbere)	dūcam, dūcēs dūcar, dūcēris (dūcēre)	incipiam, incipēs incipiar, incipēris (incipiēre)	sentiām, sentiēs sentiār, sentiēris (sentire)
Perfect Indic.	optāvī, optāvāsti optātus (-a, -um) sum, optātus (-a, -um) es	implēvī, implēvīsti implētus (-a, -um) sum, implētus (-a, -um) es	dūxi, dūxistī ductus (-a, -um) sum, ductus (-a, -um) es	incipiē, incēpīsti inceptus (-a, -um) sum, inceptus (-a, -um) es	sensi, sensistī sēnsus (-a, -um) sum, sēnsus (-a, -um) es
Pluperf. Indic.	optāvāram, optāvārās optātus (-a, -um) eram, optātus (-a, -um) erās	implēvēram, implēvērās implētus (-a, -um) eram, implētus (-a, -um) erās	dūxerām, dūxerās ductus (-a, -um) erās	incēperām, incēpērās inceptus (-a, -um) erās	sēnsēram, sēnsērās sēnsus (-a, -um) erās
Fut. Perf. Indic.	optāvērō, optāvēris optātus (-a, -um) erō, optātus (-a, -um) eris	implēvērō, implēverīs implētus (-a, -um) erō, implētus (-a, -um) eris	dūxerō, dūxerās ductus (-a, -um) erō, ductus (-a, -um) eris	incēperō, incēperīs inceptus (-a, -um) erō, inceptus (-a, -um) eris	sēnsērō, sēnsēris sēnsus (-a, -um) erō, sēnsus (-a, -um) eris
Present Subj.	optēm, optēs opter, optēris (optēre)	implēam, implēās implēar, implēāris (implēare)	dūcam, dūcās dūcar, dūcāris (dūcāre)	incipiam, incipiās incipiar, incipiāris (incipiāre)	sentiām, sentiās sentiār, sentiāris (sentire)
Imperfect Subj.	optārem, optātēs optārer, optārēris (optārēre)	implērēm, implērēs implērer, implērēris (implērēre)	dūcerēm, dūcerēs dūcerer, dūcerēris (dūcerēre)	inciperēm, inciperēs inceptēr, inciperēris (inciperēre)	sentiērem, sentiēs sentiērer, sentiēris (sentire)
Perfect Subj.	optāverīm, optāverīs optātus (-a, -um) sim, optātus (-a, -um) sis	implēverīm, implēverīs implētus (-a, -um) sim, implētus (-a, -um) sis	dūxerīm, dūxerīs ductus (-a, -um) sim, ductus (-a, -um) sis	incēperīm, incēperīs inceptus (-a, -um) sim, inceptus (-a, -um) sis	sēnsērīm, sēnsēris sēnsus (-a, -um) sim, sēnsus (-a, -um) sis
Pluperf. Subj.	optāvīssem, optāvīssēs optātus (-a, -um) essem, optātus (-a, -um) esssēs	implēvīssem, implēvīssēs implētus (-a, -um) essem, implētus (-a, -um) esssēs	dūxissēm, dūxissēs ductus (-a, -um) essem, ductus (-a, -um) esssēs	incēpīssem, incēpīssēs inceptus (-a, -um) essem, inceptus (-a, -um) esssēs	sēnsēssem, sēnsēssēs sēnsus (-a, -um) essem, sēnsus (-a, -um) esssēs

Ablative of personal agent should not be confused with the ablative of means, which has no preposition, and which refers to a thing, not a person (see section E of Unit Three).

Puella **fāmā** rēginae terrētur. The girl is frightened by (*means of*) the reputation of the queen.

UNIT FOUR — VOCABULARY

aeternus, -a, -um	eternal
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus	do, drive, discuss, spend (time), conduct
altus, -a, -um	high, tall, deep
amicus, -a, -um	friendly (+ dat.)
inimicus, -a, -um	unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
caelum, -ī, N.	heaven, sky
cārus, -a, -um	dear (+ dat.)
cibus, -ī, M.	food
circum (prep. + acc.)	around
dēleō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus	destroy
deus, -ī, M.	a god, deity
nom. pl. dī	
gen. pl. deōrum or deum	
dat., abl. pl. dīs	
dea, -ae, F.	goddess
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus	lead; consider
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus	make, do
factum, -ī, N.	deed
filius, -ī, M.	son
filia, -ae, F.	daughter
honestus, -a, -um	respected, honorable, distinguished
intellecō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus	understand
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus	choose, select; read
liber, librī, M.	book
littera, -ae, F.	letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter (epistle)
mēnsa, -ae, F.	table
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus	send
mōnstrō (1)	show, point out, demonstrate
oppidum, -ī, N.	town
perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus	destroy, lose, waste
periculum, -ī, N.	danger

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus	put, place, set aside
quod (conj.)	because
rēgnūm, -ī, N.	realm, kingdom
respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus	answer
studium, -ī, N.	enthusiasm, zeal
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus	cover, conceal
tēctum, -ī, N.	roof, house
trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditus	hand over, betray
umbra, -ae, F.	shadow
urna, -ae, F.	urn
vērus, -a, -um	true, real
vērē or vērō (adv.)	truly, indeed
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus	see; (in passive) seem, <i>as well as</i> be seen
villa, -ae, F.	country house, farmhouse

UNIT FOUR — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Agō, agere, ēgī, āctus is an important verb which has many meanings: ‘do, drive, discuss, spend time, conduct (life)’. When a speaker **agit**, he is ‘pleading (a case)’; when an actor **agit**, he is ‘acting’. Note that the **a-** in the present stem lengthens to **ē-** in the perfect active stem, and to **ā-** in the perfect passive form. **Grātiās agere** with the dative means ‘to thank’ someone: **Grātiās rēgīnae ēgī**, ‘I thanked the queen’.

The preposition **cum**, when it is used as a prefix, is spelled **com-** or sometimes **co-**. The verb **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** means ‘drive together, collect, compel’ (compounded from **cum** + **agō**).

Altus, -a, -um describes something measured up or down; thus, it has both meanings, ‘high’ and ‘deep’.

The adjective **amicus, -a, -um**, ‘friendly’, and its opposite **inimīcus, -a, -um**, ‘unfriendly’, are very often used substantively (as many adjectives are). Thus **amicus**, ‘a friendly (man)’ is a ‘friend’, and **amīca**, a ‘girlfriend’ as well as a ‘prostitute’; **inimīcus** as a noun refers to a personal ‘enemy’ as opposed to a public enemy.

The plural forms of **deus, deī**, M., ‘god’, are: **dī, deōrum** or **deum, dis, deōs, dis**. Just as **deus, deī** is ‘god’ and **dea, deae**, ‘goddess’, so **filius, filii** is ‘son’ and **filiae, ‘daughter’**.

Dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus not only means ‘lead’ but also ‘consider’.

Just as the **a-** of **agō** lengthens to **ē-** in the perfect active stem, so the **-a-** of **faciō, facere**, ‘make, do’, lengthens in **fēcī**, the perfect active form; however, it

remains short in **factus**, the perfect passive participle. There are many compounds of this verb:

afficiō (ad + faciō)	do (something) to (someone), affect
cōficiō (where the prefix con- has the meaning 'completely')	do completely, accomplish
perficiō (per, 'thoroughly')	do thoroughly, complete, accomplish
reficiō (re- can also mean 'again' as well as 'back')	make again, renew
praeficiō (prae, 'in front of')	make (someone) in front of (others); put in charge

Factum, facti, N., is 'the thing which has been done', thus, 'deed'.

Honestus, -a, -um does *not* mean 'honest', but 'honorable, respected, distinguished'.

Legō, legere, lēgi, lēctus basically means 'gather, choose'; it then extends its meaning to 'read'. **Intellegō** is a compound of **legō** (inter- [intel-], 'between, among'). When one chooses among other ideas, he understands. Some of the compounds of **legō** keep the -g- in the perfect active stem; others, like **intellegō**, change the -g- to -x-. There is no rule to indicate which compound will take which spelling.

Do not confuse **liber**, **librī**, M., 'book', with **liber**, **lībera**, **līberum**, 'free'. **Littera**, **litterae**, F., is a letter of the alphabet; the plural is used for an epistle. Thus **litterae**, **litterārum** is a 'letter': **Litterās Marcī vīdī**, 'I saw Marcus' letter'. If one wants to speak of 'letters', an adjective must be used: "several letters", "many letters", "two letters", etc. As in English, the plural may be used for "literature"; cf. in English, "a man of letters".

Mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus means 'send'. In Latin, one sends something to someone or someplace using **ad** with the accusative, not the dative case alone:

Litterās ad amīcum mīsī. I sent a letter to [motion stressed]
(my) friend.

Litterās amicō mīsī. I sent a letter for [the person referred to is
(my) friend. stressed]

Do not confuse the form **mīseris** ('you will have sent' or second person singular perfect subjunctive active) with its long -ī- with the dative and ablative plural of **miser**, **misera**, **miserum** (**miserīs**) which has a short -i- in its root.

An indirect object is often found with **mōnstrō**, a first conjugation verb, 'show, point out, demonstrate'. One points something out to someone in the dative case: **Rēgīnam virō mōnstrābō**, 'I shall point out the queen to the man'.

Pōnō, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positus** means ‘put, place, set aside’. Thus:

compōnō (com-, ‘together’)	put together
dēpōnō	put down, deposit
impōnō (im- for in-)	place in or on
praepōnō (prae, ‘in front of’)	put in front of, place at the head
prōpōnō (prō-, ‘forward’)	put forth
repōnō (re-, ‘back’)	put back

Tegō, **tegere**, **tēxi**, **tēctus**, ‘cover, conceal’, is related to two nouns of interest. **Tēctum**, **tēctī**, N., is a ‘covering’ and so ‘roof’; the meaning is then extended to ‘house’. With a slight vowel change in the root of this verb there is produced the famous covering or garment for which the Romans are known, **toga**, **togae**, F.

Trādō, **trādere**, **trādidi**, **trāditus** is a compound of **trāns-**, ‘across’ and **dō**, ‘give’, but note that although **dō** is a first conjugation verb, this compounded form belongs to the third conjugation. Literally it means ‘give across’ and so the meaning is ‘hand over’ or ‘betray’.

The adverb from **vērus**, -a, -um is either **vērē** or **vērō**; there is no difference between them.

The passive of **videō** means ‘seem’: **Marcus honestus vidētur**, ‘Marcus seems honorable’. It can also mean ‘be seen’: **Marcus in tēctō vīsus est**, ‘Marcus was seen in the house’.

Villa, **villae**, F.; is a ‘country house, farmhouse’. It was not necessarily a villa in our sense of the word, but a simple dwelling in which countryfolk lived.

UNIT FOUR — DRILL

I.

A. Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives.
B. Change the forms to the passive.

1. spectās	8. capiētis	15. dāmnābās
2. corōnāmus	9. capiātis	16. dāmnāvistī
3. dētis	10. capitīs	17. incēpisset
4. dōnent	11. cēlābāmus	18. incēpissent
5. habeām	12. cōgitāret	19. labōrāverit (2 possibilities)
6. impleāt	13. cōgitēt	20. monuerātis
7. vidēbitis	14. cōgitat	

II.

A. Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives.
B. Change the forms to the active.

1. mūtāti sumus	8. pulsa essem	15. tenēris
2. mūtāti sīmus	9. pulsae sumus	16. auditum sit
3. mūtāti erimus	10. sentiāminī	17. audiāmur
4. mūtāti erāmus	11. sentimini	18. audiēbāmur
5. pelleris	12. sentiēminī	19. gesta sunt
6. pellēris	13. tenēberis	20. geruntur
7. pellāris	14. tenēbāris	

III.

1. Identify **agere** (2 possibilities).
2. Identify **agēre**.
3. Distinguish among:
 - (a) dāmnētis, vidētis, incolētis
 - (b) portant, taceant, veniant
 - (c) scribam, scribēbam, scribit, scribet, scribēbat

IV.

1. Fēminaē per portās venient ut rēginam videant.
 - a) Change **venient** to the perfect tense and make any other necessary change(s).
2. Monēmur nē multa verba amīcis servōrum scribāmus.
 - a) Change **monēmur** to the pluperfect tense and make any other necessary change(s).
3. Dōnum ā nautīs cēlātum erat; dōnum undīs cēlātum est.
4. Sī dōnum vīsum esset, tacuissēmus.
 - a) Rewrite as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
5. Semper monitus eram nē ab incolis vidērer, sed nōn audīvī.

UNIT FOUR — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTION A)

1. Multa vērō dē diligentīā viri clāri scribam (scribō, scribēbam).
2. Ā liberis petēmus ut oppida inimica dēleant.
3. Si malōs incolis prōvinciae trādant, dē īnsidiīs taceāmus.
4. Honesti oppidi ad villam veniunt ut incolam ē periculō dūcant.
5. Rōmāni ad ārās deum multis cum dōnis veniēbant ut veniam ūrārent.
6. Intellegisne librum poētae clāri?
7. Dē factis acerbis aeternōrum deum audiēmus (audimus, audiēbāmus).
8. Villamne cum filiis incolēbātis?
9. Si virum honestum in prōvinciā sentiās, laetus esse incipiam.
10. Multās litterās amīcis scribit ut multās legat.

UNIT FOUR — EXERCISES

I.

1. Nautae malī ab incolis liberis in viam ācti sunt.
2. Incolae liberī nautās Rōmānōs in viam ēgērunt quod nautae missi erant ut oppidum dēlērent.
3. Si oppidum validum superābitur, liberī erunt servi.
4. Liber ā poētā cum diligentia scriptus est ut magnum periculum bonis mōnstrārētur.
5. Si litterae ā rēginā pulchrā ad honestōs missae essent, moniti essent ut bellum gererent, et oppidum ab amicis malōrum nōn superātum esset.
6. Urna pulchra in mēnsā ā fēminis rēginae pōnētur ut cibō aquāque impleātur.
7. Si umbris magnis aqua alta ā dīs tēcta esset, nautae Rōmāni vēla nōn darent.
8. Magnō cum studiō filii rēginae respondēre incēpērunt; īrāvērunt ut periculum incolis prōvinciarum magnā diligentia dūcerētur.
9. Nisi nautae ad aquam dūcantur, vēla nōn dent.
10. Magnā cum diligentia bellum gestum est nē ab incolis prōvinciae Rōmānae malis rēgnū superārētur.
11. Si verba vēra magnō studiō ā virīs bonis honestisque legentur et intellegentur, periculum belli dēlēbitur.
12. Viri liberī et honesti semper īrābant nē beilō et gladiis oppidum dēlērētur; incolās enim monuērunt ut vītam bonam agerent.
13. Litterae ad oppidum clārum ā rēginā prōvinciae missae sunt ut incolae veniam vēram vidērent et intellegerent.
14. Fēminae pulchrae virōs miserōs ē prōvinciā Rōmānā ad amicum oppidum cum magnā turbā mittunt nē incolae prōvinciae esse videantur.
15. Filia rēginae bonae ad āram ā nautis Rōmānis ducta est ut honesta dis agerentur.
16. Periculum rēgnō magnum filiis liberōrum vidētur.
17. Circum oppidum dūcēbāris ut ā bonis malisque vidērēre.
18. Nisi poēta verba honesta vēraque dē factis bonōrum scribet, pecūniā nōn faciet.
19. Bonā veniā honesta audiēs; honesta bonā veniā audiuntur; īrō ut honestum bonā veniā audiātur.
20. Si litterae filiō honestō mittantur, respondeatne?
21. Īrābimus ut urnae aquā ā puellā impleantur.
22. Si magna bella ab incolis gerentur, rēgnū vērē dēlēbitur.
23. Si āra umbris tēcta esset, incolae cibum deōrum nōn vidissent.
24. Multa vērō pecūnia in mēnsā pōnitur ut honesti pecūniā capiant et magnum tēctum filiis faciant.
25. Nisi ab amicis trādītus esset, vītam nōn perdidisset.

26. Monuerat ut litterās amīcō trāderētis quod vēra dē perīculīs rēgnō legere nōn optāvistis.

27. Āra aeterna ab incolīs oppidī facta est ut dōna dīs cāra darentur.

28. Oppidum enim dēlētūm erat quod servī portās magnīs cum īnsidiīs patriae inimīcīs trādiderant.

29. Deās in caelō ōrāvīmus ut vīllam pulchram habeāmus.

II.

1. Very tearfully (with many tears) the queen demonstrated the dangers of war to the inhabitants of the island in order that they might not be overcome by the swords of the strong Roman sailors.
2. If the town is destroyed, the queen, with great kindness, will send both food and money to (**ad**) the wretched inhabitants.
3. The Romans always will wage wars very zealously (with great zeal) in order that they may not be placed in danger by (their) enemies.
4. If many urns had been made by the children, gifts of money would have been given by the queen.
5. If the evil men should be led around the towns of the queen's realm, the inhabitants would not be betrayed by (their) treachery.

III. Reading

Liber aeternus, honestīs virīs cārus, ā Vergilio¹ sc̄riptus est. In librō vir, fīlius ē deā, ā dīs missus est ut oppidum in Italiā² conderet.³ Vir ā dīs lēctus erat ut factum faceret quod honestus bonam vītam ageret.⁴ Patriam, Trōiam,⁵ ab inimīcō trāditam⁶ reliquit.⁷ Trōia⁵ dēlēta erat postquam⁸ incolae longum⁹ bellum cum Graecīs¹⁰ gesserant; īnsidiīs perdita est. Multī inimīcī in altō equō¹¹ ligneō¹² tēctī erant; Graecus¹⁰ vir incolīs oppidī amīcus ductus,⁶ magnō cum studiō amīcōs, Trōiānīs⁵ inimīcōs, ex equō¹¹ dūxit et tēcta mōnstrāvit ut accenderentur¹³ et incolās ut interficerentur.¹⁴ Trōia⁵ magnō in perīculō posita est; nē¹⁵ fīlius quidem¹⁵ deae cum amīcīs oppidum servāre¹⁶ potuit.¹⁷ Cum parvā¹⁸ turbā amīcōrum patriam reliquit⁷ et vēla ad Italiam² dedit.

¹Vergilius, -ī, M., 'Vergil', the author of the Roman epic poem *The Aeneid* ²Italia, -ae, F., 'Italy' ³condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, 'found' ⁴ageret. The subjunctive is used to express someone else's reason for doing a thing, not a reason one knows for sure. Subjunctive = mood of possibility. ⁵Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy', a city in Asia Minor; Trōiānus, -a, -um, 'Trojan' ⁶trāditam (trādītus, -a, -um) and ductus (ductus, -a, -um) come from the fourth principal part of the verb and are perfect passive participles. Since a participle is an adjective, it must agree with the noun which it modifies in gender, number, and case. Translate trādītus, -a, -um 'having been betrayed, betrayed', and ductus, -a, -um 'having been considered, considered'. ⁷relinquō, -ere, reliqui, relictus, 'abandon' ⁸postquam (conj.), 'after' ⁹longus, -a, -um, 'long' ¹⁰Graecus, -a, -um, 'Greek' ¹¹equus, -ī, M., 'horse' ¹²ligneus, -a, -um, 'wooden' ¹³accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, 'set on fire' ¹⁴interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, 'kill' ¹⁵nē...quidem, 'not even' ¹⁶servō (1), 'save' ¹⁷possum, posse, potuī, --, 'be able' ¹⁸parvus, -a, -um, 'small'

REVIEW: UNITS ONE TO FOUR

Review of Syntax

1. Dāmnor semper ab acerbis malōrum factōrum, sed fāma nōn perdita est.
(ablative of personal agent; adjective used as a noun; genitive with verbs of accusing and condemning)
2. Librī malī ab honestis dāmnor, sed magnā cum invidiā ab amīcīs legitur et bonus esse dūcitur.
(genitive with verbs of accusing and condemning; ablatives of personal agent; adjectives used as nouns; ablative of manner; predicate adjective)
3. Sī multa mala dē factis deōrum audita essent, incolae ad ārās nōn vēnissent.
(adjective used as a noun; past contrary-to-fact condition)
4. Sī ad īsulam clāram mittēmur nē in patriā videāmur, multās litterās amīcīs cārīs scribēmus nē ab inimīcīs trādāmur.
(future more vivid condition; two purpose clauses in primary sequence; adjectives used as nouns; ablative of personal agent)
5. Cārusne dis videāris sī dōna cībi in āris pōnās?
(dative with a special adjective; future less vivid condition)
6. Sī oppidum īsidiīs dēlērētur, facta mala inimīcōrum ab incolis intellegerentur.
(present contrary-to-fact condition; ablative of means; adjective used as a noun; ablative of personal agent)
7. Fēminaē lacrimās cēlāre nōn dubitant. Fēminās īrāmus nē lacrimās cēlent.
Tacēmus nē fēminaē lacrimās cēlent.
(indirect command in primary sequence; purpose clause in primary sequence)
8. Petēbāmus ā nātīs ut saxa clāra in cellam neque cum morā neque cum noxā portārentur, nē in campīs cēlārentur et perderentur.
(ā + abl. with petō; indirect command in secondary sequence; ablatives of manner; purpose clause in secondary sequence)

Synopsis of Verbs

A synopsis (refer to Preliminary Exercises for Unit Two) should include the active and passive forms of the verb in the indicative and subjunctive moods.

The following synopsis of **dūcō**, **-ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus** in the first person plural will serve as a model:

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 'lead, consider'

INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	dūcimus	dūcimur
Imperfect	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmur
Future	dūcēmus	dūcēmur
Perfect	dūximus	ducti (-ae, -a) sumus
Pluperfect	dūxerāmus	ducti (-ae, -a) erāmus
Future Perfect	dūxerimus	ducti (-ae, -a) erimus

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present	dūcāmus	dūcāmur
Imperfect	dūcerēmus	dūcerēmur
Perfect	dūxerimus	ducti (-ae, -a) sīmus
Pluperfect	dūxissēmus	ducti (-ae, -a) essēmus

UNITS 1-4: Self-Review A

While long marks appear below only in places where confusion might arise, they should appear in your answers.

I.

A. Change these forms to the passive, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

1. impleverunt
2. terrueritis (2 possibilities)
3. viderat
4. spectes
5. sentiebam

B. Change these forms to the active, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

1. monitus esses
2. teneremur
3. capiemini
4. gesta sit
5. mittitur

II.

Fully describe each of the following as to *form*, giving all possibilities of interpretation, and then give the dictionary forms (principal parts) for each:

1. positae sunt
2. gladii (2 possibilities)
3. tegere (3 possibilities)
4. audiverit (2 possibilities)
5. villae (3 possibilities)

III.

Translate each sentence into English and then do whatever is required by any questions which follow:

1. Incolae miseri verba filiorum audiverunt ut multa intellegant.
 - a) Change **intellegant** to the imperfect subjunctive and show how this would alter your translation of **audiverunt**.
 - b) Change the form **audiverunt** to the imperfect tense.
2. Nisi laetus esse videberis, aquā urnam non implebo; regina enim monuit ut urnam laeto impleam.
 - a) Rewrite in Latin completely in the plural.
 - b) Give the syntax of **videberis**.
 - c) Give the case of **laeto**.
 - d) Rewrite **Nisi laetus esse videberis, aquā urnam non implebo** as a simple present condition.
 - e) Rewrite as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
 - f) Rewrite as a past contrary-to-fact condition.
3. Si insidiarum damnatus esset, nauta ab incolis oppidi honestis petivisset ut audiretur ne in periculo poneretur.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **insidiarum**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **audiretur**.
4. Magnae turbae servorum ex agris ad portas oppidi venerunt ut multis cum lacrimis viros validos orarent ut de natura belli tacerent.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **orarent**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **tacerent**.
5. Multum enim de periculo ab honesto actum et lectum et scriptum est ne regnum a malo deleretur.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **malo**.
 - b) Rewrite the entire sentence in Latin in the plural.
6. Si bellum gladiis saxisque magnā cum diligentia gestum esset, viri nunc vela ad insulam non darent.
 - a) Give syntax of **gestum esset**.

- b) Give syntax of **darent**.
- c) Give syntax of **gladiis**.
- d) Give syntax of **diligentia**.
- e) Rewrite in Latin as a future less vivid condition.
- f) Translate the Latin sentence you wrote under 6e.

7. Si amica facta deorum ducentur magnā cum curā, vitam bonam agere optabimus.

IV.

Translate into Latin:

1. If they think about the danger, the inhabitants will begin to place big rocks around the island in order that the town may be free.
2. The book had indeed been read zealously by the boy.

Answer Key — UNITS 1–4: Self-Review A

I.

A.

1. implēti, -ae, -a sunt
2. territi, -ae, -a sitis
territi, -ae, -a eritis
3. visus, -a, -um erat
4. spectēris (spectēre)
5. sentiēbar

B.

1. monuissēs
2. tenēremus
3. capiētis
4. gesserit
5. mittit

II.

1. 3rd pl. fem. perfect passive indicative: **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus**
2. genitive sing.; nominative pl.: **gladius**, -i, M.
3. present active infinitive; 2nd sing. future passive indicative (when -e- is long);
2nd sing. present passive indicative (when -e- is short): **tegō**, **tegere**, **tēxi**, **tēctus**
4. 3rd sing. future perfect active indicative; 3rd sing. perfect active subjunctive:
audiō, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus**
5. genitive sing.; dative sing.; nominative pl.: **villa**, -ae, F.

III.

1. The wretched inhabitants have heard (have listened to) the words of their sons in order that they may understand many things.
 - a) intellegent
'listened to, heard'
 - b) audiēbant
2. If you do (will) not seem to be happy (unless you (will) seem...), I shall not fill the urn with water; indeed the queen has warned (has advised) that I fill the urn for a (the) happy man.
 - a) *Nisi laeti esse vidēbimini, aquīs urnās nōn implēbimus; rēgīnae enim monuērunt ut urnās laetis impleāmus.*
 - b) 2nd sing. future passive indicative in protasis of a future more vivid condition
 - c) dative sing.
 - d) *Nisi laetus esse vidēris (vidēre), aquā urnam nōn impleō.*
 - e) *Nisi laetus esse vidērēris (vidērēre), aquā urnam nōn implērem.*
 - f) *Nisi laetus esse visus essēs, aquā urnam nōn implēvissem.*
3. If he had been condemned for treachery, the sailor would have asked the honorable inhabitants of the town that he be heard in order that he might not be placed (put) in danger.
 - a) genitive pl. with a verb of condemning
 - b) 3rd sing. imperfect passive subjunctive in an indirect command in secondary sequence
4. Large crowds of slaves came out of the fields to the gates of the town in order that they might beg the strong men very tearfully (with many tears) that they be silent about the nature of (the) war.
 - a) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in secondary sequence — in a clause of purpose
 - b) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in secondary sequence — in an indirect command
5. Indeed much was done and read and written by the (an) honorable man about the danger in order that the kingdom might not be destroyed by the (an) evil man.
 - a) ablative of personal agent
 - b) *Multa enim dē periculis ab honestis ācta et lēcta et scripta sunt nē rēgna ā malis dēlērentur.*
6. If the war had been waged very diligently (with great diligence) with swords and rocks, the men would not now be setting sail to the island.
 - a) 3rd sing. pluperfect subjunctive passive in the protasis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
 - b) 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive active in the apodosis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition

- c) ablative of means
- d) ablative of manner
- e) *Si bellum gladiis saxisque magnā cum diligentia gerātur, viri vēla ad insulam nōn dent.*
- f) If the war should be waged very diligently (with great diligence) with swords and rocks, the men would not set sail to the island.

7. If the friendly deeds of the gods are (will be) considered very carefully (with great care), we shall desire (choose) to conduct a good life.

IV.

1. *Si dē periculō cōgitābunt, incolae magna saxa circum insulam pōnere incipient ut oppidum liberum sit.*
2. *Liber enim a puerō cum studiō lēctus erat.*

UNITS 1-4: Self-Review B

While long marks appear below only in places where confusion might arise, they should appear in your answers.

I.

- A. Identify the form of each of the following, giving *all* possibilities and listing principal parts for verbs and the nominative, genitive singular, and gender for nouns:

1. gesseritis	3. nautis	5. studia
2. mittere	4. sentiar	
- B. Change the following verb forms to the passive, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

1. superamus	3. egeratis	5. perdiderim
2. terrebis	4. intellegant	
- C. Change the following verb forms to the active voice, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

1. audiebatur	3. positi estis	5. visae essemus
2. pulsa erunt	4. donaremini	

II.

Translate each of the following and then do whatever is required by the questions which follow:

1. *Si nautae validi poenas dedissent, magno studio regina aras deorum donis implevisset.*

- a) Explain the ending of **validi**.
- b) Give the syntax of **studio**.
- c) Explain the syntax of **implevisset**.
- d) Change the above condition to the negative.
- e) Rewrite the above as a future less vivid condition.
- f) Rewrite as a future more vivid condition.
- g) Rewrite as a contrary-to-fact condition in present time.
2. *Si bellum in provinciā geretis, magnum regnum perdetis.*
 - a) Give the syntax of **geretis**.
3. *Marcus, vir honestus clarusque, servos miseros monuit ut naturam animae intellegent ut laeti essent.*
 - a) Explain the syntax of **intellegent**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **essent**.
 - c) Change the subordinate clauses to the negative.
 - d) Change **monuit** to the simple present and make any additional change(s) necessary.
4. *Multa verba acerba de periculo belli magnā cum diligentia a poetis scripta sunt ne boni bellum gerere optarent.*
 - a) Explain the syntax of **diligentia**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **poetis**.
 - c) Change the verb in the subordinate clause to primary sequence. How would this alter your translation of **scripta sunt**?
5. *Nautae villas insulae gladiis saxisque delere inciperent nisi regina litteras incolis misisset ut multa bona amicis nautarum darentur.*
 - a) Explain the syntax of **gladiis**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **misisset**.
6. *Venia vera deorum aeternorum in caelo natis monstrata est ut vitam bonam agant.*
 - a) Change **monstrata est** to the simple future tense and make any other necessary change(s).
7. *Si incola inimicus a viris visus esset, feminas e villis ad aras duxissent ut a dis peterent ne oppidum periculo et villaे lacrimis implerentur.*

III.

Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. We came to the town very zealously in order that we might warn the sailors that they not betray (their) friends.
2. If we should be seen by the men of the town, we would be considered hostile and would be driven from the province.

Answer Key — UNITS 1–4: Self-Review B

I.

A. 1. 2nd pl. future perfect active indicative; 2nd pl. perfect active subjunctive: **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**
 2. 2nd sing. imperfect passive subjunctive: **mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus**
 3. dative/ablative pl.: **nauta, -ae, M.**
 4. 1st sing. future passive indicative; 1st sing. present passive subjunctive: **sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus**
 5. nominative/accusative pl.: **studium, -ī, N.**

B. 1. superāmūr
 2. terrēberis (terrēbere)
 3. áctī, -ae, -a erātis
 4. intellegantur
 5. perditus, -a, -um sim

C. 1. audiēbat
 2. pepulerint
 3. posuistis
 4. dōnārētis
 5. vīdissēmus

II.

1. If the strong sailors had paid the penalty, very zealously (with great zeal) the queen would have filled the altars of the gods with gifts.

- a) nominative pl. M. adjective agreeing with **nautae, M.**
- b) ablative of manner
- c) 3rd sing. pluperfect active subjunctive in the apodosis of a past contrary-to-fact condition
- d) *Nisi nautae validi poenās dedissent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis nōn implēvisset.*
- e) *Si nautae validi poenās dent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis impleat.*
- f) *Si nautae validi poenās {dabunt
dederint} magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis implēbit.*
- g) *Si nautae validi poenās darent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis implēret.*

2. If you (pl.) (will) wage war in the province, you (pl.) will destroy a great kingdom.

a) 2nd pl. future active indicative in the protasis of a future more vivid condition

3. Marcus, an honorable and famous man, warned the wretched slaves that they understand the nature of the soul in order that they might be happy.

- 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in an indirect command in secondary sequence
- 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive in a purpose clause in secondary sequence
- ...servōs miserōs monuit nē nātūram animae intellegent nē laeti essent.
- monet ut...intellegent ut...sint

4. Many harsh (bitter) words about the danger of war were written very diligently (with great diligence) by poets in order that good men might not choose (desire) to wage war.

- abative of manner
- abative of personal agent
- optent
'have been written'

5. The sailors would (now) begin to destroy the country houses of the island with swords and rocks if the queen had not (unless the queen had) sent a letter to (for) the inhabitants in order that many good things might be given to the sailors' friends.

- abative of means
- 3rd sing. pluperfect active subjunctive in the protasis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition

6. The true favor (kindness) of the eternal gods in the sky (heaven) has been shown (pointed out) to the children (sons) in order that they may conduct a good life.

- mōnstrābitur
no other changes necessary

7. If the unfriendly inhabitant had been seen by the men, they would have led the women out of the country houses to the altars in order that they might ask the gods that the town not be filled with danger and the country houses (not be filled) with tears.

III.

- Ad oppidum magnō cum studiō vēnimus ut nautās monērēmus nē amicōs trāderent.
- Sī ā viris oppidi videāmur, inimicī habeāmur (dūcāmur) et ē prōvinciā pellāmur (expellāmur).

UNIT FIVE

A. Participles: Definition and Formation

If we wish to take a verb and make an adjective out of it, we construct a *verbal adjective* or *participle*.

The *shouting* woman departed.

The men saw the *destroyed* town.

A participle, like any other adjective, must agree with the noun it qualifies in gender, number, and case. In the sentences given as examples above, “shouting” is feminine, singular, nominative to agree with “woman”; “destroyed” is neuter, singular, accusative to agree with “town”. The participle also has the attributes of tense and voice: “shouting” is present active; “destroyed” (i.e., “having been destroyed”) is perfect passive.

The participle, although an adjective, still retains its verbal powers and accordingly, for example, can take an object:

The men *destroying the town* were sailors.

The formation of participles is illustrated below:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	optāns desiring	--
Perfect	--	optātus, -a, -um having been desired, desired
Future	optātūrus, -a, -um going to desire, about to desire	optandus, -a, -um having to be desired, to be desired*

1. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE. To form the present active participle, add *-ns* to the present stem. In the case of i-stem verbs, *-ie-* will appear in the present participle:

optā/ns implē/ns dūcē/ns incipiē/ns sentiē/ns

* The future passive participle regularly carries the accessory notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety.

The form given is the nominative singular for all three genders. The present participle declines, but according to a scheme which differs from that which you have already learned. This will be discussed in Unit Eight. (Note that a vowel lengthens before **-ns**.)

2. **PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.** The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part of the verb:

optātus, -a, -um implētus, -a, -um ductus, -a, -um inceptus, -a, -um
sēnsus, -a, -um

3. **FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the future active participle, take the fourth principal part of the verb, drop the **-us** ending and add in its place **-ūrus, -a, -um**:

optātūrus, -a, -um implētūrus, -a, -um ductūrus, -a, -um
inceptūrus, -a, -um sēnsūrus, -a, -um

4. **FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the future passive participle, add **-ndus, -a, -um** to the present stem. In i-stem verbs, **-ie-** will appear:

optandus, -a, -um implendus, -a, -um dūcendus, -a, -um
incipiendus, -a, -um sentiendus, -a, -um

Note that a long vowel shortens before **-nd**.

B. Some Uses of the Participle

The tense of the participle is *relative* to that of the main verb. A *present* participle refers to an action *contemporaneous* with that of the main verb; a *perfect* participle refers to an action *prior* to that of the main verb; a *future* participle refers to an action *subsequent* to that of the main verb. There are some problems which arise in this system because of the lack of certain participial forms (i.e., present passive and perfect active), but these may be circumvented easily, as will be seen later.

Multiple interpretations of a participle are possible in English:

1. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Fēmina clāmāns discessit. The *shouting* woman departed.
The woman departed *shouting*.
Shouting, the woman departed.
The woman *who was shouting* departed.
The woman, *since she was shouting*, departed.
The woman, *although she was shouting*, departed.
When (while) she was shouting, the woman departed.
If she was shouting, the woman departed.

OBSERVATIONS:

- a) In each case, the present participle **clāmāns** refers to an action which was going on at the same time as that of the main verb.
- b) The participle can be translated into English with causal ("since"), concessive ("although"), temporal ("when, while"), or conditional ("if") force. The participle alone, then, can stand for the if-clause (protasis) of a conditional sentence. It can also stand for a relative clause. The interpretation of a participle must depend upon the requirements of the *context* of each specific passage.
- c) Frequently when a participle is meant to be taken as concessive, the word **tamen**, 'nevertheless', is inserted to qualify the main verb.

Fēmina clāmāns tamen discessit. Although the woman was shouting, nevertheless she departed.

2. PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

Fēmina territa clāmāvit. The *having-been-frightened* woman shouted.
 The woman, *having been frightened*, shouted.
Having been frightened, the woman shouted.
 The *frightened* woman shouted.
 The woman *who had been frightened* shouted.
Since she had been frightened, the woman shouted.
Although she had been frightened, the woman shouted.
When (after) she had been frightened, the woman shouted.
If she had been frightened, the woman shouted.

OBSERVATIONS:

- a) The perfect passive participle refers to an action which occurred prior to the time of the main verb.
- b) The absence of the perfect active participle in Latin makes it impossible at this stage of our study to express a verbal idea in the active voice as having occurred prior to the time of the main verb.

The woman, having shouted (after she had shouted), departed.

A subordinate clause, introduced perhaps by the subordinating conjunction **postquam**, 'after', would have to be used in this case:

Postquam clāmāvit, fēmina discessit. After she shouted, the woman departed.

3. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Fēmina discessūra virum vīdit. The *about-to-depart* woman saw (her) husband.

The woman, *about to depart*, saw (her) husband.

About to depart, the woman saw (her) husband.

The woman *who was about (going) to depart* saw (her) husband.

Since the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.

Although the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.

When (as) the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.

If the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.

OBSERVATION: The future active participle refers to an action which will occur or has occurred subsequent to that of the main verb.

4. FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

Librōs legendōs in mēnsā posuit. He placed *having-to-be-read* books on the table.

He placed books *to be read* on the table.

He placed books *which had to be read* on the table.

OBSERVATIONS:

- The future passive participle refers to an action which will occur or has occurred subsequent to that of the main verb.
- The future passive participle (sometimes called the *gerundive*) carries with it the notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety.

These participial constructions may occur in any grammatical case:

Fēminae discessūrae pecūniam dedit. He gave money to the *about-to-depart* woman.

He gave money to the woman who was *about to depart*.

C. Periphrastics

The future participles (active and passive) are compounded with the verb **sum** to form the active and passive periphrastic conjugations.

1. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The active periphrastic is translated by the English 'about to, going to, ready to'.

INDICATIVE:

Pres.	optātūrus (-a, -um) sum	I am about to desire
Impf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) eram	I was about to desire
Fut.	optātūrus (-a, -um) erō	I shall be about to desire
Perf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fui	I have been (was) about to desire
Plupf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fueram	I had been about to desire
Fut. Pf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerō	I shall have been about to desire

SUBJUNCTIVE:

Pres.	optātūrus (-a, -um) sim
Impf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) essem
Perf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerim
Plupf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuissem

2. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The passive periphrastic is translated by 'have (has) to, should, ought to', or 'must'.

INDICATIVE:

Pres.	optandus (-a, -um) sum	I am having-to-be desired, I have to be desired, I should (ought to) be desired, I must be desired
Impf.	optandus (-a, -um) eram	I had to be desired
Fut.	optandus (-a, -um) erō	I shall have to be desired
Perf.	optandus (-a, -um) fui	I had to be desired
Plupf.	optandus (-a, -um) fueram	I had had to be desired
Fut. Pf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuerō	I shall have had to be desired

SUBJUNCTIVE:

Pres.	optandus (-a, -um) sim
Impf.	optandus (-a, -um) essem
Perf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuerim
Plupf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuissem

These compound periphrastic forms should not be confused with the compound passives of the perfect system which have been met earlier. Distinguish:

optātus est	he has been desired	(passive)
optātūrus est	he is about to desire	(active periphrastic)
optandus est	he is (has) to be desired	(passive periphrastic)

D. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic

Personal agent is regularly expressed by the ablative case preceded by the preposition **ā** (**ab**). With the passive periphrastic, however, the personal agent is normally expressed by the dative case without a preposition. In fact, this use of the dative is purely referential; the action of the verb is viewed as necessary with reference to the agent.

Poēta rēgīnae videndus est. The poet must be seen *by the queen*.

(Note that the **-us** ending on **videndus** agrees with the subject **poēta** which is masculine.)

E. Dative of the Possessor

With forms of the verb **sum**, the dative is sometimes used to show possession. The *possessor* is put into the dative case.

Corōna est **rēgīnae**. A crown is *to the queen*; *the queen* has a crown; the crown is *the queen's*.

Liber est **amicō**. A book is *to the friend*; *the friend* has a book; the book is *the friend's*.

F. The Verb **possum**, 'be able'

This verb is a compound of **sum**. In the present system, when the form of **sum** begins with **s**, the prefix **pos-** is added to conjugate **possum**; when the form of **sum** begins with **e**, the prefix **pot-** is added. The imperfect subjunctive is constructed, as usual, on the full present infinitive, and the perfect system is formed as one might expect.

possum, posse, potuī, --

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
---------	-----------	--------	---------	------------	----------------

INDICATIVE

possum	poteram	poterō	potuī	potueram	potuerō
potes	poterās	poteris	potuistī	potuerās	potueris
potest	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.

possumus

potestis

possunt

Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>possim</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>potuerim</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
<i>possis</i>	<i>possēs</i>	<i>potueris</i>	<i>potuissēs</i>
<i>possit</i>	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.
<i>possimus</i>			
<i>possitis</i>			
<i>possint</i>			

G. Complementary Infinitive and Object Infinitive

There are verbs in Latin which frequently require an infinitive to complete their meaning. Some of these are verbs which express ability, will, desire, and the like.

Amicum **vidēre** optō. I desire *to see* (my) friend.
 Amicum **vidēre** possum. I am able *to see* (my) friend.
 Bonus **esse** vidētur. He seems *to be* good.

Such infinitives are called *complementary* infinitives because they *complete* the idea of the verb. When they are used with transitive verbs, as in the first example above, they are in effect *object* infinitives since they function as the direct object of the transitive verb.

UNIT FIVE — VOCABULARY

ante (prep. + acc.)	before, in front of
(adv.)	before, previously
antiquus, -a, -um	ancient
ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsus	burn, be on fire; desire
arma, -ōrum, N. (pl.)	arms, weapons
aurum, -ī, N.	gold
aureus, -a, -um	golden, of gold
autem (postpositive conj.)	however, moreover
bene (adv.)	well
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus	sing (of)
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus	go, move, yield
accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus	go to, approach
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus	go from, depart, leave
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbui, dēbitus	owe, ought
dominus, -ī, M.	master, lord
dūrus, -a, -um	hard, harsh
ferrum, -ī, N.	iron, sword
flamma, -ae, F.	flame, fire
imperium, -ī, N.	authority, power, empire

imperō (1)

interficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus

invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus

magister, magistri, M.

medius, -a, -um

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus

removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus

mox (adv.)

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus

novus, -a, -um

numquam (nunquam) (adv.)

umquam (unquam) (adv.)

pius, -a, -um

impius, -a, -um

populus, -i, M.

possim, posse, potuī, --

post (prep. + acc.)

(adv.)

postquam (conj.)

quamquam (conj.)

ruīna, -ae, F.

ruō, -ere, rui, rutus

sine (prep. + abl.)

socius, -a, -um

socius, -i, M.

tamen (adv.)

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus

vocō (1)

give (an) order(s), give (a) command(s) (The person ordered is in the dative case; the thing ordered is expressed by an **ut** clause [negative **nē**] of indirect command.)

kill

go into, invade, attack

superior, director, master, teacher

middle of, middle

move

remove, take away, set aside

soon

learn, (in perfect) know

learn, (in perfect) know

new, strange

never

ever

loyal, dutiful, pious

irreverent, wicked, impious

people

be able, can

after, behind

afterwards, after, behind

after (+ indicative)

although (+ indicative)

fall, downfall, ruin, destruction

fall, go to ruin, rush

without

allied

ally

nevertheless

be alive, live

call

UNIT FIVE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The prepositions **ante**, ‘before’, and **post**, ‘after’, are well known, since one speaks of the ante-bellum South, or the post-bellum South, for example, in reference to the Civil War. These expressions will serve as reminders that both prepositions govern the accusative case. Both words can be used adverbially as well: **ante**, ‘previously, before’; **post**, ‘afterwards, after, behind’. And so, one

might say either **Urna ante mēnsam posita est**, 'The urn was placed in front of the table', or **Litterās ante scripsimus**, 'We wrote the letter before'.

The word **arma**, **armōrum** has no singular; it is a neuter word found only in the plural.

Aurum, **aurī**, N., 'gold', has as its adjective **aureus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'golden, of gold'. The chemical symbol for gold, *Au*, comes from the first two letters of **aurum**.

Autem, 'however, moreover', like **enim**, 'indeed', is a postpositive conjunction; it cannot be the first word in a clause.

Cēdō, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessus** is another verb with many compounds. It means 'go, move, yield', and so **accēdō** (ad + **cēdō**) is 'go to, approach'; **discēdō** (dis-, 'apart' + **cēdō**), 'go from, depart, leave'; **excēdō**, 'go out'; **recēdō**, 'go back', etc.

Dēbeō, **dēbēre**, **dēbui**, **dēbitus**, when used with an infinitive, means 'ought'; otherwise it means 'owe'.

Ferrum, **ferri**, N., is the word for 'iron' (chemical symbol *Fe*); it can also mean 'sword'.

Imperō, **imperāre**, **imperāvī**, **imperātus**, 'order, command', may govern the dative case. One gives a command to someone that he do something (**ut** or [negative] **nē** + subjunctive): **Fēminae ut canat imperō**, 'I order the woman to sing'.

Interficiō is another compound of **faciō** and means 'kill'.

Magister, **magistrī**, M., is the person in charge of something, 'superior, director, master, teacher'.

Medius, **-a**, **-um** means 'the middle of'; it is an adjective like any other adjective, taking the case of the noun which it modifies: **in mediō oppidō**, 'in the middle of the town'; **ad medium oppidum**, 'toward the middle of the town'.

Moveō, **movēre**, 'move', lengthens its **-o-** in the perfect tenses: **mōvī**, **mōtus**. **Removeō**, a compound of **re-** + **moveō**, means 'move back, remove, take away, set aside'.

Nōscō, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus** and **cognōscō**, **cognōscere**, **cognōvī**, **cognitus** both mean 'learn' in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. However, once one has learned something, he knows it; therefore, the perfect tenses mean 'know'.

Umquam (sometimes spelled **unquam**) means 'ever'; its opposite, **numquam** (sometimes spelled **nunquam**) means 'never'.

Pius, **-a**, **-um**, 'loyal, dutiful, pious', has as its negative counterpart **impius**, **-a**, **-um**, 'irreverent, wicked, impious'; the prefix **in-** may have the meaning 'not'.

Populus with a short **-o-** means 'people' and is masculine; with a long **-ō-** it means 'poplar tree' and is feminine. Obviously, a careful pronunciation is needed to make a distinction between these two words. **Populus**, **populi**, M., 'people', is a collective noun and since it is singular, any adjective modifying it or verb used with it must also be singular. In the plural, it means 'peoples'.

Possum, posse, potuī has no fourth principal part; it means 'be able, can'. If the meaning 'be able' is used, it will be easy to remember that a complementary infinitive is used with **possum**. A complementary infinitive completes the meaning of an intransitive verb. "I am able" or "I ought" does not mean anything until an infinitive is used to complete the meaning: **Canere possum**, 'I am able to sing'; **Ferrum removēre dēbeō**, 'I ought to remove the sword'.

The conjunction **postquam**, 'after', is sometimes cut up into two parts (**post...quam**); this is called *tmesis*. By dividing the word, one gives the sentence a greater cohesion: **Dominus post interfectus est quam trāditus est**, 'The master was killed after he had been betrayed'.

The present stem of **ruō**, **ruere**, **ruī**, **rutus**, 'fall, go to ruin, rush', is the same as the perfect active stem; thus, **ruit**, 'he rushes', or 'he has rushed'.

The adjective **socius**, **-a**, **-um**, 'allied', when used substantively means 'ally': **Multī sociī Rōmānī in magnō bellō pūgnāvērunt**, 'Many (men) allied to the Romans fought in the great war' or 'Many men fought in the great war as allies to the Romans'. Often adding the English word "as" makes for a smoother translation of a Latin sentence: **Et domīni et servī pii ad ārās deōrum vēnērunt**, 'Both the dutiful masters and slaves came to the altars of the gods' or 'Both the masters and slaves came to the altars of the gods as dutiful men'.

UNIT FIVE — DRILL

I.

Translate these phrases:

1. puer intellegēns
2. poēta respondēns
3. oppidum pūgnāns
4. filius dubitāns
5. deus monēns
6. amīcus audiēns
7. incola capiēns
8. a) incola captus b) incolae captō c) incolārum captōrum
9. a) litterae missae b) litteris missīs
10. a) inimicus expulsus b) inimici expulsi c) inimicō expulso
11. a) liber lēctus b) librōrum lēctōrum
12. a) urna facta b) urnī factīs
13. a) rēgnūm perdendum b) rēgna perdenda c) rēgnō perdendō
14. a) servī spectandi b) servōrum spectandōrum
15. a) libri scribendi b) libris scribendīs c) librōrum scribendōrum
16. a) dōna danda b) dōnōrum dandōrum

17. a) *puella respōnsūra* b) *puellae respōnsūrae*
 18. a) *vir pūgnātūrus* b) *viris pūgnātūris*
 19. a) *rēginae dāmnātūrae* b) *ā rēgīnā dāmnātūrā*
 20. a) *fēmina vīsūra* b) *fēminārum vīsūrārum*

II.

Translate these sentences: (participles)

1. *Īnsula ā virō capta dēlēbitur* (dēlēta est).
2. *Vir īnsulam capiēns pecūniām incolis dabit* (dedit).
3. *Vir īnsulam captūrus pecūniām incolis dabit* (dedit).
4. *Vir īnsulam captam dēlēre poterit* (poterat).
5. *Īnsula capienda est magna.*
6. *Nautae oppidum perditūrī fēminās incolārum terrent* (terruērunt).
7. *Nauta oppidum perdēns fēminās incolārum terret* (terruit).
8. *Oppidum dē periculō ab amicis monitum ab inimicis tamen perditum est.*
9. *Oppidum perdendum ab amicis monitum erat.*
10. *Dōnum viris librum lēctūris dedistī.*
11. *Glōria nautārum superātōrum erat magna.*
12. *Incolis īnsulam superātūrīs pecūniām dare potuit* (potest).
13. *Nautae incolās trāditūrō erat mala fāma.*
14. *Caecō dōna dīs datūrō nōn erat pecūnia.*
15. *Caecus cibum ā virō ad oppidum missō petere optat.*
16. *Si virōs oppidum dēlētūrōs vidēre possim, laetus esse possim.*

III.

Translate the following: (periphrastics, etc.)

1. *missūrī sunt*
2. *missūrī erant*
3. *missūrī erunt*
4. *trādendum est*
5. *Oppidum trādendum erat.*
6. *Oppidum incolis trādendum erit.*
7. *Sententiae puellārum mūtandae sunt.*
8. *Sententiae puellīs mūtandae sunt.*
9. *Puellae sententiās mūtātūrae sunt.*
10. *Vēnia petenda est.*
11. *Mali veniam petītūrī erant.*
12. *Nautae ad oppidum missī erant ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellerent.*
13. *Nautae ad oppidum mittendī sunt ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellant.*
14. *Nautae ad oppidum mittendī erant ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellerent.*

15. Rēgina nautās ad oppidum missūra est (erat).
16. Bellum ab acerbīs gestum timēbātur.
17. Acerbus bellum gerēns ab incolis timētūr.
18. Si sententiae dē bellō virīs mūtandae sint, incolae nōn intellegant.
19. Si sententiae dē bellō virīs mūtandae essent (fuissent), incolae nōn intellegērent (intellēxissent).
20. Si sententiam dē bellō mūtātūrus sīs, amīcī nōn taceant.
21. Si sententiam dē bellō mūtātūrus essēs (fuissēs), amīcī nōn tacērent (tacuissent).

IV.

Translate: (datives of the possessor)

1. Nautis gladiī sunt.
2. Fēmina est mēnsa pulchra.
3. Filiis poētae erant pulchri oculi.
4. Nautae multa pecūnia est; poētae nihil.

UNIT FIVE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Dominus vocātūs ad campum accessit.
2. Aurum ē cellā removēns, magister imperāvit ut in mediā mēnsā pōnerētur.
3. Piōs ad āram cessūrōs vidimus.
4. Sociīs in periculum rutūrīs imperāvit.
5. Arma movenda spectāvimus.
6. Impiōs interficiendōs mōnstrāvērunt.
7. Patriam populi territi invādere nōn dēbētis.
8. Poēta autem virōs cognitōs cecinit.
9. Ruinae oppidōrum arsōrum ā nautis vīsae sunt.
10. Multam pecūniām capiēns, servus ā dominī tēctō discessit.

UNIT FIVE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Villa alta, flammīs ardēns, in ruīnam ante oculōs populi territōs ruit.
2. Magister magnus ab agrō discessūrōs īrāvit ut oppidum sociōrum captōrum dēlērent. Magistrō enim non erant arma, discessūrīs multa.
3. Postquam virīs ab agrō discessūrīs imperāvit ut multa dē nātūrā populi inimīci cognōscent, ē mediō sine morā discessit.

4. a) Medium oppidum armis cum studiō tentum ab impiis tamen captum est.
 b) Medium oppidum armis cum studiō tentum piis tamen capiendum est ut sine periculō bene vivant.
 c) Piī medium oppidum armis cum studiō tentum capere dēbent nē ab inimicīs interficiantur.
5. Magister honestus dōna multa et pulchra servīs bellō captīs dāns imperāvit ut cum diligentiā studiōque labōrarent ut līberi mox essent et ē rēgnō cēderent. Servī autem magistrum nōn audivērunt; ē rēgnō numquam cessērunt, sed ē vītā mox cessūrī erant.
6. Rōmānī arma capta superātōrum dēlēbant ut imperium sine periculō tenēre possent.
7. Nōn sine glōriā vītam ēgī; et multa ē librīs nōvī, et magna populō et rēgnō fēci. Mala autem in vītam invāsērunt et nunc inimicīs interficiendus sum ut ē mediō removear. Lacrimīs fēminās inimicōrum movēre optāvī ut virōs ūrent nē pium bonōrum factōrum dāmnent, sed nōn potuī. Sī malam vītam ēgisse, nunc interficiendus nōn essem.
8. Impiōrum arma capta sunt ā turbā tēctum invāsūrā.
9. Nautārum Rōmānōrum turba invādēns arma capta liberōrum dēlēvit.
10. Poēta vivēns in imperiō arma virumque cecinit.
11. a) Sī nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capere possit, clārus sit.
 b) Sī nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capiat, clārus sit.
 c) Nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capiēns clārus sit.
12. Urna antiqua et aurea, in mediā mēnsā posita, ā puerō malō dēlēta est ut novam habēret.
13. Fēmina clāmāns servum ē vīllā discessūrum monuit ut urna cāra ā mēnsā removenda esset.
14. Multa dūra dē rēgīnā clāmāns populus tamen ā patriā nōn discessūrus est (erat, erit).
15. Postquam ad tēctum sociōrum accessērunt, servīs imperāvērunt ut dē patriā multa canerent.
16. Numquam ē patriā cēdam vivēns. Numquam ē patriā cēdere poterō.
17. Si nautās ē mediō oppidō vocētis, mox veniant ut īsulam invādant.
18. Quamquam incolae miserī sunt, bellum tamen gerētur.
19. Quamquam poēta magnum librum scribet, clārus tamen nōn erit.
20. Poēta magnum librum scribēns clārus tamen nōn erit.
21. Bene cōgītātā nōn perduntur.
22. Bene perdit pecūniā amicīs dāns.
23. Socius inimicōs nec ferrō potuit superāre nec aurō.
24. Sī bellum dūrum sociīs nunc gerendum esset, pūgnātūrī arma caperēmus.
25. Poēta bella gerenda canere potest (poterat, poterit).
26. Novōs librōs legendōs in mēnsā nātō posuissētis sī legere potuisset.

27. Ruinamne in vitā unquam vidistis? Si ruinam in vitā vidissēmus, in periculum caeci nōn ruissēmus.
28. Ante portās pūgnāns interficiētur.
29. Īrātūri sumus ut dē vitā ante āctā domini cōgitētis nē īnsidiārum dāmnētur.
30. Faciam nōn nova, sed multa ante facta.
31. Si periculum veniat, ruina post sit; post periculum erit ruīna.
32. Impiī vivunt et vīctūri sunt; piī semper malis interficiēndi erunt sī imperium tenēre optābunt.

II.

1. The poet ought to write a book. (translate two ways)
2. The master will have to be overcome by the men who have been betrayed (i.e., the betrayed men) if they are going to drive evil from the land.
3. While the poet was singing of ancient empires destroyed by the sword, he was killed by the men who had been seen previously in the town.
4. A war must be fought by the captured allies in order that they may be free men.
5. After the war, those who had been conquered had neither money nor food. (use dative of the possessor)

III. Reading

Antequam¹ pius Aenēas oppidum condere² potuit, bellum Aenēae pūgnandum fuit. Arma autem Aenēae nōn fuērunt. Filius deae mātrem³ arma īrāvit ut inimicōs interficeret. Māter³ deō imperāvit ut arma historiā⁴ populi Rōmānī īscripta⁵ faceret. Arma accipiēns⁶ Aenēas mox pūgnāre incēpit quamquam historiam⁴ populi Rōmānī intellegere nōn potuit. Inimicus erat impius Turnus, vir dūrus, pūgnāre ardēns. Mediā nocte⁷ dea ad Turnum vēnit ut eī⁸ imperāret ut cum Aenēā pūgnāret. Ruēns ad bellum Turnus sociōs Aenēae invāsit et amicum Aenēae interfēcit. Populus socius bellum gestūrus deōs auxilium⁹ īrāvit. “Auxilium⁹ cāris ā dis¹⁰ dandum est,” sēnsit; “si dī auxilium⁹ dabunt, dōna multa āris deōrum dare dēbēimus.” Cum Aenēā socii magnō cum studiō pūgnāvērunt. Turnō parsūrus,¹¹ Aenēas tamen eum¹² interfēcit. Turnus interficiendus erat ut pius impium superāns oppidum conderet.²

¹ antequam (conj.), ‘before’ ² condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, ‘found’ ³ māter (nom.), mātrem (acc.), ‘mother’ ⁴ historia, -ae, F., ‘history’ ⁵ īscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, ‘inscribe’ ⁶ accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, ‘receive’ ⁷ nocte (abl.), ‘in the night’ ⁸ eī (dat.), ‘him’ ⁹ auxilium, -i, N., ‘aid’ ¹⁰ The ablative of agent with a passive periphrastic is regularly used instead of the dative of agent in order to avoid confusion when another dative is closely associated with the verb. ¹¹ parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus, ‘spare’ (+ dat.) ¹² eum (acc.), ‘him’

UNIT SIX

A. Nouns of the Third Declension

Nouns of the third declension occur very frequently in Latin and are distinguished by the genitive singular ending *-is*. This declension admits of all three genders, and while there are several minor variations within the system, all nouns in this declension can be dealt with easily according to the observations which follow.

In order to decline a noun of the third declension, determine the *stem* by dropping the genitive singular ending and then add the specified endings for this declension.

THIRD DECLENSION ENDINGS

MASCULINE

&

FEMININE

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
Nom.	--	<i>-ēs</i>		--	<i>-a (-ia)</i>
Gen.	<i>-is</i>	<i>-um (-ium)</i>		<i>-is</i>	<i>-um (-ium)</i>
Dat.	<i>-i</i>	<i>-ibus</i>		<i>-i</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
Acc.	<i>-em</i>	<i>-ēs (-is)</i>		--	<i>-a (-ia)</i>
Abl.	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ibus</i>		<i>-e (-i)</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

OBSERVATIONS:

1. As is the case with all neuter nouns in Latin, the nominative and accusative forms of each number are identical.
2. There is no specific nominative singular ending for this declension. It must be learned for each noun as a vocabulary item.
3. The alternate endings in parentheses above belong to a class of nouns called *i-stems*. In this book, nouns which are i-stems will be signaled in the vocabulary by the addition of the genitive plural ending *-ium* to the regular principal parts: *māter, mātris, F.*, 'mother'; but *urbs, urbis, -ium, F.*, 'city'. Those who care to learn rules for determining which nouns are i-stems may find the notes at the end of this section helpful.

4. Masculine and feminine i-stems frequently have **-is** as an alternate for **-ēs** in the accusative plural.

It will be easy to decline the following nouns according to the observations above.

rūmor, -ōris, M.	rumor, gossip
nox, noctis, -ium, F.	night
sīdus, -eris, N.	star, constellation
moenia, -ium, N. (only in pl.)	(city) walls

MODEL FOR MASC.-		MODEL FOR MASC.-	
FEM. NON-I-STEMS		FEM. I-STEMS	
rūmor	rūmōrēs	nox	noctēs
rūmōris	rūmōrum	noctis	noctium
rūmōrī	rūmōribus	noctī	noctibus
rūmōrem	rūmōrēs	noctem	noctēs (noctis)
rūmōre	rūmōribus	nocte	noctibus

NEUTER		NEUTER	
NON-I-STEM		I-STEM	
sīdus	sidera	(moene	moenia
sideris	siderum	moenis	moenium
sideri	sideribus	moeni	moenibus
sīdus	sidera	moene	moenia
sidere	sideribus	moeni)	moenibus

NOTES: RULES FOR DETERMINING WHICH THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ARE I-STEMS
A third declension noun will generally be an i-stem if:

1. the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables:

ignis, ignis, -ium, M. fire

2. the stem of the noun ends in two consonants *except* if the second consonant is an l or r:

nox, noctis, -ium, F. night
mōns, montis, -ium, M. mountain

BUT:

pater, patris, M. father
māter, mātris, F. mother

(even though the first rule applies also)

3. the nominative singular of a neuter noun ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**:

mare, maris, -ium*	N.	sea
animal, animālis, -ium, N.		animal
exemplar, exemplāris, -ium, N.		model

These neuter words end in **-ī** in the ablative singular (instead of **-e**) and in **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

* Although this form is not found in extant literature, it has been reconstructed here.

B. Infinitives

Although the Latin verb has six infinitives — present active, present passive, perfect active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive — only five are in common use. In addition, the future active and future passive participles combined with an infinitive of the verb **sum** yield the infinitives of the active and passive periphrastic conjugations.

1. PRESENT INFINITIVE

a) ACTIVE. The present active infinitive is the second principal part of the verb:

optāre	to desire
dūcere	to lead

b) PASSIVE. To form the present passive infinitive for the first, second, and fourth conjugations, replace the final **-e** of the active infinitive with **-ī**. For the third conjugation, replace the entire **-ere** with **-ī**:

optāri	to be desired
implēri	to be filled
dūcī	to be led
incipī	to be begun
sentīri	to be felt

2. PERFECT INFINITIVE

a) ACTIVE. The perfect active infinitive is formed for all verbs by adding **-isse** to the stem of the third principal part:

optāvisse	to have desired
implēvisse	to have filled
dūxisse	to have led
incipēpisse	to have begun
sēnsisse	to have felt

b) PASSIVE. The perfect passive infinitive is formed with the fourth principal part (perfect passive participle) plus the infinitive of **sum** (**esse**).

optātus, -a, -um esse	to have been desired
implētus, -a, -um esse	to have been filled
ductus, -a, -um esse	to have been led
inceptus, -a, -um esse	to have been begun
sēnsus, -a, -um esse	to have been felt

3. FUTURE INFINITIVE

a) ACTIVE. The future active participle plus **esse** are the ingredients for the future active infinitive.

optātūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to desire
implētūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to fill
ductūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to lead
inceptūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to begin
sēnsūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to feel

b) PASSIVE. The future passive infinitive occurs so rarely in Latin that its discussion has been omitted from this text.

4. PERIPHRASTIC INFINITIVES

The periphrastic conjugations also have infinitives formed by compounding the present or perfect infinitives of the verb **sum** with the future active and future passive participles. In the active periphrastic conjugation, this infinitive (with **esse**) merges with, and is in fact one and the same thing as, the future active infinitive. The infinitive of the passive periphrastic carries with it the notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety, just as the finite passive periphrastic forms do.

a) ACTIVE.

optātūrus esse	to be going to desire
optātūrus fuisse	to have been going to desire

b) PASSIVE.

optandus esse	to have to be desired
optandus fuisse	to have had to be desired

C. Indirect Statement: Subject Accusative and Infinitive

The statement “Dawn is sprinkling the lands with a new light (day)” is a *direct* statement.

Aurōra terrās novō lūmine spargit.

After words which express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, and the like, we are able to

express statements *indirectly*; that is, the essence of the original speaker's ideas is reported by someone else, although not necessarily in his exact words.

He says that dawn is sprinkling the lands with a new light (day).

In English an indirect statement is generally introduced by the subordinating conjunction *that*, for which there is no equivalent in classical Latin. Instead, a construction with the subject in the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive is used.

In order to change a statement from direct to indirect, take the subject of the direct one and make it accusative; take the finite verb and change it to an infinitive. The rest of the sentence remains unchanged.

Dicit aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere. He says *dawn to sprinkle* the lands with a new light (day); He says *that dawn is sprinkling* the lands with a new light (day).

The tense of the infinitive in this construction is relative to that of the main verb (much like the tense of participles discussed in the previous unit). The *present* infinitive expresses an action which is or was going on at the *same time* as that of the main verb; the *perfect* infinitive refers to an action which occurred *prior* to that of the main verb; and the *future* infinitive signals one which will occur *subsequent* to that of the main verb.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

Dicit aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere. He says (i.e., now) that dawn is sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e., now).
 Dixit aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere. He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn was sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e., yesterday).
 Dicit aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere. He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn is sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e., tomorrow)

PERFECT INFINITIVE

Dicit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsisse. He says (i.e., now) that dawn has sprinkled (sprinkled) the lands with new light (i.e., yesterday).
 Dixit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsisse. He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn had sprinkled the lands with new light (i.e., the day before yesterday).
 Dicit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsisse. He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn has sprinkled (sprinkled) the lands with new light (i.e., today).

FUTURE INFINITIVE

Dicit aurōram terrās novō
lūmine sparsūram* esse.
Dixit aurōram terrās novō
lūmine sparsūram esse.
Dicet aurōram terrās novō
lūmine sparsūram esse.

He says (i.e., now) that dawn will sprinkle the
lands with new light (i.e., tomorrow).
He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn would
sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., today).
He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn will
sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., the day
after tomorrow).

* Since the future active, perfect passive, and the periphrastic infinitives are composed of a participle and the infinitive of *sum*, the participle is, in effect, a predicate adjective and must agree with its noun (the subject of the indirect statement) in gender, number, and case.

D. The Irregular Noun *vis*

In the singular this noun regularly means 'force' or 'power'. In the plural it means 'strength'.

<i>vis</i>	<i>virēs</i>
---	<i>virium</i>
---	<i>viribus</i>
<i>vim</i>	<i>virēs</i> (<i>viris</i>)
<i>vi</i>	<i>viribus</i>

E. Ablative of Separation

Some verbs which express or imply separation or deprivation are accompanied by the ablative case. The prepositions *ā* (ab), 'away from', *ē* (ex), 'from, out of', or *dē*, 'from, down from', are sometimes used with this construction, but more usually the ablative occurs alone.

Hominēs incolās insulae servitūte	The men freed the inhabitants of the
liberāvērunt.	island <i>from slavery</i> .
Oedipus, quod liber (ē) cūrā nōn erat, sē oculīs privāvit.	Oedipus, because he was not free <i>from</i> <i>care</i> , deprived himself <i>of (his) eyes</i> .

The word **careō**, -ēre, 'lack, be wanting', takes an ablative of separation:

Pecūniā careō. I lack *money*.

Allied with this construction are the following:

1. ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN

The ablative, with or without a preposition, expresses the origin or descent of a person or thing.

Aenēās (ē) **deā** nātus est. Aeneas is the son *from a goddess*.

2. ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

In order to express place from which, the ablative is used with the preposi-

tions **ā** (**ab**), **ē** (**ex**), or **dē**. But with names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus**, 'home', and **rūs**, 'country', no preposition is used.

Ab Italiā vēnit. He came *from Italy*.

BUT:

Rōmā vēnit. He came *from Rome*.

F. Accusative of Place To Which

Place to which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **ad**. With names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus**, 'home', and **rūs**, 'country', no preposition is used.

Ad Italiām vēnit. He came *to Italy*.

Ad urbēm vēnit. He came *to the city*.

BUT:

Rōmam vēnit. He came *to Rome*.

Domum vēnit. He came *home*.

G. The Locative Case (*locus*, *-i*, M., 'place')

The names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus** and **rūs** require a special case to express *place in which* or *place where*, which for other nouns is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**. This case is called the *locative*.

For nouns of the first and second declensions, the locative singular is identical to the genitive singular. In the plural for these two declensions, it is identical in form to the ablative plural.

For nouns of the third declension, the locative ends in either **-e** or **-ī** in the singular, in **-ibus** in the plural.

<i>Rōmae</i>	at Rome	(<i>Rōma</i> , <i>-ae</i> , F.)
<i>Athēnīs</i>	at Athens	(<i>Athēnae</i> , <i>-ārum</i> , F.)
<i>domī</i>	at home	(<i>domus</i> , <i>-i</i> , F.)
<i>Carthāgīne</i>	at Carthage	(<i>Carthāgō</i> , <i>-inis</i> , F.)
	or <i>Carthāgīnī</i>	
<i>rūrī</i>	in the country	(<i>rūs</i> , <i>rūris</i> , N.)

UNIT SIX — VOCABULARY

animal , <i>-ālis</i> , <i>-ium</i> , N.	animal
Athēnae , <i>-ārum</i> , F. (pl.)	Athens

atque or ac (conj.)	and
aurōra, -ae, F.	dawn
careō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	lack, be without (+ abl.)
corpus, corporis, N.	body
dīcō, -ere, dīxi, dictus	say, tell, speak
dīū (adv.)	for a long time
domus, -i, F.	house, home
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N.	copy, model, example
exemplum, -i, N.	example
frāter, frātris, M.	brother
homō, hominis, M.	human being, man
ignis, ignis, -ium, M. (abl. sing. igne or ignī)	fire
Italia, -ae, F.	Italy
Iūnō, Iūnōnis, F.	Juno (sister and wife of Jupiter)
Iuppiter, Iovis, M.	Jupiter (god of the sky)
liberō (1)	free
lūmen, lūminis, N.	light
mare, maris, -ium, N.	sea
māter, mātris, F.	mother
mēns, mentis, -ium, F.	mind, disposition, intellect
mīles, mīlitis, M.	soldier
moenia, moenium, N. (pl.)	(city) walls
mōns, montis, -ium, M.	mountain
nōn sōlum... sed etiam	not only... but also
nox, noctis, -ium, F.	night
oppūgnō (1)	attack, fight against
pater, patris, M.	father
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus	rule
rēx, rēgis, M.	king
Rōma, -ae, F.	Rome
rūmor, -ōris, M.	rumor, gossip
rūs, rūris, N.	country (as opposed to city)
sānus, -a, -um	sound, healthy, sane
sciō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus	know
servitūs, servitūtis, F.	slavery
sīdus, sīderis, N.	constellation, star; heaven
soror, -ōris, F.	sister
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus	scatter, sprinkle, distribute
timor, timōris, M.	fear, dread
urbs, urbīs, -ium, F.	city
vigor, -ōris, M.	liveliness, activity, vigor
vīs; (pl.) vīrēs, vīrīum, F.	force, power; (pl.) strength

UNIT SIX — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Athēnae, Athēnārum, ‘Athens’, is a feminine plural word.

The verb **careō, carēre, carui, caritus**, ‘lack, be without’, governs the ablative case: **Lūmine carēmus**, ‘We are without light’. The mark ^, a caret, shows that something is lacking.

Dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus, ‘say, tell, speak’, often governs an object and an indirect object. Verbs of giving, telling, and showing take an indirect object. **Rūmōrem audītum frātri dicam**, ‘I shall tell my brother a rumor that I’ve heard’.

The word **domus** is sometimes considered a second declension noun and sometimes a fourth declension noun. In this book it is presented in Unit Six as second declension, and again in Unit Eight as second or fourth. Note that it is a feminine word even though it has the same endings as a masculine noun in the second declension.

Exemplar, exemplāris, N., and exemplum, exemplī, N., may be used interchangeably. The abbreviation *e.g.*, *exempli grātiā* (*grātiā*, with preceding genitive, ‘for the sake of’), means ‘for the sake of an example’.

Moenia, moenium is a neuter plural word of the third declension; these are protective (city) walls as opposed to the walls of a house.

Nōn sōlum... sed etiā means ‘not only... but also’: **Nōn sōlum sorōre sed etiā frātre careō**, ‘I am without not only a sister but also a brother’.

Notice that **māter, mātris**, F., ‘mother’, **pater, patris**, M., ‘father’, and **frāter, frātris**, M., ‘brother’, are not i-stems and that **pater** has a short -a-.

Regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus, ‘rule’, lengthens its -e- in the perfect tenses. **Rēx, rēgis**, M., ‘king’, and **rēgnūm, rēgnī**, N., ‘kingdom’, are connected with this verb.

The ending **-tūs, -tūtis** is a feminine ending of abstract nouns that indicates a quality or state of being. **Servus** is ‘slave’ and so **servitūs, servitūtis**, F., is the ‘state of being a slave’, that is, ‘slavery’.

Students often have difficulty with the irregular noun **vīs**. In the singular, which lacks a genitive and dative form, the meaning is ‘force, power’ and in the plural, it means ‘strength’. There is no reason to confuse it with **vir**, ‘man’, which has a short -i- and belongs to the second declension, since **vīs** has a long -ī- and is a third declension noun. The accusative plural of ‘men’ is **virōs**, of ‘strength’, **vīrēs** or **vīrīs**. The dative and ablative plural of ‘men’ is **vīrīs**, of ‘strength’, **vīribus**.

UNIT SIX — DRILL

I.

Supply forms of the adjective **bonus, -a, -um** to modify the following nouns.

miles, militis, M.	soldier
soror, sorōris, F.	sister
corpus, corporis, N.	body
mēns, mentis, -ium, F.	mind
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N.	example, model

1. miles	11. militi	21. milite	31. militum
2. soror	12. sorōri	22. sorōre	32. sorōrum
3. corpus	13. corpori	23. corpore	33. corporum
4. mēns	14. menti	24. mente	34. mentium
5. exemplar	15. exemplāri	25. exemplāri	35. exemplārium
6. militis	16. militem	26. militēs	36. militibus
7. sorōris	17. sorōrem	27. sorōrēs	37. sorōribus
8. corporis	18. corpus	28. corpora	38. corporibus
9. mentis	19. mentem	29. mentēs	39. mentibus
10. exemplāris	20. exemplar	30. exemplāria	40. exemplāribus

II.

A. Rewrite these sentences in indirect statement after **sentit**, 'he feels':

1. Puella incolās dē periculō monet (monēbit, monuit).
2. Fēminaē sententiās semper mūtant (mūtābunt, mūtāvērunt).
3. Tēcta in mediō oppidō flammīs dēlēntur (dēlēta sunt).
4. Socii ē terrā discēdere nōn possunt (potuērunt).
5. Amicus vītam sine culpā agit (aget, ēgit).
6. Vita bona ab aīcō agitur (ācta est).
7. Honesti in periculō nōn pōnendi sunt (pōnendi erant).
8. Litterae ad magistrum mittuntur (mittēbantur).
9. Nōti dē malis cōgitant (cōgitābunt, cōgitābant).
10. Oppidum ab inimicīs trāditur (trāditum est).
11. Amicō est (erat, erit) multa pecūnia.
12. Sine cūrā rēgina vīvere nōn potest (potuit).

B. Translate the indirect statements you wrote above, first after **sentit**, 'he feels', then after **sēnsit**, 'he felt'.

III.

Omit the initial verbs of the head and rewrite the indirect statements as direct ones:

1. Vidimus fāmam rēginae esse (fuisse, futūram esse) magnam.
2. Cognōverātis incolās rēginae multam pecūniā dēbēre (dēbuisse).
3. Respondit bellum cum diligentiā pūgnātum esse (pūgnāri).

4. Intellegō nautās villam perdidisse (perdere, perditūrōs esse).
5. Intellēxi villam ā nautis perditam esse (perdi).
6. Sentiunt honestōs malum ē terrā pellere nōn posse (potuisse).

IV.

Translate the following sentences which contain “place” constructions or ablatives of separation or source:

1. Multōs familiā honestā nātōs ab oppidō ad īsulam mīsimus. [**familia**, -ae, F., ‘family’]
2. Multōs Syrācūsīs Tarentum mīsimus. [**Syrācūsae**, -ārum, F. pl., ‘Syracuse’, a city in Sicily; **Tarentum**, -ī, N., ‘Tarentum’, a town in Southern Italy]
3. Ruīnae Syrācūsīs vidērī potuērunt, sed neque Tarentī neque in patriā.
4. Ē viā in cellam ambulāvērunt.
5. Liberi invidiā vitam agimus.
6. Malōs magnā vī dē saxō altō iactāverant. [**iactō** (1), ‘throw, hurl’]

UNIT SIX — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTION A)

1. Rēx militibus imperāvit nē discēderent.
2. Multa lūmina urbī ab hominibus captīs visa sunt.
3. Flammae ignium multōrum nōn sōlum in monte sed etiam in marī vīsae sunt.
4. Multa animālia sorōribus frātribusque mōnstrāvimus.
5. Patri erat magnus timor maris.
6. Si mentēs militum timōre implēbuntur, hominēsne pūgnāre poterunt?
7. Liberi servitūtem timent et cum vigōre pūgnābunt nē servī sint.
8. Rūmōrēsne novōs dē moenibus ignī dēlētis audivistis?
9. Militēs domōs mātrum patrumque vidēre optāvērunt.
10. a) Corpora multōrum hominū vigōre carent.
b) Corpora multōrum animāliū valida sunt.

UNIT SIX — EXERCISES

I.

1. Populus ruēns in viam frātrēs cum frātribus pūgnāre in bellō clāmābat.
2. Poēta dicit mentem sānam in corpore sānō optandam esse.
3. Rūmor est urbēm ā militibus oppūgnātam vī dēlētam esse.

4. Pater māterque audīvērunt filiōs ante moenia Rōmae ignī et ferrō pūgnāvisse.
5. Populus antiquus dicēbat Iovem esse patrem deōrum atque hominum rēgem et terram esse mātrem hominum animāliumque.
6. Dicēbātur Iūnō esse soror Iovis.
7. Vidēmus novam aurōram lūmine mare, terram, et caelum spargere.
8. Postquam antiquum exemplar positum est, poētae Rōmāni nova scribere incēpērunt.
9. Militēs in mediā urbe nōn mentis sōlum vigōre sed etiam corporis viribus bellum gessērunt.
10. Noctem mox tēctūram esse terrās umbris intellegimus.
11. Noctem ruere dē montibus mox vidēre poterimus.
12. Erant novi rūmōrēs corpora militum esse sāna et militēs validis viribus pūgnāre.
13. Hominēs urbium semper pūgnābant ut urbēs essent liberae.
14. Ā frātre dictum est animālia ā mari in terram vī ducta esse.
15. Postquam urbs oppūgnāta est, mātri imperāvimus nē timēret quod sēnsimus sorōrem frātremque pecūniā ac cibum incolis datūrōs esse nē in periculō essent.
16. Respondistī nova pericula validis hominibus oppidi mōnstrāta esse.
17. Postquam urbs superāta est, multus miles patrem mātremque vidēre ardēbat.
18. Rēx populō dixit terram, montēs, mare animāliaque esse cāra Iovi Iūnōnique.
19. Quamquam sidera clāra in caelō vidērī nōn poterant, nautae vēla dedērunt ut rēx esset laetus.
20. Bonum est scīre multum populum ā piō homine, ē deā nātō, ē patriā ad Italiam dūcī potuisse.
21. Ut urbem timōre liberēmus, imperābimus militibus ut discēdant.
22. Si insulam servitūte liberēmus, timor incolārum removeātur.
23. Si vēra scīvissēmus, dīxissēmus incolās in multis insulis nōn sōlum aquā sed etiam pecūniā carēre.
24. Rōmae diū fuerant rēgēs, numquam Athēnīs.
25. Rūrī atque in urbe incolis erant multa pericula.
26. Rēx rēgnū cum vigōre et magnā veniā regit ut novis sit rēgibus exemplum.
27. Urbs capta dēlenda est (dēlenda erat, dēlenda fuit); scīmus urbem captam dēlendam esse (dēlendam fuisse).
28. Aureae urnae servis pōnendae erant in mēnsis ut amīcis domini ad villam ventūris mōnstrārent deōs multa bona piīs dōnāre.
29. Nox si terrās mox umbris tegat, nōn sōlum moenia inimicōrum sine periculō oppūgnāre possimus sed etiam amīcōs servitūte liberēmus.
30. Hominēs honesti in Italīa magnīs cum viribus semper pūgnātūrī erant ut urbēs cūrā essent liberae et fēminaē periculō et timōre carērent.

31. Domum sine morā venient.
 32. Incolae sentiunt rēgem mala ex urbe pellere dēbēre.

II.

1. We understood that the city, after it had been attacked, was being destroyed by the strength of the soldiers.
2. Did you hear the rumors that the soldiers were rushing into the cities?
3. We understand that a model of the city walls has been shown to the men (who are) about to attack the city with fire and sword.
4. They told the father of the brothers that the sons had been chosen in order that they might fight around the city walls.
5. We shall say that poets should write books not only about Jupiter and Juno but also about the sea and about the animals of the mountains.
6. We know that a war cannot be waged forcefully on the sea by the soldiers without great danger.

III. Reading

Cicero warns the Roman senators about men plotting against the state (*In Catilinam** 1.2.4–5, liberally adapted):

Optō, patrēs cōscripti,¹ mē² esse piūm, optō in tantīs³ urbī periculis mē² nōn sine cūrā vidērī, sed nunc mē² inertiae⁴ nēquitiāeque⁵ dāmnō. Castra⁶ sunt in Italiā contrā⁷ populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae⁸ montibus conlocāta,⁹ crēscit¹⁰ semper inimicōrum numerus;¹¹ castrōrum⁶ autem imperātōrem¹² ducemque¹³ inimicōrum intrā¹⁴ moenia atque adeō¹⁵ in patrum cōscriptōrum¹ numerō¹¹ vidētis, et intellegere dēbētis illōs¹⁶ dē periculō et magnis malis urbī nostrae¹⁷ cōgitāre.

* *Catilina*, -ae, M., 'Catiline', the name of the leader of a conspiracy that Cicero was eager to put down

¹ cōscribō (com- + scribō), 'enroll'. (The "enrolled fathers" were the senators.) ² mē (acc.), 'me, myself' ³ tantus, -a, -um, 'so much, so great' ⁴ inertia, -ae, F., 'laziness' ⁵ nēquitiā, -ae, F., 'worthlessness' ⁶ castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ⁷ contrā (prep. + acc.), 'against' ⁸ Etrūria, -ae, F., 'Etruria', a district north of Rome ⁹ conlocō (1), 'locate' ¹⁰ crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētus, 'grow' ¹¹ numerus, -ī, M., 'number' ¹² imperātor, -ōris, M., 'commander' ¹³ dux, ducis, M., 'leader' ¹⁴ intrā (prep. + acc.), 'within' ¹⁵ adeō (adv.), 'even' ¹⁶ illōs (acc. pl.), 'those (men)' ¹⁷ noster, nostrā, nostrum, 'our'

UNIT SEVEN

A. Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative (**dēmōnstrō** (1), 'point out') adjectives *point out* the word with which they agree. There are three demonstrative adjectives of extreme importance:

- (1) **hic, haec, hoc**, 'this'
- (2) **ille, illa, illud**, 'that'
- (3) **is, ea, id**, 'this' or 'that' (unemphatic)

hic, haec, hoc 'this'

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

ille, illa, illud, 'that'

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	jillā	illō	illis	illis	illis

is, ea, id, 'this' or 'that' (unemphatic)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Hunc (illum, eum) virum vidēs. You see *this (that, this or that) man.*
Cum hōc (illō, eō) virō ambulās. You walk with *this (that, this or that) man.*
Vidēsne hoc (illud, id) dōnum? Do you see *this (that, this or that) gift?*

The connotative distinctions between **hic**, **ille**, and **is** can be gauged from the following:

Hunc librum optās? Do you want *this book* (i.e., here, as opposed to that book there)? [Emphatic Demonstrative]
Illum librum optās? Do you want *that book* (i.e., there, as opposed to this book here)? [Emphatic Demonstrative]
Eum librum optās? Do you want *this (that) book* (i.e., the one just referred to, e.g.)? [Unemphatic Demonstrative]

As is the case with other adjectives, **hic**, **ille**, and **is** are often found used substantively:

Hunc (illum, eum) vidēs. You see *this (that, this or that) man.*
Cum hōc (illō, eō) ambulās. You walk with *this (that, this or that) man.*
Vidēsne hoc (illud, id)? Do you see *this (that, this or that) thing?*

In English it is often more convenient to translate **is**, **ea**, **id** when used substantively as a pronoun or, as in the last two examples below, as a possessive adjective:

Eum vidēs. You see *this (that) man; you see him.*
Cum eō ambulās. You walk with *this (that) man; you walk with him.*
Vidēsne id? Do you see *this (that) thing? Do you see it?*
Eius librum habeō. I have the book *of this (that) man (woman); I have the book of him (her); I have his (her) book.*
Patrem eārum vidēmus. We see the father *of these (those) women; we see the father of them; we see their father.*

B. Personal Pronouns

Since the endings of a Latin verb already indicate the subject of that verb, personal pronouns are not required. However, pronouns in the nominative case are sometimes used for *emphasis*.

Clāmō. I shout.
Ego clāmō. It is *I* who shout; *I* am the one who shouts.

The other cases of the personal pronouns are used as they are in English, i.e., as substitutes for nouns.

Librum mihi dat. He gives the book *to me.*
Mē videt. He sees *me.*

Mēcum ambulās. You are walking with *me*. (Note that, with personal pronouns, the **cum** is regularly attached as a suffix to the pronoun instead of preceding it.)

1. FIRST PERSON

ego	I	nōs	we
meī	of me	nostrum	of us
nostri		nostrī	
mihi	to/for me	nōbis	to/for us
mē	me	nōs	us
mē	from/with/in/by me	nōbis	from/with/in/by us

2. SECOND PERSON

tū	you	vōs	you
tui	of you	vestrum	of you
vestri		vestri	
tibi	to/for you	vōbis	to/for you
tē	you	vōs	you
tē	from/with/in/by you	vōbis	from/with/in/by you

NOTE: **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as *partitive* genitives (page 154):

multi **nostrum** many *of us* ("many" is the part, "us" is the whole)

Nostri and **vestri** are used as *objective* genitives; that is, they function as the *object* of the word on which they depend (pages 178–9):

Odium **nostri** est magnum. The hatred *of (for) us* is great.

(**nostri** is the *object* or recipient of the hatred)

3. THIRD PERSON

There is no third person personal pronoun as such. As indicated in section A above, the forms of **is**, **ea**, **id** are frequently used without a noun as a substitute for the third person pronoun. However, a third person *reflexive* pronoun does occur.

4. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A *reflexive* (**reflectō**, -ere, -flexī, -flectus, 'bend back, reflect') pronoun generally refers to or *reflects* the subject of its own clause; therefore, it cannot have a nominative case.

In the first and second persons, there is no separate reflexive pronoun; one uses simply the correct case of **ego** or **tū**, and whether the usage is reflexive or not can be determined from the relationship of the pronoun to the subject: If they are the same person or thing, then the pronoun is reflexive; if they are different, then the pronoun is not reflexive.

Mē videō. I see *myself*. (Reflexive)
 Mē videt. He sees *me*. (Not Reflexive)
 Tē vidēs. You see *yourself*. (Reflexive)
 Tē videt. He sees *you*. (Not Reflexive)

In the third person, however, a separate form is used.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Nom.	--
Gen.	suī
Dat.	sibi
Acc.	sē
Abl.	sē

Sē videt. He (she, it) sees *himself (herself, itself)*.

Sē vident. They see *themselves*.

Note the following examples, which illustrate reflexive and nonreflexive usage:

Eum videt. He (person A) sees *him* (person B).
 Sē videt. He sees *himself*.
 Eōs videt. He sees *them*.
 Sē vident. They see *themselves*.
 Mē videt. He sees *me*.
 Mē videō. I see *myself*.

C. Possessive Adjectives

The possessive adjectives for the first person are **meus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'my', and **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, 'our'. For the second person, they are **tuus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'your', and **vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**, 'your'. Since they are adjectives, they must agree with the thing possessed in gender, number, and case.

Tuum frātrem videō. I see *your* brother.
 Nostram mātrem vidēmus. We see *our* mother.
 Meum imperium ūdit. He hates *my* authority.

As has been seen throughout this text, the possessive adjective need not be expressed in Latin when its sense can be inferred easily from the context. When the adjective is used in Latin, it is strictly emphatic or is used to clarify a point which the context would otherwise leave obscure.

Patrem videō. I see (my) father.

BUT:

Patrem **meum** videō. I see *my* father.
 (the adjective is emphatic or elucidative, i.e., as opposed to "your" father, "their" father, etc.)

The possessive adjective for the third person is **suus**, **-a**, **-um** (singular and plural), but this word is used only *reflexively*; that is, the thing possessed belongs to the subject. When reflexive possession is not desired in the third person, a form of **is**, **ea**, **id** in the genitive case is used.

Suum imperium ūdit. He/she hates *his/her (own)* authority.

Suum imperium ūdērunt. They hate *their (own)* authority.

BUT:

Eius imperium ūdit. He/she hates the authority *of him (her/it/this one/that one)*; he/she (person A) hates *his/her/its* (person B's or something's) authority.

Eōrum imperium ūdērunt. They hate the authority *of them (of these/those men)*; they (group A) hate *their* (group B's) authority.

OBSERVATION: The genitive of the personal pronouns is *never* used to show possession. In order to express possession in the first and second persons, the *possessive adjectives* must be used.

D. Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun introduces an adjectival clause which modifies the antecedent (**ante** + **cēdō**, 'go before'; thus, 'that which goes before') of that pronoun.

The man *whom* you see is my friend.

The relative pronoun "whom" agrees in gender and number with its antecedent, "man", but its case is determined by its use in its own clause. Consequently in Latin the pronoun is masculine singular because of its antecedent, but accusative because it is the object of the verb "you see".

The forms of the relative pronoun follow:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
qui who	quae who	quod which (that)	qui	quae	quae
cuius of whom, whose	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
cui to/for whom	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
quem whom	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
quō from/with/in/by whom	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Note these examples:

Poëta cuius amicus erat caecus puerum audiēbat. The poet of whom the friend was blind was listening to the boy; the poet whose friend was blind was listening to the boy.

(cuius: masculine singular because of its antecedent *poēta* which is masculine singular; genitive because of its dependence on *amicus* in its own clause)

Fēminās quae in viā clāmant ōdimus. We hate the women who shout in the street.

(*quae*: feminine plural because of its antecedent *fēminās* which is feminine plural; nominative because it is the subject of the verb *clāmant*)

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AT THE BEGINNING OF A SENTENCE (CONNECTING RELATIVE)

The relative pronoun is frequently used in Latin to begin a sentence where the English would use a demonstrative or a personal pronoun. Since the antecedent of the relative pronoun is a word or idea in the previous sentence, this usage makes for greater cohesion between sentences and thoughts.

Filius dixit urbem in periculō magnō esse. **Quae** postquam audivī, vērō timēbam. My son said that the city was in great danger. After I heard *which things* (*these things*), I was truly afraid.

Miles mē monuerat ut ex oppidō discēderem. **Quem** postquam mē interfectūrum esse sēnsi, mox discessi.

The soldier had warned me that I depart from the town. After I perceived that *whom* (*he*) was going to kill me, I soon (i.e.,

E. Interrogative Adjective

The interrogative adjective (which? what?) is identical in form to the relative pronoun.

Quem virum vidēs? *Which (what) man do you see?*

Cum **quō** virō ambulās? With *which* (*what*) man are you walking?

Quod dōnum vidēs? *Which (what) gift do you see?*

F. Interrogative Pronoun

The interrogative pronoun is identical to the interrogative adjective in the *plural*; in the *singular*, the following forms are used:

M. F.	N.
quis	quid
cuius	cuius
cui	cui
quem	quid
quō	quō

Quem vidēs? *Whom* do you see?

Quōcum* ambulās? With *whom* are you walking?

Quid vidēs? *What* do you see?

* Note that with the interrogative pronouns, as with personal pronouns, **cum** is regularly attached as a suffix to the pronoun instead of preceding it.

IN REVIEW — Note the following comparisons between pronominal and adjectival usage:

Pronoun: **Cui** taedam dedistī?

To whom (to which one) did you give the torch?

Adjective: **Cui** fēminaē taedam dedistī?

To which (what) woman did you give the torch?

Pronoun: **Quis** taedam tibi dedit?

Who gave you the torch?

Adjective: **Quae** fēmina taedam tibi dedit?

Which (what) woman gave you the torch?

G. Ablative of Accompaniment

The ablative is used with the preposition **cum** to denote accompaniment.

Ad urbēm **cum amīcō** venit. He comes to the city *with (his) friend*.

Ad urbēm **mēcum** venit. He comes to the city *with me*.

H. Ablative of Time When or Within Which

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative. A preposition is not regularly used.

Illō tempore miser erat. *At that time* he was unhappy.

Quīnque annīs hoc opus perficiet. *Within five years* he will complete this task.

I. Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space

The accusative, usually without a preposition, is used to express duration of time or extent of space. It answers the question “for how long?”, whether it be of time or distance.

Quīnque annōs miser erat. *For five years* he was unhappy.

Quīnque pedēs ad dextram ambulāvit. He walked *five feet* to the right.

J. Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

Subordinate clauses within an indirect statement (subject accusative and infinitive) normally have their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense of which is frequently determined according to the rules of tense sequence (Unit Three, section G) after the verb or phrase of the head which introduces the indirect statement.

Vir quem **vidēs** pecūniam optat. The man whom you see desires money.

Dicō virum quem **videās** pecūniam I say that the man whom *you see* (may see) desires money.

(present subjunctive, primary sequence, simultaneous action after **dicō**)

Dixi virum quem **vidērēs** pecūniam I said that the man whom *you saw* (might be seeing) desired money.

(imperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, simultaneous action after **dixi**)

Vir quem **vidistī** (vidēbās) pecūniam The man whom you saw desires money.

Dicō virum quem **vidēris** pecūniam I say that the man whom *you saw* (may have seen) desires money.

(perfect subjunctive, primary sequence, prior action after **dicō**)

Dixi virum quem **vidissēs** pecūniam I said that the man whom *you had seen* (might have seen) desired money.

(pluperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, prior action after **dixi**)

The development of this usage is logical, for the subjunctive is the mood of *idea, intention, possibility, etc.*, as opposed to *fact*, and the person reporting the statement (in this case, “I”) does not claim responsibility that the subject of the relative clause (in this case, “you”) *actually* sees the man. The indicative might have been used in this case, but the tone would then be:

Dicō virum quem **vidēs** I say that the man whom *you actually see* (and I accept responsibility for this statement) desires money.

UNIT SEVEN — VOCABULARY

amō (1)

love

amor, amōris, M.

love

annus, -ī, M.

year

Asia, -ae, F.

Asia

auctor, -ōris, M.

producer, founder, author

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M. or F.	citizen
cōficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus	complete
ego, meī (pron.)	I
finis, fīnis, -ium, M.	end, boundary, limit
genus, generis, N.	descent, origin, race, sort
hic, haec, hoc	this, the latter
hōra, -ae, F.	hour, season
hostis, hostis, -ium, M.	enemy, public enemy
ille, illa, illud	that, the former
inveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus	come upon, discover, find
is, ea, id	this, that; he, she, it
locus, -i, M.	place, spot
meus, -a, -um	my, mine, my own
mors, mortis, -ium, F.	death
noster, nostra, nostrum	our, ours, our own
ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb lacking in the present system; perfect forms have present meanings)	hate
opus, operis, N.	work
opus est (+ nom. or abl. [instrumental] of thing needed; less frequently + gen.)	there is need of
perficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus	Pecūnia mihi opus est. Money exists for me (as a) need; there is need of money to me; I need money.
pēs, pedis, M.	
placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus	Opus est mihi pecūniā. The need exists to me by means of money; there is need to me of money; I need money.
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus	accomplish, complete, finish
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus	foot
qui, quae, quod (rel. pron.)	be pleasing to, please (+ dat.)
qui, quae, quod (interrogative adj.)	press, press upon, press hard
quīnque (indeclinable adj.)	press upon, overwhelm, suppress, oppress
quis, quid (interrogative pron.)	who, which, that
salūs, -ūtis, F.	which, what
salūtem dicere	five
spērō (1)	who, what
--, suī (reflexive pron.)	health, safety
	say hello, greet
	hope (for)
	himself, herself, itself, themselves

suus, -a, -um	his own, her own, its own, their own
tempus, -oris, N.	time, period, season
tū, tui (pron.)	you
tuus, -a, -um	your, yours, your own (sing.)
vester, vestra, vestrum	your, yours, your own (pl.)
vōx, vōcis, F.	voice

UNIT SEVEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Cōnficiō and **perficiō** are both compounds of **faciō** with an intensive prefix and mean 'do completely, accomplish'. The -ō- of **cōnficiō** is long because it precedes -nf. A vowel is lengthened before -ns, -nf, and -nct.

Genus, generis, N., not only means 'descent, origin, race', but also 'sort': **Est homō illius generis**, 'He is a man of that sort'.

Hic, haec, hoc and **ille, illa, illud** are emphatic words which point out the word they modify: this book as opposed to that one; **hic liber... ille**. Since **ille** points to something further away, it can also mean the thing mentioned previously, 'the former', as opposed to the last thing said (**hic**, 'the latter').

Inveniō is a compound of **veniō**, 'come'; it means 'come upon, find'.

Is, ea, id is a weaker word; it does not point out so strongly as **hic** and **ille** and so it can mean either 'this' or 'that'. Of course, when it is used substantively, 'this man', 'this woman', 'this thing' are more easily expressed as 'he', 'she', 'it'. The abbreviation *i.e.*, **id est**, means 'that is'.

Locus, loci, 'place', is masculine in the singular, but, most often, neuter in the plural, **loca, locōrum**, 'places'. **Locī, locōrum**, masculine, when it does occur, usually refers to passages of literature or the points of an argument.

Ōdī is a defective verb. It has only perfect tenses and so the perfect infinitive is given. The perfect tense is translated as present, the pluperfect as imperfect, and the future perfect as future: **ōdī**, 'I hate', **ōderam**, 'I hated', **ōderō**, 'I shall hate'.

Opus and **tempus**, like **corpus**, are neuter words whose nominative singular ends in -us. **Opus est** is an idiom meaning 'there is need of'. What is needed is put into the nominative case or the ablative, less frequently the genitive; the person who is in need is in the dative case: **Opus tibi est mēnsa?** or **Opus tibi est mēnsā?** or **Opus tibi est mēnsae?**, 'Do you need a table?'

Opprimō is a compound of **premō**. Once again, the vowel in the uncompounded verb weakens when the verb is compounded.

Qui, quae, quod can be either the relative pronoun 'who, which, that' or the interrogative adjective 'which, what'. The relative pronoun will have an antecedent; the interrogative adjective will not, but, since it is an adjective, it will

be used with a noun: **Vir quem vīdimus nōs ōdit**, 'The man whom we saw hates us'; **Quem librum legis?**, 'What book are you reading?'

Quis, quid is the interrogative pronoun, 'who, what': **Quem vidēs?**, 'Whom do you see?'

Salūs, salūtis, F., means 'health, safety'; the idiom **salūtem dicere** means 'to greet, say hello': **Pater tuus nōbīs salūtem dixit**, 'Your father said hello to us'.

Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they occur (for exceptions, see Unit Fourteen, section E) and so there is no nominative case. The same forms are used for the singular and plural and for all three genders. The possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um** refers to something owned by the subject: **Rēgīna nautīs suīs imperāvit ut vēla darent**, 'The queen ordered her sailors that they set sail'.

The pronoun **tū** is 'you', referring to one person; **vōs** is the plural 'you'. The plural is never used as a polite form of 'you' in Latin as is the case in many modern languages. The possessive adjective **tuus, -a, -um** is used to indicate possession by a singular 'you'; **vester, vestra, vestrum**, by the plural 'you': **tuus pater**, 'your (singular 'you') father'; **tuī librī**, 'your (singular 'you') books'; **vester filius**, 'your (plural 'you') son'; **vestrae sorōrēs**, 'your (plural 'you') sisters'.

Vōx, vōcis, F., 'voice', is associated with **vocō**, 'call'.

UNIT SEVEN — DRILL

I.

Give the gender, number, and case of the pronouns or adjectives in italics in the following sentences. Then, referring to the paradigms in the Unit, translate only those words into Latin.

1. *Is this your book? Is it his?*
2. *With whom were you walking at that time? Not with your mother, but with his.*
3. *What do you think about the voice of this man?*
4. *I hate those men, but I love these.*
5. *To whom did you give the gifts which I sent to you from that island?*
6. *This man knew that he hated the voice of that man.*
7. *I completed the work, not you.*
8. *Whose book is this which was placed on your table?*
9. *The women whom we saw at that time were the mothers of those boys to whom we had given money.*
10. *(At) what time shall we see them?*
11. *His friends will love him and the woman whom he loves.*

12. *Whose* right hand has written *that* book about which people say many good things?
13. The unhappy man sent gifts neither to *his* sister nor to *his* brother, but *his* friend sent gifts to *his* (i.e., the unhappy man's) mother.
14. The soldier hates *his* country's enemies and *he* desires to conquer *them*.
15. *We* lived in *their* country for five years and *they* did not consider *us* enemies.

II.

Translate the following sentences:

1. Scimus tē domum quae ardeat multōs mēnsēs incoluisse. [mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, M., 'month']
2. Dixērunt sē per oppida in quibus socii vidēri potuissent trēs noctēs ambulāvisse. [trēs, fem. acc. pl. adj., 'three']

UNIT SEVEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C)

1. Hunc locum scimus; illum locum nōn scimus.
2. Hunc scimus; illum nōn scimus.
3. Nōs patrem nostrum vīdimus; is nōs nōn vīdit.
4. Patrem eius vīdit; patrem suum vīdit.
5. Mē sciō; tēne scīs?
6. Eum scit; sēne scit?
7. Sē scit; sēne sciunt?
8. Hi nōbīs salūtem dixērunt.
9. Multi vestrūm mortem timent.
10. Auctor opus suum cōnfēcit quamquam id ēdit.
11. Opus suum ēdērunt.
12. Opus nostrum ēdimus.
13. Opusne vestrūm ēdistis?
14. Mors nōs premit.
15. Mors nōbīs nōn placet.
16. Eis multus amor nostri est.
17. Mihi opus est vōce magnā.
18. Pēs mātris tuae est magnus; pēs meus est parvus.
19. Vōcēm eārum audivērunt.
20. Vōcēm suam audivērunt.

UNIT SEVEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Ad quem misistī librōs quōs noster clārus auctor illō tempore scripsit ut populō tuō placēret?
2. Hunc librum cuius auctor scitur ā vestrīs cīvibus amāmus, sed illum librum qui est in mēnsā ēdimus.

3. Dicit fēminās quās vīderimus in illō locō esse mātrēs eōrum puerōrum qui Rōmam ex Asiā vēnērunt ut sibi laetās vītās petant.
4. Hī ab illā insulā quae est in nostrō mari vēnērunt, sed illi in hōc locō semper vixērunt.
5. Ego illum librum lēgi, tūne hunc lēgisti?
6. Cui dedisti librum quem magister dixit mihi legendum esse?
7. Qui liber tibi legendus est?
8. Quid (tū) agis? Ego litterās scribō. Ego litterās meīs scribō.
9. In quibus terris servitūs vidēri potest?
10. Quibuscum ambulāvisti ē villā in viam quae populō implēta est? Cum quibus fēminis? Cum quibus virīs? Cum tuīs?
11. Filius meī amici vīdit vōs, sed nōs neque tē neque tuōs sociōs vīdimus.
12. a) Ōdimus eōs quibus patria nōn placet, sed nōbis est amor honestōrum piōrumque.
b) Dicimus nōs ōdisse eōs quibus patria nōn placeat.
13. Librī quōs ad nōs mīsistī ab hominibus qui amant suum opus scriptī sunt.
14. Scribisne in tuō librō dē generibus animālium quae scis?
15. Dixērunt dōna quae petitūrī essēmus pulchra futūra esse.
16. Isne est vir quem tua māter vīdit?
17. Cui fēminaē dōna dedit quae optāverāmus?
18. Ii qui piō genere nātī sunt nōn sōlum amant patriam quam incolunt sed etiam ōdērunt hostēs qui eam invāsērunt.
19. Hic amat quod ille ōdit.
20. Quis est haec? Quis nostrārum fuit?
21. Dicam servitūtem quae opprimat hōs quōs vīderitis malam esse.
22. Qui locus est? Ad quem locum vēni et quōcum?
23. “Quis fuit?” “Marcus.” “Qui Marcus?” “Is qui urbem hostibus qui multum tempus genus nostrum oppressissent invādendam esse dīxit.”
24. Quae patria est tua?
25. Quem quinque hōris vidēbō? Tē et tuōs.
26. Ille vir, cui patriae salūs est cāra, pius habētur ā populō qui eum scit, sed nōn sē amat.
27. Quod opus ante tempus perfēcisti? Quod opus eō tempore perfēcisti?
28. Tempore careō ut perficiam opus quod scribō.
29. a) Cīvēs illārum urbium quae habuērunt rēgēs dāmnābātis.
b) Sēnsit cīvēs illārum urbium quae rēgēs habērent dāmnandōs esse.
30. Quinque hōris vidēbimus amicōs quibuscum vīvēbāmus.
31. a) Rēx cuius soror Rōmae vivit bene sē gessit.
b) Scimus rēgem cuius soror Rōmae vivat bene sē gessisse.
c) Scimus rēgem cuius soror Rōmae diū vixerit bene sē gerere.
32. Cuius liber quīnque annōs petitus est?

33. Tibine ea quibus opus est invēnistī? Quod nōn opus est, nōn est cārum.
34. Māter filiō dixit multam salūtem quem multōs annōs nōn viderat.
35. Dixit et sē et suōs amīcōs et vōs invidiā populi periculisque belli premi; sē autem spērāre nec suōs nec vōs miserōs futūrōs esse. “Nisi malō premerēmur, numquam nātūram vitae intellegerēmus.”
36. Tibi imperō ut sciās mortem nōn esse timendam: quae bona sī nōn est, finis tamen illa malōrum est.
37. Quīnque annis bellum cum nostris hostibus gerere poterimus ex quibus spērāmus nōs multam pecūniā et magnum imperium captūrōs esse.
38. Dicit illud opus tibi cōnfectum ā populō lēctum esse.
39. Ut laeti nōs sīmus, nōbis amōre opus est.
40. Magnā vōce clāmāvimus multa eius generis inventa esse.
41. Sentis vōcēs eōrum qui clāment eī hominī nōn placēre.
42. Quīnque pedēs ad dextram nōs mōvimus ut verba magistrī audirēmus.
43. Illi vēnērunt ut quīnque hōrās tēcum agant. Quibuscum in oppidō ambulārēs nī fessus essēs. [fessus, -a, -um, ‘tired’]
44. Cīvēs illīus oppidī spērābant nōs mox discessūrōs esse. Qui quamquam nōbis erant amīci, nōs nōn amāvērunt.
45. Rēx dīxit rūmōrēs in urbe auditōs esse pellendōs. Quae (eī) quī audiēbant probābant. [probō (1), ‘approve (of)’]
46. Eō tempore tuus ad nōs vēnit ut salūtem dīceret. Cui respondimus “Et nōs tibi salūtem dīcīmus!”

II.

Rewrite sentences 11, 13, and 28 in indirect statement after **dīcit** and **dīcēbat**. Translate each of the sentences you wrote.

III.

1. What book is this which has been sent to us by our friends (by his friends) with whom we were walking?
2. The man whom you saw at that time is the sailor to whom I gave those gifts.
3. For five years he hoped that he would complete this, his own work, but now he hates it.
4. We said that we would move five feet to the right in order that we might see your king with his queen and their sons.
5. Those wretched people not only hate themselves, but they also say that we hate them.

IV. Readings

- A. The poet Catullus, after renouncing his love for Lesbia, addresses her (Catullus 8.15-19):

... Quae tibi manet¹ vita?
 Quis nunc tē adībit?² Cui vidēberis bella?³
 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dicēris?
 Quem bāsiābis?⁴ Cui labella⁵ mordēbis?⁶

¹ maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, 'remain' ² adībit (3rd person sing. future indicative), 'will approach' ³ bellus, -a, -um, 'beautiful' ⁴ bāsiō (1), 'kiss' ⁵ labellum, -i, N., 'little lip' ⁶ mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsus, 'bite'

NOTE: For some observations on the rhythm of this and subsequent selections from verse which will appear in the readings, see *A Note on Quantitative Rhythm*, p. 401.

B. Martial 12.73:

Herēdem¹ tibi mē, Catulle,² dīcis.
 Nōn crēdam,³ nisi⁴ lēgerō, Catulle.²

¹ herēs, herēdis, M., 'heir' ² Catullus, -i, M., a man's name; here, it is in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, Section G) ³ crēdō, -ere, crēdidi, crēditus, 'believe' ⁴ nisi (for nī): occasionally, certain metrical necessities cause a long vowel to shorten in verse.

C. Catullus 58:

Caelī,¹ Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,
 illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam²
 plūs³ quam⁴ sē atque suōs amāvit omnēs,⁵
 nunc in quadriviis⁶ et angiportis⁷
 glūbit⁸ magnanimi⁹ Rēmi¹⁰ nepōtēs.¹¹

¹ Caelius, -i, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ² ūnus, -a, -um, 'alone' ³ plūs (adv.), 'more' ⁴ quam (adv.), 'than' ⁵ omnēs (acc. pl. M.), 'all' ⁶ quadriuim, -i, N., 'crossroads' ⁷ angiportum, -i, N., 'alley' ⁸ glūbō, -ere, 'bark, peel, skin' ⁹ magnanimus, -a, -um, 'great-souled' ¹⁰ Rēmus, -i, M., 'Remus', the brother of Romulus, the founder of Rome ¹¹ nepōs, nepōtis, M., 'descendant'

D. Martial 1.38:

Quem recitās¹ meus est, Ō Fidentine,² libellus:³
 sed male⁴ cum⁵ recitās,¹ incipit esse tuus.

¹ recitō (1), 'recite' ² Fidentīnus, -i, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ³ libellus, -i, M., 'little book' ⁴ male (adv.), 'badly' ⁵ cum (conj.), 'when'

E. Martial 1.32:

Nōn amo tē, Sabidi,¹ nec possum dicere quārē:²
hoc tantum³ possum dicere, nōn amo tē.

¹ **Sabidius**, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ² **quārē** (adv.), 'why' ³ **tantum** (adv.), 'only'

F. Martial 5.43:

Thāīs¹ habet nigrōs,² niveōs³ Laecānia¹ dentēs.⁴
Quae ratiō⁵ est? Ēmptōs⁶ haec habet, illa suōs.

¹ **Thāīs** and **Laecānia** are names of women in the nominative case. ² **niger**, **nigra**, **nigrum**, 'black' ³ **niveus**, -a, -um, 'snowy white' ⁴ **dēns**, **dentis**, M., 'tooth' ⁵ **ratiō**, -ōnis, F., 'reason' ⁶ **emō**, -ere, **ēmī**, **ēmptus**, 'buy'

G. Martial 12.80:

Nē laudet¹ dignōs,² laudat¹ Callistratus³ omnēs.⁴
Cui malus est nēmō,⁵ quis bonus esse potest?

¹ **laudō** (1), 'praise' ² **dignus**, -a, -um, 'worthy' ³ **Callistratus**, -ī, M., a man's name
⁴ **omnēs** (acc. pl. M.), 'all' (i.e., 'everyone') ⁵ **nēmō** (nom. sing.), 'no one'

H. Martial 7.3:

Cūr¹ nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne,² libellōs?³
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne,² tuōs.

¹ **cūr** (adv.), 'why' ² **Pontiliānus**, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) ³ **libellus**, -ī, M., 'little book'

I. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.12.27:

Nunc illōs qui in urbe remānsērunt¹ atque adeō² qui contrā³ urbis salūtem omniumque⁴ vestrum in urbe ā Catilinā relictī sunt,⁵ quamquam sunt hostēs, tamen, quia⁶ nātī sunt⁷ cīvēs, monitōs etiam atque etiam⁸ volō.⁹

¹ **remaneō**, -ēre, **remānsi**, **remānsus**, 'remain' ² **adeō** (adv.), 'thus far' ³ **contrā** (prep. + acc.), 'against' ⁴ **omnium** (gen. pl.), 'all' ⁵ **relinquō**, -ere, **reliqui**, **relictus**, 'leave behind' ⁶ **quia** (conj.), 'because' ⁷ **nātī** **sunt**, 'they were born' ⁸ **etiam** atque **etiam**, 'again and again' ⁹ **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, --, 'want'

UNIT EIGHT

A. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Present Participles

There are two types of adjectives in Latin:

1. those which have the endings of the first and second declensions;
2. those which have the endings of the third declension.

First-second declension adjectives have already been learned. Most third declension adjectives are declined largely like i-stem nouns of the third declension. The important features are:

ablative singular: **-i**

genitive plural: **-ium**

accusative plural (M. and F.): **-is** as well as **-es**

nominative and accusative plural (N.): **-ia**

Adjectives of the first and second declension have three terminations; that is, there is a separate nominative singular form for each of the three genders (**bonus, -a, -um**). Adjectives of the third declension can have either three, two, or one termination. These varieties are illustrated below.

1. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS

Adjectives of three terminations are given in the vocabulary in the masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative: **ācer, ācris, ācre, 'sharp'**.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs(-is)	ācrēs(-is)	ācria
ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

The stem for such adjectives will be found by dropping the ending from the feminine singular nominative form.

2. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS

Adjectives of two terminations are given in the vocabulary in the masculine-feminine and neuter nominative: **omnis, omne**, 'every, all'.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus
omnem	omne	omnēs(-is)	omnia
omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus

3. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION

Adjectives of one termination are given in the vocabulary in the masculine-feminine-neuter nominative and the genitive singular: **ingēns, ingentis**, 'huge'.

SINGULAR		PLURAL
M., F., N.	M., F., N.	
ingēns	ingentēs, ingentia (neut.)	
ingentis	ingentium	
ingenti	ingentibus	
ingentem, ingēns (neut.)	ingentēs(-is), ingentia (neut.)	
ingenti	ingentibus	

The genitive singular for adjectives of one termination is given so that the stem on which the declension is built may be known.

4. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

Present participles are declined like third declension adjectives of one termination.

SINGULAR		PLURAL
M., F., N.	M., F., N.	
optāns	optantēs, optantia (neut.)	
optantis	optantium	
optanti	optantibus	
optantem, optāns (neut.)	optantēs(-is), optantia (neut.)	
optanti(-e)	optantibus	

NOTE: For the moment, the following distinction between the *-i* and *-e* endings of the ablative singular should be remembered:

-i generally occurs when the participle is used as an attributive adjective
-e generally occurs when the participle is used as a noun

B. Fourth Declension Nouns

The genitive singular ending for the fourth declension is **-ūs**. While there are three genders of nouns in this declension, the neuter is rare.

frūctus, -ūs, M., 'enjoyment'

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	frūctus	frūctūs
Gen.	frūctūs	frūctuum
Dat.	frūctuī	frūctibus
Acc.	frūctum	frūctūs
Abl.	frūctū	frūctibus

Most nouns ending in **-us** in this declension are *masculine*; the others are *feminine*. Neuter nouns differ from this paradigm in these places:

1. the nominative and accusative singular end in **-ū**
2. the dative singular ends in **-ū**
3. the nominative and accusative plural end in **-ua**

C. Fifth Declension Nouns

The genitive singular ending is **-ī**, but when the stem ends in a vowel, the ending is **-ēī**. Most nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine*.

rēs, reī, F., 'thing'

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	reī	rērum
Dat.	rei	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

NOTE: This completes our discussion of the declensional system in Latin. There are no adjectives which have the endings of the fourth and fifth declensions. Also, the number of nouns which belong to these two declensions is limited; the great bulk of Latin nouns belongs to the third declension.

D. Ablative of Respect (Specification)

The *respect* in which a statement is true is expressed by the *ablative without a preposition*.

Haec fēmina speciē pulchra est.

This woman is beautiful *in (respect to) appearance*.

Meā sententiā nihil perficiunt.

In (respect to) my opinion, they will accomplish nothing.

E. The Irregular Verb *eō, ire*, 'go'

The verb *eō, ire, iī* (or *īvī*), *itus*, 'go', exhibits some irregularities in the present system. The rest of the verb is regular, except as follows:

1. In the perfect active indicative, the second person singular is *istī* (for *iistī*), and the second person plural is *istis* (for *iistis*).
2. The perfect active infinitive is *īsse* (for *iisse*), which provides the stem for the pluperfect active subjunctive. For the full conjugation, see Appendix, pp. 354–355.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>eō</i>	<i>imus</i>
<i>īs</i>	<i>ītis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

(conjugates according to normal rules for the imperfect, but with no *-iē-*)

<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>
<i>ibās</i>	<i>ibātis</i>
<i>ibat</i>	<i>ibant</i>

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>eam</i>	<i>ēāmus</i>
<i>ēās</i>	<i>ēātis</i>
<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>

FUTURE INDICATIVE

(conjugates like first-second conjugation verbs with *-bi-*)

<i>ībō</i>	<i>ībimus</i>
<i>ībis</i>	<i>ībitis</i>
<i>ībit</i>	<i>ībunt</i>

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

iēns, euntis

F. The Present Imperative (*imperō* (1), 'command')

The *imperative* is the mood of *command*. The present imperative is formed for the four conjugations as follows:

1. ACTIVE

For all conjugations, the *singular* imperative active is the present stem:

<i>optā!</i>	desire!	<i>incipē!</i>	begin!
<i>implē!</i>	fill!	<i>senti!</i>	feel!

For the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *plural* imperative is formed by adding *-te* to the present stem; for the third conjugation, the stem vowel is changed from *-e* to *-i-* before adding *-te*:

<i>optāte!</i>	desire!	<i>incipite!</i>	begin!
<i>implēte!</i>	fill!	<i>sentite!</i>	feel!

EXCEPTIONS: The following third conjugation verbs do not have the *-e* in the singular of the present imperative active: *dīcō*, 'say'; *dūcō*, 'lead'; *faciō*, 'make, do'; *ferō*, 'carry'.

dic!	BUT	dicite!
dūc!		dūcite!
fac!		facite!
fer!		ferte! (note absence of stem vowel -i-)

2. PASSIVE

The singular imperative passive is identical to the second person singular of the present passive indicative with the **-re** ending:

optāre!	be desired!
implēre!	be filled!
incipere!	be begun!
sentire!	be felt!

It will be noted that these forms look like those of the present active infinitive.

The plural imperative passive is identical to the second person plural of the present passive indicative:

optāmini!	be desired!
implēmini!	be filled!
incipimini!	be begun!
sentimini!	be felt!

3. NEGATIVE IMPERATIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

Negative imperatives are expressed by the command words **nōli** (singular) and **nōlite** (plural), 'be unwilling', followed by the present infinitive of the verb:

Nōli optāre!	Don't (sing.) desire!
Nōli optāri!	Don't (sing.) be desired!
Nōli implēre!	Don't (sing.) fill!
Nōli implēri!	Don't (sing.) be filled!
Nōli dūcere!	Don't (sing.) lead!
Nōli dūci!	Don't (sing.) be led!
Nōlite dūcere!	Don't (pl.) lead!
Nōlite dūci!	Don't (pl.) be led!

Negative imperatives may also be expressed with the present or perfect subjunctive (with no obvious distinction in meaning) introduced by **nē**:

Nē optēs.	May you not desire; (I hope that you) don't desire.
Nē dūcātis.	May you not lead; (I hope that you) don't lead.
Nē dūxeritis.	May you not lead; (I hope that you) don't lead.

[Another imperative form, the so-called *future imperative*, appears rarely in Latin, generally in formal or legal documents and as a regular imperative

for a few verbs. It has been omitted from the exercises in this book, but it is discussed in the Appendix, p. 362.]

G. The Vocative Case (*vocō* (1), 'call')

The *vocative* is the case of *direct address*. It is generally identical to the nominative, except for second declension nouns ending in *-us* or *-ius*:

Nouns ending in *-us* have a vocative singular in *-e*:

Marcus venit. Marcus is coming.

Marce, veni! *Marcus*, come!

Nouns ending in *-ius* have a vocative singular in *-i*:

Vergilius carmen scripsit. Vergil wrote a poem.

Vergili, scribe carmen! *Vergil*, write a poem!

The adjective **meus**, *-a*, *-um*, 'my', has the masculine singular vocative **mi**:

Meus filius venit. My son is coming.

Mi fili, veni! *My son*, come!

All plural vocatives are identical to the nominative plural.

H. Datives of Purpose (Service) and Reference: The Double Dative Construction

Two datives frequently appear in close proximity, one denoting the *purpose (service)* with reference to which the action or idea expressed in the clause occurs, the other denoting the person or thing with reference to whom or which the action or idea occurs or is relevant.

Filiī mātrī frūctuī sunt.

The sons are (*for the purpose of*) *an asset* (*with reference*) *to their mother*; the sons serve *as an asset to (for) their mother*; the sons are *an asset to their mother*.

Ad urbem salūtī mihi vēnit.

He came to the city *for (the purpose of)* *a salvation* (*with reference*) *to (for) me*; he came to the city *to save me*.

Opiniō mali periculō erat cīvitatī.

The opinion of the evil (man) was (*for the purpose of*) *a danger (with reference) to the state*.

UNIT EIGHT — VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre

sharp, keen, fierce

carmen, -inis, N.

song, poem, incantation

cīvitās, cīvitatīs, F.

citizenship; state

diēs, -ēi, M.	day
domus, -ūs and -i, F.	house, home
dulcis, -e	sweet, pleasant
eō, ire, iī (or iī), itus	go
fēlix, fēlicis	happy, fortunate
infēlix, -īcis	unhappy, unfortunate
fidēs, -ei, F.	faith, trust, trustworthiness
fortis, -e	strong, brave
frigidus, -a, -um	cold
frūctus, -ūs, M.	enjoyment; fruit; profit
frūctui esse	to be (for [the purpose of]) a profit, be an asset to (+ dat.)
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, --	flash, shine
gravis, -e	heavy, severe, important
iaciō, -ere, iēci, iactus	throw
iactō (1)	throw, scatter, shake; boast
ingēns, ingentis	huge
īra, -ae, F.	wrath, anger
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus	order, command (+ inf., not ut clause of indirect command)
libertās, libertātis, F.	freedom
lītus, litoris, N.	shore, beach
longus, -a, -um	long
longē (adv.)	far off, at a distance, far and wide
lūx, lūcis, F.	light
prīmā lūce	at the first light, at daybreak
manus, -ūs, F.	hand; band, troop
memor, memoris	mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
metus, -ūs, M.	fear, dread
mōtus, -ūs, M.	motion, movement
nōmen, nōminis, N.	name
nūmen, nūminis, N.	divinity, divine spirit
ob (prep. + acc.)	on account of
quam ob rem	on account of which thing, for what reason, why
omnis, -e	every, all
opīniō, -ōnis, F.	opinion
pectus, -oris, N.	heart, breast
prō (prep. + abl.)	in front of, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for
profugus, -a, -um	fugitive, banished, exiled
pūblicus, -a, -um	public

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus	look for, search for, seek, ask
rēs, reī, F.	thing, matter, affair, situation
rēs pūblica	state, republic
saevus, -a, -um	cruel
sēnsus, -ūs, M.	sensation, feeling
speciēs, -ēī, F.	appearance
spēs, -ēī, F.	hope
superus, -a, -um	above, upper
superī, -ōrum, M. pl.	the gods above
vertex, verticis, M.	head, top, summit; whirlpool, whirlwind

UNIT EIGHT — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The suffix **-tās, -tātis** is a feminine ending of abstract nouns which indicates a quality or state. **Cīvis** is a citizen; **cīvitās, cīvitātis, F.**, is the 'state of being a citizen', thus, 'citizenship, state'. **Liber**, 'free', thus becomes the stem of the abstract noun **lībertās, lībertātis, F.**, 'the state of being free', i.e., 'freedom'.

Diēs, diēī is one of the two masculine nouns in the fifth declension (the other is a compound of **diēs**). Sometimes it occurs in the singular as feminine, especially when a specific day is meant or when the reference is to time in general: **longa diēs**, 'a long day'.

Domus, 'house, home', has some forms which belong to the second declension and others which belong to the fourth declension; therefore, it is given in this book as both a second and fourth declension noun. The most common forms are:

domus	domūs
domūs	domuum
domui	domibus
domum	domōs
domō	domibus

The locative is **domī**.

The verb **eō, īre, īī or īvī, itus**, 'go', in the perfect active stem may shorten from **-īv-** to **-i-**. There are many compounds of this verb:

adeō	go to, approach
abeō	go away, depart
circumeō	go around, surround
ineō	go in, enter
exeō	go out, depart
	...etc.

Fēlix, fēlicis, 'happy, fortunate', takes the negative prefix **in-** to form the word for 'unhappy, unfortunate', **infēlix, infēlicis**.

Frūctus, frūctūs, M., 'enjoyment, fruit, profit', is used in the dative case with the verb **sum** to form the idiom **frūctū esse**, 'to be an asset to': **Nauta rēginae frūctū erat**, 'The sailor was an asset to the queen'.

Iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, 'throw', produces the frequentative verb **iactō**. A frequentative verb is usually a first conjugation verb formed from the fourth principal part of another verb and which, originally, had the idea of the action being repeated; in many verbs, this idea became lost in time and no discernible difference in meaning is seen in the two verbs. However, **iactō** does have the additional meaning 'boast'.

Iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, 'order', is the only verb of ordering in Latin that does not regularly use the construction for an indirect command (**ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive), but rather an infinitive with subject accusative: **Rēgina nautās vēla dare iussit**, 'The queen ordered the sailors to set sail'.

The word **manus, manūs** is feminine even though, in addition to the meaning 'hand', it means 'a band (of men)'.

Mōtus, mōtūs, M., is a noun of the fourth declension made from the perfect passive participle of **moveō**; it means 'motion, movement'. In the same way, **sēnsus, sēnsūs**, M., 'sensation, feeling', is formed from the perfect passive participle of **sentiō**.

The verb **quaerō, quaerere, quaeſīvī, quaeſītus**, 'seek, ask (for)', may introduce an indirect command: **Quaeſīvimus nē domum irēs**, 'We asked that you not go home'. If one seeks something from someone, either **ā (ab)**, **dē**, or **ex** is used: **Pecūniā ab (dē, ex) amīcīs quaeſīvimus**, 'We sought money from our friends'.

Rēs, reī, F., is an abstract word with many meanings, e.g., 'thing, matter, affair, situation, business, lawsuit, event, property'; **rēs pūblica** is the 'public thing, the public matter', therefore, 'state, republic'.

UNIT EIGHT — DRILL

I.

Give a form of the adjectives **magnus, -a, -um**, **gravis, -e**, and **ingēns, ingentis** to go with each of the following noun forms. In some cases, there may be several possible interpretations.

1. frāter	8. sīdera	15. manūs	22. periculōrum
2. noctis	9. rēgum	16. manuī	23. dōnō
3. sidus	10. rūmōribus	17. diēs	24. bella
4. mātri	11. frātrum	18. frūctibus	25. gladiō
5. sorōrem	12. servitūtem	19. spēm	26. nautae
6. homine	13. corporis	20. manuum	
7. hominēs	14. reī	21. prōvinciae	

II.

Translate and give the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. **Hic homō mente** est validus.
2. **Haec fēmina pulchra** est **fōrmā**.
3. **Ille cīvis sānus** est **corpore**.
4. **Illī infēlicēs** sunt **salūte**.
5. **Superāti militēs vītā** et **vīgōre** sunt miserī.
6. **Si Rōmam eat**, amicis nōn careat.
7. **Nisi militēs urbī salūtī ibunt**, magnus erit timor.
8. **Si ad insulam īset (īret)**, fēlix fuissem (essem).
9. **Rōmam it**; **Athēnās eunt**; **Eis imperō ut Athēnās eant**; **Ad urbem ibant**; **Eis imperābam nē ad urbem īrent**.
10. **Homō ad prōvinciam iēns** erat intellegēns.
11. **Quae est filia hominis ad prōvinciam euntis?**
12. **Dicō homini ad prōvinciam euntī** esse filiam speciē pulchram.
13. **Discēde ē prōvinciā!**
14. **Oppūgnāte urbem** cum **vīgōre**!
15. **Nōlī discēdere ē prōvinciā!** Nē discesseris (discēdās) ē prōvinciā!
16. **Nōlite oppūgnāre urbem!** Nē oppūgnāveritis (oppūgnētis) urbem!
17. **Nōlī, amīce, spectāre** montem; **spectā** campum!
18. **Mī fillī, nōlī** timōre **opprimī!** Nē timōre **oppressus sīs** (opprimāris)!
19. **Morsne erit bonō fīni vītāe** nostrae?
20. **Militēs timōrī cīvibus** missī sunt.

UNIT EIGHT — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C)

1. **Haec cīvitās infēlix** metū gravi dēlētur.
2. **Sēnsūs omnis dē libertāte** mūtāvimus.
3. **Sēnsūs gravēs** nōbis mūtandi erant.
4. **Sēnsūs nostri dē fidē eōrum prō libertāte** pūgnantium mūtandi sunt.
5. **Ācrēs** sunt opiniōnēs oppressōrum dē rē pūblicā.
6. **Quam ob rem infēlicēs** domum ire iussī sunt?
7. **Nōbīs** est metus nūminum omnium.
8. In hāc cīvitāte omnibus est magna spēs libertātis.
9. **Memorēs** metuum suōrum, profugi primā lūce discessērunt.
10. **Carmina dulcia dē frūctū** vītāe audivērunt.
11. **Mihi quaerentī** opus est mente ācri ut haec intellegam.

12. Semper erimus rērum omnium memorēs dē rei pūblicae spēbus.
13. Sidera fulgentia in caelō vīdimus.
14. Opus est rei pūblicae manūs fortium.

UNIT EIGHT — EXERCISES

I.

1. Intellegitur pectus rēginae dulcis in cuius terrā vīvāmus flammīs ācribus amōris saevī ardēre.
2. Rēx ācer, salūtem sociis quaerēns, iussit militēs fortēs civitātem patrum nostrōrum gravem ignibus gladiīsque superāre ut nostra bona sibi frūctuī essent.
3. a) Lūx aurea aurōrae sīdera quae flammīs frigidīs nocte fulgent vertice caelī removet.
b) Lūx aurea aurōrae sīdera flammīs frigidīs nocte fulgentia vertice caelī removet.
4. Nautae oppressi in mediō mari ventis ācribus et frigidīs iactāti clāmāvērunt: “Ō fēlicēs dī, nostri memorēs, pellite ventōs ā nōbīs. Removēte noxam. Nōs sumus frigidī atque miseri. Pōnite iram vestram et iubēte mare magnīs undis carēre. Haec quaerimus prō omnibus dulcībus quae vōbis dedimus.”
5. Si pueri fēlicēs, Rōmā discēdentēs, Athēnās eant, carmina pulchra poētae cōcī audiant.
6. Militēs fortēs sociōs Rōmānōrum gladiīs et armis suis oppūgnāvērunt ut moenia ingentia urbī infēlicis caperent.
7. Pater meus mihi dixit Rōmānōrum manum, factis fēlicem, omnem rem pūblicam sine morā captūram esse; nūminibus enim deōrum salūtem eōrum cūrae futūram esse.
8. Illud periculum gravi rēgi superandum est ut cum oppūgnantī manū militum sociōrum prō libertāte pūgnet. Rēx, i et pūgnā cum oppūgnante! Nōli timēre! Si metus tibi erit, nil perficiēs.
9. Hominēs fortēs quōs in nōmine rēgis misisti ut nōbis cibum pecūniāmque darent militibus nostris captis frūctuī fuērunt.
10. Omnēs militēs spem fidemque rēginae dedērunt cuius oppidum ab invādēntibus profugis superātum erat. Nē dūxeris, rēgina, invādēntēs oppidum dēlētūrōs esse. Meā opiniōne, omnēs vī superōrum in salūte pōnēmur.
11. Iacite magna saxa in mare ut in litore sine periculō ambulēmus.
12. Ō Marce! Dūc ad libertātem patriam tuam! Quaere virōs impiōs et malōs! Iace illōs ē rē pūblicā nōn sōlum prō cīvibus līberīs sed etiam prō tē!
13. Opus est mihi mente ācī ut haec intellegam.

14. *Arma virumque canō, Trōiae¹ qui primus² ab ūris³
 [ad] Italiam, fātō⁴ profugus, Lāvinaque⁵ vēnit [ad]
 litora, multum⁶ ille et [in] terris iactātus et [in] altō
 vi super[ōr]um, saeuae memorem Iūnōnis ob īram.*
 (Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.1-4)

¹ *Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy'* ² *primus, -a, -um, 'first'* ³ *ōra, -ae, F., 'shore'*
⁴ *fātum, -i, N., 'fate'* ⁵ *Lāvinus, -a, -um, 'Lavinian', refers to Lavinium, a city of Latium founded by Aeneas* ⁶ *multum* (used adverbially), 'a great deal, a lot'

15. Profugō, libertātis rutaē memori et salūtem sorōribus frātribusque quaerenti, metus opprimentium saevōrum ingēns multōs diēs erat.

16. Quam ob rem domūs illius manūs nōs in periculō pōnentis dēlētāe sunt? Prō salūte reī pūblicae!

17. Scimus metum rūmōris per oppida euntis magnum esse; Ō rūmōrēs dicentēs, ite in malam rem!

18. Deō scribe carmina, cuius nūmini placent omnia pia.

19. Nōlite ārās deōrum fulgentēs flammis ingentibus dēlēre, nisi ab eis opprimī optētis.

20. Postquam manum mīlitum suam superātam vīdit sēque libertātem mox perditūrum, memor generis amicōrumque et vīriū, in bellū ruit atque pūgnāns interfectus est.

21. Rōma enim vertex omnium est cīvitātum. Quam ob rem ex urbe cēdis?

22. Sēnsus eōrum dē rē pūblicā mihi placeat nisi genus suum et nōmen semper populō dicentēs iacent.

23. Nisi rēgina infēlix amōre perdita esset, patriam ingentem numquam trādidisset et nunc omnēs eam populum bene regentem canerent. Multa enim amicis salūtem quaerentibus semper fēcerat; libertās salūsque omnium semper eī cūrae fuerant. Haec autem omnia mala eī ob amōrem sunt.

24. Vir fāmā ingēns glōriāque et viribus sua iēcit in litus arma dicēns sē numquam prō patriā pūgnātūrum esse nisi ingentia facta rēgi ā civibus mōnstrārentur.

25. Ovidius poēta dicit dūrum hominū genus saxīs in terrā iactātis nātum esse. [Ovidius, -i, M., 'Ovid', a poet of the Augustan Age]

26. Helena, speciē pulchra, salūtem petēbat iēns longē sub lūnā per oppidum ardēns. Incolentibus oppidum neque spēs erat neque frūctus. Dī superī primā lūce post longum tempus domibus in oppidō discessērunt et novās quaeſivērunt. [Helena -ae, F., 'Helen', the name of the Greek woman over whom the Trojan war was fought]

27. Nē longum sit, cīvēs, vōbis omnia dicam ut dē sententiis huius rēgis sciātis.

28. Cīvēs, intellegite spēm omnium in vestris manib⁹ positam esse; pōnите vestram spēm in armis et pūgnāte magnā cum fidē et vigōre.

29. Ille est homō sine rē, sine fidē, sine spē.

30. a) *Socius nōs iussit corpora lūce carentium à campō removēre.*
 b) *Socius nōbīs imperāvit ut corpora lūce carentium à campō removērēmus.*
 31. *Magister nōbīs dē mōtibus siderum in pūblicō dixit.*

II.

1. He felt that the enemy was serving as the author of evil for that city which had been oppressed for many years by all sorts of destruction.
 (use double dative construction)
2. *Soldiers! Destroy the republic! Overcome all free men! Throw liberty, hope, and faith out of the state! Know that all men are your slaves!*
3. *At daybreak the fugitives, unfortunate in appearance, going hopefully through all the streets of the town, were sought far and wide by the soldiers.*
4. *Mindful of all dangers, the fugitives went from home, throwing cares from their breasts and seeking Rome as the summit to their hopes.*
5. *Marcus, my son, don't look at the arms of the invaders which are shining in the light of the moon.*

III. Readings

A. Martial 5.57:

Cum¹ voco tē dominum, nōli tibi, Cinna,² placēre:
 saepe³ etiam⁴ servum sīc⁵ resalūto⁶ tuum.

¹ cum (conj.), 'when' ² Cinna, -ae, M., a man's name ³ saepe (adv.), 'often'
⁴ etiam (adv.), 'even' ⁵ sīc (adv.), 'thus, in this way' ⁶ resalūtō (1), 'greet in return'

B. Martial 5.58:

Crās¹ tē victūrum, crās¹ dicis, Postume,² semper.
 Dic mihi, crās¹ istud,³ Postume,² quando⁴ venit?
 Quam⁵ longē crās¹ istud,³ ubi⁶ est? Aut⁷ unde⁸ petendum?
 Numquid⁹ apud¹⁰ Parthōs¹¹ Armeniōsque¹² latet?¹³
 Iam¹⁴ crās¹ istud³ habet Priami¹⁵ vel¹⁶ Nestoris¹⁷ annōs.

Crās¹ vivēs? Hodiē¹⁸ iam¹⁴ vivere, Postume,² sērum¹⁹ est:
 ille sapit²⁰ quisquis,²¹ Postume,² vixit heri.²²

¹ crās (adv.), 'tomorrow' ² Postumus, -ī, M., a man's name ³ istud (nom. sing. N.), 'that (of yours)'; here, modifying crās, which is being used as a noun ⁴ quandō (interrogative adv.), 'when' ⁵ quam (adv.), 'how' ⁶ ubi (adv.), 'where' ⁷ aut (conj.), 'or' ⁸ unde (adv.), 'from which place, from where' ⁹ numquid (interrogative adv.), introduces a question; do not translate ¹⁰ apud (prep. + acc.), 'at, with, among'
¹¹ Parthus, -ī, M., 'a Parthian' ¹² Armenius, -ī, M., 'an Armenian' ¹³ lateō, -ēre, latui, --, 'lie hidden' ¹⁴ iam (adv.), 'now, already' ¹⁵ Priamus, -ī, M., 'Priam', aged king of Troy ¹⁶ vel (conj.), 'or' ¹⁷ Nestor, -ōris, M., 'Nestor', an aged Greek
¹⁸ hodiē (adv.), 'today' ¹⁹ sērus, -ā, -um, 'late, too late' ²⁰ sapiō, -ere, -īvī, --, 'be wise' ²¹ quisquis (nom. sing. M.), 'whoever' ²² heri (adv.), 'yesterday'

C. A selection from Terence, *Eunuch* 130–135 (very slightly adapted). Thais explains how she came into the ownership of one of her slave women, Pamphila, supposed to be her sister.

Hoc audite amābō.¹ Māter mea illic² mortua est³
 nūper,⁴ cuius frāter aliquantum⁵ ad⁶ rem⁷ est avidus.⁸
 Is ubi⁹ esse hanc fōrmā¹⁰ videt honestā virginem¹¹
 et fidibus¹² scire,¹³ pretium¹⁴ spērāns¹⁵ ilicō¹⁶
 prōdūcit,¹⁷ vendit.¹⁸ Forte¹⁹ fortūnā¹⁹ adfuit²⁰
 hic meus amīcus: emit²¹ eam dōnō mihi,
 imprūdēns²² hārum rērum ignārusque²³ omnium.

¹ amābō, the idiomatic way of saying “please” ² illic (adv.), ‘there’ ³ mortua est, ‘(she) died’ ⁴ nūper (adv.), ‘recently’ ⁵ aliquantum (adv.), ‘somewhat’ ⁶ ad (prep. + acc.), *here* ‘for (the purpose of)’ ⁷ rēs, *here* ‘material gain, profit’ ⁸ avidus, -a, -um, ‘eager’ ⁹ ubi (conj.), ‘when’ ¹⁰ fōrmā...honestā: the ablative is here used to describe hanc...virginem, this maiden ‘of distinguished beauty’ (see Unit Ten, section D)
¹¹ virgō, -inis, F., ‘maiden’ ¹² fidēs, -iūm, F. (pl.), ‘a lyre, stringed instrument’ ¹³ sciō, *here* ‘be knowledgeable, skilled’ ¹⁴ pretium, -i, N., ‘price’ ¹⁵ spērō (1), ‘hope (for)’
¹⁶ ilicō (adv.), ‘right there, on the spot’ ¹⁷ prōdūcō (prō + dūcō), ‘lead forth, put up (for auction)’ ¹⁸ vendō, -ere, vendidi, venditus, ‘sell’ ¹⁹ forte fortūnā, ‘by great good luck’, *Fors Fortūna*, a goddess whom the Romans associated with great strokes of good luck
²⁰ adsum (ad + sum), ‘be present’ ²¹ emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, ‘buy’ ²² imprūdēns, imprūdēntis, ‘unaware (of)’ (+ gen.) ²³ ignārus, -a, -um, ‘ignorant (of)’ (+ gen.)

D. A WEALTHY MAN DESCRIBES HIS TOMBSTONE (Petronius, *Satyricon* 71.9):

Tē rogō¹ ut nāvēs² etiam³ in monumentō⁴ meō faciās plēnis⁵ vēlis euntēs, et
 mē in tribūnāli⁶ sedentem⁷ prae-textātum⁸ cum ānulis⁹ aureis quinque et
 nummōs¹⁰ in pūblicō dē sacculō¹¹ effundentem.¹²

¹ rogō (1), ‘ask’ ² nāvis, nāvis, F., ‘ship’ ³ etiam (adv.), ‘even’ ⁴ monumentum, -ī, N., ‘monument’ ⁵ plēnus, -a, -um, ‘full’ ⁶ tribūnal, -ālis, N., ‘raised platform’ (on which magistrates sat) ⁷ sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessus, ‘sit’ ⁸ prae-textātus, -a, -um, ‘wearing the toga worn by magistrates’ ⁹ ānulus, -ī, M., ‘ring’ ¹⁰ nummus, -ī, M., ‘coin’
¹¹ sacculus, -ī, M., ‘purse’ ¹² effundō, -ere, -fūdi, -fūsus, ‘pour out’

REVIEW: UNITS FIVE TO EIGHT

Review of Syntax

1. Amice, nē mihi illud dixeris; nōlī mihi illud dicere; dic illud mihi.
(vocative; negative and positive imperatives; complementary infinitive)
2. Illīs vitam male agentibus sunt multae cūrae. [male, 'badly']
(dative of the possessor)
3. Bellum prō patriā gestūrī et sociīs dīcentēs mortis timōrem ex animō pellendum esse, ā locō nostrī cessērunt nōn sōlum ut ad campum hostium īrent sed etiam ut exemplum mīlitibus pōnerent. [animus, ī, M., 'soul']
(subject accusative and passive periphrastic infinitive in indirect statement; ablative of separation; ablative of place from which; accusative of place to which with ad; dative of reference)
4. Cēnanti mihi cum fēminā et filiis liber ā servō semper legitur. [cēnō (1), 'dine']
(ablative of accompaniment)
5. Meā opīniōne, illī profugī sentiunt libertātem cīvium dēlendam esse (fuisse).
(ablative of respect; subject accusative and passive periphrastic infinitive in indirect statement)
6. Eō tempore rēx spērāvit sē urbem timōre et servitūte liberatūrum esse. Illā autem nocte interfectus est. Nunc cīvitās rēge bonō caret.
(ablatives of time when; subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement; ablatives of separation)
7. Populus nōn sōlum ab īsulā sed etiam Rōmā salūti cīvitāti vēnit.
(ablative of place from which, with and without a preposition; double dative construction)
8. Hominibus semper est cūra dē pecūniā; dis numquam.
(datives of possessor)
9. Rōmae Athēnisque et multis in urbibus populus liber semper pūgnābit ut multa bona habeat. In hāc autem urbe libertās populi ā rēge ācī dēlēta est; opus est fortī ut cīvēs liberi sint.
(locatives; place where with in; opus est with the ablative)
10. Dē caelō, terrā, maribus montibusque magister multa dīxit ut dē nātūrā intellegāmus.

11. *Quinque annis eius corpus vigōre caruit qui semper ante fuerat.*
(ablative of time within which; possession with the pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id**; ablative of separation)
12. *Dixistis illum multos vestrum eō diē domum quae ab invāidentibus dēlērētur sine morā missūrum esse ut hostēs rūre pellerētis.*
(ablative of time when; accusative of place to which without a preposition with the word **domus**; subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement; subjunctive in a subordinate clause within an indirect statement; ablative of place from which without a preposition with the word **rūs**)
13. *Omnēs frūctūs ē sē iēcērunt ut validi corporibus essent.*
(ablative of separation; ablative of respect)
14. *Poteritne civitās periculum temporum nostrōrum superāre?*
(complementary infinitive)
15. *Rūmor per Asiam ruerat et ad Italiam magnā cum vī ierat.*
(accusative of place to which with **ad**)
16. *Amōre carētis sine quō vīta nōn potest esse fēlix.*
(ablative of separation; complementary infinitive)
17. *Fidēs valida opus est in rēbus gravibus illius generis.*
(**opus est** with nominative)
18. *Sciō eōs malōs qui in urbe vivant (qui Rōmae vivant) amōre pecūniae multos annōs rēctōs esse.*
(subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement; ablative of place where with **in**; subjunctive in a subordinate clause within an indirect statement; locative case; accusative of duration of time)
19. *Bellum pūgnandum est sociis captis ut sint liberi.*
(passive periphrastic and dative of agent)
20. *Post bellum superātis neque pecūnia neque cibus erat.*
(dative of the possessor)
21. *Liber à poētā scriptus est; liber poētae scribendus est; poēta librum scribere dēbet.*
(passive periphrastic; dative of agent; complementary infinitive)
22. *Poēta canēns imperia antiqua ferrō dēlēta interfectus est à viris in oppidō ante vīsi.*
23. *Quibuscum in oppidō vīsus es? Cum quibus amīcis in oppidō vīsus es?*
Quibuscum ambulābāmus amīci sunt.
(ablatives of accompaniment)
24. *Ē quā deā ille nātus est?*
(ablative of origin)
25. *Libertās civium erat rēgī cūrae. Cui dīcēbās tē auxiliō futūrum.* [**auxilium**, -ī, N., 'aid']
(double dative construction)

Synopsis of Verbs

A full synopsis should include the active and passive forms of the verb in the indicative and subjunctive moods, as well as all the participles and infinitives. The following synopsis of **inveniō**, **-ire**, **-vēni**, **-ventus** in the second person singular will serve as a model:

inveniō, invenire, invēni, inventus, 'come upon, find'

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
INDICATIVE		
Present	inveniš	inveniřis (invenire)
Imperfect	inveniēbās	inveniēbāris (inveniēbāre)
Future	inveniēs	inveniēris (inveniēre)
Perfect	invēništi	inventus (-a, -um) es
Pluperfect	invēnērās	inventus (-a, -um) erās
Future Perfect	invēneris	inventus (-a, -um) eris
SUBJUNCTIVE		
Present	inveniās	inveniāris (inveniāre)
Imperfect	inveniřēs	inveniřēris (inveniřēre)
Perfect	invēnēris	inventus (-a, -um) sis
Pluperfect	invēnissēs	inventus (-a, -um) essēs
PARTICIPLES		
Present	inveniēns	--
Future	inventūrus, -a, -um	inveniendus, -a, -um
Perfect	--	inventus, -a, -um
INFINITIVES		
Present	invenire	inveniři
Future	inventūrus (-a, -um) esse	--
Perfect	invēnisse	inventus (-a, -um) esse

UNITS 5-8: Self-Review A

I.

A. Give all possibilities for the following forms, remembering to take into account long and short quantities:

1. *sensus*
2. *res*
3. *ingenti animali*
4. *spebus*

B. Fully describe the *form* of each of the following, giving all possibilities of interpretation, and then give the dictionary forms (principal parts) for each:

1. arsurus esse
2. tecta
3. spargere (give three possibilities when the -e- of the penult is short, and one additional possibility when the -e- is long)
4. petenda sunt
5. vocatae erant
6. quaeratis
7. iecisse
8. cani

II.

Translate these sentences and then do whatever is required for each one:

1. Socii si hostium urbem media nocte ferro flammisque capere potuissent, hoc genus belli nunc militibus nostris non pugnandum esset.
 - a) Give the syntax of **militibus**.
 - b) Give the syntax of **pugnandum esset**.
2. Sciebat auctores horum operum omnium quae omnes cives legissent multa de civitatis nostrae libertate cecinisse.
 - a) Give the syntax of **legissent**.
 - b) Give the syntax of **auctores**.
 - c) Change **sciebat** to the future tense and make any other necessary change(s), explaining why you made them.
3. Verba illorum hominum se multis carere dicentium sed nihil tamen optare vos non solum servitute pecuniae liberabunt sed etiam felices facient.
 - a) Syntax of **se**?
 - b) Syntax of **dicentium**?
 - c) Syntax of **servitute**?
 - d) Rewrite in indirect statement after **scit**.
 - e) Rewrite the original sentence, changing the participial construction to a relative clause.
4. Quis hoc imperium, quis hunc timorem optare potest?
 - a) Rewrite completely in the plural.
 - b) Change **potest** to the *imperfect* tense.
5. Quibus manibus prima luce cives huius rei publicae opprimendi erant?
 - a) Syntax of **luce**?
6. Cape oppidum! Amici nostri ex urbe discedentes bellum in provincia gladiis gesturi sunt.
 - a) Syntax of **urbe**?

7. Pueris, carmina auctorum cum diligentia audire iussis, multi libri novi scripti erant ut mens sana in corpore sano eis esset.
 a) Syntax of *eis*?

III.

Translate into Latin:

1. His sister said to her (own) friend that she (herself) had to destroy the severe rumor about her (own) father.
 (Translate two ways: first, with a passive periphrastic; second, with **debeo**.)
2. Don't hate those men; for much time they have been oppressed by the soldiers, strong in body, who had attacked these walls.

Answer Key — UNITS 5–8: Self-Review A

I.

- A. 1. nominative sing., genitive sing., nominative pl., accusative pl. of **sēnsus**, -ūs, M.
 OR masculine nominative sing. of the perfect passive participle of **sentiō**, -īre, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**
 2. nominative sing., nominative or accusative pl. of **rēs**, **rēi**, F.
 3. dative or ablative sing. of **ingēns animal**
 4. dative or ablative pl. of **spēs**, **speī**, F.
- B. 1. nominative masculine sing. of the future active infinitive: **ardeō**, -ēre, **arsī**, **arsus**
 2. nominative or accusative pl. of **tēctum**, -ī, N.
 OR nominative or accusative neuter pl. or feminine nominative sing. of the perfect passive participle of **tegō**, **tegere**, **tēxī**, **tēctus**
 3. short -e-: present active infinitive, 2nd sing. present passive indicative, 2nd sing. passive imperative
 long -ē-: 2nd sing. future passive indicative: **spargō**, **spargere**, **sparsī**, **sparsus**
 4. 3rd pl. neuter present indicative passive periphrastic: **petō**, -ere, -īvī, -ītus
 5. 3rd pl. feminine pluperfect passive indicative: **vocō** (1)
 6. 2nd pl. present active subjunctive: **quaerō**, -ere, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**
 7. perfect active infinitive: **iaciō**, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**
 8. present passive infinitive: **canō**, -ere, **cecīnī**, **cantus**

II.

1. If the allies had been able to capture the enemies' city in the middle of the night with sword and flames, this kind of war would not now have to be fought by our soldiers.

a) dative of agent with passive periphrastic

b) passive periphrastic 3rd sing. imperfect subjunctive in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition

2. He knew that the authors of all these works, which all the citizens had read, had sung many things about the freedom of our state.

a) 3rd pl. pluperfect active subjunctive subordinate clause in indirect statement in secondary sequence. *Pluperfect* subjunctive because action occurs *before* that of *sciēbat*

b) accusative pl., subject of **cecinisse**, infinitive in indirect statement

c) **sciet...lēgerint**
perfect subjunctive, primary sequence

3. The words of those men who say (saying) that they lack many things, but nevertheless desire (wish for) nothing, will not only free you from the slavery of money but also will make you happy.

a) accusative pl. subject of **carēre**, infinitive in indirect statement

b) genitive pl. present participle in agreement with **hominum**

c) ablative of separation

d) *Scit verba illōrum hominum sē multis carēre dicentium sed nihil tamen optāre, vōs nōn sōlum servitūte pecūniae liberātūra esse sed etiam fēlicēs factūra esse.*

e) *Verba illōrum hominum quī dicunt sē multis carēre...*

4. Who can (is able to) desire (wish for) this power, who can (is able to) desire (wish for) this fear?

a) *Quī haec imperia, quī hōs timōrēs optāre possunt?*

b) *poterat*

5. By what hands had the citizens of this republic to be oppressed at dawn?

a) ablative of time when

6. Capture the town! Our friends departing (who are departing) from the city are about (going/ready) to wage war in the province with (their) swords.

a) ablative of place from which

7. Many new books had been written for the boys ordered (who had been ordered) to listen diligently (with diligence) to the authors' poems in order that they might have a sound mind in a sound body.

a) dative of possessor with **esset**

III.

1. *Soror eius amicō suō dīxit rūmōrem gravem sibi dē patre suō dēlendum esse. Soror eius amicō suō dīxit sē rūmōrem gravem dē patre suō dēlēre dēbēre.*

2. *Nē ūderis (OR nōlī ūdisse) illōs; multum tempus ā militibus, fortibus (validis) corpore, quī oppūgnāverant haec moenia oppressi sunt.*

UNITS 5-8: Self-Review B

I.

A. Identify each of the following forms, giving *all* possibilities and listing principal parts for verbs and the nominative singular, genitive singular, and gender for nouns:

1. arsis	3. invadendi	5. rebus	7. manuum	9. vocaturus
2. imperans	4. iturae	6. vertice	8. removisse	10. iaci

B. Change each of the following from the singular to the plural:

1. illius lucis	3. eo tempore	5. meam vim
2. huic fructui	4. cuius sensus	

C. List all infinitives, participles, and imperatives (active and passive) of **dico**.

II.

Translate each of the following and complete whatever is required in addition:

1. Si cives verba auctorum clarorum adivissent, viris infelibus magna bella non pugnanda essent.
 - a) Explain the syntax of the phrase **viris infelibus**.
 - b) Explain the syntax of **pugnanda essent**.
 - c) Rewrite the sentence completely in the singular.
2. Dicit regem, qui oppida Romanorum bello oppugnet, milites validos superare posse.
 - a) Syntax of **regem**?
 - b) Syntax of **oppugnet**?
 - c) Syntax of **superare**?
 - d) Syntax of **posse**?
 - e) Write the sentence as a direct statement.
 - f) If **dicit** is changed to **dixit**, how will the translation be different? What change will have to be made in the subordinate clause?
3. Quibus viris, oppida Romanorum deleturis, gladii dati erant, ut cum hostibus eorum bellum gererent?
 - a) Explain the form of **deleturis**.
4. Eo tempore femina quae formā pulchra erat ab auctore librum novum scripturo amabatur.
 - a) Explain the syntax of **tempore**.
 - b) Syntax of **formā**?
 - c) Syntax of **scripturo**?

5. Magister superandus erit traditis si malum e terra pulsuri erunt.
 a) Give the syntax of **traditis**.

III.

Translate into Latin:

1. They say that the mountain on which the gods are found is always covered with golden light.
2. That man's mother told him that the great works of Roman authors had to be read by all who wished to complete their lives with glory.

Translate "who wished..." in two ways:

- a) with a relative clause
- b) with a participle

Answer Key — UNITS 5–8: Self-Review B

I.

1. all genders dative or ablative pl. of the perfect passive participle: **ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsus**
2. all genders nominative sing. or neuter accusative sing. of the present participle: **imperō** (1)
3. masculine or neuter genitive sing. or nominative masculine pl. of the future passive participle: **invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus**
4. feminine nominative pl., genitive sing., dative sing. of the future active participle: **eō, īre, ī (ivī), itus**
5. dative or ablative pl.: **rēs, reī, F.**
6. ablative sing.: **vertex, verticis, M.**
7. genitive pl.: **manus, manūs, F.**
8. perfect active infinitive: **removeō, -ēre, remōvī, remōtus**
9. nominative masculine sing. of the future active participle: **vocō** (1)
10. present passive infinitive: **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**

1. illārum lūcum

2. his frūctibus

3. eis temporibus

4. quōrum sēnsuum

5. meās virēs (-is)

C. Infinitives:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	dicere	dici
Perfect	dixisse	dictus, -a, -um esse
Future	dictūrus, -a, -um esse	—

Participles:

Present active	dicēns
Perfect passive	dictus, -a, -um
Future active	dictūrus, -a, -um
Future passive	dīcendus, -a, -um

Imperatives:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Active	dic	dīcite
Passive	dicere	dīcimini

II.

1. If the citizens had heard (listened to) the words of the famous authors, great wars would not have to be fought by the unhappy men.
 - a) dative of agent with passive periphrastic
 - b) passive periphrastic 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
 - c) *Si cīvis verbum auctōris clārī audīvisset, virō infēlicī magnum bellum nōn pūgnandum esset.*
2. He says that the king, who attacks (is attacking) the towns of the Romans by means of war, is able to overcome the strong soldiers.
 - a) accusative sing., subject of infinitive **posse** in indirect statement
 - b) 3rd sing. present active subjunctive in a subordinate relative clause in indirect statement, primary sequence depending on **dīcit**
 - c) complementary infinitive
 - d) present infinitive in indirect statement
 - e) *Rēx, qui oppida Rōmānōrum bellō oppūgnat, militēs validōs superāre potest.*
 - f) He said...; was attacking...; was able to overcome...; **oppūgnāret**; but if **dīxit** is translated as an English present perfect, i.e., 'he has said', then no change has to be made in the rest of the translation or in the subordinate clause.
3. To which (what) men about to destroy (who were about to destroy) the towns of the Romans had the swords been given in order that they might wage war with their enemies?
 - a) dative pl. future active participle, agreeing with **virīs**
4. At that time a (the) woman who was beautiful in form was loved by an (the) author about (who was about) to write a new book.
 - a) ablative of time when
 - b) ablative of respect
 - c) ablative masculine sing., future active participle modifying **auctōre**

5. The master (director) will have to be conquered by the men who have been betrayed if they are (will be) about to drive evil out of the land.

a) dative pl. masculine of the perfect passive participle;
dative of agent with passive periphrastic construction

III.

1. Dicunt montem in quō dī inveniantur lūce aureā semper tegī.
2. Māter illius ei dixit magna opera auctōrum Rōmānōrum omnibus legenda esse quī vitās (suās) cum glōriā cōnficere (perficere) optārent.
or . . . omnibus optantibus vitās cum glōriā cōnficere (perficere).

UNIT NINE

A. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives in Latin occur in three *degrees*: positive (e.g., “brave”), comparative (e.g., “braver, rather brave, too brave”), and superlative (e.g., “bravest, most brave, very brave”). Adjectives appear in the vocabularies in the positive degree.

Note the following observations for the formation of the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives.

1. COMPARATIVE

Find the stem of the adjective by dropping the genitive singular ending from the positive form, and to this stem add **-iōr** for the masculine and feminine, **-iōs** for the neuter.

validus, -a, -um	valid/i	validior, validius
fortis, -e	fort/is	fortior, fortius

The comparative adjective is declined like third declension adjectives, but with **-um** in the genitive plural instead of **-iūm** and with **-a** in the neuter nominative and accusative plural instead of **-ia** (that is, it is not an i-stem). The stem for adjectives in the comparative degree is the full nominative singular masculine-feminine form, with the **-o-** lengthened.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs(-is)	fortiōra
fortiōre(-i)	fortiōre(-i)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

2. SUPERLATIVE

Most adjectives form the superlative by adding **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the positive form.

validissimus, -a, -um
fortissimus, -a, -um

These are declined like first-second declension adjectives.

Adjectives which end in **-er** in the masculine nominative singular of the positive degree form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** directly to the masculine nominative form.

ācer, ācris, ācre ācerrimus, -a, -um

Six adjectives which end in **-lis** in the masculine and feminine nominative singular of the positive degree form the superlative by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the stem of the positive degree.

similis, -e simillimus, -a, -um

These adjectives are:

facilis, -e	easy
difficilis, -e	difficult
similis, -e	similar
dissimilis, -e	unlike
gracilis, -e	slender
humilis, -e	humble, low

3. Quam PLUS THE SUPERLATIVE

Quam followed by an adjective (or adverb) in the superlative degree gives the meaning 'as... as possible'.

Quam fortissimus est. He is *as brave as possible*; he is *as brave as can be*.

B. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Five common adjectives have irregular comparisons and must be learned.

bonus, -a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
good	better	best
malus, -a, -um	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
bad	worse	worst
magnus, -a, -um	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
great	greater	greatest
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
small	smaller	smallest
multus, -a, -um	plūs (neuter only in sing.)	plūrimus, -a, -um
much	pl., plūrēs, plūra	most, very many
	more	

NOTE: The masculine plural comparative of **magnus**, **maiōrēs**, is frequently used to mean 'ancestors', (i.e., 'those greater [in respect to age]').

C. Comparison with *quam*; Ablative of Comparison

Comparisons can be made in two ways in Latin:

1. Pater eius est altior **quam** hospes. His father is taller *than the guest*.

The conjunction **quam** is here equivalent to the English 'than'. As in English, **quam**, 'than', has the same case after it as it has before it.

Dixit patrem esse altiōrem **quam** hospitem. He said that his father was taller *than the guest*.

Pater est altior **quam** ego. The father is taller *than I*.

2. Pater eius est altior hospite. His father is taller *than the guest*.

Here the ablative, without a preposition, is used with the comparative adjective to denote comparison. The ablative of comparison and the construction with **quam** may be used interchangeably with no distinction in meaning.

D. Ablative of Degree of Difference

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with comparatives to express the degree in which the two things being compared differ. Less frequently, this kind of ablative is also found with a superlative in statements in which there is an implicit comparative judgment made.

Pater eius est **pede** altior hospite His father is taller than the guest *by a foot*;
(**quam** hospes). his father is *a foot* taller than the guest.

Nunc **multō** fēlicior est. Now he is happier *by much*; he is *much* happier now.

Multō optimus ex omnibus pūgnantibus est. He is *by far (much)* the best of all who are fighting.

E. Adverbs and Their Comparison

1. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives. Two of the more frequent formations of the positive degree are noted below:

a) From adjectives of the first and second declensions, adverbs are frequently formed by adding the ending **-ē** to the stem of the adjective.

miser, misera, miserum
poor

miserē
poorly

b) Adverbs formed from adjectives of the third declension frequently exhibit the ending **-iter**.

fortis, -e	fortiter
strong	strongly, bravely

There is no way to determine that a given adverb will not be formed according to these rules; adverbs formed differently will be given as vocabulary items.

2. The comparative degree of an adverb is formed by adding the ending **-ius** to the stem of the positive degree of the *adjective*. It will be noted that the comparative is really the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

fortiter	fortius
bravely	more bravely, rather bravely, too bravely
facile	facilius
easily	more easily, rather easily, too easily
miserē	miserius
poorly	more poorly, rather poorly, too poorly

3. The superlative is formed with the ending **-issimē** (or **-rimē**, **-limē** when the adjective would be thus formed; see section A above) added to the stem of the positive degree of the *adjective*.

fortissimē	most bravely
facillimē	most easily
miserrimē	most poorly
quam miserrimē	as poorly as possible

F. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

bene	melius	optimē
well	better	best
male	peius	pessimē
badly	worse	worst
magnopere	magis	maximē
greatly	more	most, especially
parum	minus	minimē
not enough	less	least
multum	plūs	plūrimum
much	more	most
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
long (in time), for a long time	longer	longest

saepe	saepius	saepissimē
often	more often	very often
--	prius	prīmū
	before	first
prope	propius	proximē
near	nearer	nearest, next

G. Partitive Genitive

The genitive is sometimes used in Latin to express the *whole* group or unit of which the word on which the genitive depends expresses the *part*. This usage is called the *partitive genitive* or the *genitive of the whole*.

Fortissimus **omnium militum** ad mē The bravest *of all the soldiers* came to me.

Multi **hominum** opīnōnēs sapientium Many *of the men* praise the opinions of the wise.

The ablative, preceded by the prepositions **ē** (ex), or **dē** is used as an alternative to the partitive genitive with some words. This is especially frequent when the word denoting the *part* is a cardinal numeral.

Quīnque **ex militib⁹** domum vēnērunt. Five *(out of) the soldiers* came home.

Some words used substantively in Latin require a partitive genitive to render an idea which in English would be expressed with a noun and adjective.

Satis **pecūniae** habet. He has enough *(of) money*.

Plūs **pecūniae** habet quam tū. He has more *(of) money* than you.

In the singular, the word **plūs** is used substantively and is generally indeclinable; in the plural, it is used attributively and is declined.

Plūs hominū ad sē vocāvit. He called *more (of) men* to him.

Plūrēs hominēs ad sē vocāvit. He called *more men* to him.

UNIT NINE — VOCABULARY

aiō (defective verb) say, affirm

[pres.: **aiō**, **ais**, **ait**, **--**, **--**, **aiunt**

imperf.: **aiēbam**, etc. (complete)

pres. subjunctive: **--**, **aiās**, **aiat**,

--, **--**, **aiant**]

amicitia, **-ae**, F. friendship

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus	fall
cāsus, -ūs, M.	fall, accident, occurrence, chance
cōnsilium, -ī, N.	counsel, plan, advice
crūdēlis, -e	cruel
dēmēns, dēmentis	mad, raving
facilis, -e	easy
facile (adv.)	easily
difficilis, -e	difficult
gracilis, -e	slender, unadorned, simple
hospes, -itis, M.	guest, host
humilis, -e	humble, lowly
laudō (1)	praise
laus, laudis, F.	praise
magnopere (adv.)	greatly
maiōrēs, -um, M. pl.	ancestors
male (adv.)	badly
Mārs, Mārtis, M.	Mars (god of war)
multum (adv.)	much, very
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus	fortify
nam (conj.)	for
odium, -ī, N.	hatred
parum (adv. and indeclinable adj.)	too little, not enough
parvus, -a, -um	little, small
prius (adv.)	before, previously
quam p̄īmūm	as soon as possible
proximus, -a, -um	nearest, next
quam (conj.)	than (used in comparisons)
saepe (adv.)	often
sapiēns, -ntis	wise
sapientia, -ae, F.	wisdom
satis (adv. and indeclinable adj.)	enough
serēnus, -a, -um	serene, calm
similis, -e	like, similar (to) (+ gen. or dat.)
dissimilis, -e	dissimilar, unlike (+ gen. or dat.)
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus	loosen, free, untie
summus, -a, -um	highest, top (of)
supplex, supplicis	suppliant, humble
tam (adv.)	so
tam ... quam	so ... as, as ... as
templum, -ī, N.	temple
tūtus, -a, -um	safe

UNIT NINE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The easiest way to memorize the irregular comparisons of adjectives is to associate the forms with the English derivatives:

bonus, melior (*ameliorate* is to make *better*), **optimus** (an *optimist* is a person who looks at the *best* side of things)

malus, peior (a *pejorative* meaning of a word is a *worse* one), **pessimus** (a *pessimist* is a person who looks at the *worst* side of things)

magnus, maior (a *major* problem is a *rather great* one), **maximus** (the *maximum* penalty is the *largest* one)

parvus, minor (a *minor* problem is a *rather small* one; eight *minus* (*smaller* [by]) two is six), **minimus** (the *minimum* penalty is the *smallest* one)

multus, plūs (six *plus* (*more* [by]) two is eight; *plural* means *more* than one), **plūrimum** does not have an English derivative.

Maiōrēs, maiōrum, M. pl. means ‘ancestors’ because they are the ones ‘greater (in age)’ than we are.

Quam with the superlative means ‘as... as possible’; with the comparative it means ‘than’. **Quam** can mean ‘how’ in an exclamatory sense: **Quam pulchra est!**, ‘How beautiful she is!’ And, of course, **quam** can be the feminine accusative singular of the relative pronoun or interrogative adjective.

Aiō is a defective verb with not many forms; the present tense of the indicative is found in four persons, of the subjunctive in three. The imperfect indicative is complete. The verb means ‘say’ or ‘say yes’.

The suffix **-tia**, sometimes with a connecting vowel, or the suffix **-ia** is added to the stem of an adjective to produce an abstract noun; thus, **amicitia** is ‘friendship’. **Sapiēns**, ‘wise’, produces **sapientia**, ‘wisdom’.

Cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsus, ‘fall’, has many compounds; it must not be confused with **caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesus**, ‘fell, cut’, which also has many compounds. **Incidō**, ‘fall into, happen’, is a compound of **in** + **cadō**; **incidō**, ‘cut into, engrave’, is from **in** + **caedō**; the -ae- diphthong becomes -i- in compounds. Once again it is clear that it pays to be attentive to long and short vowels. The last principal part of **cadō** produces the fourth declension noun **cāsus, cāsūs**, M., ‘fall, accident, occurrence, chance’.

Dēmēns (**dē** + **mēns**) describes someone who is ‘(down, away) from his mind’, thus, ‘mad, raving’.

Note the irregular adverbs **facile**, ‘easily’; **male**, ‘badly’; **multum**, ‘much, very’; and **magnopere** (uncontracted, **magnō opere**), ‘with great work’, thus, ‘greatly’.

Remember that the six adjectives ending in **-lis** — **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis**, and **humilis** — form their superlatives by doubling the **-l** and adding **-imus**.

The noun **laus**, **laudis**, F., ‘praise’, is related to the first conjugation verb **laudō**, ‘praise’.

Nam is a *conjunction* meaning ‘for’: **Nam omnis populus rēgem timuit**, ‘For all the people feared the king’.

The neuter second declension noun **odium**, ‘hatred’, is related to the verb **ōdi**, ‘hate’. The English word *annoy* comes from **in odiō**.

Sometimes an adjective is more easily translated as an adverb: **Humilēs in tēctum dominī vēnimus**, ‘We came humbly into the master’s house’; literally, ‘We, humble, came into the master’s house’; **Prīmī accessērunt**, ‘They were the first to approach’ or ‘They approached first’.

Proximus, **-a**, **-um** is often found with the dative: **Proximus turbae fuit**, ‘He was nearest the crowd’.

Similis and **dissimilis** may govern either the genitive or the dative without distinction: **Patris similis est** and **Patrī similis est** both mean ‘He is like his father’.

Summus, **-a**, **-um** means ‘top (of)’: **Animal in summō monte vīdimus**, ‘We saw the animal on the top of the mountain’.

Tam...quam means ‘so...as’: **Quid est tam dulce quam habēre amīcum cārissimum?**, ‘What is so sweet as having (*literally*, ‘to have’) a very dear friend?’

UNIT NINE — DRILL

I.

Give the positive, comparative, and superlative forms of the following adjectives to go with each of the following nouns. Several interpretations of the cases of the nouns may be possible.

miser, **misera**, **miserum**, ‘wretched, unhappy, poor’

saevus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘cruel’

humilis, **-e**, ‘humble, low’

1. manūi	3. spērum	5. hominibus	7. carmen
2. profugi	4. civitātēs	6. amīcum	8. corpora

II.

Translate:

1. **Hoc opus difficilius est illō.**
2. **Hoc opus difficilius est quam illud.**
3. **Hoc opus difficilius est parvō quam illud.**
4. **Hoc opus multō difficilius est illō.**
5. **Hae fēminaē sāniōrēs sunt illis.**
6. **Hae fēminaē multō sāniōrēs sunt quam illae.**
7. **Dīcimus hās fēminās multō sāniōrēs esse quam illās.**

8. Dicimus hās fēminās multō sāniōrēs esse illis.
9. Hī hominēs fortiōrēs plūs pecūniae optant.
10. Multa pecūnia hominibus meliōribus optanda est; parum pecūniae hominibus peiōribus optandum est.
11. Plūs pecūniae hominibus optandum est.
12. Plūs pecūniae hominibus meliōribus optandum est quam peiōribus.
13. Studium mihi dulcius est bellō.
14. Studium mihi dulcius est quam bellum.
15. Verba vēra mihi dixērunt.
16. Verba vēriōra mihi dixērunt.
17. Verba vērissima mihi dixērunt.
18. Verba quam vērissima mihi dixērunt.
19. Militēs ācerrimi rēgī ācriōri dixērunt sē sententiās ācrēs magistrōrum petītūrōs esse.
20. Scimus sententiās ācerrimās magistrōrum meliōrēs esse quam arma ācerrima.
21. Scimus sententiās ācerrimās magistrōrum meliōrēs esse armis ācerrimis.
22. Hic puer multō facilius quam frāter legit.
23. Militēs quam ācerrimē et fortissimē pūgnāvērunt.
24. Rēx novus melius quam pater rēxit.
25. Honestē et fēlīciter vītam agere optāmus.

UNIT NINE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D)

1. Domī quam tūtissimī esse dēbēmus.
2. a) Puer frātri est simillimus, nam est tam sapiēns quam frāter.
b) Puer est sorōris dissimilis.
3. Multō facilius est laudāre amīcum quam inimicum.
4. Sapientēs aiunt amīcitiam esse summum bonum.
5. Maiōribus fuisse odium belli dīcitur.
6. Dōna cāriōra dari filiō sapientissimō iussit.
7. Tēcta domuum altiōrum (altissimārum) fulgēbant lūmine clāriōre (clārissimō).
8. Hic hospes multō serēnior est illō.
9. Supplicēs humillimi miserrimique timōre mōti urbem regentēs magnopere laudāvērunt.
10. Multae urbēs antiquae pulcherrimaeque cāsū crūdēlissimō dēlētae sunt.
11. Auctor clārior erat frātre clārō.
12. Dicimus Mārtem saepe crūdēliōrem esse multis dīs.
13. Hic ager est quīnque pedibus longior quam ille.
14. Nam cōnsilium dēmentis est multō crūdēlissimum.

UNIT NINE — EXERCISES

I.

- Urbs pulcherrima nōn sōlum umbrā maiōre timōris tegitur, sed etiam rūmōribus crūdēlibus (crūdēliōribus, crūdēlissimis) dē populō dēlētur.
- Lūx discēdere incipit atque nox venit; maiōrēsque cadunt altis dē montibus umbrae.
- Plūs studii in cūris animae pōnendum est quam in cūris corporis; nam anima est aeterna, sed corpus dēlēbitur.
- Nihil est bellō tam simile quam ruīna.
- Numquam, nisi mē saepius ōrāveris, servitūte amicūm miserrimum facile solvēs.
- Quam ob rem maxima dēbētur militib⁹ fortissimis venia? Bellum diūtissimē et fortiter ab eis gestum est.
- Bellum grave et crūdēlissimum militib⁹ fortiōrib⁹ gerendum est nē nāti incolārum gladiis flammisque superentur.
- Audiēbāmus multōs supplicēs validiōrēs ad templum magnō cum studiō ventūrōs esse ut deōs ōrārent ut periculum ab oppidō removērētur.
- Quid infēlici servō dulcīs cūris solūtis?
- Manū supplicī dōna gravia portāns ad rēgēs pessimōs et crūdēliōrēs humilis vēnit ut ab eīs veniam prō illis multō infēliciōrib⁹ sē quaereret.
- Summōs virōs dēmentiōrēs esse dicēbās; nunc eōs quam dēmentissimōs dicis.
- Sed nil dulcīs est, bene quam mūnitā tenēre opīniōnibus sapientium templā serēna.
- Hanc villam nātūrā et opere mūnitam incolae humilēs quam prīmū capient.
- Bellum est grave Mārtis opus; vitam quam serēnissimam optantibus nihil bellō saepe est peius.
- Auctor dixit illum hospitem opus magnum in manib⁹ habēre; opus simillimum esse librō ab infēliciōre poētā qui Rōmā pulsus esset scriptō.
- Incipit rēs melius īre quam spērāveram.
- Plūrēs tibi dabō, qui nōn amicō, sed amicitiā caruērunt.
- Facilius genus vitae hominib⁹ quaerendum est.
- Eō diē mihi dixit sē audīvisse fēminam altiōre vōce clāmantem satis sibi pecūniae nōn esse ut Rōmā sine morā īret; proximō autem diē sē invenire eam nōn posse.
- Aiunt plūs dōnōrum pessimis servis nōn optandum esse quam optimis.
- Civēs honestissimī, spectāte meum hunc cāsum tam gravem, tam malum.
- Illa civitās multō plūris quam nostra cāsūs mortis habet.
- Oppidum parvum quam optimē mūniēbātur nē hostēs id diūtius oppūgnārent.

24. Maximē maiōrēs laudant qui cum diligentia sē prō rē pūblicā gessērunt.
25. Aiēbat sē facillimē lēgisse librōs quōs mīssissēs.
26. Supplex intellēxit amōrem esse difficiliōrem sibi multō quam odium.
27. Nihil est mortis tam simile quam vīta sine salūte, sine pecūniā, sine maximō studiō rērum bonārum.
28. Mors animam cārissimam corpore solvit.
29. Cum omnibus tuis laudibus, haec, meā opiniōne, est maxima: sapientia tua cīvēs metū solvit quō magnopere atque diūtius territī sunt.
30. Bona opiniō hominum tūtior pecūniā est. Nam pecūnia sine cōnsiliō saepe perditur; fāma nōbiscum semper vīvit.
31. Quae rēs in sē parum cōnsiliī neque multum sapientiae habet, eam cōnsiliō regere nōn potes.
32. Cognōvimus virōs liberōs vitam difficillimam agere quod illis opus est studiō et diligentia quibus rem pūblicam bene gerant. [quibus = ut hīs (introducing a clause of purpose)]
33. Amīcō bonō nihil tenērī melius potest.
34. Cōnsiliis optimis vitam agere dēbēbimus, si quam fēlicissimē vivere optābimus.
35. Crūdēliōrem imperium tenentem ūrāvit supplex nē odium profugōrum eī dē poenā cōgitanti esset cūrae.
36. Poēta dixit sē librum sententiis gracilibus atque quam dulcissimis implētūrum esse.
37. Rōmae satis odiī, laudis parum erat.
38. Maiōrēs enim vestri bella saepe quaeſivērunt ob maximum glōriae amōrem. Male quaeſivērunt.
39. Noster amātissimus auctor dixit, “Verbum sapienti sat (i.e., satis) est.”
40. Hostem crūdēlissimum sī vīdisset, arma manū cecidissent.
41. Rēgem saeviōrem cīvēs prius Rōmā, post et ex Italiā pepulērunt.
42. Multum laudātur quod vīta cōnsiliis sapientium mūnitur.

II.

1. The rather humble guest, who had been attacked by the raving inhabitants in the middle of the city, had to fortify the temple as well as possible in order that he might be safe.
2. It is said that gossip is a much more evil thing than cruel war.
3. The king's very healthy brother feels that the constellations are brighter than the fires in the streets of this city.
4. These soldiers are much better in strength than those.
5. At that time he would very easily have overcome the brave soldiers if (his) rather heavy arms had not fallen from (his) very strong hands.

III. Reading

Pliny writes about his sorrow over the death of Fundanus' daughter on the night before her wedding (Pliny 5.16, slightly adapted):

Tristissimus¹ haec tibi scribō dē morte Fundāni² nostri filiae minōris. Quā puellā nihil umquam fēstivius,³ amābilis⁴ nec modo⁵ longiōre vitā, sed prope⁶ immortālitātē⁷ dīgnius⁸ vidī. Nōndum⁹ annōs quattuordecim¹⁰ implēverat, et iam¹¹ illī anilis¹² sapientia, fēminaē gravitās¹³ erat, et tamen suāvitās¹⁴ puellae cum virginis¹⁵ verēcundiā.¹⁶ Ut¹⁷ illa patris cervīcibus¹⁸ inhaerēbat!¹⁹ Ut¹⁷ nōs amīcōs patris et amanter²⁰ et modestē²¹ complectēbātur!²² Ut¹⁷ nūtricēs,²³ ut¹⁷ paedagōgōs,²⁴ ut¹⁷ magistrōs prō suō quemque²⁵ officiō²⁶ diligēbat!²⁷ Quam²⁸ studiōsē,²⁹ quam²⁸ intellegenter³⁰ legēbat! Ut¹⁷ parcē³¹ custōditēque³² lūdēbat!³³ Quā illa temperantia,³⁴ quā patientia,³⁵ quā cōstantia³⁶ novissimam³⁷ valētūdinem³⁸ tulit!³⁹ Medicis⁴⁰ pārēbat,⁴¹ sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur⁴² sēque dēstitūtam⁴³ corporis vīribus vigōre mentis sustinēbat.⁴⁴ Dūrāvit⁴⁵ hic illi ūsque⁴⁶ ad mortem nec aut⁴⁷ spatiō⁴⁸ valētūdinis³⁸ aut⁴⁷ metū mortis īfrāctus est,⁴⁹ quō plūrēs graviōrēsque nōbīs causās⁵⁰ relinqueret⁵¹ et dēsiderii⁵² et dolōris.⁵³ O triste¹ plānē⁵⁴ acerbumque fūnus!⁵⁵ O morte ipsā⁵⁶ mortis tempus indignius!⁵⁷

¹ tristis, -e, 'sad' ² Fundānus, -ī, M., a man's name ³ fēstivus, -a, -um, 'gay, pleasing' ⁴ amābilis, -e, 'lovable' ⁵ modo (adv.), 'only' ⁶ prope (adv.), 'nearly' ⁷ immortālitās, -tātis, F., 'immortality' ⁸ dīgnus, -a, -um, 'worthy' (+ abl.) ⁹ nōndum (adv.), 'not yet' ¹⁰ quattuordecim (indeclinable adj.), 'fourteen' ¹¹ iam (adv.), 'already' ¹² anilis, -e, 'of an old woman' ¹³ gravitās, -tātis, F., 'seriousness' ¹⁴ suāvitās, -tātis, F., 'charm, agreeableness' ¹⁵ virgō, -inis, F., 'maiden' ¹⁶ verēcundiā, -ae, F., 'modesty' ¹⁷ ut (adv.), 'how' ¹⁸ cervīx, -īcis, F., 'neck'; here, used in the pl., but with sing. meaning ¹⁹ inhaereō, -ēre, inhaesi, inhaesus, 'cling' ²⁰ amanter (adv.), from amāns ²¹ modestus, -a, -um, 'modest' ²² complectēbātur, translate as active: 'she used to embrace' ²³ nūtrix, -īcis, F., 'nurse' ²⁴ paedagōgōs, -ī, M., a slave in charge of escorting a child to and from school ²⁵ quemque (acc. sing., M. & F.), 'each (one)' ²⁶ officiū, -ī, N., 'duty, service' ²⁷ diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, 'esteem highly' ²⁸ quam (adv.), 'how' ²⁹ studiōsūs, -a, -um, 'studious, busy' ³⁰ intellegenter (adv.), from intellegēns ³¹ parcus, -a, -um, 'sparing' ³² custōditē (adv.), 'cautiously' ³³ lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lūsus, 'play' ³⁴ temperantia, -ae, F., 'self-restraint' ³⁵ patientia, -ae, F., 'patience' ³⁶ cōstantia, -ae, F., 'self-possession' ³⁷ novus, -a, -um, 'recent' ³⁸ valētūdō, -inis, F., 'bad health' ³⁹ ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, 'endure' ⁴⁰ medicus, -ī, M., 'doctor' ⁴¹ pārēō, -ere, pārui, pāritus, 'be obedient to' (+ dat.) ⁴² adhortābātur, translate as active: 'she used to encourage' ⁴³ dēstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, 'desert'; in perfect participle, 'deprived of' ⁴⁴ sustineō (sub + teneō), 'sustain' ⁴⁵ dūrō (1), 'last, continue' ⁴⁶ ūsque (adv.), 'all the way' ⁴⁷ aut... aut (conj.), 'either... or' ⁴⁸ spatiū, -ī, N., 'length of time' ⁴⁹ īfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, 'break up, bring down' ⁵⁰ causa, -ae, F., 'reason, cause' ⁵¹ relinquo, -ere, relīqui, relictus, 'leave'; quō... relinqueret = ut... relinqueret ⁵² dēsiderium, -ī, N., 'regret' (for the loss of anything) ⁵³ dolor, -ōris, M., 'pain, sorrow' ⁵⁴ plānē (adv.), 'plainly, certainly' ⁵⁵ fūnus, -eris, N., 'funeral, death' ⁵⁶ ipsā (abl. sing. F.), 'itself' (modifies morte) ⁵⁷ indignus, -a, -um, 'unworthy' (+ abl.)

UNIT TEN

A. Ablative Absolute

The word “absolute” comes from the fourth principal part of the verb **absolvō**, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, ‘untie, loosen’. Grammatically, it refers to a part of the sentence which has no close syntactical connection with the rest; it is “untied” or “detached” from the main clause.

English has a *nominative absolute*:

This being the case, I shall now help you.

Note that the nominative absolute in English utilizes a subject, “this” and a participle, “being”. The subject of the absolute construction is different from the subject (or object) of the main clause. In the broadest sense, the absolute functions as an adverb giving the circumstances in which the action of the main clause occurs.

The Latin absolute construction requires the ablative, not the nominative, case. All tenses of the participle may occur, according to the observations stated in the unit on participles above, although the future is very rare in classical Latin.

Coniuge veniente, *With her husband coming*, the woman will depart.

fēmina discēdet. *When her husband is coming (comes)*, the woman will depart.

Since her husband is coming, the woman will depart.

If her husband is coming (comes), the woman will depart.

Although her husband is coming, the woman will depart.

...etc.

[NOTE that when the present participle is used in an ablative absolute, the -e ending for the ablative singular occurs rather than -ī.]

OBSERVATIONS:

1. The subject of the ablative absolute, **coniuge**, is different from the subject of the main clause, **fēmina**. Hence, **coniuge veniente** is a true absolute.
2. The present participle refers to an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb.

3. Because of the absence of a perfect *active* participle, it will be impossible to express an active idea in the absolute as having occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb without recasting it in the passive voice. Another construction would have to be used (e.g., **Sī coniūnx vēnit, postquam coniūnx vēnit, quamquam coniūnx vēnit, etc.**).

Coniuge vīsō, *With her husband having been seen, the woman*
fēmina discessit. *departed.*

When she had seen her husband, the woman
departed.

Since she had seen her husband, the woman
departed.

If she had seen her husband, the woman departed.

Although she had seen her husband, the woman
departed.

...etc.

OBSERVATIONS:

1. Note that in the last four translations above, the subordinate clause has been changed from the passive to the active voice. The subject "she" of the subordinate clause is the same as the subject of the main clause *in English*. In the Latin, however, the subject of the perfect passive participle is *not* the same as that of the main verb (**coniuge** is the subject of the ablative absolute; **fēmina** is the subject of the main clause; note the first English translation above).
2. The perfect participle refers to an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

NOTE: If we wish to render "When she was departing, the woman saw her husband" into Latin, we *cannot* use the ablative absolute because the subject of each clause ("she" and "woman") is the same. A simple participle must be used instead:

Fēmina discēdēns coniugem vidit.

Illā fēminā rēgīnā, *With that woman (being) queen, the inhabitants*
incolae fēlicēs erant. *were happy.*

When that woman was queen, the inhabitants were
happy.

...etc.

OBSERVATION:

Since there is no present participle for the verb **sum**, two nouns are sometimes used in an ablative absolute construction with an *implied* participle connecting them. The second noun is in effect a predicate ablative.

Custōde amīcum vocante, *With the guardian calling his friend, the sailors fled.*
nautae fūgērunt.

When the guardian was calling his friend, the sailors fled.
...etc.

OBSERVATION:

The participle, since it is a verbal adjective, retains its verbal functions. Consequently it can control an object, as in the case of **amīcum** above.

B. Adjectives with Genitive Singular in *-īus*

There is a group of adjectives which are like first-second declension adjectives except that they have **-īus** in the genitive singular of all genders and **-ī** in the dative singular. One of these is **tōtus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'whole, all'.

SINGULAR**PLURAL**

M.	F.	N.
tōtus	tōta	tōtum
tōtiūs	tōtiūs	tōtiūs
tōti	tōti	tōti
tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
tōtō	tōtā	tōtō

the plural is identical to that of **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**

The other adjectives of this class are:

alius, -a, -ud	other
alter, altera, alterum	the other (of two)
ūllus, -a, -um	any
nūllus, -a, -um	no, none
uter, utra, utrum	which (of two)
neuter, neutra, neutrum	neither
sōlus, -a, -um	only
ūnus, -a, -um	one, alone

C. Ablative of Cause

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is sometimes used to express *cause*.

Clāmāre gaudiō coepit. She began to shout *because of joy.*
Fōrmā laudābantur. They were praised *because of (their) beauty.*

Sometimes cause is expressed by **ob** or **propter**, 'on account of', followed by the accusative case.

Propter metum fēminās interfēcit. He killed the women *on account of fear.*

D. Ablative and Genitive of Description

A noun in the ablative or genitive case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

Vir magnā sapientiā } a man of great wisdom
Vir magnae sapientiae}

E. The Irregular Verb *ferō* and Its Compounds

Ferō, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, 'bring, carry, bear, endure', exhibits certain peculiarities in the present indicative, present infinitive, and present imperative. The other forms are exactly what we would expect for a third conjugation verb.

PRESENT INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
ferō ferimus	feror ferimur
fers fertis	ferris ferimini
	(ferre)
fert ferunt	fertur feruntur

IMPERATIVE

SING.	PL.
fer!	ferte!

There are several compounds of *ferō* which occur frequently and should be learned. Some are:

ad + ferō = *afferō*, *afferre*, *attulī*, *allātus*, 'bring to, present'

ab + ferō = *auferō*, *auferre*, *abstulī*, *ablātus*, 'carry away'

com + ferō = *cōferō*, *cōferre*, *contulī*, *collātus*, 'bring together, collect; compare;' reflexive *sē cōferre* = 'take oneself' (i.e., to a place), 'go'

dē + ferō = *dēferō*, *dēferre*, *dētulī*, *dēlātus*, 'bring away, bring down, offer; report'

dis + ferō = *differō*, *differre*, *distulī*, *dilātus*, 'differ'

ex + ferō = *efferō*, *efferre*, *extulī*, *ēlātus*, 'carry out; bring forth'

in + ferō = *inferō*, *inferre*, *intulī*, *illātus*, 'carry into; inflict'

ob + ferō = *offerō*, *offerre*, *obtulī*, *oblātus*, 'bring before; offer; expose'

re + ferō = *referō*, *referre*, *rettulī*, *relātus*, 'bring back, report'

sub + ferō = *sufferō*, *sufferre*, *sustulī*, *sublātus*, 'undergo, endure'

It will be easy to form other compounds of this verb by the addition of other prefixes.

UNIT TEN — VOCABULARY

alius, -a, -us (note that the neuter nom. and acc. end in -us , not -um)	other, another
alius...alius	one...another
alii...alii	some...others
alter, altera, alterum	the other (of two)
apud (prep. + acc.)	at, near, among; at the house of
ars, artis, -um, F.	skill, art
audacia, -ae, F.	boldness, courage
audax, audacis	bold, courageous
auxilium, -i, N.	aid
certus, -a, -um	certain, sure
incertus, -a, -um	uncertain, unsure
coepi, coepisse, coepitus	began (defective verb; it occurs only in the perfect system)
custos, -odis, M.	guardian
doceo, -ere, docui, doctus	teach
errō (1)	wander, err
ferō, ferre, tuli, latus (for compounds of ferō , see section E of this Unit)	bring, carry, bear, endure
figūra, -ae, F.	figure, form, shape
foedus, foederis, N.	pact, treaty, agreement
fugiō, -ere, fugi, fugitus	flee
fuga, -ae, F.	flight
gaudium, -i, N.	joy
gēns, gentis, -um, F.	race, people
iam (adv.)	now, by this time, already, soon
iter, itineris, N.	journey, route
iungō, -ere, iunxi, iunctus	join
coniūnx, coniugis, M. or F.	husband, wife, spouse
mōs, mōris, M.	custom; pl., character
negō (1)	deny, say no
neuter, neutra, neutrum	neither
nūllus, -a, -um	no, none
orbis, orbis, -um, M.	ring, orb, circle
orbis terrārum	circle of lands; the world
pars, partis, -um, F.	part

propter (prep. + acc.)	on account of, because of
quantus, -a, -um	how much, how great
quot (indeclinable adj.)	how many
signum, -i, N.	signal, sign
sōl, sōlis, M.	sun
sōlus, -a, -um	alone, only
tantus, -a, -um	so much, so great
tantus...quantus}	as (so) much...as; as (so) great...as
quantus...tantus}	
temptō (1)	try, attempt
tot (indeclinable adj.)	so many
tot...quot}	as many...as
quot...tot}	
tōtus, -a, -um	all, whole
ūllus, -a, -um	any
ūnus, -a, -um	one, alone
uter, utra, utrum	which (of two)
virtūs, -tūtis, F.	manliness, courage, excellence, virtue

UNIT TEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

There are nine adjectives in Latin which end in **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-i** in the dative singular: **alius**, **alter**, **ūllus** ('any'), **nūllus** ('none'), **uter**, **neuter** ('neither'), **sōlus** ('alone'), **tōtus** ('whole'), and **ūnus** ('one'). **Alius** means 'other, another', **alter**, 'the other (of two)', and **uter**, 'which (of two)'. **Alterius** was used as the genitive singular of **alius** (see Appendix, page 322). **Alius...alius** means 'one...another': **Alius in tēctō aliis in viā erat**, 'One man was in the house, another in the street'. When two forms of the adjective **alius** are found in the same sentence, they are translated twice:

Aliī aliud mihi dixērunt.

Some men told me one thing; others told me another.

Alia dōna ad aliōs amīcōs misērunt. They sent some gifts to some friends, other gifts to others (other friends).

Apud is like the French **chez**; it means 'at, near, among, at the house of, in the works of'.

The adjective **audāx**, **audācis**, 'bold, courageous', is related to the abstract noun **audācia**, **audāciae**, F., 'boldness, courage'.

Coepī, **coepisse**, **coepitus**, 'began', is a defective verb which has only perfect tenses. **Incipiō** may be used if a present, imperfect, or future tense of 'begin' is needed.

The verb **doceō, docēre, docui, doctus**, ‘teach’, may govern two accusatives. In other words, one teaches something in the accusative case to someone in the accusative: **Multa nātōs docēre optāmus**, ‘We wish to teach many things to our children’.

Errō, a first conjugation verb, means ‘wander’. If one wanders from the true path, one errs; thus, **errō** also means ‘err’.

Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, ‘bear, bring, carry, endure’, is sometimes used, usually in the third person, to mean ‘say, report’: **Auctōrem clārissimum in illō tēctō ferunt vīxisse**, ‘They say that the very famous author lived in that house’. Also, **Auctor clārissimus in illō tēctō vīxisse fertur**, ‘The very famous author is said to have lived in that house’.

Ferō is one of the four verbs (**dīcō, dūcō**, and **faciō** are the others) which drop the ending in the present active singular imperative: **dīc, dūc, fac, fer**.

Connected with **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus**, ‘flee’, is the noun **fuga, fugae**, F., ‘flight’.

Jungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, ‘join’, has a compound **coniungō**, ‘join together’; the person with whom one is joined, **coniūnx**, is one’s ‘spouse’; therefore, this word can be either masculine or feminine.

Iam is an adverb which relies on the tense of the verb for its meaning; with the present tense, it means ‘now’, with a past tense, ‘up to now, already, by this time’, and with the future, ‘soon’.

Mōs, mōris, M., in the singular means ‘custom’, but in the plural, ‘character’, since it is our customs or habits which make up our character.

Negō, a first conjugation verb, is the opposite of **aiō**; it means ‘say no, deny’.

Orbis, orbis, M., is ‘ring, circle’; **orbis terrārum**, ‘circle of lands’, is the way of saying ‘the world’.

There is no difference between **propter** with the accusative and **ob** with the accusative.

Quantus, -a, -um, ‘how much, how great’, is often used correlatively with **tantus, -a, -um**, ‘so much, so great’. There is no difference in meaning between **quantus... tantus** and **tantus... quantus**: **Quantōs librōs in mēnsā vīdimus tantōs in cellā**, ‘We saw as many books on the table as (we saw) in the storeroom’; **Tantum gaudium in urbe erat quantum in prōvinciā**, ‘There was as much joy in the city as in the province’.

Quot, ‘how many’, may be correlative with **tot**, ‘so many’. There is no difference in meaning between **quot... tot** and **tot... quot**: **Quot puellae tot puerī in tēctō erant**, ‘There were as many girls as boys in the house’; **Tot dominōs quot servōs in templō vīdimus**, ‘We saw as many masters as slaves in the temple’.

Virtūs, virtūtis, F., is an abstract noun meaning ‘the state of being a man, or the quality of a man’; it is what makes a man a man, namely, ‘manliness, courage, excellence, virtue’.

UNIT TEN — DRILL

I.

Translate each of the following ablatives absolute literally; then give at least four smoother translations:

1. hostibus oppressis	6. sociis interfectis
2. opere perfectō	7. periculō remōtō
3. timōre superante	8. urbe ā hostibus invāsā
4. rēgibus cīvēs servitūte liberantibus	9. sociō magistrō
5. imperiō ruente	10. militibus rūs euntibus

II.

Rewrite the subordinate clauses in Latin as ablatives absolute:

1. Postquam oppidum arsum est, mīlītēs discessērunt.
2. Si Marcus erit magister, superābimus.
3. Si pater sānus esset, mortem nōn timērēmus.
4. Quamquam nox terrās umbris tegit, sociī tamen vidēre possunt.
5. Quamquam pericula intellēxit, in villam tamen ardētēm ruit.
6. Incolae timēbant quod urbs ā sociīs trādīta erat.
7. Quamquam opiniōnē dē amīcō mūtāverat, crūdēlīs esse nōn optāvit.
8. Si discēdētis, poēta nōn canet.
9. Mīlītēs per campōs īre nōn possunt quod saxa ingētia dē viā nōn removēbantur.
10. Postquam supplex domum missus est, populus omnē spēm perdidit.

III.

Translate, explaining the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. Fēmina **magnae fidei** mihi imperāvit ut Rōmam īrem.
2. Mōtibus sīderum **intellēctis**, poēta librum dē illis rēbus scripsit.
3. Profugō **poenam timente**, amīci rēgem interficiēt.
4. **Oppidō** trāditō, incolae tamen spērāvērunt amīcōs sibi frūctui futūrōs esse.
5. Sententiā dē hospitibus mūtātā, vir magnā **veniā** ad nōs vēnit ut dē īnsidiīs monēret.
6. Ille puer quem magister ad rēgnum vocāvit minimā est **dīlīgentiā**, maximā sapientiā.
7. **Illō dominō**, nōn timēmus.
8. Hostibus **pulsīs**, miles fēlix erat.
9. **Bellō** cōfēctō, diūtius pūgnātis?
10. **Amōre** patriae pūgnāvit.
11. Omnibus hostibus ab urbe **remōtīs**, incolae **gaudiō** clāmābant.

IV.

Note the following uses of participles and ablatives absolute:

1. Puerōs scribentēs vidi.
2. Hominēs in bellō superātī discessērunt.
3. Miles erat pūgnātūrus.
4. Poēta, sub caelō legēns, sidera spectāvit.
5. Puella hōs librōs lēctūra est.
6. Opere cōflectō, virī domum missi sunt.
7. Mediā nocte ad socium litterās portantēs vēnērunt.
8. His rēbus gestis, omnēs discessērunt.
9. Audiēns virōs magnae sapientiae dē bellō clāmantēs, maximē timēbam.
10. Audiēns virōs magnae sapientiae dē bellō clāmāre, maximē timēbam.
11. Servis liberātis, dominus suōs filiōs labōrāre in agrīs iussit.
12. Homō miser, villā arsā, nūllam domum habēbat.
13. Clārum multās hōrās sociis vēra dicentem audīvi; minimō tempore discessit.
Illō discēdente, militēs gaudiō clāmāvērunt.
14. Multa dōna ūni virō cibum ad hospitēs ferentī dabimus.
15. Taedamne ad profugōs nocte ambulantēs ferēs?

V.

1. Puer fert librōs.
2. Puer ferēbat librōs.
3. Is est puer qui ferēbat librōs.
4. Puer fertur esse bonus. [fertur, '(he) is said...']
5. Puer fertur librōs ferre.
6. Puer fertur librōs tulisse.
7. Librōs nōn feram.
8. Librī ā puerō feruntur.
9. Librī ā mē nōn lāti sunt.
10. Dicō puerum qui librōs ferat bonum esse.
11. Dicēbam puerum qui librōs ferret bonum esse.
12. Dixi puerum qui librōs tulisset bonum esse.
13. Intellegit librōs frūctū esse hominibus sapientibus.
14. Librī ad nōs ferentur ut sapientiōrēs sīmus.

**UNIT TEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES
(SECTIONS A, B)**

1. Fugā temptātā, audācēs per prōvinciam itinere errāre coepērunt.
2. Audācia custōdis sōlius auxilium genti tōti tulit.

3. Gaudiō positō, aliī vitam tulērunt, aliī negāvērunt.
4. Omnibus fortibus mōrēs supplicis alterius laudantibus, opiniō nostra nōn petīta est.
5. Librō aliō scriptō, auctor alium scribere coepit.
6. Sōle auxiliō, viis incertis fūgimus ut nōs sociis quam pīnum iungerēmus.
7. Quot artēs sunt alii tot alii.
8. Omnī spē fugae dēlētā, locus nūllus salūtis ā profugis inventus est.
9. Itinere incertō et nūllō signō ā magistrō datō, in neutram viam sine timōre perīculī ruere iam possumus.
10. Nūllus homō qui apud nōs vivit tanta gaudia quantōs metūs tulit.

UNIT TEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Militibus foedere iūnctis, haec urbs sōla nōn dēlēbitur; multa gravia iam sustulit.
2. Aliō bellō in prōvinciam illātō, hostēs tēctis et templis tōtius urbis ignēs īferre temptāvērunt.
3. Tōtam diem illae gentēs socium magnae audāciae invenire temptābant quem vī abstulerant saeviōrēs servī.
4. Sōle multis partibus maiōre quam terrā tōtā, ḍrō ut mē dē illō plūs doceās.
5. Sorōrī meae nōmen est magnā apud omnēs glōriā; eam oculis tuis in lītore errantem saepe vīdisti.
6. Pectoribus mōrēs tot sunt quot in orbe figūrae.
7. Negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare.
8. Dis nūllam mihi culpam esse scientibus, audāx metū carēbō.
9. Patriā liberā, mē ad mortem nōn offeram.
10. His ā sociō dictis, rēx pīmā lūce respondit libertātem cīvibus ā dis oblātam et datam esse.
11. Quot hominēs tot sententiae.
12. Tot militibus urbem oppūgnantibus, rēginae coniūnx pecūniae quam rēgnī melior custōs erat.
13. Quam ob rem per tōtum oppidum rūmor huius generis ībit?
14. Rēx prōvinciae fūgisse cum multā pecūniā dicitur ac sē contulisse Rōmam.
15. a) Rēge crūdēlī Rōmam fugiente, aliī cīvēs gaudiō clāmant, aliī timōre tacēnt.
- b) Rēge crūdēlī Rōmam fugiente, aliī cīvēs gaudiō clāmābant, aliī timōre tacēbant.
16. Amīctia ex sē et propter sē petenda est.
17. Illō discēdente, rēs agī coepta est.

18. Militibus sē in fugam dantibus, utrum dūcentium laudāre coeperās? Neutrū!
19. Únō signō datō, cum gaudiō invēnimus cīvibus quantum audāciae tantum satis esse.
20. Suffer! Multō graviōra tulisti.
21. Nūllī servitūtem sī dēfers, honestus habēris.
22. Multī mōre illō atque exemplō vīvunt.
23. Quī nihil sciunt timent fortūnam; sapientēs ferunt. [**fortūna**, -ae, F., 'chance, fortune']
24. Hostēs maximārum virium, cum suīs sociis iūncti, oppidum oppūgnāvērunt.
25. Multīs prō oppidō pūgnantibus, incolae nōn timēbant.
26. Vir bonus optimāsq̄e artibus clārus cīvibus auxiliō fuit.
27. Custōdibus maiōre opus erit et arte et dīligentiā sī malōs ex urbe pellent.
28. Amicus certus in rē incertā vidētur.
29. Mōrēs cōnferte et artēs sī filiōs maximae virtūtis esse optābitis. [**cōnferte**, *here*, 'apply, bestow']
30. Cōnsiliis certiōribus factīs, dōna ā rēge abstulit et ea ad suam patriam attulit.
31. Miles militī iūnctus amicitiā bellum magnā cum virtūte gessit.
32. Illi custōdī, virō magnā audāciā et mōribus clārō, coniūnx auxiliō vēnit, nē urbī īnsidiīs hostium dēlētae dāmnārētūr. Eum enim monuit cōnsilia hostium urbī mala esse.
33. Pars gentis domum cum sapientiā fūgit; pars propter audāciam bellum gessit.
34. In tōtō orbe terrārum numquam vīdimus tot errantēs quot in hāc urbe vīvunt. Alius bellum gentibus fortiōribus īferre optat, alius sine arte et auxiliō tōtum orbem terrārum superāre; nūllus homō negat sē omnia (facere) posse.
35. Hostibus foedere iūnctīs, ūnus ex pūgnantibus negābat sē bellum gerere umquam optāvisse; sibi gerendum fuisse vīribus atque mōribus malis rēgis.
36. Quā ob rem magister docuit errantem verbīs sapientium in lūcēm dūcendum esse?
37. Signō datō, fēminaē maximā fōrmā sē in fugam contulērunt.
38. Bellō cōnfēctō, multa nōbīs superātis relāta sunt.
39. Tantō periculō in urbē illātō, lacrimae incolārum mātrem certiōrem fēcērunt ruīnae. Māter fēmina erat clārā virtūte, sed tanta mala sufferre nōn poterat.
40. Ferrum ē manibus interfēctī cēpit, ēlātumque dēferēbat in pectus alterius inimicī ā dextrā ad sē venientis.
41. Quantā maximē poterat vī superāvit.
42. Hominibus ācriter pūgnantibus, rēx ardentēs oculōrum orbēs in moenia torsit. [**torqueō**, -ēre, **torsi**, **tortus**, 'turn, turn away, twist']

II.

- Because the people of this city have been conquered by the Roman soldiers, the woman's husband, bold in character, is going to try to flee in order that he may seek (ask for) aid from the guardians of other towns.
- On account of the treaty by which they were joined to the Romans, the husband learned that the guardians did not desire to give aid to any people.
- He alone will not be able to flee to the shore because of fear; the others have already boldly set sail.
- In the whole world I have never seen with my eyes a man of such (so) great skill.
- Since he has done these things, his name will be borne by the winds to all lands in order that people may praise him.

III. Readings

A. THE LOVE OF DAPHNE AND APOLLO (selections slightly adapted from Ovid, *Metamorphoses* I, taken from lines 452–3, 495, 502–3, 533–4, 539)

Primus amor Phoebi¹ Daphnē² quem dedit saeva Cupidinis³ ira. Sic⁴ deus in flammās abiit;⁵ fugit ōcior⁶ aurā⁷ illa levī.⁸ Ut⁹ canis¹⁰ in vacuō¹¹ leporem¹² arvō¹³ cum¹⁴ vīdit, et ille praedam¹⁵ pedibus petit, hic salūtem; sic⁴ deus et virgō.¹⁶ Est hic spē celer,¹⁷ illa timōre.

¹ Phoebus, -ī, M., the god Apollo ² Daphnē (nom. sing. F.), 'Daphne', a girl's name
³ Cupidō, -inis, M., 'Cupid' ⁴ sic (adv.), 'in this way' ⁵ abeō (ab + eō), 'go away'
⁶ ōcior, ōcius, 'swifter' ⁷ aura, -ae, F., 'breeze' ⁸ levī, leve, 'light' ⁹ ut (adv.), 'as'
 (here, correlative with sic below) ¹⁰ canis, canis, M. or F., 'dog' ¹¹ vacuus, -a, -um,
 'empty' ¹² lepus, leporis, M., 'rabbit' ¹³ arvum, -ī, N., 'field' ¹⁴ cum (conj.),
 'when' ¹⁵ praeda, -ae, F., 'loot' ¹⁶ virgō, virginis, F., 'maiden' ¹⁷ celer, celeris,
 celere, 'swift'

B. Dido, after berating Aeneas for intending to abandon her, falls silent and leaves him to think about her plight (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.388–91):

His medium dictis sermōnem¹ abrumpit² et aurās³
 aegra⁴ fugit sēque ex oculis āvertit⁵ et aufert,
 linquēns⁶ multa metū cūnctantem⁷ et multa parantem⁸
 dicere.

¹ sermō, -ōnis, M., 'speech' ² abrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, 'break off' ³ aura, -ae,
 F., 'air, breeze, outdoors' ⁴ aeger, aegra, aegrum, 'sick, wretched' ⁵ āvertō, -ere,
 -vertī, -versus, 'turn away' ⁶ linquō, -ere, liquī, lictus, 'desert' ⁷ cūnctor, -āri, -ātus
 sum, 'delay' (this is a verb of the first conjugation; the finite forms are all passive, but with
 active meanings; see Unit Eleven, section A, "Deponent Verbs") ⁸ parō (1), 'prepare'

C. Catullus 87:

Nūlla potest mulier¹ tantum² sē dīcere amātam
 Vērē, quantum² ā mē Lesbia³ amāta mea es:
 Nūlla fidēs ullō fuit unquam in foedere tanta
 Quanta in amōre tuō ex parte reperta meā est.⁴

¹ mulier, mulieris, F., 'woman' ² tantum...quantum (adv.), 'so much...as' ³ Lesbia, -ae, F., 'Lesbia', the literary name of Catullus's mistress ⁴ reperiō, -ire, reperi, repertus, 'find, discover'

D. Seneca speaks about the advantages of clemency and about the difference between the king and the tyrant (Seneca, *Dē Clēmentiā* I.xi.4–xii.2, slightly adapted):

Clēmentiā¹ ergō² hominēs nōn tantum³ honestiōrēs sed tūtiōrēs sunt. Clēmentia¹ ḍrnāmentum⁴ imperiōrum est simul⁵ et certissima salūs. Metū hostium sublātō,⁶ hominēs maximae clēmentiae¹ sine cūrā possunt vīvere. Cūr⁷ enim rēgēs cōnenēscunt⁸ filiisque trādunt rēgna, tyrannōrum⁹ exsecrābilis¹⁰ ac brevis¹¹ potestās¹² est? Quid interest¹³ inter¹⁴ tyrannum⁹ ac rēgem? — Tyrannī⁹ voluptātē¹⁵ saeviunt,¹⁶ rēgēs nōn nīsi ex causā¹⁷ ac necessitātē.¹⁸

"Quid ergō?² Nōn rēgēs quoque¹⁹ interficere solent?"²⁰ Sed ubi²¹ id fieri²² pūblica ūtilitās²³ persuadet;²⁴ tyrannī⁹ saevitia²⁵ cordī²⁶ est. Tyrannus⁹ autem ā rēge factis distat,²⁷ nōn nōmine; nam et Dionysius²⁸ maior iūre²⁹ meritōque³⁰ praeferri³¹ multis rēgibus potest. Et L. Sullam³² tyrannum⁹ appellārī³³ quid prohibet,³⁴ cui factōrum malōrum finem fēcit inopia³⁵ hostium? Qui umquam tyrannus⁹ avidius³⁶ hūmānum³⁷

¹ clēmentia, -ae, F., 'clemency' ² ergō (adv.), 'therefore' ³ tantum (adv.), 'only'
⁴ ḍrnāmentum, -i, N., 'decoration, ornament' ⁵ simul (adv.), 'at the same time' ⁶ tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātus, 'remove' ⁷ cūr (adv.), 'why' ⁸ cōnenēscō, -ere, cōnenui, --, 'grow old' ⁹ tyrannus, -i, M., 'absolute ruler, tyrant'; tyrannōrum exsecrābilis...est: the clause is antithetical to the previous one; assume the ellipsis of sed, 'but'
¹⁰ exsecrābilis, -e, 'deserving punishment, deadly' ¹¹ brevis, -e, 'brief' ¹² potestās, -tātis, F., 'power' ¹³ interest (impersonal verb), '(it) is different'; quid interest?, 'what is the difference?' ¹⁴ inter (prep. + acc.), 'between' ¹⁵ voluptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure'
¹⁶ saeviō, -ire, -ii, -itus, 'rage, be fierce' ¹⁷ causa, -ae, F., 'cause, reason' ¹⁸ necessitās, -tātis, F., 'necessity' ¹⁹ quoque (adv.), 'also' ²⁰ soleō, -ere, solitus sum, 'be accustomed'
²¹ ubi (adv.), 'when' ²² fiō, fieri, factus sum, 'happen, be done' ²³ ūtilitās, -tātis, F., 'advantage' ²⁴ persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsus, 'persuade' ²⁵ saevitia, -ae, F., 'cruelty' ²⁶ cor, cordis, N., 'heart'; cordi, 'for the purpose of the heart,' i.e., 'dear'
²⁷ distō (1), 'differ, be distinct' ²⁸ Dionysius, -i, M., a man's name; Dionysius was the famous tyrant of Sicily ²⁹ iūs, iūris, N., 'right, law' ³⁰ meritum, -i, N., 'merit, desert' ³¹ praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, 'prefer (to)' (+ dat.) ³² L. Sulla, -ae, M., 'Lucius Sulla', the name of a Roman dictator whose policy it was to have all his enemies killed ³³ appellō (1), 'call, name'; appellārī, the infinitive is used here with prohibet to express prevention: 'What prohibits L. Sulla to be called...'; 'What keeps L. Sulla from being called...' ³⁴ prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, 'prohibit' ³⁵ inopia, -ae, F., 'lack'
³⁶ avidē (adv.), 'eagerly' ³⁷ hūmānus, -a, -um, 'human'

sanguinem³⁸ bibt³⁹ quam ille, qui septem⁴⁰ milia⁴¹ civium Rōmānōrum interfici iussit et, ubi²¹ in vīcinō⁴² sedēns⁴³ audivit conclāmātiōnem⁴⁴ tot mīlium⁴¹ sub gladiō gementium,⁴⁵ exterritō⁴⁶ senātū,⁴⁷ “Nē haec conclāmātiō,”⁴⁴ ait, “vobis sit cūrae, patrēs cōscripti;⁴⁸ sēditiōsī⁴⁹ pauculī⁵⁰ meō iussū⁵¹ interficiuntur”? Hoc vērum erat; pauci⁵² Sullae³² vidēbantur.

³⁸ sanguis, -inis, M., ‘blood’ ³⁹ bibō, -ere, bibi, --, ‘drink’ ⁴⁰ septem (indeclinable adj.), ‘seven’ ⁴¹ mīlia, -ium, N., ‘thousands’ ⁴² vīcinum, -ī, N., ‘vicinity’ ⁴³ sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessus, ‘sit’ ⁴⁴ conclāmātiō, -ōnis, F., ‘loud shouting’ ⁴⁵ gemō, -ere, -ui, -itus, ‘groan, lament’ ⁴⁶ exterreō (ex + terreō), ‘frighten thoroughly’ ⁴⁷ senātus, -ūs, M., ‘senate’ ⁴⁸ cōscriptō (com- + scribō), ‘enroll’; patrēs cōscripti, ‘senators’ ⁴⁹ sēditiōsus, -a, -um, ‘seditious, turbulent’ ⁵⁰ pauculī, -ae, -a, ‘a very few’ ⁵¹ iussū (abl. sing.), ‘by order’ ⁵² pauci, -ae, -a, ‘few’

UNIT ELEVEN

A. Deponent Verbs

Many verbs in Latin have only passive forms, but active meanings. These verbs are called *deponents* (*dē* + *pōnō*, ‘put aside’; i.e., they *put aside* their active forms).

precōr, -ārī, precātus sum	beg, request
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum	fear
ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum	enter, proceed
experior, -īrī, expertus sum	try, experience

PRESENT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precōr	precer
I entreat	
precāris (-re)	precēris (-re)
you entreat	
precātūr	precētūr
he entreats	
precāmūr	precēmūr
we entreat	
precāmīnī	precēmīnī
you entreat	
precāntūr	precentūr
they entreat	

IMPERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precābar	precārer
I used to entreat	
precābāris (-re)	precārēris (-re)
you used to entreat	
...etc.	...etc.

NOTE that the imperfect subjunctive is built onto what would have been the entire

present *active* infinitive. This is especially important for third conjugation verbs where the present passive infinitive looks so different from the active one. Thus:

ingredērēr
ingredērērīs (-re)
...etc.

FUTURE TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precābor	
I shall entreat	<i>None</i>
precāberis (-re)	
you will entreat	
...etc.	

PERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus sum	precātus sim
I have entreated	
precātus es	precātus sis
you have entreated	
...etc.	...etc.

PLUPERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus eram	precātus essem
I had entreated	
precātus erās	precātus essēs
you had entreated	
...etc.	...etc.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus erō	<i>None</i>
I shall have entreated	
...etc.	

INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	precārī	--
	to entreat	
Perfect	precātus esse	--
	to have entreated	
Future	precātūrus esse	--
	to be going to entreat	

NOTE that, while the present and perfect infinitives have *passive forms* but *active meanings*, the future infinitive is *active* in *form* and *meaning*.

PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	precāns entreating	--
Perfect	precātus, -a, -um having entreated	--
Future	precātūrus, -a, -um going to entreat	precandus, -a, -um having to be entreated

NOTE that the following irregularities occur in the participial system:

1. Deponents *do have* a present participle which is active in *form* and *meaning*.
2. Deponent verbs have a perfect *active* participle; other verbs have only a perfect *passive* participle.
3. Deponent verbs have *both* a future *active* and a future *passive* participle in *form* and *meaning*.

The present and future participles and the future infinitive, then, pose the only problem in the deponent system. In all other instances, remember: DEPONENTS HAVE PASSIVE FORMS, BUT ACTIVE MEANINGS.

B. Semi-Deponent Verbs

Several verbs have active forms and meanings in the present system, but passive forms with active meanings in the perfect system. These are called *semi-deponents*.

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, 'dare'

audeō	I dare
audēbam	I used to dare
audēbō	I shall dare
ausus sum	I have dared
ausus eram	I had dared
ausus erō	I shall have dared

C. Subjective and Objective Genitive

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the object of this verbal idea is called the *objective genitive*, and the noun that is its subject is called the *subjective genitive*.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE:

amor patriae	love of the native land (i.e., what is loved is the native land; patriae is the object of the verbal idea understood in amor)
metus belli	fear of war (i.e., what is feared is war)
cupidus (-a, -um)	desirous of money (i.e., what the subject desires is money)
pecūniae	

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE:

fēminaē amor patriae	the <i>woman's</i> love of her native land (i.e., the woman is doing the loving and therefore fēminaē is the <i>subjective genitive</i> ; the woman [subject] loves her native land [object])
--------------------------------	--

D. Predicate Genitive (Genitive of Characteristic)

A noun in the genitive case which stands alone (or modified by an adjective) in the predicate denotes a characteristic or a class.

Hominis sapientis est librōs legere.	It is (<i>the mark</i>) of a wise man to read books. Reading books is <i>the mark of a wise man</i> .
Boni est deōs laudāre.	It is (<i>the mark</i>) of a good [man] to praise the gods.

E. Infinitive As Subject

The infinitive is, in fact, a neuter noun. In the sentences given as examples under section D above, **legere** and **laudāre** are the subjects of the verb **est**.

Vidēre est crēdere. *To see* is to believe; *seeing* is believing.

Infinitives used in this way may be modified by adjectives which will appear in the neuter.

Librōs legere bonum est.	To read books is (<i>a</i> good <i>thing</i>); reading books is <i>good</i> ; it is <i>a good thing</i> to read books.
Scimus bonum esse librōs legere.	We know that to read books is (<i>a</i> good <i>thing</i>); we know that reading books is (<i>a</i> good <i>thing</i>).

In the last example, the infinitive **legere** is the subject accusative of the infinitive **esse**.

F. The Irregular Verbs **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**

volō, velle, voluī --	wish, want, be willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, --	be unwilling (contracted from nōn volō)
mālō, mālle, mālui, --	prefer (contracted from magis volō)

All three verbs actually belong to the third conjugation. The only irregularities which occur are in the present tense, as illustrated below. The imperfect subjunctive is formed on the irregular infinitives **velle**, **nōlle**, **mālle**. The imperfect and future indicatives as well as the present participle (except for **mālō**, which lacks one) are formed on the stems **vole-**, **nōle-**, and **māle-**, as if the verbs had regular infinitives (★**volere**, ★**nōlere**, ★**mālere**).

PRESENT TENSE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
volō	volō	velim	volēns
	vīs	velīs	
	vult	velit	
	volumus	velimus	
	vultis	velītis	
	volunt	velint	
nōlō	nōlō (= nōn volō)	nōlim (= nōn velim)	nōlēns
	nōn vīs	nōlis (= nōn velis)	
	nōn vult	nōlit (= nōn velit)	
	nōlumus (= nōn volumus)	nōlimus (= nōn velimus)	
	nōn vultis	nōlītis (= nōn velītis)	
	nōlunt (= nōn volunt)	nōlīnt (= nōn velint)	
IMPERATIVE: nōli (sing.); nōlīte (pl.)			
mālō	mālō (= magis volō)	mālim (= magis velim)	--
	māvīs (= magis vīs)	mālis (= magis velis)	
	māvult (= magis vult)	mālit (= magis velit)	
	mālumus (= magis volumus)	mālimus (= magis velīmus)	
	māvultis (= magis vultis)	mālītis (= magis velītis)	
	mālunt (= magis volunt)	mālīnt (= magis velint)	

UNIT ELEVEN — VOCABULARY

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum	think, believe, judge
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum	dare
cēna, -ae, F.	dinner
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	try, attempt
cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.	consul
crēdō, -ere, crēdidi, crēdītus	be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust (+ dat.)
cupidus, -a, -um	desirous, eager, fond of (+ gen.)

dīvitiae, -ārum, F. pl.	riches, wealth
dux, ducis, M. or F.	leader, guide
experior, experīrī, expertus sum	try, put to the test, experience
familia, -ae, F.	household, family
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum	confess
cōfiteor, cōfiterī, cōfessus sum	confess
flūmen, -inis, N.	river, running water
forum, -ī, N.	open space, market place, public square
gradior, gradī, gressus sum	step, walk
aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum	go to, approach
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum	go out, go away
ingredior, -ī, -gressus sum	go into, enter, advance, begin
prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum	go forth, advance, proceed
hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum	urge, encourage (+ ut or nē and subjunctive)
imperātor, -ōris, M.	commander, general
iuvēnis, -is, M. or F.	youth, young person
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum	speak, talk
mālō, mālle, mālūi, --	prefer, choose rather
minor, minārī, minātus sum	jut forth, threaten
moriō, morī, mortuus sum	die
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum	be born, descend from
nāvis, -is, -ium, F.	ship
neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctus	disregard, neglect
nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, --	be unwilling, wish... not
ōrātor, -ōris, M.	speaker
parēns, parentis, M. or F.	parent
patior, patī, passus sum	suffer, endure, allow
pauper, pauperis	poor
praemium, -ī, N.	reward
precōr, precārī, precātus sum	beg, request
proficīscor, proficisci, profectus sum	set forth, set out, start
scelus, sceleris, N.	wicked deed, crime
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	follow
servō (1)	save, preserve, rescue, keep
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum	be accustomed, be customary
statua, -ae, F.	statue
ut (conj. + indicative)	as, when
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum	use, enjoy, experience (+ abl.)
vereor, verērī, veritus sum	reverence, fear, dread
volō, velle, volūi, --	wish, want, be willing

UNIT ELEVEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Audeō, **audēre**, **ausus sum**, 'dare', and **soleō**, **solēre**, **solitus sum**, 'be accustomed', are semi-deponents. In other words, in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, the forms are active with active meanings, but in the perfect tenses, the forms are passive with active meanings: **audēbis**, 'you will dare'; **ausus erat**, 'he had dared'.

Crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus** is really an intransitive verb which means 'be trusting' and governs the dative case; however, we often translate it as 'believe, trust': **Cui crēdis?** 'To whom are you trusting?; Whom do you trust?'

The adjective **cupidus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'desirous, eager, fond of', governs an objective genitive: **Cupidus imperiī erat**, 'He was desirous of power'.

Divitiae, **divitiārum** is a feminine plural noun meaning 'riches, wealth'.

Dux, **ducis**, 'leader, guide', may be either masculine or feminine; it is related to the verb **dūcō**, 'lead'.

Fateor, **fatērī**, **fassus sum** and its compound **cōfiteor**, **cōfitērī**, **cōfessus sum** both mean 'confess' and may be used interchangeably.

There is a third conjugation verb **fluō**, **fluere**, **flūxī**, **flūxus**, 'flow'; when the abstract noun ending **-men**, **-minis** is added to the stem, the noun **flūmen**, **flūminis**, N., 'the result of flowing', that is, 'river', results.

Gradior, **gradī**, **gressus sum**, 'step, walk', when compounded gives the stem **-gredior**. Thus, **aggredior** (ad + gradior), 'go to, approach'; **ēgredior**, 'go out'; **ingredior**, 'go into, enter, advance, begin'; **prōgredior**, 'go forth, proceed, advance'.

The verb **hortor**, **hortārī**, **hortātus sum**, 'urge, encourage', can introduce an indirect command: **Amīcōs hortātī sumus nē huic hominī crēderent**, 'We urged our friends not to believe this man'.

Imperātor, **imperātōris**, M., is 'the one who does the ordering', namely, 'commander, general'; **ōrātor**, **ōrātōris**, M., is 'one who does the begging or pleading', and then, 'speaker'.

Iuvenis, **iuvenis**, M. or F., 'youth, young man', is not an i-stem; neither is **parēns**, **parentis**, M. or F., 'parent', although according to the rules for i-stems, one would expect them to be.

Loquor, **loquī**, **locūtus sum** is 'speak, talk'; **dīcō**, **dīcere**, **dīxī**, **dictus** is 'say, tell'.

Volō, **velle**, **voluī**, **--**, 'wish, want, be willing', is an irregular verb of the third conjugation. It has two compounds: (**nōn** + **volō**) **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōlūī**, **--**, 'be unwilling, wish...not', and (**magis** + **volō**) **mālō**, **mālle**, **mālūī**, **--**, 'prefer, choose rather'. Literally **mālō** means 'want more'; it may govern an accusative and an ablative of comparison: **Virtūtemne fōrmā māvīs?**, 'Do you want courage more than beauty?; Do you prefer courage to beauty?'

Minor, mināri, minātus sum means ‘jut forth’. Since something that juts forth may be threatening, this verb also means ‘threaten’ and when it does it may govern the dative case. One can either threaten something in the accusative case to the person or thing in the dative or threaten the person or thing in the dative with something in the ablative case:

Dux mortem impiis minātus est. The leader threatened the impious men
or with death.

Dux impiis morte minātus est.

Morior, morī, mortuus sum, ‘die’, has as its future participle **moritūrus, -a, -um**.

Nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, ‘be born, descend from’, has as its past participle **nātus**. Thus, **nātus, nātī, M.**, is ‘the one born *or* descended’, thus, ‘son’.

Neglegō is a compound of **legō** (nec + **legō**, ‘not choose’); it means ‘disregard, neglect’. Like **intellegō**, **neglegō** has an -x- in the perfect active stem, **neglēxi**.

Patior, patī, passus sum has the meanings ‘suffer, endure, allow’. The English word “patient” is a good reminder of the meanings of this verb: a patient in a hospital may be suffering and a person who is patient endures the things that happen to him; when one speaks of Christ’s passion, he means His suffering. The words “patient” and “passion” are also good reminders of the stems of this verb.

Servō, a first conjugation verb, does *not* mean ‘serve’ (**serviō, servire** does); it means ‘save, preserve, rescue, keep’.

Notice that **ut** may be used with the indicative; when it is so used, it means ‘as’ or ‘when’.

Utor, ūtī, ūsus sum, ‘use, enjoy, experience’, is one of several deponents which govern the ablative case: **Ferrō ūsus es?**, ‘Did you use your sword?’ The most common of the other deponents which govern the ablative are: **fruor, frūi, frūctus sum**, ‘enjoy’; **fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum**, ‘perform’; **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**, ‘gain possession of’; and **vēscor, vēscī, --, eat’**.

NOUN SUFFIXES

The suffixes **-tor** (M.), **-trīx** (F.) added to the stem of a verb produce a noun. Each means ‘one who’. Thus:

inceptor, -ōris, M., ‘one who begins, beginner’

audītor, -ōris, M., ‘one who hears, hearer’

scriptor, -ōris, M., ‘one who writes, writer’

spectātor, -ōris, M., and **spectātrīx, -trīcis, F.**, ‘one who looks on, spectator’

āctor, -ōris, M., ‘one who does, doer, performer’

liberātor, -ōris, M., 'one who frees, liberator'
amātor, -ōris, M., and **amātrix, amātricis, F.**, 'one who loves, lover'
inventor, -ōris, M., and **inventrīx, inventrīcis, F.**, 'one who finds, discoverer'
cantor, -ōris, M., and **cantrīx, cantrīcis, F.**, 'one who sings, singer'
victor, -ōris, M., and **victrīx, victrīcis, F.**, 'one who conquers, conqueror'
petitor, -ōris, M., 'one who seeks, seeker', also, 'a candidate for office'

By analogy, there are **viātor, -ōris, M.**, and **viātrīx, viātrīcis, F.**, 'traveler' (from **via**, 'way' + **-tor** or **-trīx**).

The endings **-ulus, -a, -um**; **-ōlus, -a, -um** (after a vowel); **-culus -a, -um**; **-ellus, -a, -um**; **-illus, -a, -um** are diminutive endings which may also be used to show affection, pity, or contempt.

puellula, -ae, F., 'a little girl'
filiōlus, -i, M., 'a little son'
homunculus, -i, M., 'a little man; a poor, weak man'
libellus, -i, M., 'a little book'
ocellus, -i, M., 'a little eye'
Graeculus, -i, M. (**Graecus, -a, -um**, 'Greek'), 'a no-good Greek'
sigilla, -ōrum, N. pl. (**signum, -i, N.**, 'sign'), 'little figures, little images'

ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF NOUNS

The suffixes **-eus, -ius, -ānus, -ēnus, -īnus, -ēius, -cus, -ticus** added to the stem of a noun (or, sometimes, an adjective) mean 'made of' or 'belonging to':

fēmineus, -a, -um, 'belonging to a woman, feminine'
aureus, -a, -um, 'made of gold, golden'
patrius, -a, -um, 'belonging to a father, paternal'
rēgius, -a, -um, 'belonging to a king, royal'
montānus, -a, -um, 'belonging to a mountain, mountain-'
urbānus, -a, -um, 'belonging to the city, city-'
terrēnus, -a, -um, 'made of earth, earthen'
aliēnus, -a, -um, 'belonging to another, strange'
dīvinus, -a, -um, (**dīvus, -i, M.**, 'god'), 'belonging to a deity, divine'
marīnus, -a, -um, 'belonging to the sea, marine'
plēbēius, -a, -um (**plēbs, plēbis, F.**, 'common people'), 'belonging to the common people, plebeian'
cīvicus, -a, -um, 'belonging to *or* of a citizen, civic'
bellicus, -a, -um, 'belonging to *or* of war, war-'
domesticus, -a, -um, 'belonging to the house, domestic'
viāticus, -a, -um, 'belonging to a road, belonging to a journey'

The suffixes **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-īlis** added to the stem of a noun mean 'pertaining to':

aquālis, **-e**, 'pertaining to water'
corporālis, **-e**, 'pertaining to the body, corporeal'
populāris, **-e**, 'pertaining to the people'
cōsulāris, **-e**, 'pertaining to a consul, consular'
hostīlis, **-e**, 'pertaining to an enemy, hostile'
cīvilis, **-e**, 'pertaining to citizens, civil, civic'

The suffixes **-ter** (**-tris**), **-ester** (**-estrīs**), **-timus**, **-nus**, **-urnus**, **-ternus** mean 'belonging to' (especially of times and places):

equester, **equestris**, **equestre** (**eques**, 'horseman, knight'), 'belonging to a horseman, equestrian'
campester, **campestris**, **campestre**, 'of or pertaining to a level field'
terrestris, **-e**, 'of or belonging to the earth'
maritimus, **-a**, **-um**, 'of or belonging to the sea'
fīnitimus, **-a**, **-um**, 'bordering upon, neighboring'
meridiānus, **-a**, **-um** (**meridiēs**, 'noon'), 'of or belonging to mid-day'
nocturnus, **-a**, **-um**, 'of or belonging to the night'
diūturnus, **-a**, **-um**, 'of long duration, lasting'
hesternus, **-a**, **-um** (**heri**, 'yesterday'), 'of or pertaining to yesterday'

UNIT ELEVEN — DRILL

I. Deponent Verbs

Translate indicatives, participles, infinitives, and imperatives; fully identify subjunctives.

cōnor , -āri , cōnātus sum	try, attempt
fateor , -ēri , fassus sum	confess
sequor , sequī , secūtus sum	follow
experior , -īri , expertus sum	try, experience

1. **cōnātur**; **fatētur**; **sequitur**; **experitūr**
2. **cōnābātur**; **fatēbātur**; **sequēbātur**; **experiēbātur**
3. **cōnābitur**; **fatēbitur**; **sequētūr**; **experiētūr**
4. **cōnāta** est; **fassa** est; **secūta** est; **experta** est
5. **cōnāta** erat; **fassa** erat; **secūta** erat; **experta** erat
6. **cōnāta** erit; **fassa** erit; **secūta** erit; **experta** erit
7. **cōnētūr**; **fateātūr**; **sequātūr**; **experiātūr**
8. **cōnārētūr**; **fatērētūr**; **sequerētūr**; **experirētūr**
9. **cōnāta** sit; **fassa** sit; **secūta** sit; **experta** sit

10. *cōnāta* esset; *fassa* esset; *secūta* esset; *experta* esset
11. *cōnāre*; *fatēre*; *sequere*; *experire*
12. *cōnāminī*; *fatēminī*; *sequimini*; *experimini*
13. *cōnāri*; *fatēri*; *sequi*; *experiri*
14. *cōnātūs* esse; *fassus* esse; *secūtūs* esse; *expertus* esse
15. *cōnātūrūs* esse; *fassūrūs* esse; *secūtūrūs* esse; *expertūrūs* esse
16. *cōnāns*; *fatēns*; *sequēns*; *experiēns*
17. *cōnātūs*; *fassus*; *secūtūs*; *expertus*
18. *cōnātūrūs*; *fassūrūs*; *secūtūrūs*; *expertūrūs*
19. *cōnāndus*; *fatēndus*; *sequēndus*; *experiēndus*
20. *capit*
21. *sequitur*
22. *cēpērunt*
23. *secūtī* sunt
24. *iubētis*
25. *fatēminī*
26. *iubēminī*
27. *fassī* estis
28. *iussī* estis
29. *iussus*, -a, -um
30. *fassus*, -a, -um
31. *laudāns*
32. *cōnāns*
33. *laudās*
34. *laudāris*
35. *cōnāris*

II.

Translate the following sentences and give the syntax of the words in **boldface** type:

1. **Fuga servōrum** eō tempore relāta est.
2. Timōrem **supplicis** intellegere temptāvimus.
3. Laus **maiōrum** nostrōrum maxima erat.
4. Nātōs amōrem **virtūtis** docēbant.
5. **Gentis** crūdēlis est bellum gentī amicāe īferre.
6. **Virī** pessimī semper fuit patriam **trādere**.
7. Amōrem **coniugis** amōre fēminae alterius māluērunt.
8. Factumne crūdēle negāre vīs?
9. Virī īfēlicis est velle plūs quam satis.
10. Custōs **templī** fugere nōlet.

UNIT ELEVEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Arbitror cōsulem morī; Arbitror cōsulem mortuum esse; Arbitror cōsulem moritūrum esse.
2. Scelusne cōfitērī ausus es?
3. Óratōremne loquī patiēmini?
4. Imperātor militēs hortābatur ut prōgrederentur.
5. Si iuvenēs nōbīs noxam minentur, eōs magnopere vereāmur.
6. Auxilium precāns, supplex ad āram ruit.
7. Flūmen secūtī, ad oppidum maximum vēnimus.
8. Crēdidistīne parentēs quam prīnum profectūrōs esse?
9. Ducēs nāvibus nōn ūsi erant.
10. Pauperēs hortātī sumus nē ē prōvinciā ēgredi cōnārentur.

UNIT ELEVEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Si ūtāmur nāvibus sociōrum, quam prīnum fugere possīmus.
2. Nōlī arbitrārī nostra scelera esse peiōra tuīs.
3. Imperātor sequentēs hortātus est nē odium iuvenum verērentur.
4. Fatēbāmur nōs proficisci cōnātōs esse ut iungerēmus manum hostium.
5. Patientēs multās poenās quam prīnum Rōmam prōgredi voluimus.
6. Ēgrediēns prīmā lūce, familia ad flūmen quod erat altissimum prōgressa sē ulterius gradī nōlle dixit. [**ulterius**, comparative adv., ‘farther’]
7. Dux fassus est sibi esse metum cōnsulum.
8. Domīni servīs ut sibi labōrārent maximā cum diligentīā minārī solitī sunt.
9. Est fortis virī neglegere perīcula quae minantur.
10. Est cōnsulis velle morī prō patriā.
11. Bonum est velle prō amātīs patī.
12. Si cōnāns servārē vitam cōnsulis moriāris, tuī cīvēs fortissimum factum laudent et ut statua pōnātur in forō hortentur.
13. Sapientēs crēdere ausī sunt hominem cupidum dīvitiārum saepe errāre.
14. Datūrus cēnam iuvenibus sequentibus sē, imperātor deōs precārī coepit ut familiā servārent. Dixit sē quam prīnum domum prōgressūrum esse.
15. Fassus est sē nātūm esse pauperibus parentibus quibus amor sui esset maximus.
16. Aenēās ē deā nātus est, ut aiunt, et multa proficīscēns Troiā ad Italiam expertus est. [**Aenēās**, -ae, M., proper name of a Roman hero]
17. Amor patriae est bonī cīvis.

18. Dulce est scire amicōs mala nōn patī, ut scis.
19. Cupidus magnōrum praemiōrum ḍrātor dē sceleribus cum duce proficiscentium nōn loquētur.
20. Imperātor sequentibus nē vereantur hostēs minantēs ignī et ferrō imperāre solet.
21. Nōn est patī meum.
22. Audē gradī cum virtūte et audāciā, omnibus cūris neglēctis.
23. Iuvenēs pauperēs in villam nocte ingredī māluērunt nē ā familiā eam incolentī vidērentur.
24. Servāre pecūniām nōn est facile ūllō tempore.
25. Alii dīvitiis bene ūtī volunt, ali ob mōrēs nōlunt.
26. Saxa ingentia ē flūmine minantia periculō fuērunt nāvibus.
27. Servī nōs aggredientēs viam ad villam mōnstrāvērunt.
28. Sī in hāc cūrā vīta mihi pōnenda sit, pōnam spem salūtis in amōre fidēque tuī.
29. Quid tibi pecūniā opus est, sī ūtī nōn potes? [quid, here, 'why']
30. Quod vult habet qui velle quod satis est potest.
31. Antīquus populus sōlem esse deum maximum arbitrāns eum precātus est auxilium. Cōnfessus est sibi auxilium multum opus esse.
32. Satis est superāre imimīcum, pessimum est perdere.
33. Unus deus poenam affert, ut multī cōgitant.
34. Virī bonī est nōlle facere noxam.
35. Qui superārī sē patitur prō tempore superat.
36. Sine morā ex urbe ēgredimini! Nōlite vōs ūnā hōrā in urbe invenīrī patī!
37. Quam ob rem scelera illius generis ferre solēbās? Nōs in hāc familiā neque tanta mala ferre soliti sumus neque ferēmus.
38. Imperātōre multa locūtō, militēs fassī sunt sē parum mortem verēri sed bene scire sē omnēs morī nōn posse; sibi opus esse mala atque pericula patī ut omnis orbis terrārum sē cum gaudiō laudāret dicēns malum propter audāciām hōrum virōrum ē terrā pulsum esse.
39. Crēdidistis iuvenēs quōs ad vōs vocāvissētis maximā esse diligētiā et omnibus rēbus ūsūrōs esse ut Rōmam sē cōferrēt. Nihil eis autem fidei erat; male crēdidistis.
40. Cupidi dīvitiārum et primā lūce Rōmam proficiscentēs, pauperēs deōs precābantur nē salūte, pecūniāque et omnibus bonis in urbe caritūrī essent. Spēs hominibus est saepe caecissima!
41. Parentum malōrum est iuvenēs neglegere; sapientēs semper illum parentem hortātī sunt ut filii eī cūrae sint.
42. Tot mala sum passus quot in caelō sīdera sunt.
43. Fatēmur scelera maximae audāciae in nostrā rē pūblicā hōc annō facta esse. Quōrum quod simile in tōtō orbe terrārum factum?

II.

- Having dared to enter the neglected house, the children fled as soon as possible when the guardian approached.
- Desirous of money, the young men attempted crimes, nor did they fear the punishment which threatened.
- Famous consuls, don't use all your wealth in order that you may fill the forum with statues of impious men.
- The soldiers confessed that the commander's hope of safety had saved lives in a time of great danger.
- Loving both (one's) enemies and (one's) friends is the mark of a distinguished man.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.5.10, 6.15, 8.20, 11.27

In Marcus Tullius Cicero's consulship, Lucius Catiline planned a conspiracy. Cicero found out about it and, after exposing Catiline's plans to the senate, drove him into exile.

Quae cum¹ ita² sint, Catilina,³ perge⁴ quō⁵ coepisti, ēgredere aliquandō⁶ ex urbe; patent⁷ portae: proficiscere. Nōbiscum versāri⁸ iam diūtius nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam.⁹ Quotiēns¹⁰ tū mē dēsignātum,¹¹ quotiēns¹⁰ vērō cōnsulem interficere cōnātus es! Nihil agis, nihil adsequeris¹² neque tamen cōnāri ac velle dēsistis.¹³ Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilina,³ līberā rem pūblicam metū, in exsilium¹⁴ sī hanc vōcem exspectās,¹⁵ proficiscere. Etenim¹⁶ sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vītā meā multō est cārior, sī cūncta¹⁷ Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica sic¹⁸ loquitur: "Marce Tulli, quid agis? Tūne eum quem esse hostem comperisti,¹⁹ quem ducem belli futūrum vidēs, quem exspectāri¹⁵ imperātōrem in castris²⁰ hostium sentis, auctōrem sceleris, principem²¹ coniūrātiōnis,²² ēvocātōrem²³ servōrum et civium perditōrum, exire²⁴ patiēre, ut abs²⁵ tē nōn ēmissus²⁶ ex urbe sed immissus²⁷ in urbem esse videātur?"

¹ cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'since' ² ita (adv.), 'so' ³ Catilina, -ae, M., a man's name ⁴ pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctus, 'continue' ⁵ quō (adv.), '(to) where' ⁶ ali-quandō (adv.), 'now at last' ⁷ pateō, -ēre, -ui, --, 'stand open' ⁸ versor (1), 'live' ⁹ sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, 'allow' ¹⁰ quotiēns (adv.), 'how many times' ¹¹ dēsignātum, -a, -um, 'elect' (understand cōnsulem) ¹² adsequor (ad + sequor), 'gain' ¹³ dēsistō, -ere, dēstītī, dēstitutus, 'stop (from)' (+ infinitive) ¹⁴ exsilium, -i, N., 'exile' ¹⁵ exspectō (1), 'wait for' ¹⁶ etenim (conj.), 'and indeed' ¹⁷ cūnctus, -a, -um, 'all' ¹⁸ sic (adv.), 'in this way' ¹⁹ comperiō, -ire, comperi, compertus, 'learn' ²⁰ castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ²¹ princeps, principis, M., 'the leading man' ²² coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F., 'conspiracy' ²³ ēvocātor, -ōris, M., 'a summoner, one who calls out (to arms)' ²⁴ exeō, -ire, -iū, -itus, 'go out' ²⁵ abs = ab ²⁶ ēmittō (ē + mittō), 'send out' ²⁷ immittō (in + mittō), 'send against' (+ in and the accusative)

B. Martial 2.21:

Bāsia¹ dās aliis, aliis dās, Postume,² dextram.
Dicis, ‘Utrum māvis? Ēlige.’³ Mālo manum.

¹ bāsium, -i, N., ‘kiss’ ² Postumus, -i, M., a man’s name ³ ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, ‘choose’

C. Martial 10.8:

Nūbere¹ Paula² cupid³ nōbis, ego dūcere⁴ Paulam²
nōlō: anus⁵ est. Velle, sī magis esset anus.⁵

¹ nūbō, -ere, nūpsi, nuptus, ‘marry’ (+ dat.); used for a *woman* marrying ² Paula, -ae, F., a woman’s name ³ cupiō, -ere, -iū, -itus, ‘wish’ ⁴ dūcō, *here*, ‘marry’; used for a *man* marrying (understand in mātrīmōnium) ⁵ anus, -ūs, F., ‘an old woman’; here, used as an adjective, ‘old’; **magis** is used with it to give a comparative force

D. Martial 9.10:

Nūbere¹ vis Priscō:² nōn mīror,³ Paula;⁴ sapīstī.⁵
Dūcere⁶ tē nōn vult Priscus:² et ille sapit.⁵

¹ nūbō, -ere, nūpsi, nuptus, ‘marry’ (+ dat.); used for a *woman* marrying ² Priscus, -i, M., a man’s name ³ mīror (1), ‘wonder’ ⁴ Paula, -ae, F., a woman’s name ⁵ sapiō, -ere, -iū, --, ‘be sensible’; sapīstī is a contraction for sapīstī (see Unit Eighteen, Section D)
⁶ dūcō, *here*, ‘marry’ (understand in mātrīmōnium); used for a *man* marrying.

E. Martial 8.27:

Mūnera¹ quī tibi dat locuplētī,² Gaure,³ senīque,⁴
sī sapīs⁵ et sentīs, hoc tibi ait ‘Morere’.

¹ mūnus, mūneris, N., ‘gift’ ² locuplēs, locuplētis, ‘wealthy’ ³ Gaurus, -i, M., a man’s name ⁴ senex, senis, ‘old’ ⁵ sapiō, -ere, sapīvī, --, ‘be sensible’

F. Martial 2.87:

Dicis amōre tuī bellās¹ ardēre puellās,
quī faciem² sub aquā, Sexte,³ natantis⁴ habēs.

¹ bellus, -a, -um, ‘beautiful’ ² faciēs, -ēi, F., ‘face’ ³ Sextus, -i, M., a man’s name
⁴ natō (1), ‘swim’

G. Martial 12.78:

Nil in¹ tē scripsi, Bithyñice.² Crēdere nōn vis
et iūrāre³ iubēs? Mālo satisfacere.⁴

¹ in, *here*, ‘against’ ² Bithyñicus, -i, M., a man’s name ³ iūrō (1), ‘swear’ ⁴ satisfaciō (satis + faciō), ‘make amends’

H. Martial 5.83:

Însequeris,¹ fugiō; fugis, însequor;¹ haec mihi mēns est:
velle tuum nōlō, Dindyme,² nōlle, volō.

¹ **însequor** (in + sequor), 'pursue' ² **Dindymus**, -ī, M., a man's name

I. Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 2.10 (adapted):

Amīcō mortuō, graviter angī¹ nōn amīcī est, sed sē ipsum² amantis est.

¹ **angī** (present passive infinitive), 'to suffer torment' ² **ipsum** (acc. sing. M.), intensifies sē, translate sē ipsum 'his very self'

J. Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.24.83:

In tranquillō¹ tempestātem² adversam³ optāre dēmentis est.

¹ **tranquillum**, -ī, N., 'calm' ² **tempestās**, -tātis, F., 'weather' ³ **adversus**, -a, -um, 'unfavorable'

K. Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.198–9 and 202–3:

Ō socii (neque enim ignārī¹ sumus ante malōrum),
Ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque² finem.

... revocāte³ animōs⁴ maestumque⁵ timōrem
mittite; forsān⁶ et haec ūlim⁷ meminisse⁸ iuvābit.⁹

¹ **ignārus**, -a, -um, 'unaware (of)' (+ gen.) ² **quoque** (adv.), 'also' ³ **revocō** (re- + vocō), 'call back, recover' ⁴ **animus**, -ī, M., 'spirit' ⁵ **maestus**, -a, -um, 'gloomy'
⁶ **forsān** (adv.), 'perhaps' ⁷ **ūlim** (adv.), 'at some time' ⁸ **meminī**, **meminisse** (defective verb), 'remember' ⁹ **iuvō**, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, 'please, help, delight'

L. Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.6.18:

Omnēs enim trahimur¹ et dūcimur ad cognitiōnis² et scientiae³ cupiditātem,⁴ in quā excellere⁵ pulchrum putāmus,⁶ lābī⁷ autem, errāre, nescire,⁸ dēcipī⁹ et malum et turpe¹⁰ dūcimus.

¹ **trahō**, -ere, trāxi, **tractus**, 'attract' ² **cognitiō**, -ōnis, F., 'knowledge' ³ **scientia**, -ae, F., 'knowing' ⁴ **cupiditās**, -tātis, F., 'desire' ⁵ **excellō**, -ere, **excellui**, **excelsus**, 'excel'
⁶ **putō** (1), 'think' ⁷ **lābor**, lābī, lāpus sum, 'slip' ⁸ **nesciō** (ne + sciō), 'not know'
⁹ **dēcipīō** (dē + capiō), 'deceive' ¹⁰ **turpis**, -e, 'disgraceful'

REVIEW: UNITS NINE TO ELEVEN

Review of Syntax

1. Custōdis ācerrimi est hospitēs monēre dē illis oppidō ignem minantibus ut sē in fugam quam primum cōferant.
(predicate genitive; infinitive as subject; **quam** with superlative)
2. Imperium illius ducis nunc minus est quam prius; nec habet apud hās gentēs satis auctōritātis. [**auctōritās**, -tātis, F., 'influence']
(comparison with **quam**; partitive genitive)
3. Timenti auxilium ferre solēmus nē metū male ūtātur. Hominēs enim clārissimae fāmae metū saepe scelera crūdēliōra faciunt.
(instrumental ablative with **ūtor**; genitive of description; ablative of cause)
4. Multi viri suā sententiā sunt fēlicēs; illi autem multōrum saepe dominī sunt, sed plūriū servī.
(objective genitive)
5. Multis aīte diēbus, lūce erant clāriōra nōbīs tua cōsilia; nunc ea intellegere nōn possumus.
(ablative of degree of difference; ablative of comparison)
6. Oppidō captō, ōrātōrem, virum clārissimō patre maiōribusque, superantēs interficere ausi sunt (audēbunt).
(ablative absolute; ablative of description; semi-deponent verb)
7. His dictīs, hoc genus verbōrum patī nōlēbant, sed magnus eis metus erat eōrum loquentium.
(ablative absolute; objective genitive)
8. Dis inimīcis, multō maxima pars cīvium bellum tamen gessit.
(ablative absolute; ablative of degree of difference; partitive genitive)
9. Sī in hāc cūrā auxilium opus erit, pōnam spem salūtis tōtīus in amōre fidēque vestrī.
(objective genitives)
10. Omnibus bonīs optimum est plūs glōriae quam divitiārum habēre.
(partitive genitive; comparison with **quam**; infinitive as subject)
11. Servī ē villīs ēgrediuntur, noctemque tōtam itinere factō, in alterum oppidum prīmā lūce venient.
(ablative absolute)

12. Nam arbitrāti sunt sē dīs superis cūrae esse.
13. Cognitis imperātōris rēbus, Rōmae gaudium magnum erat.
(ablative absolute)
14. Nostrā ūtere amicitiā ut volēs.
(instrumental ablative with ūtor)
15. Tū hortāris ut fidē sim magnā et spem habeam salūtis.
(ablative of description; objective genitive)
16. Amōre Iovis multae fēminae īram Iunōnis passae sunt.
(ablative of cause; subjective genitives)
17. Aliī huic sōli crēdidērunt, aliī ūlli crēdere nōluērunt.
18. Quīnque ē supplicibus erant simillimī virīs quōs sciō.
19. Virī magnae virtūtis saepe laudābuntur ā populō honestis mōribus.
(genitive of description; ablative of description)
20. Mihi nihil est tam cārum quam amicus amātus.
21. Quam prīnum nāvēs ācerimōs mīlēs facillimē auferent.
(quam with superlative)
22. Quid cōnsulī est cārius quam patria? Cōnsulī nihil est cārius patriā.
(comparison with quam; ablative of comparison)
23. Tibi ūni, nōn eī, loquī mālō.
24. Quid cōsiliī cēpistī?
(partitive genitive)
25. Multō melius quam frāter legit.
(ablative of degree of difference)

UNITS 9-11: Self-Review A

I.

Change to the plural, giving all possibilities:

1. difficiliori	3. nullius	5. loqueris
2. maius	4. offert	

II.

Translate indicative forms; identify subjunctives. Then change each form to the simple future tense, retaining person, number, and voice.

1. passi sunt	3. neglexeris	5. solitus es	7. malim
2. hortantur	4. proficiscebar	6. volumus	

III.

Translate, and then do whatever else is required:

1. Sentio illum virum omnibus temporibus fortiter vivere cui timor mortis gravissimus non sit.
 - a) What is the syntax of mortis?

2. Ullusne nostrum dicere potest se suam vitam quam sapientissimē egisse?
a) Syntax of **nostrum**?
3. Illi cives qui sunt multo fortiores quam nos corpore credunt se hostes e sua civitate expellere vi posse.
a) Give an alternative construction in Latin for **quam nos**.
4. Imperator militi dicit bellum quo urbem servaverint longius multis diebus fuisse quam illud in monte.
a) Syntax of **diebus**?
5. Dicit maiores multo maiora et meliora fecisse quam ea quae iuvenes facturi sint.
6. Fassi sunt hunc consulem multo melius se civitati gessisse quam illum.
a) Change **fassi sunt** to the future tense.
7. Dis volentibus, consilia iuvenum crudeliorum nostrae saluti minari conantium debentur.
a) Syntax of **volentibus**?
8. Cupidi divitiarum est bonos mores invidiā et audaciā neglegere et in scelera se conferre.
a) Syntax of **cupidi**?
b) Syntax of **divitiarum**?
c) Syntax of **neglegere**?
9. Bello illato, hospes magni studii et minimi timoris ad moenia venit et homines portas servantes hortatus est ut quam primum proficiscerentur. "Nisi," ait, "profecti eritis, magna scelera patiemini."
a) Syntax of **studii**?
b) Change **venit** to the future tense and make any other necessary change(s) in the sentence.
c) Rewrite the conditional sentence in Latin as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
10. Matris odio belli, filius, iuvenis bonis moribus, pugnare neque vult neque audet.
a) Syntax of **matris**?
b) Syntax of **odio**?
c) Syntax of **moribus**?
d) Change **vult** and **audet** to the future perfect tense.

IV.

Translate:

Noli arbitrari me alii longiores litteras scribere, nisi unus ex amicis ad me multa scripsit ad quem arbitror me respondere debere; nihil enim habeo quod scribere possum, et hōc tempore nihil difficilius facio. Ad te et ad nostram filiam non

possum sine plurimis lacrimis et magnā curā scribere; vos video miserrimas esse, quae mihi cariores vitā sitis.

(part of a letter written by Cicero to his wife; adapted)

Answer Key — UNITS 9–11: Self-Review A

I.

1. difficiliōribus
2. maiōra
3. nūllōrum, nūllārum
4. offerunt
5. loquimini (present tense); loquēmini (future tense, if the original -e- was long)

II.

1. they have suffered, they suffered, they did suffer; **patientur**
2. they encourage, they are encouraging, they do encourage; **hortābuntur**
3. you will have neglected; perfect subjunctive second person singular active; **neglegēs**
4. I was setting forth, I used to set forth, I kept on setting forth; **proficiscar**
5. you were accustomed, you have been accustomed; **solēbis**
6. we wish, we are wishing, we do wish; **volēmus**
7. present subjunctive, first person singular active; **mālam**

III.

1. I feel that that man to whom the fear of death is not very severe lives bravely at all times.
 - a) objective genitive
2. Is anyone of us able to say that he has conducted his own life as wisely as possible?
 - a) partitive genitive
3. Those citizens who are far (much) stronger (stronger by far/much) than we in body believe that they are able to (can) drive the enemies out of their state by force.
 - a) nōbis (ablative of comparison)
4. The general says to the soldier that the war by means of which they saved the city has been (was) many days longer than that (war) on the mountain.
 - a) ablative of degree of difference (longer by many days)
5. He says that his ancestors did (have done) (much) greater and better things (by far) than those which the young men are about to do.

6. They confessed that this consul had conducted himself for the state (much) better (by far) than that (consul).
 - a) *fatēbuntur*
7. With the gods willing, the plans of the rather cruel young men (youths) trying (who are trying) to threaten our safety will be destroyed.
 - a) ablative absolute (with present participle)
8. It is the mark of a man (characteristic of one) desirous of wealth (riches) to neglect (his) good character because of envy and boldness and to take himself into (resort to) crimes.
 - a) predicate genitive (genitive of characteristic)
 - b) objective genitive
 - c) infinitive, subject of *est* ('neglecting good character is [the mark] of one desiring riches')
9. When the war had been brought on (inflicted), the host of great eagerness and very little fear came to the walls and urged the men saving (who were saving) the gates that they set out as soon as possible. "If you do not set out," he says, "you will suffer (endure) great crimes."
 - a) genitive of description
 - b) *Bellō...moenia veniet et...hortābitur ut...profisciscantur.*
 - c) "Nisi," ait, "proficiscerēmini, magna sclera paterēmini." (imperfect subjunctives)
10. Because of the hatred of his mother (his mother's hatred) for war, the son, a young man of good character, neither wishes nor dares to fight.
 - a) subjective genitive
 - b) ablative of cause
 - c) ablative of description
 - d) *voluerit; ausus erit* (Since this is a semi-deponent verb, the perfect system has passive forms but active meanings.)

IV.

Do not think that I write a longer letter (a rather long letter) to another unless one of my friends, (to) whom I think that I ought to answer, has written many things to me; indeed, I have nothing which I am able to write, and at this time I do nothing more difficult (with more difficulty). I am not able to write to you and to our daughter without very many tears and great anxiety; I see that you are very wretched, you who are dearer to me than life.

UNITS 9-11: Self-Review B

I.

- A. Give the comparative and superlative forms of each of the following adjectives and adverbs:

1. crudelis	3. validus	5. magnopere	7. diu	9. bene
2. bonus	4. malus	6. magnus	8. parvus	10. multum

B. Change the following from the singular to the plural, retaining person, mood, and voice:

1. ferris	3. contuli	5. volebat
2. offers	4. malit	

II.

Translate, and then do whatever else is required:

1. Magister plus boni in vita quam mali esse nos credere voluit.
 - a) Give the syntax of **boni**.
2. Milites multo fortius in hoc bello quam in illo pugnaverunt quod quam optimis consiliis usi sunt.
 - a) Syntax of **multo**?
 - b) Syntax of **consiliis**?
3. Spem gloriae esse consulis bonis moribus nostri maiores crediderunt.
 - a) Syntax of **gloriae**?
 - b) Syntax of **consul**?
 - c) Syntax of **moribus**?
4. Cupidior divitiarum pio, impius malae familiae scelera quam facta honesta maluit.
 - a) Syntax of **pio**?
 - b) Give an alternate way of phrasing the first three words of the sentence.
 - c) Syntax of **familiae**?
5. Melius est laudare quam laudari.
 - a) Syntax of **laudare**?
6. Litteris quam primum scriptis, unus ex amicis nos curā laudari detulit.
 - a) Syntax of **scriptis**?
 - b) Syntax of **curā**?
 - c) Give an alternate way of expressing **curā**.
7. Unius invidiā tota gens magnopere passa est.
 - a) Syntax of **unius**?
8. Postquam dulciores hospites parum laudatos esse sensimus, nos eis maximas gratias acturos esse arbitrati sumus. [**gratias agere**, 'to thank']

III. Translate:

1. How many days after me do you want to set out to Rome?
2. When the general died, the young people, raving and very unlike (their) cruel enemies, fell because of their boldness and because no aid was offered.

Answer Key — UNITS 9–11: Self-Review B

I.

A. 1. *crūdēlior, crūdēlius; crūdēllissimus, -a, -um*
 2. *melior, melius; optimus, -a, -um*
 3. *validior, validius; validissimus, -a, -um*
 4. *peior, peius; pessimus, -a, -um*
 5. *magis; maximē*
 6. *maior, maius; maximus, -a, -um*
 7. *diūtius; diūtissimē*
 8. *minor, minus; minimus, -a, -um*
 9. *melius; optimē*
 10. *plūs; plūrimum*

B. 1. *ferimini*
 2. *offertis*
 3. *contulimus*
 4. *mālint*
 5. *volēbant*

II.

1. The teacher wished us to believe that there was more good in life than bad.
 a) partitive genitive

2. The soldiers fought more bravely by far (much more bravely) in this war than in that one because they used the best possible plans (as good plans as possible).
 a) ablative of degree of difference
 b) ablative of instrument after the verb *ūtor*

3. Our ancestors believed that hope of glory was the mark of a consul of good character.
 a) objective genitive
 b) predicate genitive (genitive of characteristic)
 c) ablative of description

4. More desirous of riches than a pious man, the impious man of bad family preferred crimes rather than honorable deeds.
 a) ablative of comparison
 b) cupidior *divitiārum* quam *pius*
 c) genitive of description

5. To praise is better than to be praised (praising is better than being praised; it is better to praise than to be praised).
 a) infinitive as subject

6. When (since, after) the letter had been written as soon as possible, one of

our friends reported that we were (being) praised because of (our) concern.
a) ablative absolute; the participle modifies the subject **litteris**
b) ablative of cause
c) propter cūram or ob cūram

7. Because of the envy of one man, the entire race suffered greatly.
a) subjective genitive
8. After we perceived that the rather sweet (pleasant) guests had not been praised enough, we thought that we would give very great thanks to them.

III.

1. Quantis diēbus post mē Rōmam proficiisci vis?
2. Imperātōre mortuō iuvenēs, dēmentēs et crūdēlium hostium (crūdēlibus hostibus) dissimillimi audāciā (ob audāciam/propter audāciam) cecidērunt et quod nūllum auxilium oblātum est (offerēbātur).

UNIT TWELVE

A. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive occurs most frequently in Latin in subordinate clauses, but some independent uses are found. All of these express notions connected with the basic definition of the subjunctive given in Unit One.

1. JUSSIVE (*iubeō*, *-ēre*, *iussī*, *iussus*, 'command') AND HORTATORY (*hortor* (1), 'urge') SUBJUNCTIVES

The present subjunctive is used to express a command or an exhortation.

veniat! let him come! command (JUSSIVE)
veniāmus! let's come! exhortation (HORTATORY)

The jussive sense occurs mainly in the third person; the hortatory in the first. The negative is introduced by *nē*.

Nē hoc faciat! Let him not do this!

2. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive may be used independently to express an action which might possibly or conceivably occur.

Haec crēdās. You would (could, might) believe these things.

For present or future potentiality, the present (sometimes the perfect) subjunctive is used. This type of subjunctive is allied to future less vivid conditions (see Unit Two); in fact, one might conceive of it as the apodosis (concluding clause) of such a condition, the protasis (if-clause) of which has been suppressed:

Frātrem meī miserērī nōlim I would not wish (my) brother to pity me
(*sī mē videat*). (if he should see me).

OBSERVATION:

The verb *misereor* takes the genitive case to express its object; hence the objective genitive *meī*.

Dicās eum hominem You would say (i.e., if you could) that he is a good man; you might say that he is a good man.

Past potentiality is expressed with the imperfect subjunctive.

Crēderēs eum hominem You would have believed that he was a good man; you might have believed that he was a good man.

The negative of the potential subjunctive is introduced by **nōn**.

3. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The present and imperfect subjunctives may be used to *deliberate* about a course of action. This is frequently used in a rhetorical question (i.e., a question which is asked for effect, but which does not demand an answer).

Quid faciam? What am I to do? What should I do?
Quid facerem? What was I to do? What should I have done?

The negative is introduced by **nōn**.

4. OPTATIVE (optō (1), 'desire, wish') SUBJUNCTIVE

A wish for the future which is capable of fulfillment is expressed by the present subjunctive alone or is introduced by **utinam** or **ut** (negative **utinam nē** or **nē**).

Utinam veniat! Would that he may come; I wish he would come;
if only he would come!

Utinam nē veniat! Would that he may not come; I wish he would not come; if only he would not come!

Wishes incapable of fulfillment utilize the imperfect subjunctive for present time (cf. present contrary-to-fact conditions) and the pluperfect for past time (cf. past contrary-to-fact conditions).

Utinam veniret! Would that he were coming; I wish he were coming;
if only he were coming! (but he is not; the wish is incapable of fulfillment, or *contrafactual*)

Utinam vēnisset! Would that he had come; I wish he had come; if only he had come! (but he did not; the wish is incapable of fulfillment, or *contrafactual*)

B. Direct Questions

Questions are sometimes introduced by interrogative words: **quis?**, 'who?'; **quid?**, 'what?'; **quandō?**, 'when?'; **quō?**, **quō modō?**, 'how?'; **cūr?**, **quam ob rem?**, 'why?'; **unde?**, 'from where?'; etc. If no interrogative word is used, the

enclitic **-ne** is frequently attached to the introductory word in order to indicate that a question is approaching.

Venisne mēcum? Are you coming with me?

When the answer “yes” is expected, the question is introduced by the word **nōnne**.

Nōnne venis mēcum? You are coming with me, aren’t you? (answer “yes” expected)

When the answer “no” is expected, the question is introduced by the word **num**.

Num venis mēcum? You aren’t coming with me, are you? (answer “no” expected)

Double questions are introduced by the particles **utrum** (or **-ne** or no introductory particle at all) . . . **an**, ‘whether . . . or’.

Utrum mēcum venis an cum eō manēs? (Whether) are you coming with me or staying with him?

Servusne es an nōn? Are you a slave or not?

Servus es an nōn? Are you a slave or not?

C. Indirect Questions

Indirect questions are subordinate noun clauses which serve as the object (and, less frequently, the subject) of the words on which they depend. These words usually, but not always, express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, asking, and the like. Indirect questions are introduced by an interrogative word and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

I know *who you are*. Direct Question: Who are you?

The noun clause “who you are” serves as the object of the word (“know”) on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative word (“who”) and, in Latin, its verb (“you are”) would be in the subjunctive.

We wondered *what gifts you brought*. Direct Question: What gifts did you bring?

The noun clause “what gifts you brought” serves as the object of the word (“wondered”) on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative word (“what”) and, in Latin, its verb (“you brought”) would be in the subjunctive.

What you are doing bothers me. Direct Question: What are you doing?

The noun clause “what you are doing” serves as the subject of the word (“bothers”) on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative

word ("what") and, in Latin, its verb ("you are doing") would be in the subjunctive.

In direct speech, these clauses would have been direct questions with their verbs in the indicative or the deliberative subjunctive.

DIRECT QUESTIONS:

Quid sentiō?	What do I feel?
Quid agēs?	What will you do?
Unde vēnistī?	Where have you come from?
Quam ob rem mē spectās?	Why are you looking at me?
Spectāsne mē?	Are you looking at me?
Venisne mēcum an cum eō manēs?	Are you coming with me or staying with him?
Servusne es an nōn?	Are you a slave or not?
Quid faciam?	What am I to do? What should I do?

In order to turn these direct questions into the indirect form, we must review the rules for sequence of tenses (Unit Three, section G). The primary tenses in the indicative are the present, future, future perfect, and perfect (when translated using the English auxiliary verbs "has, have"). The secondary tenses in the indicative are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. The subjunctive tenses in each sequence are illustrated in the examples below.

NOTE: While indirect questions follow the rules for sequence of tenses, a periphrastic form is frequently used to denote future time.

MAIN CLAUSE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE		
PRIMARY SEQUENCE:	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME	PAST TIME
Dicō, Rogō	quid faciam	quid factūrus sim	quid fēcerim
I say, I ask	what I am doing	what I shall do	what I did
SECONDARY SEQUENCE:			
Dixi, Rogāvi	quid facerem	quid factūrus essem	quid fēcissem
I said, I asked	what I was doing	what I would do	what I had done

Now, we shall turn the direct questions above into the indirect form:

Quid sentiō?	What do I feel?
Rogō quid sentiam.	I ask what I feel.
Rogāvi quid sentirem.	I asked what I felt (was feeling).
Expōnam quid sentiam.	I shall explain what I feel.
Sciō quid sentiam.	I know what I feel.
...etc.	

Quid agēs?	What will you do?
Rogō quid āctūrus sis.	I ask what you will do.
Rogāvī quid āctūrus essēs.	I asked what you would do.
Expōnam quid āctūrus sis.	I shall explain what you will do.
Sciō quid āctūrus sis.	I know what you will do.
...etc.	

Unde vēnistī?	Where have you come from?
Rogō unde vēneris.	I ask where you have come from.
Rogāvī unde vēnissēs.	I asked where you came (had come) from.
...etc.	

Quam ob rem mē spectās? Why are you looking at me?
Rogō quam ob rem mē I ask why you are looking at me.
spectēs.
Exposui quam ob rem mē I explained why you were looking at me.
spectārēs.
Exposui quam ob rem mē I explained why you had looked at me.
spectāvissēs.
...etc.

Spectāsne mē? Are you looking at me?
Rogō num (*here* = 'whether') mē spectēs. I ask whether you are looking
at me.
...etc.

Utrum venīs mēcum (venīsne mēcum) an cum eō manēs?	Are you coming with me or staying with him?
Nescivērunt utrum venirēs mēcum (venirēsne mēcum) an cum eō manerēs.	They did not know whether you were coming with me or staying with him.
...etc.	

Servusne es an nōn? Are you a slave or not?
Rogō servusne sis necne. I ask whether you are a slave or not.
etc.

Quid faciam? What should I do?
Rogō quid faciam. I ask what I should do.
etc.

OBSERVATION: In double indirect questions, when the second question is negative, **ne** is used more frequently than the **an nōn** of the direct question.

D. The Adjective *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, 'same'

The forms are essentially those of *is*, *ea*, *id*, with *-dem* added as a suffix. The differences are as follows:

1. In the nominative masculine singular, the *s* of *is* drops out and the *i* becomes long.
2. In the nominative and accusative neuter singular, the *d* of *id* disappears.
3. A final *-m* is changed to *-n* before *-dem*.

Thus, the paradigm:

SINGULAR				PLURAL	
M.	F.	N. —	M.	F.	N.
idem	eadem	idem	eidem (idem)	eaedem	eadem
eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
eidem	eidem	eidem	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)
eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)

As with the demonstrative adjectives you have learned, the forms may also be used as pronouns.

E. The Pronoun and the Adjective *quidam*, 'certain'

The pronoun *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam*, and the adjective *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* are essentially the same in declension as the relative pronoun, with *-dam* added as a suffix. The only exceptions are:

1. The pronoun has *quid-* for the neuter singular, nominative and accusative.
2. *-m* before *-dam* becomes *-n*.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

F. The Intensive Adjective *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, 'self, very'

This adjective, which may also be used as a pronoun, declines like *ille*, except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular which have *-um* instead of *-ud*.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Ipse is used to *intensify* the word it modifies or stands for.

Ipse veniam.

I *myself* shall come.

Virum **ipsum** vidit.

He saw the man *himself*; he saw the *very* man.

Expōnam quid **ipse** sentiam.

I shall explain what I *myself* feel.

Ipse sēcum loquitur.

He *himself* speaks with (to) himself.

G. The Demonstrative Adjective *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, 'that (of yours)'

This adjective (also used as a pronoun) declines like **ille**. It frequently carries a pejorative or derogatory tone.

Iste amicus venire nōn potest. *That* friend (*of yours*) can't come; *that* damned friend can't come.

UNIT TWELVE — VOCABULARY

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus

receive, accept; hear

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus

take back, regain, recover

sē recipere

withdraw, take oneself

an (conj.)

or (introducing the second part of a double question); whether (introducing a single indirect question)

aura, -ae, F.

breeze, wind, air

comes, **comitis**, M. or F.

companion

cōpia, -ae, F.

abundance, supply; pl., troops

cūr (adv.)

why, for what reason

dēligō, -ere, **dēlēgī**, **dēlectus**

select, choose, gather

exorior, -īrī, **exortus sum**

rise, arise, appear, start

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus

set forth, expose, explain

horridus, -a, -um

horrible, rough

hostīlis, -e

of an enemy, hostile

ibi (adv.)

there, then

īdem, **eadem**, **idem**

same

immortālis, -e

immortal, everlasting

ipse, -a, -um	self, very
iste, ista, istud	that (of yours), that (with pejorative sense)
iussum, -ī, N.	command, order (the abl. sing. is iussū , 'by order')
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus or remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus	remain
misereor, -ērī, miseritus sum	pity (+ gen.)
modus, -ī, M.	way, manner, limit; kind
quō modō	in what way, how
necne (conj.)	or not (generally used as the second part of a double indirect question, representing an nōn in the direct question)
nesciō, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -ītus	not know, be ignorant
nōnne (adv.)	(in a direct question, anticipates the answer "yes")
 	(in a direct question, anticipates the answer "no"); whether (in an indirect question)
num (adv.)	secretly
occultē (adv.)	power, strength; pl., resources, wealth
ops, opis, F.	few
pauci, -ae, -a	beg, demand
poscō, -ere, poposcī, --	how long
quamdiū (adv.)	when; since
quandō (conj. and adv.)	by what means, why; and therefore
quārē (adv.)	because
quia (conj.)	a certain one, a certain thing
quidam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.)	certain
quidam, quaedam, quoddam (adj.)	ask (for)
rogō (1)	lot, destiny
sors, sortis, -ium, F.	as if, as, as it were
tamquam (adv.)	at last, at length
tandem (adv.)	where, when
ubi (adv.)	from where
unde (adv.)	I wish!, would that!, if only!
utinam (adv.)	whether
utrum (conj.)	
utrum...an	whether...or
-ne...an	
---...an	
utrum...an nōn	whether...or not (in direct double questions)
-ne...an nōn	
---...an nōn	

utrum . . . necne -ne . . . necne — . . . necne	<div style="display: inline-block; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 10px; margin: 0;">}</div>	whether . . . or not (in indirect double questions)
--	--	---

UNIT TWELVE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Accipiō (ad + **capiō**) in addition to meaning ‘receive, accept’ means ‘hear’, that is, to receive information through the ears.

Sē recipere means ‘to take oneself, withdraw’ to a place: **Servi sē ad deōrum ārās recēpērunt**, ‘The slaves took themselves to the altars of the gods’.

Comes, **comitis**, M. or F., is formed as though from **comeō** (com- + eō), ‘go with’; **comes** is the person who goes with someone, ‘companion’.

Cōpia, **cōpiae**, F., means ‘abundance, supply’ in the singular, but in the plural, it means ‘troops’.

Dēligō, ‘select, choose, gather’, is a compound of **legō**; it has **dēlēgī** for the third principal part.

Exorior is a compound of **orior**, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, ‘rise’. **Exorior** in addition to meaning ‘rise, arise’ means ‘appear, start’. The East is called the Orient because that is where the sun rises.

Expōnō is a compound of **pōnō**; it means ‘set forth, expose, explain’.

Horridus, -a, -um is derived from a verb meaning ‘to bristle’; therefore, it means ‘rough, shaggy’, and thus, ‘horrible’.

Idem, **eadem**, **idem** is simply a compound of **is**, **ea**, **id** plus **-dem**, ‘exactly’; it means ‘same’. The abbreviation *ibid.* stands for **ibidem**, ‘exactly there’.

Immortālis, -e means literally ‘not’ (im-) ‘pertaining to’ (-ālis) ‘death’ (-mort-), thus, ‘immortal, everlasting’.

Ipse, -a, -um, declined like **ille**, -a, -ud (except for the neuter singular nominative and accusative) intensifies the word it modifies and means ‘self, very’. As in Irish literature one is accustomed to read “Oh, ‘tis himself” or “Himself is coming”, so in Latin one may find **Ipse venit**, ‘He himself is coming’, or **Ipsum voluī!**, ‘The very man I wanted!’

Iste, -a, -ud (declined like **ille**, -a, -ud) frequently (but not always) has a pejorative sense and means ‘that (of yours)’ or ‘that rotten no-good’.

Iussum is simply the fourth principal part of the verb used as a noun, ‘the ordered thing’ or ‘order, command’. Note that the ablative singular is **iussū**.

Maneō, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsus** and **remaneō**, **remanēre**, **remānsī**, **remānsus**, may be used interchangeably; the -a- lengthens in the perfect stem before -ns-. Both verbs mean ‘remain’. Do not confuse the singular present active imperative **manē**, ‘remain’, with **māne** (adverb), ‘early in the morning’.

The deponent verb **misereor**, **miserērī**, **miseritus sum**, ‘pity’, governs the genitive case: **Meī miserēris?**, ‘Do you pity me?’

Nesciō is simply **ne** + **sciō**, ‘not know, be ignorant’.

Nōnne and **num** introduce a question. **Nōnne** is used when the answer “yes” is expected, **num** when the answer expected is “no”. **Num** may also introduce an indirect question and then it means ‘whether’.

Ops, **opis**, **F.**, in the singular means ‘power, strength, help’, but in the plural it means ‘resources, wealth’.

Paucī, **paucae**, **pauca** is an adjective found in the plural; it means ‘few’.

Quia and **quod**, ‘because’, may be used interchangeably.

Quidam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** is the pronoun, ‘a certain’; **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** is the adjective, ‘certain’: **Sī quiddam mihi dīcās**, **dē eō taceam**, ‘If you should tell me a certain thing, I would be silent about it’; **Quoddam dōnum quod placēbit tibi habeō**, ‘I have a certain gift which will please you’.

Rogō, ‘ask’, a first conjugation verb, means not only to ask a question, but also to make a demand on someone: **Tē rogāvī nē id facerēs**, ‘I asked you that you not do that’. Note that this verb can take two objects: **Tē pecūniām rogō**, ‘I ask you for money’.

Tamquam means ‘as if, as, as it were’, and **tandem** means ‘at last, at length’. In order not to confuse these two words, it might be helpful to remember that a bicycle built for two is called a tandem (humorously, from the idea of length: the second person sits behind, not next to, the other.)

ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF VERBS

The suffixes **-āx**, **-ācis**, **-ulus**, or **-īvus** added to the stem of a verb express the action of the verb as a quality or tendency.

audāx, **-ācis**, ‘bold, courageous’

efficāx, **-ācis** (**efficiō**, ‘effect, bring about’), ‘effectual, efficient’

fugāx, **-ācis**, ‘apt to flee, swift’

loquāx, **-ācis**, ‘talkative’

pūgnāx, **-ācis**, ‘fond of fighting, combative, warlike’

timidus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘fearful, afraid’

vīvidus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘containing life, living’

bibulus, **-a**, **-um** (**bibō**, **-ere**, ‘drink’), ‘drinking readily’

crēdulus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘easy of belief, credulous’

garrulus, **-a**, **-um** (**garriō**, **-ire**, ‘chatter’), ‘chattering, talkative’

querulus, **-a**, **-um** (**queror**, **querī**, ‘complain’), ‘full of complaints, complaining’

tremulus, **-a**, **-um** (**tremō**, **-ere**, ‘tremble’), ‘shaking, trembling’

āctīvus, **-a**, **-um**, ‘active, practical’

captīvus, -a, -um, 'taken prisoner, captive'
fugitīvus, -a, -um, 'fleeing away, fugitive'
nātīvus, -a, -um, 'imparted by birth, innate'

The suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis** added to the stem of a verb express passive qualities, and occasionally active ones.

agilis, -e, 'easily moveable, nimble'
docilis, -e, 'easily taught'
amābilis, -e, 'worthy of love, lovely'
crēdibilis, -e, 'worthy of belief, credible'
mīrābilis, -e (*mīror*, -ārī, 'wonder at, admire'), 'wonderful, admirable'
mūtābilis, -e, 'changeable'
spectābilis, -e, 'visible, worth seeing'

The suffixes **-bundus** and **-cundus** added to the stem of a verb denote a continuance of the act or quality expressed by the verb.

errābundus, -a, -um, 'wandering about'
furibundus, -a, -um (*furō*, -ere, 'be mad'), 'raging, mad'
moribundus, -a, -um, 'dying'
irācundus, -a, -um (*irāscor*, *irāscī*, 'be angry'), 'irritable, angry'
fācundus, -a, -um (*for*, *fārī*, *fātus sum*, 'speak'), 'speaking with ease, eloquent'

This verb **for** contains the stem **fā-** which is found in such words as **fāma**, 'talk, report, reputation'; **fābula**, -ae, F., 'narration, story, play'; **fātum**, -i, N., 'prediction, destiny, fate'; **fās**, indeclinable, 'right, proper, allowable (according to divine dictate)'; **nefās**, indeclinable, 'unlawful, abominable', in other words, so bad it cannot be talked about. The Romans divided their calendar between **fāstī** and **nefāstī** — days (lucky and unlucky) on which business was allowed or not allowed to be conducted. An infant, literally, is a child who does not (in-) speak; once he begins speaking he is no longer technically an infant.

UNIT TWELVE — DRILL

1. Respondeāmus!
2. Utinam dominī respondeant (respondissent)!
3. Ad quem locum accēdāmus?
4. Intellegēbat quam ob rem nōn respondissēmus.
5. Utrum iubēbis eum fortem esse an ego iubēbō?
6. Opprimarne ab hostibus an in fugam mē cōferam?
7. Nōnne tibi hoc opus placet? Num illud opus clārissimum tibi placet?
8. Sine morā ille auctor librum cōnficiat!

9. Nē ōderimus malum nōs opprimentem. Nōn sentiō eum scīre quid agat.
10. Pater scit quantā pecūniā nōbīs opus sit.
11. Frāter ā nōbīs quaesīvit quanta sidera in caelō essent.
12. Omnia superat amor: et nōs cēdāmus amōrī.
13. Omnēs intellegere voluērunt quid hominēs illius temporis tanta mala passī essent. [quid, 'in respect to what thing, why']
14. Sciunt hunc ūrātōrem cupidissimum divitiārum esse.
15. Sciunt quam ob rem hic ūrātōr cupidissimus sit (fuerit) divitiārum.
16. Cognōscēbātis ducem mortem minātūrum esse illis patriam neglegentibus.
17. Cognōscēbātis quam ob rem dux mortem minātūrus esset illis patriam neglegentibus.
18. Cognōscēbāmus quō tempore dux mortem illis patriam neglegentibus minātūs esset; numquam intellegēmus quam ob rem patriam neglēixerint.
19. Utrum nostram patriam servāre cōnāberis an nōn ?
20. Quaerimus utrum nostram patriam servāre cōnātūra sīs necne.
21. Quidam homō habēbat ferrum quoddam. Dedit cuidam. Is post dedit aliī. Is erat idem qui primus habēbat.
22. Nē iuvenī cupidō divitiārum crēdant.
23. Utinam scelus nē cōfitērēris.
24. Periculum eō tempore neglegāmus.
25. Nāvēs eius generis nōn vidērēs.
26. Domum hōc tempore ingrediantur ?
27. Iste amīcus mē ūdit.
28. Idem amīcus mē ūdit.
29. Amīcus ipse mē ūdit.
30. Iustum frātrem vīdī.
31. Eundem frātrem vīdī.
32. Frātrem ipsum vīdī.
33. Frātrem ipse vīdī.

UNIT TWELVE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Comitēs nostrī iussa tandem expōnant.
2. Utinam cōpiae hostilēs sē ex patriā recipiant.
3. Parentum iuvenis occultē miserear ?
4. Nē domī maneāmus.
5. Pauca eius modī acciperēs.
6. Num negās tē haec nescīvisse ?
7. Utrum melius est haec dēligere an illa ?

8. Nōnne comitēs vestri opēs recipient?
9. Tē sequi velimus an hortēmur ut dux sine nōbis proficiscātur?
10. Utinam nē hoc audeās; magnopere patiāris.

UNIT TWELVE — EXERCISES

I.

1. Omnēs eidem militēs qui prō rē pūblicā pūgnāvērunt magna pecūniae praemia ā civibus accipiant.
2. Rogāvimus quaedamne cibum an pecūniām an auxiliū posceret.
3. Di immortālēs salūtem, opēs et imperium civibus comitibusque dent!
4. Iuppiter! Mihi vītam longam sine gravī mortis timōre dēs!
5. Crēdāsne oppidum, ā cōpiis fortibus per tōtam diem nōn captum, nocte ā parvā infēlicium cīvium manū occultē dēlētum esse?
6. Quārē iste tandem meī misereātūr?
7. Nōn vellem istōs hominēs, omnēs agrōs dēlētēs, nōbiscum remanēre.
8. Quid faciam, cīvēs? Quid dicam istis qui civitātem dēlērē volunt? Quō modō rem pūblicam servāre possim? Quandō exoriēmī? Ubi cīvitās oppūgnābitur? Exoriāmī! Rem pūblicam et cīvēs servāte!
9. Scisne Marcum? Num cum eō venis? Nōnne cibum fers?
10. Utinam militēs hostilēs nē veniant ut oppidum dēleant!
11. Utinam eī, quōrum cōpiae fortiōrēs quam illae hostium oppūgnantium sunt, patriam nostram servent!
12. Utinam dux ipse paucis hōris veniat ut hostēs moenia ā civibus mūnita oppūgnantēs et capientēs dēleat.
13. Iste comes cīvēs rogāvit unde vēnissent, et quam ob rem ad ārās deōrum irent.
14. Nescivērunt utrum manus militum superāvisset an superāta esset.
15. Expōne quid urnās pulchrās manibus servōrum factās dēlēveris. [quid, 'in respect to what thing, why?']
16. Semper intellegēbam quam ob rem omnēs hominēs liberi servōrum miserērentur.
17. Expōnere nōn potuerim quam ob rem rēx dōna ā turbā supplici nōn accēperit.
18. Quidam nōbis dicere possunt quamdiū cōnsulēs ipsi in urbe remānsūrī sint.
19. His tantis in rēbus est tuum vidēre quid agātur.
20. Ā vōbīs quaerō utrum pecūniām accēperitis necne.
21. Quid dicam dē servitūte quae opprimit hōs quōs vidēmus?
22. Multōrum cognōsce exemplō quae facta sequāris, quae fugiās: vīta est nōbīs magister.

23. Paucōrum est intellegere quid dōnet deus.

24. Ducēs dēlēcti nesciunt cūr magnus mortis timor inter cīvēs exoriātur.
Utinam incolae fortiōrēs essent! [inter, prep. + acc., 'among']

25. Pauci tandem imperātōris iussū exposuērunt cūr horrida bella hominibus
saepe pūgnanda essent: hominum est semper velle plūs imperiī quam habent.

26. Nē misereāmur ipsōrum comitum qui nōbis noxae fuērunt et quōs nostri
amicī ūdērunt.

27. Sapiēns scit quid sorte sibi datum sit, quid nōn. Utinam omnēs sapientēs
essēmus!

28. Scīre volēbātis quamdiū in illā urbe vīxissem. Quīnque annōs ibi mānsī,
sed mihi nunc tempus nōn est vōbis expōnere quārē mē rūs recēperim.

29. Nōnne intellegis quantō in periculō sis (fueris; futūrus sis)?

30. Vestri comitēs verba militum accipientēs nesciēbant quam ob rem expōnere
nōllent quid ducēs dē salūte cōgitārent.

31. Omnēs sē in tēcta recēpērunt, nescientēs quandō sociī ventūri essent, ut
sē timōre et periculō liberārent.

32. Nesciō quō modō iste a cīvibus dux dēlēctus sit; vir pessimus est.

33. Rogātis ut opibus bene ūtāmur; rogāmus num ipsī opībus bene ūtāminī.

34. Quaedam mē rogāvit unde vēnissem; dīxi mē Rōmā occultē profectum
esse; sortem esse ad hanc urbē mē cōnferre ut multa huic populō tamquam
magister dicerem.

35. PLINY TRIES TO HANDLE THE CHRISTIANS (selected and adapted from Pliny,
Letters x.96):

Interim in eīs qui ad mē tamquam Christiānī dēferēbantur hoc ēgī. Rogāvī
ipsōs an essent Christiānī. Dīxērunt sē Christiānōs esse. Sī negāvissent,
imperāvīssem ut ei ipsī liberārentur; persevērantēs autem dūci ad poenam
iussī. Fuērunt aliī similis āmentiae quōs, quia cīvēs Rōmānī erant, dīxi
in urbē mittendōs. Quid aliud in rēbus huius modī facerem? Magnum
periculum cīvitāti atque populō Rōmānō erat.

[āmentia, -ae, F., 'madness, folly'; Christiānus, -a, -um, 'Christian'; in (prep.
+ abl.), here, 'in the case of'; interim (adv.), 'meanwhile'; persevērō (1),
'persevere']

36. Amīcus optimus mortuus est. Cōgitō quō amīcō, quō virō caream.

37. Quaerō utrum Brūti similem mālīs an Antōniī. [Brūtus, -ī, M., proper name;
Antōnius, -ī, M., proper name]

38. Hoc quaerāmus, immortālis sit ille hospes necne: Esne immortālis an nōn?

39. Unde quoddam dōnum dē quō diū audīvimus recipiēmus? Scisne an nōn?

40. Ubi estis? Quandō veniam ut vōs videam? Nisi domi eritis, quō modō sciam
quid mihi faciendum sit?

41. Eidem parentēs iuvenēs ipsōs audentēs loqui cum audāciā ūderint.

42. "Moriēmur sine culpā, sed moriāmur," ait.

43. Sed ubi diēs coepit, et incolae nihil hostile veritī sunt, multī oppidō sunt ēgressī, aliī ibi mānsērunt et imperātor copiās portās oppūgnāre iussit.

44. Nōs ipsī mori velimus an mortem vereāmur (timeāmus)? Quae sit nostra sententia rogāre vīs.

45. Dāmnātus cuiusdam sceleris, mē quae esset poena nōn accēpisse fassus sum.

46. Quārē discēdant impī!

47. Vidē nunc quid agās, quid ferre possis, neque quamdiū vixerit Caesar sed quam nōn diū rēxerit cōgitā! [Note how nōn splits quamdiū for effect. *Caesar, Caesaris, M., proper name*]

48. Utinam minus vitae cupidi fuissēmus! Certē nihil aut nōn multum in vitā malī vīdissēmus. [aut (conj.), 'or']

49. Ad tē quid scribam nesciō.

50. Utinam nē tōtam opīniōnem parva nōn numquam mūtāvisset aura rūmōris.

51. Rogābās quam ob rem somnus ad mē illā nocte nōn vēnisset; magnopere timēbam; omnēs mē terrēbant aurae. [somnus, -ī, M., 'sleep']

52. Omnibus modis miser sum.

II.

1. Let all citizens in a free state be dutiful and willing to fight for their country.
2. If only we could always be free from care!
3. All men know why the enemy must be overcome.
4. What are we to do in order that we may remain free men?
5. He might believe that you are all good and honorable men.
6. He explained how the enemy would attack and destroy the fortified walls at Rome.

III. Readings

A. Cicero speaks of the disadvantages of knowing one's future (*Dē Dīvīnātiōne* II.9.22, slightly adapted):

Atque ego nē ūtilem¹ quidem² arbitror esse nōbis futūrārum rērum scientiam.³ Quae enim vita fuisset Priamō,⁴ si ab adulēscētiā⁵ scivisset, quōs ēventūs⁶ senectūtis⁷ esset habitūrus? Abeāmus⁸ ā fābulis,⁹ propiōra¹⁰ videāmus. Clārissimōrum hominum nostrae civitātis dē gravissimis mortibus in aliō librō scripsi. Quid igitur?¹¹ ut omittāmus¹² superiōrēs,¹³ Marcōne

¹ ūtilis, -e, 'advantageous' ² nē...quidem, 'not...even' (enclosing the word or words they qualify) ³ scientia, -ae, F., 'knowledge' ⁴ Priamus, -ī, M., 'Priam', the aged king of Troy ⁵ adulēscētia, -ae, F., 'youth' ⁶ ēventus, -ūs, M., 'issue, end, catastrophe' ⁷ senectūs, -tūtis, F., 'old age' ⁸ abeo (ab + eō), 'depart' ⁹ fābula, -ae, F., 'story, myth' ¹⁰ propiōr, -ius, 'nearer, more closely affecting' ¹¹ igitur (post-positive conj.), 'therefore' ¹² omittō (ob + mittō), 'leave out, omit'; translate ut 'granted that, although' (see Appendix, p. 392, Concessive Clauses #5) ¹³ superior, -ius, comparative of superus, -a, -um, *here*, 'prior, former, earlier'

Crassō¹⁴ putās ūtile¹ fuisse tum,¹⁵ cum¹⁶ maximīs opibus flōrēbat,¹⁷ scīre sibi interfēctō Pūbliō¹⁸ filiō exercitūque¹⁹ dēlētō trāns²⁰ Euphrātem²¹ cum īgnōminīā²² esse moriēndum?²³

¹⁴ Marcus Crassus, -ī, M., a man's name ¹⁵ tum (adv.), 'then, at that time' ¹⁶ cum (conj. + indicative), 'when' ¹⁷ flōrēō, -ēre, -ūi, --, 'prosper' ¹⁸ Pūblius, -ī, M., a man's name ¹⁹ exercitus, -ūs, M., 'army' ²⁰ trāns (prep. + acc.), 'across, beyond' ²¹ Euphrātes, -is, M., 'the Euphrates', a river in western Asia ²² īgnōminīa, -ae, F., 'disgrace' ²³ esse moriēndum: The neuter indicates that the verb is used impersonally: '...that it had to be died by him', i.e., 'that he had to die' (see Unit Thirteen, section C).

B. Martial 2.7:

Dēclāmās¹ bellē,² causās³ agis, Attice,⁴ bellē,²
 historiās⁵ bellās,² carmina bella² facis,
 compōnis⁶ bellē² mīmōs,⁷ epigrammata⁸ bellē,²
 bellus² grammaticus,⁹ bellus² es astrologus,¹⁰
 et bellē² cantās¹¹ et saltās,¹² Attice,⁴ bellē,²
 bellus² es arte lyrae,¹³ bellus² es arte pilae.¹⁴
 Nil bene cum¹⁵ faciās, faciās tamen omnia bellē,²
 vīs dicam¹⁶ quid sīs? Magnus es ardeliō.¹⁷

¹ dēclāmō (1), 'declaim' ² bellē (adv.), 'beautifully'; bellus, -a, -um, 'beautiful'
³ causa, -ae, F., here, 'lawsuit'; causās agere, 'to plead cases' ⁴ Atticus, -ī, M., a man's name
⁵ historia, -ae, F., 'history' ⁶ compōnō (com- + pōnō), 'compose, arrange'
⁷ mīmōs, -ī, M., 'a mime' (a type of stage entertainment) ⁸ epigramma, -atis, M., 'an epigram'
⁹ grammaticus, -ī, M., 'grammarian' ¹⁰ astrologus, -ī, M., 'astronomer'
¹¹ cantō (1), 'sing' ¹² saltō (1), 'dance' ¹³ lyra, -ae, F., 'lyre' (a stringed instrument)
¹⁴ pila, -ae, F., 'ball, a game of ball' ¹⁵ cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'although' ¹⁶ vīs dicam = vīs ut dicam ¹⁷ ardeliō, -ōnis, M., 'busybody'

C. Martial 8.12:

Uxōrem¹ quārē locuplētem² dūcere³ nōlim
 quaeritis? Uxōri¹ nūbere⁴ nōlo meae.
 Inferior⁵ mātrōna⁶ suō sit, Prīscē,⁷ maritō:⁸
 nōn aliter⁹ fiunt¹⁰ fēmina virque parēs.¹¹

¹ uxor, -ōris, F., 'wife' ² locuplēs, -plētis, 'wealthy' ³ dūcere (in mātrīmōniūm understood), 'marry' (of a man to a woman) ⁴ nūbō, -ere, nūpsi, nuptus, 'marry' (+ dat.) (of a woman to a man) ⁵ inferior, -iūs, comparative of inferus, -a, -um, 'low' ⁶ mātrōna, -ae, F., 'a married woman' ⁷ Prīscē, -ī, M., a man's name ⁸ maritus, -ī, M., 'husband' ⁹ aliter (adv.), 'otherwise' ¹⁰ fiunt, '(they) become' (3rd person pl. pres. indic. of fiō, fieri, factus sum) ¹¹ pār, paris, 'equal'

D. Martial 12.20:

Quārē nōn habeat, Fabulle,¹ quaeris
 uxōrem² Themisōn?³ Habet sorōrem.

¹ Fabullus, -ī, M., a man's name ² uxor, -ōris, F., 'wife' ³ Themisōn, -ōnis, M., a man's name

E. Martial 12.92:

Saepe rogāre solēs quālis¹ sim, Prīscē,² futūrus,
 si fiam³ locuplēs⁴ simque repente⁵ potēns.⁶
 Quemquam⁷ posse putās mōrēs nārrāre⁸ futūrōs?
 Dīc mihi, si fiās⁹ tū leo,¹⁰ quālis¹ eris?

¹ **quālis**, -e, 'what kind (of)' ² **Prīscus**, -i, M., a man's name ³ **fiam**, 1st person sing., pres. subj. of **fiō**, fieri, factus sum, 'become' ⁴ **locuplēs**, -plētis, 'wealthy' ⁵ **repente** (adv.), 'suddenly' ⁶ **potēns**, potentis, 'powerful' ⁷ **quemquam** (acc. sing. M.), 'anyone' ⁸ **nārrō** (1), 'tell, relate' ⁹ **fiās**, 2nd person sing., pres. subj. of **fiō**, fieri, factus sum, 'become' ¹⁰ **leō**, leōnis, M., 'lion'

F. Horace, *Odes* I.11:

Tū nē quaeſieris¹ — scīre nefās² — quem mihi, quem tibi
 Finem dī dederint, Leuconoē,³ nec Babylōniōs⁴
 Temptāris⁵ numerōs.⁶ Ut⁷ melius, quicquid⁸ erit, patī!
 Seu⁹ plūrēs hiemēs,¹⁰ seu⁹ tribuit¹¹ Iuppiter ultimam,
 Quae nunc oppositis¹² dēbilitat¹³ pūmīcibus¹⁴ mare
 Tyrrhēnum.¹⁵ Sapiās,¹⁶ vīna¹⁷ liquēs,¹⁸ et spatiō¹⁹ brevi²⁰
 Spem longam resecēs.²¹ Dum²² loquimur, fūgerit invida²³
 Aetās:²⁴ carpe²⁵ diem, quam minimum crēdula²⁶ posterō.²⁷

¹ **quaesieris** = **quaesiveris** ² **nefās**, N. (indeclinable), 'unlawful, wrong' ³ **Leuconoē** (vocative), a woman's name ⁴ **Babylōnius**, -a, -um, 'Babylonian' (The Babylonians were noted for their astrological calculations.) ⁵ **temptō** (1), *here*, 'consult'; **temptāris** is a syncopated or contracted form of **temptāveris** (see Unit Eighteen, Section D) ⁶ **numerōs**, -i, N., *here*, 'calculation' ⁷ **ut** (adv.), 'how' ⁸ **quicquid** (nom. sing. N., indefinite pron.), 'whatever' ⁹ **seu...seu** (conj.), 'whether...or' ¹⁰ **hiems**, *hiemis*, F., 'winter' ¹¹ **tribuō**, -ere, tribui, -ūtus, 'assign' ¹² **oppōnō** (ob, 'against' + **pōnō**), 'oppose' ¹³ **dēbilitō** (1), 'weaken, break' ¹⁴ **pūmēx**, -icis, M., '(porous) rock' ¹⁵ **Tyrrhēnus**, -a, -um, 'Tyrrhenian' ¹⁶ **sapiō**, -ere, -ii, --, 'be sensible' ¹⁷ **vīnum**, -i, N., 'wine' ¹⁸ **liquō** (1), 'strain' ¹⁹ **spatiūm**, -i, N., 'time' ²⁰ **brevis**, -e, 'brief' ²¹ **resecō**, -āre, -secui, -sectus, 'remove' ²² **dum** (conj.), 'while' ²³ **invidus**, -a, -um, 'envious' ²⁴ **aetās**, -tātis, F., 'life' ²⁵ **carpō**, -ere, carpsi, carptus, 'pluck, take advantage of' ²⁶ **crēdulus**, -a, -um, 'trusting (in)' (+ dat.) ²⁷ **posterus**, -a, -um, 'future'; *here*, used as a neuter noun

UNIT THIRTEEN

A. The Indefinite Pronouns *aliquis*, *quis*, *quisquam*, *quisque*

Indefinite pronouns represent *some* person or thing without designating exactly *which* one. **Quidam**, 'a certain', met in the previous unit, is also an *indefinite* pronoun.

1. *aliquis*

The pronoun **aliquis**, **aliquid** is declined like the interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid** with **ali-** added as a prefix; the forms for the adjective, **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**, are identical to those of the relative pronoun **qui**, **quae**, **quod** with the prefix **ali-**, with the exception of the feminine nominative singular (as noted in the three parts given), and the neuter nominative and accusative plural, which are **aliqua**.

The pronoun means 'someone, something, anyone, anything'; the adjective means 'some, any'.

Aliquis ad mē heri vēnit. *Someone* came to me yesterday.

Nōn sine **aliquō** metū cum
incolis pūgnāvimus. *We fought with the inhabitants not without*
some fear.

Vidistine **aliquem**? *Did you see *anyone* (*someone*)?*

2. *quis*

Quis, **quid** (adjective **qui**, **qua**, **quod**) is essentially identical to **aliquis**, **aliquid** (adjective, **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**), although it perhaps has a greater degree of indefiniteness about it. It is most frequently used instead of **aliquis** after the words **sī**, **nisī**, **num**, and **nē**.

REMEMBER: After **sī**, **nisī**, **num**, and **nē**, all the **ali-**'s drop away.

Si quis ad mē veniat, fēlix sim.

*If *anyone* (*someone*) should come to me, I would be happy.*

Nisi quem videās, fēlix nōn sis.

*If you should not see *anyone* (*someone*), you would not be happy.*

Num quem vidēs?

*You don't see *anyone* (*someone*), do you?*

Hoc fēcit nē quis irātus esset.

He did this in order that *someone* might not be angry.

3. quisquam

Quisquam, quidquam (sometimes written **quicquam**) is declined like **quis, quid** with the suffix **-quam**. It means ‘someone (something), anyone (anything)’ and is used mainly in sentences which are negative or imply negation. The adjective for **quisquam** is supplied by the word **ullus, -a, -um**, ‘any’.

Vix quisquam hoc negāre Hardly *anyone* can deny this.
potest.

Fortior fuit lēgātus quam The envoy was braver than *anyone* of the
quisquam militum. soldiers. (The implied negation here is that
no one of the soldiers was braver than the
envoy.)

Sōlis lūx clārior est quam The light of the sun is brighter than the light
lūx ullius ignis. of *any* fire.

4. quisque

The pronoun **quisque, quidque** (sometimes written **quicque**) (adjective, **quīque, quaeque, quodque**) is declined like **quis, quid** (adjective like **quī, quae, quod**) with the suffix **-que** and means ‘each one (each), everyone (every)’.

Haec optimus **quisque** sentit. *Each (every)* very good man perceives
these things.

Quīque vir hanc puellam amat. *Each (every)* man loves this girl.

Cuique hominī multa pecūnia
est. There is much money to *each (every)*
man; *each (every)* man has much
money.

B. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs

There are certain intransitive verbs in Latin which govern the dative case. For example, while in English the verb “persuade” is transitive and governs an object, in Latin **persuādeō** is intransitive (it means ‘I am persuasive’) and takes a dative of reference.

Tibi persuādeō. I am persuasive (*with reference*) *to you*; I persuade
you.

Some of the more common verbs of this variety are:

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus	be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus	be favorable, favor
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus	be forgiving, forgive, pardon
imperō (1)	give orders, command
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus	be harmful, harm
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus	be sparing, spare
pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, pāritus	be obedient, obey
placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus	be pleasing, please
persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsus	be persuasive, persuade
studeō, -ēre, -ui, --	be zealous, study

C. Impersonal Passives

Like all intransitive verbs, the verbs introduced in B above cannot logically be used in the passive. When a passive idea is desired, an *impersonal* construction must be used. An *impersonal* verb form appears in the third person singular and has no personal subject. The pronoun “it” may be used in English to give a literal translation.

Tibi parcō.	I spare (am sparing to) you.
Tibi ā mē parcitur.	<i>It is spared (there is sparing)</i> to you by me; you are spared by me.
Mihi ā tē parcitur.	<i>It is spared (there is sparing)</i> to me by you; I am spared by you.
Mihi ā tē parsum est.	<i>It was (has been) spared (there was/has been sparing)</i> to me by you; I was (have been) spared by you.

When such verbs are used in the passive periphrastic construction, the ablative of agent generally occurs instead of the more usual dative of agent in order to avoid confusion with the dative that is governed by the intransitive verb.

Tibi ā nōbīs parcendum est. It must be spared to you *by us*; we must spare you.

The impersonal passive construction sometimes occurs with other verbs which do not take the dative when particular attention is called to the verbal action itself rather than to the ones performing the action.

Domī pūgnātūr. *It is (being) fought at home; there is fighting at home; fighting is going on at home; a battle is being fought at home.*

Acriter pūgnātum est. *It was fought fiercely; there was fierce fighting; the battle was fiercely fought.*

Ad villam curritur. *It is (being) run to the country house; there is (a) running to the country house; people are running to the country house.*

D. Dative with Compound Verbs

Many verbs compounded with prefixes such as the following govern the dative case.

ad-	con-	ob-	prō-
ante-	in-	post-	sub-
circum-	inter-	prae-	super-

It will be noted that such verbs cannot stand alone or, if transitive, simply with an accusative object; they require another word to complete the sense. For example,

praesum I am at the head of... (Another word is required to complete the sense; it will be in the dative.)

Nautīs praesum. I am at the head of *the sailors*; I command *the sailors*.

praeficiō I make at the head of, I place in command of... (Two additional words are required to complete the sense. Since the basic verb in this compound (-ficiō from faciō) is transitive, the root -ficiō will govern the accusative, and the prefix **prae-** will govern the dative.)

Tē nautīs praeficiō. I place you in command of *the sailors*.

These datives, like all datives, are basically referential.

Nautīs praesum. I am at the head with reference to the sailors; I am at the head of the sailors.

Tē nautīs praeficiō. I make you in command with reference to the sailors; I place you in command of the sailors.

E. The Verb *fiō*, 'be made, be done, happen, become'

Fiō, fieri, factus sum is used as the passive for the verb **faciō**, -ere, **fēci**, **factus**. The perfect system poses no problem, for it is identical to that formed from **faciō** (the last principal part of both verbs is the same). The present system functions like an i-stem verb of the third conjugation, except that it has active forms with passive meanings, and the quantity of the -i- is long in the present (except for the third person singular), the imperfect, and future indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive.

NOTE that the imperfect subjunctive is formed on the hypothetical active infinitive for this verb:

fieri/m
fierē/s
...etc.

F. The Numerical Adjective *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, 'two'

The plural adjective *duo*, 'two', has its own set of endings (shared also by *ambo*, *ambae*, *ambo*, 'both').

M.	F.	N.
duo	duae	duo
duōrum	duārum	duōrum
duōbus	duābus	duōbus
duōs (-o)	duās	duo
duōbus	duābus	duōbus

UNIT THIRTEEN — VOCABULARY

admīrātiō , -ōnis, F.	admiration
adulēscēns , -entis	young, youthful
aliquis , <i>aliquid</i> (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything
aliquī , <i>aliqua</i> , <i>aliquod</i> (adj.)	some, any
celer , <i>celeris</i> , <i>celere</i>	swift
cōstituō , -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus	set, establish, decide
currō , -ere, <i>cucurrī</i> , <i>cursus</i>	run
duo , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i>	two
faveō , -ēre, <i>fāvī</i> , <i>fautus</i>	be favorable, favor (+ dat.)
fiō , <i>fieri</i> , <i>factus sum</i>	be made, be done, happen, become (serves as the passive for <i>faciō</i>)
heri (adv.)	yesterday
hīc (adv.)	here
īgnōscō , -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus	be forgiving, forgive, pardon (+ dat.)
illīc (adv.)	there
īrātus , -a, -um	angry
iūs , <i>iūris</i> , N.	right, law
lēgātus , -i, M.	legate, envoy
mīror , -ārī, -ātus sum	wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire
moror , -ārī, -ātus sum	delay, stay, hinder

nēmō, nēminis , M. or F.	no one
noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	be harmful, harm (+ dat.)
ōrātiō, -ōnis , F.	oration, speech
paene (adv.)	almost
parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus	be sparing, spare (+ dat.)
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	be obedient, obey (+ dat.)
persuādō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus	be persuasive, persuade (+ dat.)
plēbs, plēbis , F.	common people
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus	bring (place) before, prefer
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	make before (at the head of), put in command of
praesum, praeesse, -fuī, --	be before (at the head of), be in command of
quis, quid (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything
qui, qua, quod (adj.)	some, any
quisquam, quidquam or	someone, something; anyone, anything (used with a negative or a virtual negative)
quicquam (pron.)	
quisque, quidque or	each one, each thing, every one, every thing
quicque (pron.)	
quīque, quaeque, quodque (adj.)	each, every
quō (adv.)	(to) where
sollers, sollertis	skilled, expert
studeō, -ēre, -uī, --	be zealous, study (+ dat.)
ūsus, -ūs , M.	use, advantage, enjoyment
vix (adv.)	hardly, scarcely

UNIT THIRTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Aliquis, aliquid is the pronoun, ‘someone, anyone, something, anything’; it is declined like **quis, quid** with the prefix **ali-**. **Aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** is the adjective ‘some, any’, declined like the relative pronoun (except that the **quae** forms become **-qua**) with the prefix **ali-**. But the feminine plural remains **-quae**.

Note that the verb **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus**, ‘set, establish, decide’, has the same stem in the present and perfect active. Therefore, **cōstituit** may be either present or perfect, for example.

Currō, currere, cucurri, cursus, ‘run’, duplicates the **cu** in the perfect active stem in the same way that **pellō**, for instance, duplicates the **pe** in its perfect active stem **pepul-**.

Duo, duae, duo, ‘two’, and **ambo, ambae, ambo**, ‘both’, are declined in the same way. They are the only remains of the *dual* number in Latin; the dual was used

for two objects only, as the singular is used for one object, and the plural for several objects.

The verb **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, ‘be made, be done, happen, become’, is used as the passive of **faciō**. In a way, it is the opposite of a deponent verb since its forms are active in appearance, but passive in meaning: **Hoc fīebat**, ‘This was done’.

Hic, ‘here’, is an adverb and should not be confused with the adjective **hic**; **illīc** is the adverb ‘there’.

Ignōscō is a compound of **nōscō**; it means ‘be forgiving, forgive, pardon’ and governs the dative case.

There is a deponent verb **īrāscor, īrāscī, īrātus sum**, ‘become angry’, which is derived from **īra**, ‘anger’. Its participle **īrātus** is used as an adjective, ‘angry’.

Iūs, iūris, N., is ‘right, law’, as in our Bill of Rights. There is another word **iūs, iūris**, N., which means ‘soup, sauce’.

Lēgātus, lēgātī, M., is an ‘envoy, legate’; the legate was an official assistant of a general or governor of a province.

Miror is a first conjugation deponent meaning ‘wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire’; it has a compound, **admiror**, with the same meanings. Related to this compound is the noun **admirātiō, admirātiōnis**, F., ‘admiration’.

The first conjugation deponent **moror**, ‘delay, stay, hinder’, is related to the noun **mora, -ae**, F., ‘delay’.

Four Latin verbs are frequently confused with one another; a careful memorization of the principal parts of each of them would eliminate such confusion:

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus, ‘be sparing, spare’ (+ dative)

pārēō, pārēre, pārūi, pārūtus, ‘be obedient, obey’ (+ dative)

parō (1), ‘prepare, make ready, provide, get’

pariō, parere, peperi, partus, ‘bear, give birth to, produce’

Persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus is a compound of **suādeō**, ‘urge, persuade’. This verb and **suēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētus**, ‘be accustomed’, have many compounds and derivatives; in these words, **su** is pronounced as **sw** (compare the English word “suave”). **Persuādeō**, therefore, has four syllables.

Plēbs, plēbis, F., ‘common people’, is a collective noun and so it takes a singular verb: **Plēbs duci crēdit**, ‘The common people trust the leader’.

Praeferō, ‘bring before, place before, prefer’, and **praeficiō**, ‘make before, make at the head of, put in command of’, govern both an object in the accusative case and a dative with compounds: **Dux lēgātum cōpiīs praefēcit**, ‘The leader put the legate in command of the troops’.

After **sī, nīsī, num**, and **nē, quis** means ‘someone, anyone’, and **quid** means ‘something, anything’. The adjective **qui, qua, quod**, ‘some, any’, has **qua** forms instead of **quae**.

The spelling **quicquam**, 'something, anything', may be used instead of **quidquam**, as **quicque**, 'each thing, everything', may be used instead of **quidque**.

Quō is an adverb meaning '(to) where'. A chart of these "place" adverbs might be helpful at this point:

ubi , 'where'	quō '(to) where'	unde , 'from where'
hic , 'here'	hūc , '(to) here'	hinc , 'from here'
illic , 'there'	illūc '(to) there'	illinc , 'from there'
ibi , 'there'	eō , '(to) there'	inde , 'from there'

Obviously, **studium**, **studii**, N., 'zeal', and **studeō**, **studēre**, **studui**, --, 'be zealous, study' (+ dative), are related.

Usus is a fourth declension noun from **ūtor**; it means 'use, advantage, enjoyment'.

ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF NOUNS

The suffixes **-ōsus** and **-lentus** added to the stem of a noun mean 'full of'.

animōsus , -a, -um	full of courage, bold, spirited
annōsus , -a, -um	of many years, aged
aquōsus , -a, -um	abounding in water, moist
bellicōsus , -a, -um	warlike, martial
fāmōsus , -a, -um	much talked of, famous
glōriōsus , -a, -um	full of glory, famous, renowned
sententiōsus , -a, -um	full of meaning, pithy
corpulentus , -a, -um	corpulent, fleshy, fat
opulentus , -a, -um	rich, wealthy
turbulentus , -a, -um	full of commotion, confused, disturbed

The suffixes **-fer** and **-ger** (the roots of **ferō** and **gerō**) added to the stem of a noun mean 'bearing'.

armifer , -a, -um }	bearing weapons, armed, warlike
armiger , -a, -um }	
aurifer , -a, -um	bearing, producing <i>or</i> containing gold
belliger , -a, -um	waging war, warlike, martial
flammifer , -a, -um }	flame-bearing, flaming, fiery
flammiger , -a, -um }	
lūcifer , -a, -um	light-bringing
mortifer , -a, -um	death-bringing

ABSTRACT NOUN SUFFIXES

The suffixes **-ia** (-iēs), **-tia** (-tiēs), **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō** added to the stems of adjectives (usually) produce feminine abstract nouns.

dēmentia, -ae, F.	insanity, madness
memoria, -ae, F.	memory, recollection
pauperiēs, -ēi, F.	poverty
saevitia, -ae, F.	a raging, rage, fierceness
laetitia, -ae, F.	joy, gladness, pleasure
cānitiēs, -ēi, F. (cānus, -a, -um, 'white')	a grayish-white color
crūdēlitās, -tātis, F.	harshness, severity, cruelty
gravitās, -tātis, F.	weight, heaviness
iuentūs, -tūtis, F.	the age of youth, youth
senectūs, -tūtis, F. (senex, senis, 'old')	old age
magnitūdō, -inis, F.	greatness, size
multitūdō, -inis, F.	a great number, multitude

The suffixes **-ium** and **-tium** added to noun stems (usually) produce neuter abstract nouns.

augurium, -i, N. (augur, -uris, M. or F., 'soothsayer')	the observation and interpretation of omens, augury
magisterium, -i, N.	the office of a president, chief, director, superintendent, etc.
hospitium, -i, N.	hospitality
servitium, -i, N.	the condition of a slave, slavery

UNIT THIRTEEN — DRILL

I.

Give the following forms:

1. gen. sing. **quaeque aura**
2. nom. pl. **aliquid iussum**
3. acc. sing. **quisquam, aliquis**
4. dat. sing. **quisque**
5. abl. pl. **quīque modus**

II.

Translate:

1. Amōremne iussis praepōnis?
2. In forō clāmātur.
3. Vōbīs imperāvimus nē iussa amōrī postpōnātis.
4. Ducī placet moenia oppidō circumpōnere.
5. Ira fit ruīnā nostrōrum bonōrum.
6. Crēdāmus imperātōrī ā regentibus honestīs dēlēctō.
7. Quisque pessimus poenās det!

8. Utinam quisque patriam amet!
9. Nōlī crēdere alicui maiōri quam tibi.
10. Duōbus imperāvit nē cui maiōri quam eis crēdant.
11. a) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectōs esse.
b) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt sē quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectūrōs esse.
c) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt sē quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectūrōs.
12. Dux ipse hortātus est ut hostilēs cōpiae flammās oppidō circumdarent.
13. Per viās oppidī errātum est.
14. Tibi ab omnibus audientibus crēditum est.
15. Sī quis domī maneat, quid fiat in orbe terrārum nesciat.
16. Aliquisne tē timet? Num quis timēret tē rogāvimus.
17. Aliquī amīcus mihi dōnum aliquod mīsit.
18. Illud flūmen erat longius quam ūllum in Graeciā.
19. Marcus sē esse sapientiōrem quam quemquam amīcōrum arbitrātus est.
20. In bellō magnopere timētūr.
21. Hoc difficilius est quam quidquam.

UNIT THIRTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Cūr aliquī adulēscēns per forum heri currere cōnstituit?
2. Cūr aliquis per forum heri currere cōnstituit?
3. Nescivī num quis per forum currere cōnstitueret.
4. Sī quī adulēscēns per forum currere cōnstituat, īrātissimus sim.
5. Vix quisquam virtūtem illic mōnstrāre voluit.
6. Ķrātiōnem lēgātī mīrātī sumus plūs quam ūllam Ķrātiōnem quam audīvimus.
7. Cuique persuāsērunt ut quam honestissimus esset.
8. Plēbī quodque iūs nōn datum est.
9. Rogāvimus quārē aliqua admirātiō adulēscētibus offerrētūr reī pūblicae nocēre cōnantibus.
10. a) Nēmō intellēxit cūr dux aliqua scelera eō tempore fassus esset.
b) Cīvēs ducī malō nōn fāvērunt.

UNIT THIRTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet facilius. [quō...hōc, 'by the degree in which...by this degree; the more...the more...']
2. Quō maius quodque animal, eō magis timendum est. [quō...eō = quō...hōc]

3. Si quisquam est īrātus, is ego sum.
4. Vix ūlli crēdit, nec quisquam ex omnibus gentibus ad eum accēdere audet.
5. Hārum sententiārum quae vēra sit, deus aliquī videat.
6. Aliquid ā nōbīs invenītur; nescimus quid sit. Quidam crēdunt id malum esse. Illis nōn crēdimus.
7. Nisi cui imperābis ut illi servō ignōscat, mox moriētur.
8. Ignōscite mihi, adulēscētēs, sī vōbīs quid dicam: cūrae vōbīs sit ut mōribus multārum gentium maximā cum cūrā studeātis.
9. Imperātōrī quodque sit bellum laudi.
10. Lēgātī illiū virtūs omnibus cīvibus admirātiōni fuit.
11. Cui bonō fuit? Nēminī bonō fuit.
12. Hoc vōbīs sit exemplō!
13. Hic mihi magnō ūsuī erit lēgātus, iste parvō.
14. Quem ūnī ē nōbīs saepe praetulit?
15. Pecūnia amīcītiae nōn praeferenda est.
16. Imperātōrī qui oppidō praeerat pārendum erat.
17. Dixi imperātōrī qui oppidō praeesset pārendum esse.
18. Hic vīvitur; illic nēminī vīta placet.
19. Mihi ā quāque fēminā in urbe favētur.
20. Quaeque fēmina respondit hanc esse partem ḥrātiōnis quae rem cōnstitueret paene ante oculōs cuiusque audientis.
21. Rogāmus quid fiat (quid factum sit, quid factūrus sit).
22. Omnia nātūrae nūminī, caelum, ignēs, terrae, maria pārent.
23. Aliquis hominī cuidam heri dixit omnibus vīventibus animum datum esse ex illīs aeternīs ignībus, quae sīdera et stellās vocārētis. [*animus*, -ī, M., ‘mind, soul’; *stella*, -ae, F., ‘star’]
24. Homō quīdam rogāvit quō modō haec fierī possint; alius respondit fierī nōn posse.
25. Quisque suam opīniōnem habet.
26. Signō datō, celeriter Rōmam curritur.
27. Lūx fiat.
28. Rogat num cui magnopere placuerit.
29. Qui amābant hunc, illī favēbunt.
30. Vix cuiquam persuādēbātur ē Graeciā omnī cessūrōs (esse) Rōmānōs.
31. Si qua mihi virtūs esset, in bellum sine metū ruerem.
32. Dī in caelō, parcite nōbīs! Nātūram optimam ducem tamquam deum sequimur eīque pārēmus.
33. Crēdō ego vōs mīrārī quō ferat nātūra sua quemque.
34. Si quisque suā manū captum ex hoste domum rettulisset, multī servī nōbīs nunc domī essent.

35. a) Gladium ēdūcere cōnānti dextram morātur manum. [ēdūcere = ē + dūcere]
 b) Mē interficere cōnānti dextram morātus sum manum.

36. Si nēmō nēminī similis est, nōbīs opus est mōrēs cuiusque hominis intellegere et in quōque quaerere aliquid virtūtis.

37. Eō vitae tempore, dux sēnsit scelera quam pessima in orbe terrārum fieri.

38. Quid fiet sī quis cōnstituet nōs rogāre unde vēnerimus? Cōnfītērī nōn possumus nōs Rōmā heri p̄fectōs esse, urbe his gentibus inimicissimā.

39. Mōrēs istiū aliquam mihi admirātiōnem movērent nisī opibus semper male ūterētur (nisi opēs amicōrum dēlēre occultē cōnārētū).

40. Hic saxō, liquidis ille colōribus
 sollers nunc hominem pōnere, nunc deum. (Horace, *Odes* iv.8.7–8)
 Quisque artem suam habet.

[liquidus, -a, -um, 'liquid'; color, -ōris, M., 'color'; pōnō, here, 'portray, fashion']

41. Imperātūrus es hominibus, qui nec tōtam servitūtem patī possunt nec tōtam libertātem. Aliquid tibi cōnsiliī atque mentis opus est.

42. Amicī fiāmus et sine bellō atque odiō vīvāmus. Huicne cōnsiliō favētis an nōn?

43. Mē heri rogāvistī num quem vīdissem. Dixi mē aliquem vīdisse, sed nescire quis esset. Nihil novī nunc tibi afferre possum.

44. Intellegi potest nōn sōlum hominēs solēre dubitāre, bonumne aliquod cōnsilium an malum sit, sed etiam ē duōbus cōnsiliis bonīs utrum melius sit.

45. Quō plūs custōdum fortissimōrum imperātōri est, hōc tūtior; nam plēbs, alterius ducis cupida, nihil audāciae agere audēbit.

46. Dīxitne aliquid? Nōn dīxit quicquam.

47. Hominī pepercērunt quem dux manū fortium p̄afēcerat.

48. Mihi nōn ab istiū nocērī potest.

49. Mōtus celer flūminis intellegendus erit nē cui trānseuntī noceātūr. [trānseō from trāns, 'across' + eō]

50. Parva magnī cōfērāntur.

51. THE COMMON PEOPLE AND THE DRUIDS IN GAUL (adapted from Caesar, *The Gallic Wars* vi.13):

In omni Galliā eōrum hominū qui aliquō sunt honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, ad nūllum cōnsilium [here, 'council'] ire potest. Multi, pecūniā parentēs aut vīribus aliōrum fortiōrum pressi, sē in servitūtem trādunt nōbilibus; quibus in [here, 'over'] hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in ['over']

servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, quibus ūnus fortissimus praeest, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus divinis intersunt; sacrificia pūblica et privāta faciunt. Ad eōs magnus adulēscētūm numerus disciplinae causā currit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam paene dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis privātisque cōnstituunt, et, si quod est scelus factum, si quis interfēctus est, si dē finib⁹ contrōversia est, idem cōnstituunt quid faciēdūt sit. Hī dicunt quae poenae, quae praemīa quibus danda sint. Si qui aut privātus aut populus eōrum iussis nōn pāret, sacrificiis prohibent. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est prohibitum, hī numerō impiōrum habentur, his omnēs discēdunt nē quid ex eis mali accipiant, neque iīs potentibus iūs datur neque honor ūllus.

[aut (conj.), 'or'; **causā** (used prepositionally + gen. — placed after the genitive which it governs), 'for the sake of'; **contrōversia**, -ae, F., 'controversy'; **disciplina**, -ae, F., 'training'; **divinus**, -a, -um, 'divine'; **druidēs**, -um, M., 'the druids' (the priests and wise men of Gaul); **eques**, equitis, M., 'horseman, knight'; **Gallia**, -ae, F., 'Gaul', a country in the ancient world corresponding roughly to modern France; **honor**, honōris, M., 'honor, respect'; **intersum**, -esse, -fui, --, 'be between, be concerned'; **ita** (adv.), 'in this way'; **nōbilis**, -e, 'noble'; **numerus**, -ī, M., 'number'; **privātus**, -a, -um, 'private'; **prohibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itus, 'prohibit, keep from'; **sacrificium**, -ī, N., 'sacrifice']

II.

1. Will anyone pardon him? He will not be pardoned by anyone.
2. I don't prefer anyone to her. She is a great aid to me.
3. What was happening yesterday on land and sea?
4. He said that he would please each man whom he had praised.
5. If anyone should shout that there is danger here, there would be a great running in the streets; the consul would put the legate in command of the people in order that the ruler may be obeyed.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 5.17:

Ego vōs hortāri tantum¹ possum, ut amicitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānis² antepōnātis;³ nihil est enim tam nātūrae aptum,⁴ tam cōveniēns⁵ ad rēs vel⁶ secundās⁷ vel⁶ adversās.⁸

¹ *tantum* (adv.), 'only' ² **hūmānus**, -a, -um, 'human' ³ **antepōnō** (*ante* + *pōnō*), 'put (place) before, prefer' ⁴ *aptus*, -a, -um, 'suited to' ⁵ **cōveniēns**, -entis, 'appropriate' ⁶ *vel*...*vel* (adv.), 'either... or' ⁷ **secundus**, -a, -um, 'favorable' ⁸ **adversus**, -a, -um, 'adverse'

B. Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 6.20:

Amīcitiā dīvītiās alii praepōnunt,¹ bonam alii valētūdinem,² alii potentiam,³ alii honōrēs,⁴ multi etiam⁵ voluptātēs.⁶

¹ *praepōnō* (*prae* + *pōnō*), 'place before, prefer' ² *valētūdō*, -inis, F., 'health' ³ *po-*
tentia, -ae, F., 'power' ⁴ *honor*, -ōris, M., 'honor, distinction' ⁵ *etiam* (adv.), 'even'
⁶ *voluptās*, -tātis, F., 'pleasure'

C. Cicero *Dē Divīnātiōne* 1.25.52:

Est apud¹ Platōnem² Sōcratēs,³ cum⁴ esset in custōdiā⁵ pūblicā, dīcēns Critōnī,⁶ suō familiārī,⁷ sibi post tertium⁸ diem esse moriendum;⁹ vīdisse enim sē in somnīs¹⁰ pulchritūdine¹¹ eximiā¹² fēminam, quae sē nōmine appellāns,¹³ dīceret Homēricum¹⁴ quendam eius modī versum:¹⁵

tertia⁸ tē Phthiae¹⁶ tempestās¹⁷ laeta¹⁸ locābit.¹⁹

Quod, ut est dictum, sic²⁰ scribitur contigisse.²¹

¹ *apud* (prep. + acc.), *here*, 'in the works of' ² *Platō*, -ōnis, M., 'Plato', the Greek philosopher ³ *Sōcratēs*, -is, M., 'Socrates', the Greek philosopher ⁴ *cum* (conj. + subjunctive), 'when' ⁵ *custōdīa*, -ae, F., 'custody' ⁶ *Critōnī*, -ōnis, M., 'Crito', a friend of Socrates ⁷ *familiāris*, -is, M., 'friend' ⁸ *tertius*, -a, -um, 'third' ⁹ The neuter participial form indicates that the verb is used impersonally; see section C of this Unit. ¹⁰ *somnus*, -i, M., 'dream' ¹¹ *pulchritūdō*, -inis, F., 'beauty' ¹² *eximius*, -a, -um, 'exceptional' ¹³ *appellō* (1), 'call' ¹⁴ *Homēricus*, -a, -um, 'of Homer, Homeric'
¹⁵ *versus*, -ūs, M., 'a line of poetry, verse' ¹⁶ *Phthia*, -ae, F., 'Phthia', a town in Thessaly. [The line echoes Homer, *Iliad* IX.363. Phthia, the homeland of Achilles, is used here to suggest that Socrates is going home.] ¹⁷ *tempestās*, -tātis, F., 'period of time, season, day' ¹⁸ *laetus*, -a, -um, *here*, 'felicitous' ¹⁹ *locō* (1), 'locate, place' ²⁰ *sic* (adv.), 'in this way' ²¹ *contingō*, -ere, -tīgī, -tāctus, 'happen'

D. Cicero, *In Catilinām* 1.4.8:

Videō enim esse hīc in senātū¹ quōsdam quī tēcum ūnā² fuērunt.

¹ *senātūs*, -ūs, M., 'senate' ² *ūnā* (adv.), 'together'

E. Cicero, *In Catilinām* 1.9.23:

Sin¹ autem servīre² meae laudī et glōriae māvīs, ēgredere cum importūnā³ scelerātōrum⁴ manū, cōfer tē ad Manliū,⁵ concitā⁶ perditōs⁷ cīvēs, sēcerne⁸ tē à bonīs, infer patriae bellum, exsultā⁹ impiō latrōcīnī,¹⁰ ut à mē nōn ēiectus¹¹ ad aliēnōs,¹² sed invītātus¹³ ad tuōs isse videāris.

¹ *sin* (conj.), 'but if' ² *serviō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītūs, 'serve, be a slave to' (+ dat.) ³ *impōr-*
tūnūs, -a, -um, 'rude, savage' ⁴ *scelerātūs*, -a, -um, 'polluted, profaned by guilt' ⁵ *Man-*
liūs, -i, M., a man's name ⁶ *concitō* (1), 'arouse' ⁷ *perditōs*, -a, -um, *here*, 'desperate,
corrupt, infamous, degenerate' ⁸ *sēcernō*, -ere, -crēvī, -crētūs, 'separate' ⁹ *exsultō* (1),
'rejoice, triumph' ¹⁰ *latrōcīnūm*, -i, N., 'criminality' ¹¹ *ēiciō* (ē + iaciō), 'throw
out' ¹² *aliēnūs*, -a, -um, 'strange, foreign' ¹³ *invītō* (1), 'invite'

F. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.5.11:

Cum lūxuriā¹ nōbis, cum āmentiā,² cum scelere certandum est.³

¹ lūxuria, -ae, F., 'luxury, excess' ² āmentia, -ae, F., 'madness' ³ certō (1), 'fight'

G. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.12.27:

Quod¹ reliquum² est, iam nōn possum oblīvisci³ meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōsulem, mihi aut⁴ cum hīs vivendum aut⁴ prō his esse moriendum.

¹ quod, here, '(with respect to) what . . . ; as far as what . . .' ² reliquus, -a, -um, 'remaining' ³ oblīviscor, oblīvisci, oblītus sum, 'forget' ⁴ aut . . . aut, 'either . . . or'

UNIT FOURTEEN

A. Clauses of Result

Clauses which express the result of an action or a quality are introduced by **ut** for the positive, **ut nōn** (**nēmō**, **nihil**, **numquam**, etc.) for the negative, and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

The approach of a result clause is often indicated by the presence of an adjective or adverb of degree in the main clause.

ADJECTIVES:
$$\begin{cases} \text{tantus, -a, -um, 'so great'} \\ \text{tālis, -e, 'such, of such a sort'} \\ \text{tot (indeclinable), 'so many'} \end{cases}$$

ADVERBS:
$$\begin{cases} \text{ita, 'so'} \\ \text{tam, 'so'} \\ \text{sīc, 'in this way'} \\ \text{adeō, 'so'} \end{cases}$$

Tanta est tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs *So great* is the storm *that* all the
dēleantur. *ships are being destroyed.*

Tam celeriter currit **ut** nēmō eum vin- *He runs so fast* *that no one can beat*
cere possit. *him.*

The rules for sequence of tenses are generally observed. However, the perfect subjunctive is sometimes found in secondary sequence instead of the imperfect in order to lay stress on the fact that the action is completed.

Tam irātus erat **ut** hoc **diceret.**

He was so angry *that he said this.*

Tam irātus erat **ut** hoc **dixerit.**

He was so angry *that he (actually)*
said this. (emphasis on comple-
tion of the action)

Tanta erat tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs
dēlērentur.

So great was the storm *that all the*
ships were (being) destroyed.

Tanta erat tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs
dēlētae sint.

So great was the storm *that all the*
ships were (actually) destroyed.
(emphasis on completion of the
action)

Note the following similarities and distinctions between purpose and result clauses:

PURPOSE

Positive introduced by **ut**.

Negative introduced by **nē**.

Vēnit ut turbam vinceret.

He came *in order that* he might overcome the crowd.

Nōn vēnit nē turbam vinceret.

He didn't come *in order that* he might *not* overcome the crowd.

RESULT

Positive introduced by **ut**.

Negative introduced by **ut...nōn**.

An adverb or adjective of degree in the main clause frequently signals the approach of a clause of result.

Tam fortis erat **ut** turbam vinceret (vicerit).

He was *so* brave *that* he overcame the crowd.

Tam fortis erat **ut** ā turbā **nōn** vincerētur (victus sit).

He was *so* brave *that* he was *not* overcome by the crowd.

B. Substantive Clauses of Result

Certain verbs and expressions have result clauses either as their object or subject. Of these, the most important are:

efficere ut, 'to bring it about that'
facere ut, 'to see to it that'

accidit ut, 'it happens that'

fit ut, 'it comes about that, it happens that'

fieri potest ut, 'it is able to happen that,
 it is possible that'

Effēcit ut nautae inter
 sē pūgnārent.

Accidit ut ego ipse illic
 manērem.

Fit ut nēmō sit
 laetior quam ego.

} + object clause

} + subject clause

He brought it about that the sailors fought among themselves; he brought it about that the sailors fought one another.

It happened that I myself remained there.

It happens that no one is happier than I.

The verbs **efficere** and **facere** are frequently followed by **nē** instead of **ut...nōn** to introduce a negative clause, particularly when there is an implicit notion of command in the sentence.

Fac **nē** cui noceās. See to it *that* you do *not* harm anyone.

C. Relative Clauses of Characteristic (Generic [*genus, generis*, N., 'sort'] Relative Clauses)

The relative pronoun **qui**, **quae**, **quod** plus the subjunctive can be used to describe its antecedent in terms of the general qualities or characteristics of the group to which the antecedent belongs.

Is est qui celeriter ambulet. *He is the (kind of) man who walks fast; he is a man who walks fast.*

(The relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive characterizes its antecedent in terms of the general qualities of the larger group to which the antecedent belongs.)

COMPARE:

Is est qui celeriter ambulat. *He is the (actual) man who walks fast.*

(The relative clause with its verb in the indicative describes a particular antecedent.)

Sunt qui ei crēdant. *They are the (kind of) men who trust him; there are men (of the kind) who trust him; there are those who trust him.*

COMPARE:

Hi sunt qui ei crēdunt. *These are the (actual) ones who trust him.*

Quis erat qui hoc crēderet? *Who was there (of the kind) who believed this?*

In many instances, these clauses have general or indefinite antecedents, of which the following are common:

sunt qui	there are those who
est qui	he is one who
nēmō est qui	there is no one who
nihil est quod	there is nothing that
quis est qui?	who is there who?
quid est quod?	what is there that?

But these generic clauses are also found with less vague and even with precise antecedents when they are felt to characterize or generalize rather than denote a specific attribute of the antecedent:

sōlus est qui	he is the only (kind of) man who
is est qui	he is the (kind of) man who
Cicerō est qui	Cicero is the (kind of) man who
dīgnus est qui	he is the (kind of) man worthy who (to)

Relative clauses of characteristic are best translated into English using the indicative; the generic idea is carried over into English by the formulae which introduce such clauses — i.e., 'there is *no one* who', 'he is the *sort of* man who'. Sometimes, however, the context requires that the subjunctive be rendered with potential force:

Sōlus est quī hoc nesciat.

He is the only one who does not know this.
OR He is the only one who would not know this. (potential force)

Quid erat quod agerēmus?

What was there that we could do? (potential force)

Quis est quī hoc faciat?

Who is the (kind of) one who does this?; Who is there who does this? OR Who is there who would do this? (potential force)

Nēmō erat quī eum rīdēret.

There was no one (the kind) who laughed at him. OR There was no one who would laugh at him. (potential force)

Dignus est quī nautis praeſit.

He is the kind of worthy man (i.e., he belongs to the class of worthy men) who is (would be) in command of the sailors; he is worthy to be in command of the sailors.

Frequently, negative relative clauses of characteristic are introduced by **quīn** (= **quī [quae, quod] nōn**):

Nēmō est **quīn** haec intellegat.

There is no one *who does not* understand these things. OR There is no one *who would not* understand these things.

D. Relative Clauses of Result

Very closely allied to the relative clause of characteristic is the relative clause of result.

Nihil est tam malum **quod** mūtāri nōn possit.

There is nothing so bad *with the result that it cannot* be changed; there is nothing so bad *that it cannot* be changed.

Nēmō est tam caecus **quī** haec nōn videat.

There is no one so blind *who does not see* these things; there is no one so blind *that he does not see* these things.

Here there is a fusion of both a relative clause of characteristic and a result clause to produce a relative clause of result. The relative pronoun is standing for the **ut** which would normally introduce the clause of result.

E. Relative Clauses of Purpose and Purpose Clauses Introduced by Adverbs

Purpose clauses were presented in Unit Three as having their verbs in the subjunctive and as being introduced by **ut** for the positive and **ne** for the negative. However, there are other ways of expressing purpose with the subjunctive in Latin:

1. **Quō** (ablative, 'by which') introduces a purpose clause which contains a comparative.

Properātis **quō** celerius You hasten *by which you may arrive more quickly*; you hasten in order that you may arrive more quickly.
 adveniātis. (= Properātis ut eō celerius adveniātis.)

2. Purpose clauses may be introduced by a relative pronoun when its antecedent, usually not the subject of the main verb, is clearly expressed in the main clause. They may also be introduced by an adverb (**ubi**, 'where'; **unde**, 'from where'; **quō**, '(to) where').

Nūntium mittit **qui** dē mōribus He sends a messenger *who may ask about the customs of the inhabitants*; he sends a messenger *in order that he (i.e., the messenger) may ask about the customs of the inhabitants*.
 incolārum roget. (= Nūntium mittit ut is dē mōribus incolārum roget.)

Domum cucurri **ubi** mē I ran home *where I might hide*; I ran cēlārem. home in order that I might *hide there*.
 (= Domum cucurri ut ibi mē cēlārem. I ran home in order that I might hide there.)

Scribēbat librōs **quōs** alii He wrote books *which others might read*; he wrote books *in order that others might read them*.
 legerent. (= Scribēbat librōs ut eōs alii legerent.)

F. Indirect Reflexives

It has been pointed out in Unit Seven, section B4, that reflexives refer to the subject of the verb of their own clause. A reflexive so used is called a *direct reflexive*.

Senex multam pecūniam **sibi** parāvit. The old man got much money *for himself*.

However, in subordinate subjunctive clauses and in indirect statement, the reflexive usually refers to the subject of the *main* clause and not to that of the clause in which it appears. This use is called the *indirect reflexive*.

Dux lēgātūm mittit **quī sibi** multam The leader sends a legate in order
pecūniam paret. that he may get much money *for him(self)* (i.e., the leader).

Plēbs ūrat ut **sibi** parcāmus. The common people beg that we
spare *them*.

Dicit illōs irātōs **sē** interficere velle. He says that those angry men want
to kill *him*.

Vir rogāvit quam ob rem iste adu- The man asked why that young man
lēscēns ad **sē** vēnisset. of yours had come to *him* (i.e., to
the man).

If, in the third example above, the author had wished to take the less frequent course and have his reflexive refer to the subject of the verb in its own clause (here, the infinitive *velle*), clarity could have been achieved by inserting the appropriate form of the intensive pronoun, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*:

Dicit illōs irātōs **sē ipsōs** He says that those angry men want to kill *them-selves* (i.e., their *very selves*).

UNIT FOURTEEN — VOCABULARY

accidō, -ere, -cidī, --	fall upon; happen, occur
adeō (adv.)	so, so much, so far
adveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus	come to, arrive
animus, -ī, M.	mind, rational spirit, soul
auctōritās, -tātis, F.	authority
aut (conj.)	or
aut...aut	either...or
Carthāgō, -inis, F.	Carthage, a city on the coast of North Africa
colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum	speak, talk, converse with
dīgnus, -a, -um	worthy, deserving, suitable (+ abl.)
indīgnus, -a, -um	unworthy, unsuitable (+ abl.)

dolor, -ōris, M.	pain, grief, sorrow
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	effect, bring about
etiam (adv.)	even
hūc (adv.)	to this place
illūc (adv.)	to that place, up to that time
intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus	stretch out, extend, aim, exert
inter (prep. + acc.)	between, among
ita (adv.)	so, in this way
modo (adv.)	only; just, just now
nōtus, -a, -um	known, well-known, customary
nūntiō (1)	report, announce
nūntius, -ī, M.	messenger, message
nūper (adv.)	recently
ōs, ūris, N.	mouth, expression
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus	show, expose, make plain
parō (1)	prepare, make ready, provide, get
paulus, -a, -um	little, small (compares irregularly: minor, minus; minimus, -a, -um)
pāx, pācis, F.	peace
pollicor, -ērī, -itus sum	promise
properō (1)	hasten
quālis, -e	of what kind, what kind of
rideō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus	laugh (at)
senex, senis	old
sīc (adv.)	so, in this way
tālis, -e	such, of such a sort
tālis . . . quālis	such . . . as
tempestās, -tātis, F.	weather, storm, season
trāns (prep. + acc.)	across, on the other side of
tum or tunc (adv.)	then, at that time
ubique (adv.)	everywhere, anywhere, wherever
vēritās, -tātis, F.	truth
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus	conquer, beat, overcome

UNIT FOURTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Accidō, accidere, accidī, 'fall upon, happen, occur', is a compound of **ad** and **cadō**; it lacks a fourth principal part and the perfect active stem loses the reduplication of the uncompounded form.

Adveniō is obviously a compound of **ad** and **veniō** and so it means ‘come to, arrive’. From the fourth principal part there is formed a fourth declension noun, **adventus**, **adventūs**, M., ‘arrival’.

Anima (Unit Two) was defined as ‘soul, spirit, life-force’; **animus**, **animī**, M., is ‘mind, rational spirit, soul’.

Auctōritās, **auctōritātis**, F., is the abstract noun from **auctor**; it means ‘authority’.

Colloquor, a compound of **com-** and **loquor**, means ‘speak, talk, converse with’.

Dignus, -a, -um, ‘worthy’, and its opposite **indignus**, -a, -um, ‘unworthy’, both govern the ablative case: **Multīs dōnīs est dīgna**, ‘She is worthy of many gifts’.

Intendō, **intendere**, **intendī**, **intentus** and **ostendō**, **ostendere**, **ostendī**, **ostentus**, both have the same stem in the present and in the perfect active: **intendimus**, ‘we stretch out’, ‘we have stretched out’; **ostendit**, ‘he shows’, ‘he has shown’.

Nōtus, -a, -um is simply the perfect passive participle of **nōscō** used as an adjective meaning ‘known, well-known, customary’. The original root of **nōscō** began with the letter **g-** (**gnōscō**). The Latin **g** is represented by the **k** in the German “*kennen*” and the English “*know*”.

Nūntiō and **nūntius** are obviously related; **nūntiō**, a first conjugation verb, is ‘report, announce’, and **nūntius**, **nūntii**, M., is the one bringing the report, ‘messenger’, or the report itself, ‘message’. There is also an adjective **nūntius**, -a, -um, ‘announcing’.

Ōs, **ōris**, N., is ‘mouth, expression’. The diminutive **ōsculum**, **ōsculī**, N., is both ‘little mouth’ and ‘kiss’.

Parō, a first conjugation verb already mentioned (vocabulary notes in Unit Thirteen) means ‘prepare, make ready, provide, get’. From the last principal part there is formed a fourth declension noun **parātus**, **parātūs**, M., ‘preparation’.

The root of **senex**, **senis**, ‘old’, is found in the words **senātor**, **senātōris**, M., ‘senator’, and **senātus**, **senātūs**, M., ‘senate’. The senators originally were the older men who through their wisdom and experience were thought capable of guiding the state.

Quālis, -e, ‘what kind of, of what kind’, and **tālis**, -e, ‘such, of such a sort’, are correlatives: **Tālis dux erat quālis pater fuerat**, ‘He was such a leader as his father had been; as a leader, he was of the same character as his father’.

Tempestās, **tempestātis**, F., is ‘weather’, good or bad, as well as ‘storm, season’.

Vēritās, **vēritātis**, F., ‘truth’, is the abstract noun from **vērus**, -a, -um, ‘true’.

Vincō, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **victus** is ‘conquer, beat, overcome’. Remember Caesar’s expression, **Vēnī**, **vidī**, **vīcī**, ‘I came, I saw, I conquered’, for the third principal part of this verb. Do not confuse the last principal part **victus** with the last principal part of **vīvō**, ‘live’, which is **vīctus**.

SUFFIXES ADDED TO PRODUCE NOUNS

The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tūra**, and **-tus** added to the root or stem of a verb produce abstract nouns and names of actions.

opīnīō, **-ōnis**, F. (**opīnor**, **-ārī**, **-ātūs sum**, ‘suppose, imagine’), ‘opinion, supposition’

āctiō, **-ōnis**, F., ‘doing, performing, action, act’

mūnītiō, **-ōnis**, F., ‘defending, fortifying, protecting’

iactūra, **-ae**, F., ‘a throwing, a throwing away’

iūnctūra, **-ae**, F., ‘a joining, uniting, juncture’

arbitrātūs, **-ūs**, M., ‘judgment, free-will, decision’

vīctus, **-ūs**, M., ‘way of life’

The suffixes **-men**, **-mentum**, **-mōniūm**, and **-mōniā** added to the root or stem of a verb produce nouns denoting acts, or means and results of acts.

agmen, **agminis**, N., ‘a collected multitude in motion or moving forward, a line of battle, march’

cōnāmen, **-inis**, N., ‘effort, exertion, struggle’

hortāmen, **-inis**, N., ‘incitement, encouragement, exhortation’

experīmentum, **-ī**, N., ‘proof, test, trial’

mōmentum, **-ī**, N., ‘movement, motion’

mūnīmentum, **-ī**, N., ‘defense, fortification, protection’

alimōniūm, **-ī**, N., (**alō**, **alere**, **alui**, **altus**, ‘nourish, support’), ‘nourishment, support’

parsimōniā, **-ae**, F. (**parcō**), ‘sparingness, frugality, thrift’

The suffix **-tōriūm** added to the stem or root of a verb produces a noun meaning the place of the action.

audītōriūm, **-ī**, N., ‘the place where something is heard, lecture room, hall of justice’

dormītōriūm, **-ī**, N., (**dormiō**, **-īre**, **-īvī (-īī)**, **-ītūs**, ‘sleep’), ‘sleeping room, dormitory’

The suffix **-āriūs** added to the stem of a noun produces a noun meaning ‘the person belonging to or the person engaged in or the person concerned with’.

argentāriūs, **-ī**, M., (**argentūm**, **-ī**, N., ‘silver’), ‘a money changer, banker’

apiāriūs, **-ī**, M., (**apis**, **apis**, F., ‘bee’), ‘beekeeper’

The suffix **-āriūm** added to the stem of a noun produces a noun meaning ‘place for’.

apiāriūm, **-ī**, N., (**apis**, **apis**, F., ‘bee’), ‘beehive’

aviāriūm, **-ī**, N., (**avis**, **avis**, F., ‘bird’), ‘a place where birds are kept, aviary’

librāriūm, **-ī**, N., ‘a place in which to keep books, bookcase’

UNIT FOURTEEN — DRILL

I. Relative Clauses of Characteristic, Indefinite Pronouns, Questions, etc.

1. a) Ea est quae pecūniā mirātur.
 b) Ea est quae pecūniā mirētur.
 c) Quis est qui pecūniā nōn mirētur?
 d) Nēmō est qui pecūniā nōn mirētur.
 e) Nēmō est quin pecūniā mirētur.
 f) Homō quīdam nōn vult mirārī pecūniā.
 g) Nōn tam stultus ('foolish') est ut pecūniā mirētur.
 h) Mirātur eam quae pecūniā mirētur.
2. a) Illi sunt qui Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō arbitrantur.
 b) Sunt qui Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō dicant.
 c) Quidam dīcunt Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō.
 d) Horātius dīcitur ā quibusdam maior esse Vergiliō.
 e) Alii rogam̄t num Horātius maior sit Vergiliō; aliī rogam̄t cūr Horātius maior sit Vergiliō; quisque opīniōnem suam habet. Quot hominēs, tot sententiae.
3. a) Quis est qui tantum malum facere possit?
 b) Is est qui tantum malum facere possit.
 c) Quis crēdat eum tantum malum facere posse?
 d) Quis scit cūr tantum malum fēcerit?
 e) Dīcitur hoc fēcisse prō fēminā quādam.
 f) Nēmō scit quis sit fēmina.
4. a) Aliquis dīxit quendam vīcisse Caesarem. [**vincō**, -ere, **vīcī**, **victus**, 'conquer']
 b) Aliquis dīxit Caesarem ā quōdam victum esse.
 c) Quīdam dīxit aliquem vīcisse Caesarem.
 d) Quīdam dīxērunt aliquōs vīcisse Caesarem.
 e) Quis est qui dīxit Caesarem victum esse?
 f) Quis est qui dīxerit Caesarem victum esse?
 g) Quis est quin dīxerit Caesarem victum esse?
 h) Sunt qui dicant eum bonum esse.
 i) Nēmō est qui dicat eum bonum esse.
 j) Nēmō est quin huic faveat.
5. a) Hominēs quīdam mirantur verenturque Caesarem.
 b) Rogant quālis vir sit.
 c) Negant quidquam maius ab ullō factum esse.
 d) Caesar tālis est quālem omnēs verentur.
 e) Caesar est quem omnēs vereantur.
 f) Dīcunt Caesarem tālem esse quālem omnēs vereantur.
 g) Quisque dīcit idem.

h) Dicunt Caesarem esse verendum.
 i) Dicunt tālem virum quālem Caesarem esse verendum.
 j) Caesar dīgnus est quī timeātur. [dīgnus, -a, -um, 'worthy']

6. a) Nōnne sum idem quī fui?
 b) Num sum idem qui fui?
 c) Possum iterum fieri idem qui fui? [iterum, adv., 'again']
 d) Quis est qui possit fieri idem qui fuit?
 e) Negō quemquam posse fieri eundem qui fuerit.
 f) Iuvenis fui, senior fiēbam, mox nihil fiam.
 g) Utinam iuvenis nunc fierem.
 h) Qui senēs fiunt, iuvenēs esse volunt.
 i) Quis est quin sē senem fieri neget?

7. a) Rogat quis sibi dōnum dederit.
 b) Rogant num quis sibi dōnum dederit.
 c) Rogant num quis sibi ipsi dōnum dederit.
 d) Dicit nēminem sibi dōnum dedisse.
 e) Negat quemquam sibi dōnum dedisse.
 f) Dicit quendam sibi dōnum dedisse.
 g) Dicit dōnum sibi ā nūllō datum esse.
 h) Crēdet vix cuiquam.
 i) Crēdit nēminem in hāc urbe memorem esse suī.
 j) Crēdit custōdem sē neglēctūrum esse.

II. Purpose and Result Clauses

1. a) Parvā vōce loquor, ut audīs.
 b) Parvā vōce loquor ut audiās.
 c) Tāli vōce loquor ut nōn audiār.
 d) Tāli vōce loquor ut nōn audiās.
 e) Tālis vōx mihi est quae audiātur.
 f) Parvā vōce loquor nē audiār.
 g) Magnā vōce locūtus sum ut audīrēs.
 h) Magnā vōce locūtus sum ut audīrer.
 i) Tantā vōce locūtus sum ut audīrer.
 j) Tantā vōce locūtus sum ut nōn audīrer.
 k) Quae vōx nōn erat tanta quae audīrī nōn posset?

2. a) Mittunt militēs quī hostēs superant.
 b) Mittunt militēs qui hostēs superent.
 c) Mittent militēs qui hostēs superent.
 d) Misērunt militēs qui hostēs superārent.
 e) Pūgnāvērunt militēs ut hostēs superārent.
 f) Pūgnāvērunt militēs tantā virtūte ut hostēs superārent.

g) Pūgnāvērunt militēs magnā virtūte ut hostēs superārent.
 h) Pūgnāvērunt hostēs tantā virtūte ut nōn superārentur.
 i) Pūgnāvērunt hostēs magnā virtūte nē superārentur.
 j) Pūgnāvērunt militēs magnā virtūte ut hostēs superārentur.

3. a) Morātus sum ut hominī placērem.
 b) Tam diū morātus es ut hominī placērēs.
 c) Morātus est nē hominī placēret.
 d) Morātī sumus ut hominī placērēmus.
 e) Tam diū morātī sumus ut hominī placērēmus.
 f) Tam diū morātī estis ut hominī nōn placērētur.
 g) Morātī sunt nē hominī placērent.

4. a) Hortor ut veniat.
 b) Hortātus sum ut venīret.
 c) Verbīs multīs hortātus sum nē venīret.
 d) Verbīs tālibus hortātus sum ut nōn venīret.
 e) Verbīs tālibus hortātus sum ut venīret.
 f) Sic hortābor ut nōn veniat.
 g) Cum audāciā hortābor nē veniat.
 h) Efficiāmus ut hortēmur nē veniat.

5. a) Curris quō celerius praemia accipiās.
 b) Cucurristis quō celerius praemia acciperētis.
 c) Tam cucurristis ut celerius praemia acciperētis.
 d) Nōn cucurristis quō tardius praemia acciperētis. [tardē, adv., 'late, tardily']
 e) Cucurristis quō praemia acciperētis.
 f) Domum currō ubi praemia accipiam.
 g) Adulēscēns effēcit ut praemia sibi acciperēmus.
 h) Adulēscēns malus effēcit nē praemia acciperēmus.
 i) Facite nē tam caeci fiātis ut haec nōn intellegātis.
 j) Quis erat tam caecus quīn haec intellegere?

UNIT FOURTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Tam celeriter cucurrit ut quisque eum admirārētur (admirātus sit).
2. Senī nūper erat tantus dolor ut ridēre nōn posset.
3. Tālis pāx est ut bellum ubique parētur.
4. Accidit ut tempestās sic mala esset ut nōs omnēs magnopere timērēmus.
5. Ita dignus laude erat ut omnēs ei ignōscerent.
6. Fit ut nēmō plūs umquam pollicitus sit quam ille.
7. Efficiāmus ut ūra nostra vēritātem ostendant.

8. a) Facite ut vēritātem semper loquāmini.
b) Efficite nē indignī auctōritāte sītis.
9. Tot nūntiōs tum advenientēs vīdimus ut scire vellēmus quid accideret.
10. Fierī potest ut hostēs vincāmus.

UNIT FOURTEEN — EXERCISES

1. Nēmō est tam senex qui sē annum nōn arbitrētur posse vivere.
2. Nūntiātum erat ducem hostium mīssisse Carthāginem lēgātum qui cum imperātōre sociōrum colloquerētur.
3. Nūllus est dolor quem tempus nōn auferat.
4. Semper sic vivāmus ut nātūram optimam ducem sequi videāmur.
5. Quis est tam dēmēns qui patriam servitūte oppressam incolere mālit?
6. Tanta est vīs vēritātis ut ubique videātur.
7. Cōpiae tam bene vicērunt ut hostēs nunc hūc nunc illūc fugerent.
8. “Nil (*here*, ‘in no way’) opus est tē irātum fieri:
quendam volō vidēre nōn tibi
nōtum — trāns flūmen longē incolit is.”
“Nil habeō quod agam et nōn sum piger: sequar tē.”
[*piger, pigra, pigrum*, ‘lazy, slow’]
9. Nēmō est qui sciat cūr cōnsul auctōritāte suā ūti dubitet.
10. Sōlus est qui nōbīs mittendus sit ad Asiam ubi rēs cognōscat.
11. Omnibus parātis, lēgāti ad Asiam advēnērunt qui pācem peterent.
12. Erant tam cupidi laudis, ut sē ridēre ūrātiōnem cōnsulis ostendere nōllent.
13. Tanta tibi est animī probitās ūrisque, Safrōnī,
ut mīrer fieri tē potuisse patrem.

(Martial 11.103)

[*probitās, -tātis*, F., ‘modesty’; *Safrōnīus, -ī*, M., a proper name]

14. In forō audīvimus ūrātōrem tam sollertem ut eum locūtūrum esse diū spērārēmus.
15. Aliquid invēnī modo quod amēs.
16. a) Adeō dīgna rēs est ut efficiās ut omnibus nūntiētur.
b) Adeō dīgna rēs est ut fieri nōn possit ut ab incolis neglegātur.
17. Sunt qui mortem meliōrem vitā esse dicant.
18. Tum pūgnābātur in viis ita ācriter ut omnēs domum sē recipere properārent.
19. Ūsī sumus tālī tempestāte ut omnēs mortem timentēs nautās precātī sint ut peterent ubi tūti essent.
20. Nil tam difficile est quīn intellegī possit.
21. Si tanta vīs virtūtis est, ut eam nōn sōlum in eīs, quōs numquām vīdimus, sed, quod maius est, in hoste etiam mīrēmur, quid mīrum est, sī animī

hominum moveantur, videntes eorum, quibuscum usum iuncti esse possunt, virtutem et veritatem? [mirus, -a, -um, 'wonderful, strange'; usus, here, 'familiarity']

22. Neque enim quisquam est tam inimicus Musis qui non tradit versibus aeternam suorum factorum famam facile patiatur. [Musa, -ae, F., 'Muse'; here, a goddess who inspires poets; versus, -us, M., 'a line of poetry']
23. Hic sunt nuntii non parvae auctoritatis. Hic sunt nuntii tantae auctoritatis ut multi in urbe diutius manus sint quod cum eis plus colloquantur.
24. Civis civitatum quae habuissent reges sic ridebant ut iratissimi fierent.
25. Quis nostrum tam animo durum fuit ut poetae morte nuper non moveretur?
26. Tanta illius bellum fama ad nostram civitatem delata est ut duo viri maximae virtutis mitterentur legati ut veritatem de eius natura cognoscerent.
27. Modo fac ne quid aliud hoc tempore agas nisi ut hunc dolorem ex animo quam celerrime pellas.
28. Neque is sum qui mortis periculum timeam. Sunt autem qui de hoc timore cogitare nonint.
29. Sapientia est una quae tam timorem pellat ex animis.
30. Si sapientia esset una quae timorem pelleret ex animis, tam cupidi sapientiae essemus ut multos liberos legeremus.
31. Fieri non potest ut eum tu non cognoveris.
32. Tam demens erat ut nihil nisi de ruinâ populi Romani cogitaret.
33. Omnibus paratis, tantis viribus ubique pugnatum est ut nemor urbem ingredi atque vincere posset; nisi qui sapiens de pace loqui voluisse, multo diutius pugnatum esset.
34. Litteras tuas legimus simillimas eorum quas heri legimus, minimus dignas quae a te ad nos mitterentur. Numquam tibi nocuimus; quam ob rem tales litteras mittis?
35. Ita efficitur ut omnis res publica in magnis periculis sit.
36. Accidit ut omnes in nave se aut mortis aut servitutis periculis tradarent.
37. Imperator adeo iratus erat ut comites mentes studiis et rebus honestis intenderent quod melius sibi placarent.
38. Inventi sunt duo equites Romani qui te ista cura liberarent et se illa ipsa nocte paulo ante lucem me in lecto interfecerentur. [eques, equitis, M., 'knight'; lectus, -i, M., 'bed']
39. Quid est enim quod tibi iam in hac urbe placere possit? in qua nemor est extra istam turbam impiorum hominum qui te non timeat, nemor qui non oderit. [extra, prep. + acc., 'outside']
40. Tunc talis vir qualis dux iste indignus laude habebatur; quam ob rem neque praemia neque gloriam paravit.
41. Fieri non potest ut cognoscas unde venerit iste senex, qualis sit. Est tamen tam notae famae ut in ore omnium semper sit.

42. Quālis vir scelera huius modi facere audeat?
43. Fēcit ut amici nihil aliud eō tempore agerent nisī ut dolōrem ex sē ipsīs quam p्रimum expellerent.
44. Digni erant qui civitāte dōnārentur.
45. Fieri nūllō modō poterat quīn victis parcerētur.
46. Nēmō tam impius est quin hoc iūre factum esse fateātur.
47. Quae rēs efficiēbat ut cibus sine periculō portāri posset.
48. Tālis est quaeque rēs pūblica, quālis eius nātūra aut voluntās, qui illam regit. [voluntās, -tātis, F., ‘desire, inclination’]
49. Hīc, hic sunt inter nōs, amice, in hōc orbis terrārum gravissimō cōnsiliō, quī dē nostrum omnium ruinā, qui dē huius urbis atque adeō dē orbis terrārum ruinā cōgitent. [cōnsilium, -i, N., here, ‘the people who deliberate, a council’; adeō, adv., here, ‘indeed’]

II.

1. They ran across the fields so quickly that they arrived home faster than their friends.
2. There is no one who does not know that the commander of the allies has been in charge of the troops for many years. [“has been in charge”: Latin requires the present infinitive here to denote the present perfect idea. The fact that the action began in the past is represented by the adverbial “for many years”.]
3. The storm was so great that everyone wondered why the ships had not been destroyed.
4. They so wanted to get help that they ran as quickly as possible to where they might get it.
5. He was the only one in Rome who did not know what his daughter was doing.
6. It is possible that the old men have suffered more sorrow than we know.

III. Readings

A. Petronius, *Satyricon* 111.1:

Mātrōna¹ quaedam Ephesi² tam nōtae erat pudicitiae,³ ut vicinārum⁴ quoque⁵ gentium fēminās ad spectāculum⁶ sui ēvocāret.⁷

¹ mātrōna, -ae, F., ‘a married woman’ ² Ephesus, -i, M., a town in Asia Minor
³ pudicitia, -ae, F., ‘purity, chastity’ ⁴ vicinus, -a, -um, ‘neighboring’ ⁵ quoque (adv.), ‘also’ ⁶ spectāculum, -i, N., ‘sight, spectacle’ ⁷ ēvocō (I), ‘call forth, summon’

B. Cicero chides the senate for their inaction regarding Catiline and his fellow conspirators and urges those who wish ill to the state to depart at once (*In Catilinam* 1, selections from sections 12 and 13):

Nōnnūlli¹ sunt in hōc ōrdine² quī aut ea quae imminent³ nōn videant aut ea quae vident dissimulent;⁴ qui spem Catilinae mollibus⁵ sententiis aluērunt;⁶ auctōritātem secūti multi nōn sōlum⁷ improbi,⁸ vērum etiam⁷ imperiti,⁹ si in hunc animadvertissem,¹⁰ crūdēliter factum esse dicerent. Nunc intellegō, si iste, quō intendit, in Manliāna¹¹ castra¹² ierit, nēminem tam stultum¹³ futūrum esse quī nōn videat coniūrātiōnem¹⁴ esse factam, nēminem tam improbum⁸ qui nōn fateātur. Hōc autem ūnō interfēctō, intellegō hanc rei pūblicae pestem¹⁵ paulisper¹⁶ reprimi,¹⁷ nōn in perpetuum¹⁸ comprimī¹⁹ posse. Quod si²⁰ sē ēiēcerit²¹ sēcumque suōs ēdūxerit,²² dēlēbitur nōn modo²³ haec tam adulta²⁴ rei pūblicae pestis,¹⁵ vērum etiam²³ stirps²⁵ ac sēmen²⁶ malōrum omnium.

Quārē sēcēdant²⁷ improbi,⁸ sēcernant²⁸ sē ā bonis, mūrō²⁹ dēnique,³⁰ id quod saepe iam dixī, discernantur³¹ ā nōbīs. Polliceor hoc vōbīs, patrēs cōscripti,³² tantam in nōbīs cōnsulibus futūram esse diligentiam, tantam in vōbīs auctōritātem, tantam in equitibus³³ Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus bonīs cōsēnsiōnem,³⁴ ut Catilinae profectiōne³⁵ omnia patefacta,³⁶ inlūstrāta,³⁷ oppressa, vindicāta esse³⁸ videātis.

¹ nōnnūlli, -ae, -a, 'some' ² ōrdō, -inis, M., 'order, class, body of men' ³ immineō, -ēre, -ūi, --, 'threaten, be imminent' ⁴ dissimulō (1), 'conceal, leave unnoticed' ⁵ molli, -e, 'gentle, mild' ⁶ alō, -ere, aluī, altus, 'nourish, support' ⁷ nōn sōlum...vērum etiam (adv.), 'not only...but also' ⁸ improbus, -a, -um, 'bad, wicked' ⁹ imperitus, -a, -um, 'inexperienced, ignorant' ¹⁰ animadvertis, -ere, -verti, -versus, 'turn one's attention to, notice' (often with in + accusative) ¹¹ Manliānus, -a, -um, 'of Manlius (a Roman name)' ¹² castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ¹³ stultus, -a, -um, 'foolish' ¹⁴ coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F., 'conspiracy' ¹⁵ pestis, -is, F., 'infectious disease, pestilence' ¹⁶ paulisper (adv.), 'for a short time' ¹⁷ reprimō (re- + premō), 'hinder, repress' ¹⁸ in perpetuum (adverbial phrase), 'forever' ¹⁹ comprimō (com- + premō), 'suppress, subdue' ²⁰ quod sī, 'but if' ²¹ ēiēciō (ē + iaciō), -ere, -iēci, -iectus, 'throw out' ²² ēdūcō (ē + dūcō), 'lead out' ²³ nōn modo...vērum etiam (adv.), 'not only...but also' ²⁴ adulthus, -a, -um, 'grown up, adult, advanced' ²⁵ stirps, stirpis, F., 'root' ²⁶ sēmen, -inis, N., 'seed' ²⁷ sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, 'withdraw' ²⁸ sēcērnō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'separate' ²⁹ mūrus, -ī, M., 'wall' ³⁰ dēnique (adv.), 'finally, at last' ³¹ discernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'set apart' ³² cōscriptō (com- + scribō), 'enroll'; patrēs cōscripti, 'senators' ³³ eques, -itis, M., 'knight' ³⁴ cōsēnsiō, -ōnis, F., 'agreement, harmony' ³⁵ profectiō, -ōnis, F., 'departure' ³⁶ patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, 'disclose' ³⁷ inlūstrō (1), 'elucidate, explain' ³⁸ vindicō (1), 'avenge, punish'

UNIT FIFTEEN

A. **cum** Clauses

Cum is not only a preposition meaning ‘with’, but it occurs also as a subordinating conjunction with the meanings ‘when’, ‘since’, and ‘although’. The verb in such clauses is most often in the subjunctive, its tense determined by the rules for sequence of tenses after the main verb. The meaning of **cum** in such clauses must be determined from the context of the sentence.

1. TEMPORAL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES

When the **cum** clause refers strictly to *time* and its action is coordinate with that of the main verb, it is a *temporal cum clause* and **cum** is translated ‘when’. Such clauses have their verbs in the *indicative*.

Cum tē vidēbō, fēlix erō. (*At the very time*) when I see you, I shall be happy.

Cum tē vidī, fēlix eram. (*At the very time*) when I saw you, I was happy.

If the **cum** clause states the *circumstances* in which the action of the main verb takes place, it is called a *circumstantial cum clause* and **cum** is translated ‘when’. When the action in such **cum** clauses refers to *present* or *future* time, the *indicative* is used.

Cum tē vidēbō, fēlix erō. Under the circumstances of my seeing you, I shall be happy; when I see you, I shall be happy.

When the action in the circumstantial **cum** clause is in *past* time, the *subjunctive* is used.

Cum tē vidērem, fēlix eram. When I saw you (i.e., not at a point of time, but under these circumstances), I was happy.

2. CAUSAL CLAUSES

When **cum** translates as ‘since’ or ‘because’, the **cum** clause is *causal*. The verb in *causal cum clauses* is *always* in the *subjunctive*.

Cum tē videam, fēlix sum. *Since I see you, I am happy.*
Cum tē vīderim, fēlix sum. *Since I saw you, I am happy.*
Cum tē vidērem, fēlix eram. *Since I saw you, I was happy.*
Cum tē vīdissem, fēlix eram. *Since I had seen you, I was happy.*

3. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

When **cum** translates ‘although’, the **cum** clause is *concessive*. Frequently **tamen**, ‘nevertheless’, in the main clause indicates that **cum** is to be taken as ‘although’, but the **tamen** is not always there. *Concessive cum clauses always have their verbs in the subjunctive.*

Cum tē videam, fēlix (tamen) sum. *Although I see you, (nevertheless) I am happy.*
Cum tē vīderim, fēlix (tamen) sum. *Although I saw you, (nevertheless) I am happy.*
Cum tē vidērem, fēlix (tamen) eram. *Although I saw you, (nevertheless) I was happy.*
Cum tē vīdissem, fēlix (tamen) eram. *Although I had seen you, (nevertheless) I was happy.*

THUS:

	PRIMARY SEQUENCE	SECONDARY SEQUENCE
cum Temporal	indicative	indicative
cum Circumstantial	indicative	subjunctive
cum Causal	subjunctive	subjunctive
cum Concessive	subjunctive	subjunctive

4. *cum*, ‘whenever’

If **cum** means “whenever”, it takes a *perfect* indicative when the main verb is present, a *pluperfect* indicative when the main verb is imperfect.

Cum tē vīdī, fēlix sum. *Whenever I see you, I am happy.*
Cum tē vīderam, fēlix eram. *Whenever I saw you, I was happy.*

B. *cum* Clauses and Ablatives Absolute

The sentences used to illustrate the ablative absolute construction in Unit Ten might also have been expressed with **cum** clauses with no change in meaning:

Coniuge veniente, fēmina discēdet. } When her husband comes, the
Cum coniūnx veniet, fēmina discēdet. } woman will depart.

Coniuge veniente, fēmina discēdet. } Since (although) her husband is
Cum coniūnx veniat, fēmina discēdet. } coming, the woman will depart.

Coniuge visō, fēmina discessit. } When (after, since, although) she saw (had
Cum coniugem vīdisset, fēmina discessit. } seen) her husband, the woman departed.

It will be noted in this last example that, whereas the ablative absolute with the perfect participle must be expressed in the passive because of the lack of a perfect active participle (since *videō*, *-ēre* is not a deponent verb) and also in order to avoid concordance of subjects in both clauses, the *cum* clause may use the active voice.

C. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses

1. TEMPORAL

ut
ubi
postquam
quandō

} + indicative

Ut (ubi, postquam, quandō) *mē risit*, When (after) he laughed at me, I
irātus fiēbam. became angry.

2. CAUSAL

quoniam
quandō

} almost always with indicative
quod
quia

Quoniam (quandō) *mē risit*, Since (because) he laughed at me, I became
irātus fiēbam. angry.

3. CONCESSIVE

quamquam
etsi

quamvis + subjunctive

(quam vis, 'as you wish')

Quamquam (etsi) *mē risit*, irātus Although he laughed at me, I did not
(tamen) nōn fiēbam. (nevertheless) become angry.

Quamvis *mē risisset*, irātus Although he had laughed at me, I
(tamen) nōn fiēbam. did not (nevertheless) become angry.

D. Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive

Several conjunctions take either the indicative or the subjunctive. The distinction is based on the difference between these two moods, which was stated in Unit One: The indicative is the mood of fact, while the subjunctive is the mood of probability, intention, or idea.

1. **quod OR quia**, 'because'

Abest **quod (quia)** corpore
validus nōn **est**.

Abest **quod (quia)** corpore
validus nōn **sit**.

He is absent *because he is (actually) not healthy in body* (i.e., the speaker believes and accepts responsibility for the excuse).

He is absent *because he is (allegedly) not healthy in body* (i.e., the speaker does not accept responsibility for the excuse and so does not express it as a fact; it is within the realm of probability or idea).

This use of **quod** with the subjunctive is referred to as a *quod clause of alleged reason*.

2. **dum OR dōnec**, 'while, as long as, until'

Dum or **dōnec** meaning 'while, as long as' or 'until', when referring merely to a temporal idea, takes the indicative.

Exspectāvit **dum (dōnec) vēnī**. He waited *until I (actually) came*.

Exspectāvit **dum (dōnec) rēginae** He waited *until (while) I greeted the queen*.

Exspectāvit **dum (dōnec) voluit**. He waited *as long as he wished*.

NOTE: **Dum**, 'while', normally uses the present indicative (the so-called historical present) to denote continued action in past time.

Dum haec geruntur, nūntius ad mē vēnit. *While these things were (are) going on, a messenger came to me.*

When a notion of purpose, intention, or a future idea is involved, the subjunctive is used.

Exspectāvit **dum (dōnec) venīrem**. He waited *until I should come*; he waited *for me to come*. (i.e., there is nothing in the sentence to say that "I" actually *did* come; the clause is expressed as an idea or an intention, not a fact)

Exspectāvit **dum (dōnec) rēginae salūtem dīcerem**. He waited *until I should greet the queen*; he waited *for me to greet the queen*.

3. **antequam OR priusquam**, 'before'

When **antequam** and **priusquam** refer strictly to time, they take the indicative.

Antequam (Priusquam) vēnī, discessit. *Before I came, he went away.* (stated as a fact)

When purpose, intention, or idea is involved, the subjunctive is used in secondary sequence.

Antequam (Priusquam) venirem, *Before I could come*, he went away. (i.e.,
discessit. nothing in the sentence states that,
as a fact, "I" actually did come)

In primary sequence, the present or future perfect indicative is generally used (less frequently, the present subjunctive).

Antequam (Priusquam) vēnerō, *Before I (shall have) come*, he will leave.
discēdet.

Frequently **ante/quam** or **prius/quam** is split (tmesis) so as to give the sentence a greater degree of cohesion:

Ante discessit quam venirem. He went away *before* I could come.
Prius clāmāvit quam mē vidit. He shouted *before* he saw me.

E. Clauses of Proviso

Dum, **modo**, and **dummodo** (all meaning 'if only, provided that') are used to express conditional wishes with the present and imperfect subjunctives. The negative uses **nē**.

Ōderint, dum (modo, dummodo) timeant. Let them hate, *provided that they fear.*

Id saepe faciat, dum (modo, dummodo) Let him do this often, *provided that he does not become unhappy.*

F. Accusative of Exclamation

The accusative case is sometimes used in exclamations.

Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Oh, the times, oh, the customs!, What times (these are), what customs!

Patriam perditam! Oh wasted land!

Puerum miserum! Unhappy boy!

UNIT FIFTEEN — VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus	be away, be absent
absēns, absentis	absent
adsum, adesse, adfui, --	be present
agitō (1)	disturb, stir up
antequam (conj.)	before
appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	appear, come in sight, be apparent

calamitās, -tātis, F.	disaster, calamity
contrā (prep. + acc.; adv.)	against, facing; opposite, in opposition, in turn
cum (conj.)	when, since, although
dēsinō, -ere, dēsii, --	stop, cease (frequently with infinitive or ablative: pūgnāre dēsii, 'he stopped fighting'; inimicitiā dēsii, 'he stopped (his) hostility')
dōnec (conj.)	while, until, as long as
dum (conj.)	while, until, as long as; if only, provided that
dummodo (conj.)	if only, provided that
etsī (conj.)	although, even if (+ indicative)
exiguus, -a, -um	small
exspectō (1)	wait (for), expect
fore	= futūrus, -a, -um esse (future infinitive of sum)
fors, fortis, -ium, F.	chance
fulgor, -ōris, M.	lightning, flash, brightness
grātus, -a, -um	pleasing (+ dat.)
igitur (postpositive conj.)	therefore
ingenium, -ī, N.	nature, talent, disposition, natural quality
inimicitia, -ae, F.	hostility
interdum (adv.)	sometimes
iūdex, iūdicis, M.	judge; jury (pl.)
iūdicium, -ī, N.	trial, judgment, decision
memoria, -ae, F.	memory
misceō, -ēre, -ūi, mixtus	mix, intermingle, blend
modo (conj.)	if only, provided that
nusquam (adv.)	nowhere
nūtrix, nūtricis, F.	nurse
occidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsus	fall, set, die
omnīnō (adv.)	all in all, as a whole, entirely
pereō, -ire, -ii (-īvī), -itus	die, perish
priusquam (conj.)	before
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, --	be useful, do good, benefit, profit (+ dat.)
putō (1)	think
quamvis (conj.)	although (+ subjunctive)
quasi (adv.)	as if, as it were
quidem (adv.)	indeed
nē . . . quidem (enclosing	not even
the word or words they	
emphasize)	
quōad (conj.)	as long as, as far as, until (takes same construction as dum and dōnec)

quoniam (conj.)	since (+ indicative)
redeō, -ire, -ii, -itus	return, go back
simul ac (or atque) (conj.)	as soon as (+ indicative)
somnus, -ī, M.	sleep, dream
supersum, -esse, -fui, --	be left over, survive
ubi (conj.)	when

UNIT FIFTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, a compound of **ab** and **sum** meaning ‘be away, be absent’, has a present participle **absēns**, ‘absent’; **adsum, adesse, adfui, --**, ‘be present’, has no fourth principal part. (Note that although **ab** as a prefix may be shortened to **ā-**, **ad** does not shorten except in such instances as **adspiciō**, ‘look at’, which is usually spelled **āspiciō**. This normally happens before **gn, sp, sc, and st.**)

Prōsum, another compound of **sum**, uses **-d-** as a connecting consonant between **prō** and **esse, prōdesse, prōfui, --**, ‘be useful, do good, benefit, profit’. This connecting **-d-** is used to prevent hiatus (a pause between vowels).

Supersum, also lacking a fourth principal part, means ‘be left over, survive’.

Antequam and **priusquam**, both meaning ‘before’, may be cut into two parts, **ante...quam**, **prius...quam** for greater cohesion in the sentence. This is called **tmesis**: **Ante (Prius) discessimus quam tē vidēre potuimus**, ‘We left before we could see you’.

Appāreō is a compound of **ad** and **pāreō**; it means ‘appear, come in sight, be apparent’.

Dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsīi, -- is a compound of **dē** and **sinō** which originally meant ‘let, set’, but later was used exclusively as ‘allow, permit’. **Dēsinō**, literally ‘set down’, means ‘stop, cease’.

Exspectō, a compound of **ex** and **spectō**, ‘look out for’, means ‘wait (for), expect’.

Fore is often used instead of **futūrus (-a, -um) esse**, the future infinitive of **sum**. **Āfore, affore (adsum), prōfore** also are used.

Fors, fortis, F., is a noun meaning ‘chance’. Notice that the genitive singular looks like the adjective **fortis** and that the ablative singular **forte**, ‘by chance’, looks like the neuter adjective **forte**.

Igitur, ‘therefore’, is a postpositive conjunction; it cannot be the first word in a clause.

We have already learned **amicitia** and so **inimicitia** is clearly ‘hostility’.

Iūdex, iūdicis, M., and **iūdiciūm, iūdicīi, N.**, both have the same root; **iūdex** is ‘judge’, and in the plural, ‘jury’, and **iūdiciūm** is ‘trial, judgment, decision’.

Nusquam, ‘nowhere’, is the opposite of **usquam**, ‘anywhere’, and should not be confused with **numquam**, ‘never’.

Nūtrix, **nūtrīcis**, F., is ‘she who suckles, nourishes, brings up’ (**nūtriō**, **nūtrīre**, **nūtrīvī** (**nūtrīi**), **nūtrītus**), thus ‘nurse’.

Occidō, a compound of **ob** and **cadō**, means ‘fall, set, die’, and in this last meaning it is synonymous with **pereō** (a compound of **per** and **eō**, ‘go through [life]’, thus ‘die, perish’). It gives the stem of “occident”, the place of the falling (i.e., setting) sun, thus, the West.

Redeō is another compound of **eō** (**re-** and **eō**, with a connecting **-d-** to avoid hiatus); it means ‘return, go back’.

Quidem is an adverb, ‘indeed’; **nē...quidem**, ‘not even’, surround the word or words they emphasize: **Cum nūllā nē sorōre quidem collocūta est**, ‘She spoke with no woman, not even her sister’.

Simul is an adverb meaning ‘at the same time, together’, but **simul ac** or **simul atque** is a conjunction introducing a verb in the indicative and meaning ‘as soon as’.

PREFIXES (from prepositions)

ā-, **ab-** (**abs-**, **au-**, **as-** [before **-p-**, very rare]), ‘away’

abdūcō, ‘lead away’

aberrō, ‘wander away’

absolvō, ‘loosen from, set free’

abstineō, ‘keep off *or* away; abstain from’

asportō, ‘carry off *or* away’

aufugiō, ‘flee, run away; flee from’

āvertō (**vertō**, **-ere**, **vertī**, **versus**, ‘turn’), ‘turn away’

ad- (**ac-**, **af-**, **ag-**, **al-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **at-**), ‘to, toward’

accingō (**cingō**, **-ere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctus**, ‘gird’), ‘gird to’

addūcō, ‘lead to’

affor (**fārī**, **fātus sum**, ‘speak’), ‘speak to’

aggerō, ‘bring *or* bear to *or* toward’

alloquor, ‘speak to’

appōnō, ‘apply to, add’

arrīdeō, ‘smile toward’

assiliō (**saliō**, **-īre**, **—**, **-ītus**, ‘leap’), ‘leap to *or* upon’

attrahō (**trahō**, **-ere**, **trāxī**, **tractus**, ‘draw, drag’), ‘draw to *or* toward; attract’

ante-, ‘before’

antecurrō, ‘run before’

anteeō, ‘go before’

anteferō, ‘carry before, prefer, anticipate’

circum-, 'around, on all sides'

circumagō, 'drive around'

circumdūcō, 'lead around'

circumspectō, 'look around'

(cum, preposition) **com-** (col-, con-, co-, cor-), 'together (with), completely'

collaudō, 'praise very much'

collocō (locō (1), 'place'), 'place together'

comedō (edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsus, 'eat'), 'eat entirely'

conveniō, 'come together'

cooperiō (operiō, -ire, -uī, -tus, 'cover'), 'cover wholly'

corrivō (rīvō (1), 'lead, draw off'), 'conduct streams of water together'

dē-, 'down, utterly, from'

dēcēdō, 'go away, withdraw, depart'

dēcidō, 'fall down'

dērelinquō (relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus, 'leave behind, abandon')

'forsake wholly'

ē-, **ex-** (ef-), 'out'

ēdormiō (dormiō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus, 'sleep'), 'sleep out, sleep away'

effundō (fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, 'pour'), 'pour out'

exeō, 'go out'

in- (il-, im-, ir-), 'in, on, against'

illigō (ligō (1), 'bind'), 'bind on'

immittō, 'send into, send against'

ineō, 'go in'

irrigō (rigō (1), 'wet, water'), 'lead (water) to (a place), irrigate'

inter-, 'between'

interpōnō, 'put or place between or among'

intersum, 'be between'

interveniō, 'come between'

ob- (oc-, of-, op-), 'toward, to meet, against'

obveniō, 'come to meet'

occurrō, 'run up to, run to meet'

offulgeō, 'shine against or upon'

oppōnō, 'set or place against'

per-, 'through, thoroughly'

pererrō, 'wander through'

perfluō (fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus, 'flow'), 'flow through'

permōveō, 'move thoroughly, stir up thoroughly'

permūniō, 'fortify completely'

permūtō, 'change completely'

post-, 'after'

postferō, 'put after'
postpōnō, 'put after, postpone'
prae-, 'before, previous'
praemittō, 'send forward, send before'
praemōnstrō, 'show beforehand'
praescribō, 'write before *or* in front *or* previously'
prō-, 'in front of, forth'
prōcēdō, 'go forth, proceed'
prōcidō, 'fall forward'
prōmoveō, 'move forward'
prōscribō, 'write before *or* in front of'
sub- (suc-, suf-, sum-, sup-, sur-, sus-), 'under, up from under'
subiciō, 'throw under, place under'
subigō, 'bring under, turn up from beneath'
succurrō, 'run under, run to the aid of'
suffundō (fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, 'pour'), 'pour below *or* underneath'
summittō, 'set *or* put under *or* below; send below *or* from below'
suppōnō, 'put, place, *or* set under'
surrepō (repō, repere, rep̄sī, reptus, 'creep'), 'creep under, creep along'
sustineō, 'hold up, support, sustain'
super-, 'over and above'
superpōnō, 'put *or* place over *or* upon'
supertegō, 'cover above, cover over'
trāns- (trā-, trān-), 'across'
trānseō, 'go across, cross over, pass over'
trānsmittō, 'send *or* carry across *or* over *or* through'
trādūcō, 'lead *or* bring across, transfer'
trānsiliō (saliō, -īre, --, salītus, 'leap, jump'), 'leap *or* jump across *or* over,
 hasten'

UNIT FIFTEEN — DRILL

I. *cum* Clauses

1. Cum verba tua audīvissem, rem intellēxi.
2. Cum verba mea nōn audīvisset, rem tamen intellēxit.
3. Cum verba vestra audīvissēmus, rem intellēximus.
4. Ego cum ā tē monitus essem, nihil tamen fēci.
5. Tū cum ā mē monitus sis, tamen nihil facis.
6. Cum ā vōbis moniti essēmus, aliquid fēcimus.
7. Cum ā nōbīs moneāmini, aliquid facitis.
8. Cum urbs capta esset, militēs tamen mānsērunt.

9. Cum oppidum captum sit, militēs tamen manent.
10. Cum urbs capiētur, fēminae clāmābunt.
11. Cum oppida capiantur, fēminae clāmābunt.
12. Cum periculum timeam, ex urbe proficiscor.
13. Cum tē videō, fēlix sum.
14. Cum periculum timuerim, ex urbe proficiscor.
15. Cum periculum timērem, ex urbe proficiscēbar.
16. Cum periculum timuissem, ex urbe profectus sum.
17. Cum periculum timuī, clāmō.
18. Cum periculum timueram, clāmābam.

II. Exercises in Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive, etc.

1. Dum Lesbiam amābat Catullus, Lesbia amābat alium.
2. Quamvis Lesbia amāret alium, Catullus eam amāvit.
3. Cum infēlix esset Catullus, tamen amābat Lesbiā.
4. Catullus domī manēbat dum Lesbia alium amābat.
5. Catullus domī manēbat dum Lesbia eum amāret.
6. Catullus quamquam domī mānserat, tamen Lesbiā amābat.
7. Catullus ā Lesbiā discessit antequam eum ēdisse incēpit illa.
8. Catullus ā Lesbiā discessit antequam eum ēdisse inciperet illa.
9. Dum Cicerō est cōnsul, nōn timeō.
10. Dum Cicerō in urbe maneat, nōn timēbō.
11. Nōn discēdam dum Cicerō veniat.
12. Antequam Cicerō venīret, discessit turba.
13. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem quod rem pūblicam servāvisset.
14. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem, nōn quod inimīcum superāvisset, sed quia rem pūblicam servāvit.
15. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem quod cōnsul optimus esset.
16. Quamvis turba laudāverit Cicerōnem, cōnsilia eius nōn cēpit.
17. Nē Cicerōnem turba laudet, dummodo cōnsilia eius capiat.
18. Domum cucurrit quia timuit.
19. Indignum senem! Domum cucurrit quia timēret.
20. Morāti sunt dōnec tempestās erat serēna.
21. Morāti sunt dōnec tempestās esset serēna.
22. Morāri cōnstituērunt modo tempestās nē esset serēna.
23. Morāri cōnstituērunt dum tempestās nē esset serēna.
24. Morāri cōnstituērunt dummodo tempestās nē esset serēna.

III. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses

1. Ubi hostēs victī sunt, laeti erāmus.
2. Postquam hostēs victī sunt, laeti erāmus.

3. Quandō hostēs victī sunt, laeti erāmus.
4. Ut ad patriam advēnimus, laeti erāmus.
5. Quoniam ad patriam advēnimus, laeti erāmus.
6. Etsi ad patriam advēnimus, laeti nōn erāmus.
7. Quamquam ad patriam advēnimus, laeti nōn erāmus.
8. Dum ea accidunt, militēs trāns flūmen quam celerrimē properāvērunt.
9. Dum nūntius multōs diēs morātur, lēgātus cum eis cōpiis quās ā rēge accēperat ad finēs sociōrum advēnit.

UNIT FIFTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Cum āfūistī, misera sum.
2. Cum āfuerās, misera eram.
3. Cum nūper perierit, tamen memoria factōrum bonōrum manet.
4. Cum fulgor appāret, multi quidem timent.
5. Cum fulgor appāruit, multi timuērunt.
6. Cum inimicitia inter eōs maxima esset, iūdex cōnstituit ut numquam inter sē miscēre dēbērent.
7. Cum pūgnāre dēsinerent, hostēs tamen mānsērunt.
8. Cum animus agitārēt, multa putāre nōn potuī.
9. Cum ingenium tuum mihi omnīnō grātum sit, tē semper adesse volō.
10. Interdum cum calamitās exspectātur, somnus ā nōbīs longē abest.

UNIT FIFTEEN — EXERCISES

1. a) Dē futūris rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere. [coniectūra, -ae, F., 'guess, conjecture']
b) Dē futūris rēbus cum semper difficile sit dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere.
2. Quae cum ita essent, dixit sē quam celerrimē domum receptūrum esse.
3. Saepe magnum ingenium virtūtis priusquam rei pūblicae prōdesse posset dēlētum est.
4. a) Rēx cum Rōmā rediret mortuus est.
b) Rēx ubi Rōmā redierat mortuus est.
5. Rēge Rōmā redeunte, civēs dēmentēs effēcērunt ut servī inter sē inimicitiam agitantēs miscērent.
6. Ō rēs horridās! Ō civitātem malam! Quis caelum terrīs miscēre velit, quis mare caelō?

7. Quae cum ita sint, effectum est ut nihil sit malum quod mutari non possit.
8. Perire artem putamus nisi appareret, cum desinat ars esse, si appareret.
9. Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discedit, appareret.
10. Longum illud tempus cum non erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum.
11. Ex regnō prius egressus est quam rex eum in fidem reciperet.
12. Ibi manebat dum rex eum in fidem reciperet (recēpit).
13. Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus. [sonus, -i, M., 'sound']
14. Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dicam.
15. a) Mē omnia expertūrum esse certum est priusquam peribō.
 b) Eum omnia expertum esse certum est priusquam perit.
 c) Mē omnia prius expertūrum esse certum est quam perierō.
16. Vita dum superest, bene est.
17. Ille imperātor tam diū laudabitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manebit.
18. Dō nec grātus eram tibi, Persārum vixi rēge laetior. [Persae, -ārum, M., 'the Persians']
19. Morātus est dum frāter imperātōrem rogāret in quantā calamitāte essent.
20. Dummodo somnus celeriter accēdat, nūtricem non vocābimus.
21. Ibam forte viā sacrā, ut meus est mōs. [sacer, sacra, sacrum, 'sacred']
22. Postquam ē tantā tempestāte lūx rediit, nautae Rōmam sē recēpērunt.
23. Cum bene vivās, nē cōgitēs dē verbis malōrum; sapienti nē sit cūrae quid quisque loquātur.
24. Multa ante cōnēris quam virum inveniās bonum.
25. a) Cum (quamvis) exigua pars iūdicii superesset dum rēs cōnstituerētur, nēmō tamen ex iūdīcībus manēre voluit quod magnum futūrum esset periculum eis dē istō pessimō male loquentibus.
 b) Quamquam exigua pars iūdicii supererat, nēmō tamen manēre voluit.
26. Magnopere timētūr quod ducēs in forō appāruerint ut culpam in omnēs inimicitiam inter sē agitanfēs iacerent.
27. Cum somnō solūtus erō tibi dicam quid heri fēcerim.
28. Dixit sē somnō mox datūrum esse; eō modō fēličiōrem fore.
29. Ex eō bellō quod iam à civibus domī timēri dēsierat, nē duo quidem ē militibus prius tūti rediērunt quam pāx cōnstituerētur.
30. Cum rūmōrēs pulsi sunt, hominēs multō sunt fēličiōrēs.
31. Cūrārum maxima nūtrix est nox, dummodo nōs somnō celeriter dēmus.
32. a) Cum senex iūdiciū meae virtūtis fēcisset, omnēs cōnstituērunt mē nēminī nocēre potuisse. Imperāvērunt igitur ut domum irem.
 b) Postquam (ubi) senex iūdiciū meae virtūtis fēcīt, omnēs cōnstituērunt mē nēminī nocēre potuisse.
33. Tē iūdice, non ego calamitātem timeam dummodo mea verba contrā

imperātōrem cīvibus liberīs prōsint; priusquam tū iūdex fiēbās, magnopere timuī.

34. Dum cōnāmur, laudāmūr. Homō nihil agēns nēminī placet.
35. Nē exigua quidem pars civitatis exspectāvit dum cōpiae sociōrum advenirent; dēsierunt autem nihil agere et cum audāciā hostēs ex urbe pepulērunt.
36. Cum ego loqui velim, nihil tamen dīcam.
37. Illum absentem diū exspectāvimus, sed nusquam appāruit quod validus nōn fuit. Quoniam quidem validus nōn est, absit. Si occidat, miseri quasi perditī omnīnō sīmus.
38. Imperātor contrā cōnstituit exspectandam nāvem; quae ubi advēnit, omnibus prōsuit.
39. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 22, adapted:

Sophoclēs ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; quod propter studium cum rem neglegere familiārem vidērētur, ā filiis in iūdiciūm vocātūs est, ut, quia nostrō mōre solet male rem gerentēs patrēs ē bonis removērī, sīc illum quasi dēsipientem ā rē familiārī removērent iūdicēs. Tum senex dicitur eam tragoediam quam in manib⁹ habēbat et nūperrimē scripserat, *Oedipum Colōnēum*, lēgisse iūdicibus quaesivisseque num illud carmen dēsipientis vidērētur. Ille cum id lēgisset, sententiis iūdicum est liberātus. Quamquam Sophoclēs ā iūdicibus liberātus erat, filiī tamen irātissimī erant quod eius bona capere nōn poterant.

[dēsipiēns, -entis, 'foolish, insane'; familiāris, -e, 'pertaining to the family'; *Oedipus Colōnēus*, 'Oedipus at Colonus' (a tragedy by Sophocles); senectūs, -tūtis, F., 'old age'; Sophoclēs, -is, M., proper name; tragoedia, -ae, F., 'tragedy']

40. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 79-80, adapted slightly:

Moriēns Cīrus maior haec dīcit: "nōlite arbitrārī, o mihi cārissimī filiī, mē, cum ā vōbis discesserō, nusquam aut nūllum fore. Nec enim, dum eram vōbiscum, animum meum vidēbātis, sed eum esse in hōc corpore ex his rēbus quās gerēbam intellegēbātis. Eundem igitur esse crēdite, etiam sī nūllum vidēbitis. Nec vērō clārōrum virōrum post mortem honōrēs manērent, sī nihil eōrum ipsōrum animī efficerent, quō diūtius memoriam suī tenērēmus. Mihi quidem numquam persuādērī potuit animōs dum in corporib⁹ essent mortālib⁹ vīvere, cum excessissent ex eīs morī."

[Cīrus, -ī, M., proper name; excēdō (ex + cēdō), 'depart, withdraw'; honor, -ōris, M., 'honor, distinction'; mortālis, -e, 'mortal']

41. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 76, adapted:

Omnīnō, ut mihi quidem vidētur, studiōrum omnium satietās vitae facit satietātem. Sunt pueritiae studia certa: num igitur ea optant adulēscētēs? Quōad pueri sumus, illa studia nōb⁹ cāriōra sunt; simul ac adulēscētēs fūmus, alia studia nōb⁹ placent. Sunt incipientis adulēscētiae studia: num

ea iam vult aetās, quae media dicitur? Sunt etiam eius aetātis: nē ea quidem quaeruntur in senectūte. Sunt extrēma quaedam studia senectūtis: ut igitur aliārum aetātum studia occidunt, sic occidunt etiam senectūtis; quod cum fit, satietās vītae tempus bonum mortis affert.

[*adulēscētia*, -ae, F., 'young manhood'; *aetās*, -tātis, F., 'age, time of life'; *extrēmus*, -a, -um, 'last, outermost'; *pueritā*, -ae, F., 'boyhood, childhood'; *satiētās*, -tātis, F., 'satiety, fullness'; *senectūs*, -tūtis, F., 'old age']

42. Nil recitās et vis, Māmerce, poēta vidēri.

Quidquid vis estō, dummodo nil recitēs.

(Martial 2.88)

[*estō*, 2nd person sing. future imperative of *sum*, 'you shall be' (see Appendix, pp. 353, 381); *Māmercus*, -i, M., a proper name; *quidquid* (pron.), 'whatever'; *recitō* (1), 'recite']

43. Manent ingenia senibus, modo maneat studium et industria. [*industria*, -ae, F., 'diligence, activity']

44. Simul atque dē Caesaris adventū cognitum est, lēgātus ad eum vēnit. [*adventus*, -ūs, M., 'arrival'; *Caesar*, -aris, M., 'Caesar']

45. Dum ea Rōmāni parant, Saguntum summā vī oppūgnābatur. [*Saguntum*, -i, N., 'Saguntum', a town in Spain; *summā*, *here*, 'very great']

46. Dum ea geruntur, eī Caesari nūntiāvērunt pulverem in eā parte vidēri. [*pulvis*, *pulveris*, M., 'dust']

II.

1. Since someone is approaching, we shall bring it about that your friend does not harm anyone.
2. Although he delayed a long time, he could not wait for the nurse to approach.
3. When the people fear you, they hate you.
4. Let him come, provided that my opinions profit him.
5. He withdrew to his home because (he claimed) he was going to die soon.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *Dē Amicitiā* 7.24:

Facile indicābat¹ ipsa nātūra vim suam, cum hominēs, quod facere ipsi nōn possent, id rēctē² fieri in alterō iūdicārent.³

¹ *indicō* (1), 'disclose, show' ² *rēctē* (adv.), 'rightly' ³ *iūdicō* (1), 'judge'

B. Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.20.39:

Dionysii¹ māter, eius qui Syrācosiōrum² tyrannus³ fuit, ut scriptum apud⁴

¹ *Dionysius*, -i, M., 'Dionysius', tyrant of Sicily ² *Syrācosius*, -a, -um, 'Syracusan'
³ *tyrannus*, -i, M., 'tyrant, absolute ruler' ⁴ *apud* (prep. + acc.), *here*, 'in the works of'

Philistum⁵ est, et doctum hominem et diligentem⁶ et aequālem⁷ temporum illōrum, cum praegnāns⁸ hunc ipsum Dionysium¹ alvō⁹ continēret,¹⁰ somniāvit¹¹ sē peperisse¹² Satyricum.¹³ Huic interpretēs¹⁴ portentōrum,¹⁵ qui Galeōtae¹⁶ tum in Siciliā¹⁷ nōminābantur,¹⁸ respondērunt, ut ait Philistus,⁵ eum, quem illa peperisset,¹² clārissimum Graeciae diūturnā¹⁹ cum fortūnā²⁰ fore.

⁵ Philistus, -ī, M., 'Philistus', a Greek historian from Syracuse ⁶ diligēns, -entis, 'diligent'
⁷ aequālis, -e, 'contemporary with' (+ gen.) ⁸ praegnāns, -antis, 'pregnant' ⁹ alvus,
 -ī, F., 'womb' ¹⁰ contineō (com- + teneō), 'contain' ¹¹ somniō (1), 'dream'
¹² pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, 'bring forth, give birth to' ¹³ Satyricus, -ī, M., 'a little
 satyr' ¹⁴ interpres, -pretis, M. & F., 'interpreter, seer' ¹⁵ portentum, -ī, N., 'portent'
¹⁶ Galeōtae, -ārum, M., 'Galeotae', a group of Sicilian seers ¹⁷ Sicilia, -ae, F., 'Sicily'
¹⁸ nōminō (1), 'name' ¹⁹ diūturnus, -a, -um, 'of long duration' ²⁰ fortūna, -ae, F.,
 'fortune'

C. Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.25.54:

Adiungāmus¹ philosophis² doctissimum hominem, poētam quidem divinum,³ Sophoclem;⁴ qui cum ex aede⁵ Herculis⁶ patera⁷ aurea gravis subrepta esset,⁸ in somnīs vīdit ipsum deum dicentem, qui id fēcisset. Quod semel⁹ ille iterumque¹⁰ neglēxit. Ubi idem saepius āscendit¹¹ in Arēopagum,¹² dētulit rem; Arēopagitae¹³ comprehendi¹⁴ iubent eum, qui ā Sophocle⁴ erat nōminātus;¹⁵ is, quaestiōne¹⁶ adhibitā,¹⁷ cōfessus est pateramque⁷ rettulit. Quō factō fānum¹⁸ illud Indicis¹⁹ Herculis⁶ nōminātum est.¹⁵

¹ adiungō (ad- + iungō), 'join, add' ² philosophus, -ī, M., 'philosopher' ³ divinus,
 -a, -um, 'divine, divinely inspired' ⁴ Sophoclēs, -is, M., 'Sophocles', the Greek tragic
 poet ⁵ aedēs, -is, F., 'temple' ⁶ Herculēs, -is, M., 'Hercules' ⁷ patera, -ae, F.,
 'dish' (from which libations were poured) ⁸ subripiō, -ere, -ripui, -reptus, 'steal'
⁹ semel (adv.), 'once, a single time' ¹⁰ iterum (adv.), 'again' ¹¹ āscendō, -ere, -scendī,
 -scēnsus, 'ascend, go up' ¹² Arēopagū, -ī, M., a hill in Athens, upon which the court
 called the 'Areopagus' held sessions ¹³ Arēopagītēs, -ae, M., a member of the Areopagus
¹⁴ comprehendō, -ere, -prehēndi, -prehēnsus, 'seize' ¹⁵ nōminō (1), 'name' ¹⁶ quaestīō,
 -ōnis, F., 'trial, inquiry' ¹⁷ adhibeō (ad + habeō), 'employ, hold' ¹⁸ fānum, -ī, N.,
 'temple, holy place' ¹⁹ index, indicis, M., 'informer'

D. Martial 12.12:

Omnia prōmittis¹ cum tōtā nocte bibisti;²
 māne³ nihil praestās,⁴ Pollio,⁵ māne³ bibe.²

¹ prōmittō (prō + mittō), 'promise' ² bibō, -ere, bibī, --, 'drink' ³ māne (adv.),
 'in the morning' ⁴ praestō, -āre, -stītī, -stītus, 'perform' ⁵ Polliō, -ōnis, M., a man's
 name

E. A DREAM COMES TRUE (Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.24.50):

Apud¹ Agathoclem² sc̄riptum in historiā³ est Hamilcarem⁴ Karthāginiēnsem,⁵

¹ apud (prep. + acc.), *here*, 'in the works of' ² Agathoclēs, -is, M., the name of an
 historian ³ historia, -ae, F., 'history, work of history' ⁴ Hamilcar, -caris, M., a
 Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal ⁵ Karthāginiēnsis, -e, 'Carthaginian'

cum oppūgnāret Syrācūsās,⁶ visum esse audire vōcem, sē postridiē⁷ cēnātūrum⁸ Syrācūsis;⁶ cum autem is diēs illūxisset,⁹ magnam sēditiōnem¹⁰ in castris¹¹ eius inter Poenōs¹² et Siculōs¹³ militēs esse factam; quod cum sēnsissent Syrācūsāni,¹⁴ inprōvisō¹⁵ eōs in castra¹¹ irrūpisse,¹⁶ Hamilcaremque⁴ ab eis vivum¹⁷ esse sublātum.¹⁸ Ita rēs somnium¹⁹ comprobāvit.²⁰

⁶ Syrācūsae, -ārum, F., 'Syracuse', the chief town of Sicily ⁷ postridiē (adv.), 'the next day' ⁸ cēnō (1), 'dine' ⁹ illūcēscō, -ere, -lūxī, --, 'become light, dawn' ¹⁰ sēditiō, -ōnis, F., 'uprising' ¹¹ castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' ¹² Poenus, -a, -um, 'Carthaginian' ¹³ Siculus, -a, -um, 'Sicilian' ¹⁴ Syrācūsānus, -a, -um, 'Syracusan' ¹⁵ inprōvisō (adv.), 'unexpectedly' ¹⁶ irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, 'rush in' ¹⁷ vivus, -a, -um, 'alive' ¹⁸ tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātus, 'carry off' ¹⁹ somnium, -ī, N., 'dream' ²⁰ comprobō (1), 'verify'

UNIT SIXTEEN

A. The Gerund

It has been said that the infinitive is a neuter *verbal noun* and that it may be used as the subject of a verb.

Legere est difficile. *To read* is (a) difficult (thing); *reading* is difficult.

Yet, the infinitive retains its character as a verb by taking an object or by being modified by an adverb.

Ducem dēligere est difficile. It is (a) difficult (thing) *to choose a leader*; *choosing a leader* is difficult.

When the verbal noun is not functioning as the subject of a verb, a specific form, called the *gerund*, is used. The infinitive supplies the nominative of the gerund. The other cases are formed by adding **-nd-** to the present stem of the verb (for i-stems of the third conjugation and for all fourth conjugation verbs, an **-ie-** will appear before the **-nd-**), plus the neuter endings of the second declension. These forms are in fact the same as the neuter singular of the future passive participle, except that there is no nominative.

The gerund has no plural.

Therefore, the forms of the gerund of **dēligō**, **-ere**, 'choose', are:

(Nom.	dēligere	choosing)
Gen.	dēligendī	of choosing
Dat.	dēligendō	to/for choosing
Acc.	dēligendum	choosing
Abl.	dēligendō	from/with/in/by choosing

The gerund functions in the various grammatical cases like any other noun, but it still retains its verbal force and so may control an object and may be modified by an adverb. Intransitive verbs which govern the dative case will do so in the gerund form as well.

Legendō legere discimus.	We learn to read <i>by (means of) reading.</i>	(ABLATIVE OF MEANS)
Cupidus legendī est.	He is desirous <i>of reading.</i>	(OBJECTIVE GENITIVE WITH cupidus)
Duci libenter pārendō fortiōrēs fiēmus.	<i>By obeying the leader</i> willingly, we shall become stronger.	(ABLATIVE OF MEANS; INTRANSITIVE VERB GOVERNING DATIVE)

B. The Gerundive

The gerundive is a verbal adjective and is sometimes called the future passive participle. The forms for the gerundive of **dēligō**, -ere, 'choose', are **dēligendus**, -a, -um.

Although the gerund may govern an object, in such instances Latin frequently prefers to use a gerundive construction instead, except when that object is a neuter adjective or pronoun. Observe:

GERUND:	Librōs legendō legere discimus.	<i>By reading books</i> we learn to read.
GERUNDIVE:	Librīs legendis legere discimus.	<i>By means of books to-be-read</i> we learn to read; <i>by reading books</i> we learn to read.
GERUND:	Cupidus librōs legendī est.	He is desirous <i>of reading books.</i>
GERUNDIVE:	Cupidus librōrum legendōrum est.	He is desirous <i>of books-to-be- read</i> ; he is desirous <i>of reading books.</i>

C. The Gerund and Gerundive Used to Express Purpose

Purpose may be expressed by the gerund and gerundive in two common ways:

1. Ad + THE ACCUSATIVE

Ad + the accusative of the gerund may express purpose.

Ad legendum venit. He comes *to (towards) reading, for the purpose of
reading, in order to read.*

The gerund, as always, may take a direct object:

Ad legendum librōs venit. He comes to read books.

But when the gerund would take an object, the gerundive construction is preferred in Latin:

Ad librōs legendōs venit. He comes *to (towards) books to-be-read; he
comes for the purpose of reading books; he
comes to read books.*

2. GENITIVE FOLLOWED BY **causā**, 'for the sake of'

The genitive of the gerund, followed by **causā**, may be used to express purpose.

Legendī causā venit. He comes *for the sake of reading*; he comes *to read*.

Librōs legendī causā venit. He comes *for the sake of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

Again, when the gerund would govern an object (except in the case of neuter adjectives or pronouns), the gerundive construction is preferred:

Librōrum legendōrum He comes *for the sake of books to-be-read*; he **causā** venit. He comes *for the sake of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

The reason for the exception in the case of neuter adjectives or pronouns is the confusion in gender which might arise. Consider:

Multa videndi causā venit. He comes to see many things.

BUT:

Multōrum videndōrum causā venit. He comes to see many things (or) men.

It is unclear in the latter case whether the gender is masculine or neuter.

The constructions discussed above are alternate ways of expressing the same idea as purpose clauses:

Venit **ut** librōs legat. He comes *in order that he may read books*. He comes *to read books*.

D. Impersonal Verbs

A small number of verbs in Latin are found only in the third person singular, the infinitive, and sometimes the participle because of their peculiar meanings. Such verbs are called *impersonal verbs* because of their lack of a personal subject and require in English the word "it" to function as the subject. Some verbs of this type are:

licet, licēre, licuit	it is permitted
oportet, oportēre, oportuit	it is necessary, it is proper
miseret, miserēre, miseruit	it pities; it moves to pity
piget, pigēre, piguit	it disgusts
taedet, taedēre, taeduit	it bores, it disgusts
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit	it repents
pudet, pudēre, puduit	it shames
necesse est	it is necessary

The constructions with these verbs are as follows:

1. WITH ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

oportet; necesse est; licet

Oportet mē abire .	It is necessary (proper) <i>that I go away</i> ; It is necessary (proper) <i>for me to go away</i> ; I must go away.
Necesse est mē abire .	It is necessary <i>that I go away</i> ; I must go away.
Licet mē abire .	It is permitted <i>that I go away</i> ; I can (am permitted to) go away.

2. WITH DATIVE AND INFINITIVE

necesse est; licet

Necesse est mihi abire .	It is necessary <i>for me to go away</i> ; I must go away.
Licet mihi abire .	It is permitted <i>for me to go away</i> ; I can (am permitted to) go away.

3. WITH SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY **ut** (EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED)

necesse est; licet

Necesse est (ut) abeam .	It is necessary <i>that I go away</i> ; I must go away.
Licet (ut) abeam .	It is permitted <i>that I go away</i> ; I can (am permitted to) go away.

NOTE that there is *no* distinction in meaning in the three uses of **necesse est** and of **licet**.

4. WITH OBJECTIVE GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

miseret; piget; taedet; paenitet; pudet

These impersonals take the genitive of the thing which arouses the feeling and the accusative of the person concerned.

Miseret mē dolōris.	It pities <i>me of (his) grief</i> ; <i>I pity (his) grief</i> .
Paenitet mē sceleris.	It repents <i>me of (my) crime</i> ; <i>I am sorry for (my) crime</i> .

Instead of a genitive, an infinitive, a **quod** clause, or a neuter pronoun is sometimes used to express the source of the feeling. When this occurs, the infinitive, the **quod** clause, or the neuter pronoun is the subject of the verb.

Legere mē taedet.

Reading bores me.

**Mē paenitet quod tanta scelera in
hāc cīvitāte facta sunt.**

*The fact that (see p. 294) such great
crimes have been committed in this
state repents me; I am sorry that
such great crimes have been com-
mitted in this state.*

Hoc mē pudet.

This shames me; I am ashamed of this.

E. The Impersonals *interest* and *rēfert*

These two impersonals, which mean 'it concerns, it is of interest, it is in the interest of', take the genitive of the person concerned and an infinitive, an *ut* clause, or a demonstrative pronoun in the neuter singular to express the thing which is of concern. But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the following adjectival forms in the ablative case are used: **meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā**.

**Ducis interest (rēfert) opus
cōficere.**

*It is in the interest of the leader to
complete (his) work.*

**Ducis interest (rēfert) ut celeriter
abeās.**

*It is in the interest of the leader that
you go away quickly; it concerns the
leader that you go away quickly.*

Hoc ducis interest (rēfert).

This is in the interest of the leader.

BUT:

**Meā interest (rēfert) ut celeriter
abeās.**

*It is of interest (with respect to my
[affair]) to me that you go away
quickly; it concerns me that you go
away quickly.*

In the latter case, **meā** is in fact modifying the noun **rē**, which is the first part of the verb **rēfert**. The use of the ablative **meā** with **interest** is on analogy with **rēfert**.

UNIT SIXTEEN — VOCABULARY

abeō, -ire, -iī, (-ivī), -itus

go away, depart

adversus, -a, -um

opposite, hostile, adverse

aliēnus, -a, -um

belonging to another, strange, out of place

āmittō, -ere, -misi, -missus

let go, lose

aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertus

open

causa, -ae, F.

cause, reason

causā (preceded by the genitive) for the sake of

cottidiē or cotidiē (adv.)	daily
decōrus , -a, -um	fitting, suitable; handsome
dēsum , dēesse , dēfui , --	be missing, fail (often + dat.)
discō , -ere, didici , --	learn
frūstrā (adv.)	in vain
infirmus , -a, -um	weak, unhealthy
instituō , -ere, -ui, -ūtus	set (up), establish, arrange
interest , -esse, -fuit, --	it is of importance, it concerns, it is of interest
lābor , lābī , lāpsus sum	slip, glide, fall
lēx , lēgis , F.	law
libenter (adv.)	freely, willingly, gladly
licet , -ere, -uit (licitum est)	it is permitted
miseret , -ere, -uit (miseritum est)	it pities, it moves to pity
necesse (indeclinable adj.)	necessary
oportet , -ere, -uit, --	it is necessary, it is proper
paenitet , -ere, -uit, --	it repents
piget , -ere, -uit (pigitum est)	it disgusts
pudet , -ere, -uit (puditum est)	it shames
rēfert , -ferre, -tulit, --	it is of importance
scriptor , -ōris, M.	writer
stō , stāre , steti , stātus	stand
studiōsus , -a, -um	fond of, partial to, studious (+ gen.)
sustineō , -ere, -tinui, -tentus	support, maintain
taedet , -ere, -uit (taesum est)	it bores, it disgusts
ūtilis , -e	useful, beneficial
vel (conj.)	or
vel . . . vel	either . . . or
vetus , -eris	old
violō (1)	do violence to, break (an agreement, the law)

UNIT SIXTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Aliēnus, -a, -um has the stem of **alius**, -a, -ud as its base, with the adjectival ending -ēnus, -a, -um, 'belonging to', added; thus, **aliēnus** means 'belonging to another, strange, out of place'.

The ablative of the noun **causa**, 'cause, reason', is used as a preposition governing the genitive case; **causā** is placed after the genitive it governs: **Militēs ex oppidō pācis causā discessērunt**, 'The soldiers withdrew from the town for the sake of peace'.

Infirmus, -a, -um means literally 'not strong', therefore 'weak, unhealthy'.

Stō, stāre, stetī, stātus is the verb 'stand'. There is also a verb sistō, sistere, stitī, stātus meaning 'cause to stand, make stand, place, set up, establish'. Connected with these two verbs is another, statō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, 'cause to stand, set up, establish'. These verbs have many compounds:

astō, astāre, astitī, --, 'stand at or near'

circumstō, circumstāre, circumstetī, --, 'stand around'

instō, instāre, institī, instātus, 'stand on or upon, insist, threaten'

obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātus, 'stand before or against; hinder'

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstīti, dēstītus, 'set down, stand off, stop'

insistō, insistere, institī, --, 'stand upon, pursue'

obsistō, obsistere, obstitī, obstitus, 'set or place before; set oneself against, oppose, resist'

persistō, persistere, perstīti, --, 'continue steadfastly'

resistō, resistere, restitī, --, 'stand back, stand still, stop'

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstituī, cōstitūtus, 'cause to stand, set up, establish; decide'

dēstituō, dēstituere, dēstītuī, dēstītūtus, 'set down, leave alone, abandon'

instituō, instituere, instituī, institūtus, 'put or place into; set up, establish, arrange'

restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus, 'set up again, restore'

Studiōsus, -a, -um, literally 'full of zeal', means 'fond of, partial to, studious,' and governs the genitive case.

Utilis, -e has the same root as utor and thus means 'useful, beneficial'.

PREFIXES (not from prepositions)

dis- (dī-, dif-), 'apart'

dīdūcō, 'draw apart, separate, divide'

diffugiō, 'flee in different directions, scatter'

dispellō, 'drive apart, scatter, disperse'

dispōnō, 'place here and there, distribute regularly, arrange'

in- (il-, im-, ir-), 'not'

illiterātus, -a, -um, 'unlettered, uneducated'

immemor, immemoris, 'unmindful, forgetful'

inaudītus, -a, -um, 'unheard (of), strange'

irrevocābilis, -e, 'not to be called back, irrevocable, uncontrollable'

re-, 'back, again'

recēdō, 'go back, withdraw, retire'

recidō, 'fall back'

reficiō, 'make again, remake, restore, renew'

sē-, 'apart'

sēcēdō, 'go apart, go away, withdraw'

sēdūcō, 'lead apart, draw aside'

DENOMINATIVE VERBS

Many verbs in Latin were formed from nouns or adjectives; although these denominative verbs are found in all conjugations, most of them are in the first conjugation.

bellō (1), 'wage, carry on war, fight in war' (from **bellum**)

corōnō (1), 'crown' (from **corōna**)

culpō (1), 'reproach, blame, condemn' (from **culpa**)

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus, 'watch, protect, defend, preserve' (from **custōs**)

dīgnor (1), 'deem worthy' (from **dīgnus**)

dominor (1), 'be lord and master, rule, domineer' (from **dominus**)

dūrō (1), 'make hard, harden, last' (from **dūrus**)

fīniō, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus, 'limit, restrain, check' (from **fīnis**)

flōreō, -ēre, -ūi, --, 'bloom, blossom, flower' (from **flōs**, **flōris**, M., 'blossom, flower')

locō (1), 'place, lay, set' (from **locus**)

metuō, -ere, metuī, --, 'fear, be afraid' (from **metus**)

saeviō, -īre, -īī, -ītus, 'be fierce, rage' (from **saevus**)

UNIT SIXTEEN — DRILL

1. a) Legere est bonum.
b) Amor legendī est bonus.
c) Legendō praeufigisti.
d) Ad legendum omnibus adfuit.
e) Legendō multum cognōvimus.
2. a) Rōmam īvimus ad Caesarem videndum.
b) Rōmam īvimus Caesaris videndi causā.
3. a) Impiī plēbem agitābant ad pūgnandum.
b) Impiī plēbem agitābant pūgnandi causā.
4. a) Omnēs patī necesse est.
b) Omnibus patī necesse est.
c) Necesse est (ut) omnēs patientur.
5. a) Rēgis rēfert rēgnum regere.

b) Rēgis rēfert ut rēgnū regat.
 c) Meā rēfert rēgi pārēre.

6. a) Cōnsulis intererat malōs perire.
 b) Cōnsulis intererat ut malī perirent.
 c) Meā intererat ut malī perirent.

7. Et meā et urbīs interfuit quid agerēs.
 8. Estne periculum in currēndō per viās urbīs?
 9. Magna sunt gaudia docēndī.
 10. Cicerō clārus erat arte loquendī.
 11. a) Iuvenēs cupidi fuērunt puellās pulchrās vidēndi.
 b) Iuvenēs gaudium cēpērunt ē puellis pulchris vidēndis.
 12. Studiū plūra habēndī pectora multōrum implet.
 13. a) Rōmae adfūimus ad magnās dīvitiās parandās.
 b) Parāre magnās dīvitiās est diffīcillimum.
 c) Quid agerēs magnārum dīvitiārum parandārum causā?
 14. Nostrā patriā discessimus ad vivēndū sine inimicitiā.
 15. Diūtissimē exspectandō infēlicēs sumus.
 16. Morandō domī placuistis vestris parentibūs; domī morātī estis vestris parentibūs placēndī causā.

UNIT SIXTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C)

1. Celeriter abīre ab hāc terrā est magnum gaudium.
2. Mihi timor abeundi ab hāc terrā est magnus.
3. Eum instituēndō lēgēs praeſēcīmus.
4. Mea bona āmittere ūdi.
5. Semper in discēndō vītam agere dēbēmus.
6. Cupidus amīcī vidēndī Rōmām īvī.
7. Mihi timor lēgūm violandārum est magnus.
8. Novōrum verbōrum discēndōrum studiōsī sumus.
9. Lēgis violandae studiōsī nōn sumus.
10. In novīs rēbus discēndīs vītam agere dēbēmus.
11. Ab hāc terrā abīvī ad pecūniā multām faciēndām (pecūniāe multāe faciēndāe causā).
12. Ab hāc terrā abīvit rēgnī novī instituēndī causā.
13. Rēgnū novūm instituērunt fēliciter vīvēndī causā.
14. Multa didicīmus ad bene vītam agēndām.
15. Hic scriptor multa ad bene scribēndū didicīt.

UNIT SIXTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Tam studiōsus librōrum legendōrum fuit ut omnēs ē villā ducis clāri removēret.
2. Rōmam vēnit ad auxilium ā militibus rēgis quaerendum.
3. Cottidiē currēndō salūtem corporis sustineō; numquam ab hōc modō vīvendi lāpsus sum.
4. Carminibus canendis poēta pecūniām accēpit.
5. Cīvēs fortēs rei pūblicae hostium superandōrum causā oppūgnāre incēpērunt.
6. a) Mē semper necesse erat intellegere illa quae ā duce dicta sunt.
b) Semper necesse erat ut intellegērem quae ā duce dicta essent.
7. Omnēs oportet vitam quam optimē agere; tempus enim celerrimē lābitur.
Nisi quid boni ēgerimus, frūstrā vivēmus.
8. Rēgi morī necesse est ut libertās in hāc rē pūblicā instituātur.
9. Pācis temporibus licet ut portae urbis antiquae mūnitae aperiantur.
10. Sī hominibus lēgēs violāre licet, quam ob rem iussis cōnsulis ā nōbīs pārendum est?
11. Custōdem honestum piumque sceleris parvī tam paenituit ut multa dōna ārīs dēōrum immortālium offerret.
12. Nesciō cūr tē gravis dolōris omnium virōrum corporibus infirmis misereat.
13. Bonōs honestōsque taedet pigetque virōrum malōrum quī lēgēs ā rēge īstītūtās violāre volunt.
14. Cuius rēfert ut lēgēs ūtilēs īstituat salūtis omnium gentium servandae causā?
15. Nostrā interest sapientiam legendis libris scriptōris sapientis discere.
16. Neque cuiquam nostrum licuit istā lēge ūti.
17. Male imperandō summum imperium āmittitur.
18. Dē civitātibus novis īstituēndis litterae ad mē mittēbantur.
19. Quamquam studiōsus erat bene regendi, amor populi ei dēerat.
20. Pācis petendae causā, ducem oportēbat pollicēri sē nēmini post bellum nocitūrum esse.
21. Rogāvit num id scelus sit, cuius paenitēre fuerit necesse.
22. Gerenda bella sunt ut sine noxā in pāce vivātur; hostibus victis, pāce perfectā, populi nōn rēfert ut tot fortissimī mortui sint quod prō patriā et omnium libertātē perierint.
23. Mē paenitet causam rei pūblicae bene nōn sustinendi; sed maximē meā interfuit ut tūtus viverem.
24. Pudet pigetque meī mē.
25. Nostra māter, tuī nōs miserēret nīsi tam cupida coniugis perdendī essēs!

26. a) Ad pācem parandam cīvēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.
 b) Pācis parandae causā cīvēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.
 c) Ut pācem parārent, cīvēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.

27. a) Operis melius cōnfiendī causā coniūnx auxilium parābat.
 b) Ad opus melius cōnfiendum coniūnx auxilium parābat.
 c) Quō melius opus cōnficeret coniūnx auxilium parābat.

28. Bellis gerendis patriae validiōrēs fiunt.

29. Bene regendō dux amōrem comitum capit.

30. Sequāmur nātūram optimam bene vivendī ducem!

31. Istius vērē ducis hoc rēferre vidētur.

32. Neque rēfert cuiusquam utrum rēx cupidus sit auctōritātis ostendendae necne. Cīvēs ei favent, nec suā interest quō modō vīribus ūtātur, dummodo sibi ipsis nē noceat.

33. Ac sī quis est tālis quālis esse omnīs oportēbat, qui irātus fit quod istōs hostēs, cīvitāti inimicōs, nōn interfēcerim potius quam ex urbe pepulerim, nōn est istud mea culpa, sed temporum. [potius quam, 'rather than']

34. Necessē est hominēs adsint vel bellō vel pāci parāti.

35. Adversis ventis nautae ad insulam accēdere nōn potuērunt; nāvēs adversō flūmine feruntur. Qui proximō in lītore stetērunt nihil auxiliī ferre poterant.

36. Fēlix est qui libenter potuit rērum cognōscere causās multis librīs legendīs et multa discendō.

37. Crēdendum erit veteribus sī cupidī erimus bene vivendī. Exempla optima ante oculōs stant. Necessē est ea videāmus.

38. Quae dōna decōra abeuntibus dedistī?

39. Pepercit dux neque suis comitibus neque aliēnīs. Nēmō in omnibus prōvinciae urbibus vel in hāc ipsā erat tūtus.

40. Bonus etiam causam dandī cōgitat.

41. Respondit ad cōnsilium capiendum temporis opus esse.

42. A SYLLOGISM PROVING THAT THERE IS SUCH A THING AS DIVINATION (Cicero, *Dē Dīvīnātiōne* 101–2, adapted):

Si sunt dī neque ante dicunt hominibus quae futūra sint, aut nōn diligunt hominēs, aut quid futūrum sit nesciunt; aut arbitrantur nihil interesse hominum scire quid sit futūrum; aut nōn putant esse suaē glōriae prae significāre hominibus quae sunt futūra; aut ea nē ipsi quidem dī significāre possunt. At neque nōn diligunt nōs (sunt enim clārissimī bonique hominum amici); neque nesciunt ea quae ab ipsis cōstitūta sunt; neque nostrā nihil interest scire ea quae futūra sunt (erimus enim fēliciōrēs et tūtiōrēs, certiōrēs dē illō quod accidet, si sciēmus); neque hoc aliēnum dūcunt glōriā suā (nihil est enim beneficētiā clārius meliusque); neque nōn possunt futūra prae significare; nōn igitur dī sunt nec significant nōbis futūra; sunt

autem di; significant igitur ad nōs dē rēbus futūris monendōs; et nōn, si significant futūra, nūllās dant viās nōbīs ad signa intellegenda (frūstrā enim significārent); nec, si dant viās, nōn est divinātiō; est igitur dīvinātiō. [at (conj.), 'but'; **beneficentia**, -ae, F., 'kind deed, service'; **dīligō**, -ere, **dīlēxi**, **dīlēctus**, 'esteem, be fond of'; **dīvinātiō**, -ōnis, F., 'divination'; **nīhil** (*here*, as adv.), 'not at all'; **praenōscō** (prae + nōscō), 'know beforehand'; **praesignificō** (1), 'show beforehand, express beforehand'; **significō** (1), 'show, report, express']

43. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 69, adapted:

Quid est in hominis nātūrā diū? Dā enim summum tempus, exspectēmus longam aetātem, mihi autem nē longum quidem quicquam vidētur, in quō est aliquī fīnis. Cum enim id advēnit, tum illud quod praeteriit efflūxit; id sōlum remanet, quod virtūte et bonī factī cōnsecūtus sīs; hōrae quidem cēdunt et diēs et mēnsēs et annī, nec praeteritum tempus umquam redit, nec quid sequātur scīrī potest; quod cuique temporis ad vivendum datur, eō dēbet esse contentus. [aetās, -tātis, F., 'age, life'; **cōsequor** (com- + sequor), 'obtain, acquire'; **contentus**, -a, -um, 'content'; **efflō**, -ere, -flūxi, --, 'flow forth, escape'; **mēnsis**, -is, M., 'month'; **praetereō** (praeter, 'beyond', + eō), 'pass by']

II.

1. The queen was so ashamed of her burning love for the handsome leader that she drove him from her state.
2. In order to terrify the citizens, the legate ordered the troops that they attack and destroy their province.
3. The art of writing a poem is so difficult that very few men are desirous of learning how it should be done.
4. After the torches had been carried into the (city) gates, the king was able to show the lofty walls to the guests from the province who had come to learn the art of fortifying towns.
5. Learning about other people's laws bores me; I don't even have time to read our own.

III. Readings

A. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.7.15:

Numquam ego ab dis immortālibus optābō, Quirītēs,¹ invidiae meae relevandae² causā ut Catilinam dūcere exercitū³ hostiū atque in armis volitāre⁴ audiātis, sed triduō⁵ tamen audiētis.

¹ **Quirītēs**, -ium, M., 'fellow citizens' ² **relevō** (1), 'diminish' ³ **exercitus**, -ūs, M., 'army' ⁴ **volitō** (1), 'hasten about' ⁵ **triduum**, -ī, N., 'a space of three days'

B. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 5.15:

Etenim,¹ cum complector² animō, quattuor³ reperiō⁴ causās cūr senectūs⁵ misera videātur: ūnam, quod āvocet⁶ ā rēbus gerendis; alteram, quod corpus faciat īfīrmius; tertiam,⁷ quod privet⁸ omnibus ferē⁹ volūptātibus;¹⁰ quartam,¹¹ quod haud¹² procul¹³ absit ā morte. Eārum, si placet, causārum quanta quamque¹⁴ sit iūsta¹⁵ ūna quaeque videāmus.

¹ etenim (adv.), 'truly, and indeed' ² complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, 'embrace intellectually, think over' ³ quattuor (indeclinable adj.), 'four' ⁴ reperiō, -ire, reperi, repertus, 'discover' ⁵ senectūs, -tūtis, F., 'old age' ⁶ āvocō (1), 'call away or off' ⁷ tertius, -a, -um, 'third' ⁸ privō (1), 'deprive' ⁹ ferē (adv.), 'almost, practically' ¹⁰ volūptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure' ¹¹ quartus, -a, -um, 'fourth' ¹² haud (adv.), 'not at all' ¹³ procul (adv.), 'at a distance' ¹⁴ quam (adv.), 'how' ¹⁵ iūstus, -a, -um, 'just'

C. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 17.59:

Multās ad¹ rēs perūtilēs² Xenophontis³ librī sunt, quōs legite, quaeſō,⁴ studiōsē, ut facitis. Quam⁵ cōpiōsē⁶ ab eō agrī cultūra⁷ laudātur in eō librō, quī est dē tuendā⁸ rē familiārī,⁹ quī *Oeconomicus*¹⁰ inscribitur!¹¹

¹ ad, *here*, 'for' ² perūtilis, -e, 'very useful' ³ Xenophōn, Xenophontis, M., 'Xenophon', a Greek historian ⁴ quaeſō, -ere, -īvi, -itus, 'beg, entreat' ⁵ quam (adv.), 'how' ⁶ cōpiōsē (adv.), 'copiously, abundantly' ⁷ cultūra, -ae, F., 'cultivation' ⁸ tueor, tūeri, tūtus sum, 'care for, protect' ⁹ familiāris, -e, 'belonging to the household' ¹⁰ *oeconomicus*, -a, -um, 'pertaining to domestic economy', here, the title of a book by Xenophon (understand *liber*) ¹¹ inscribō (in + scribō), 'entitle, name'

D. Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 26.98:

Nūlla est igitur haec amīcītīa, cum alter vērum audire nōn vult, alter ad mentiendum¹ parātus est.

¹ mentiōr, mentīrī, mentītus sum, 'lie, tell a falsehood'

E. Martial 12.23:

Dentibus¹ atque comīs² — nec tē pudet — ūteris ēmptīs.³
Quid faciēs oculō, Laelia?⁴ Nōn emitur.³

¹ dēns, dentis, M., 'tooth' ² coma, -ae, F., 'hair' (of the head) ³ emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, 'buy' ⁴ Laelia, -ae, F., a woman's name

F. Seneca writes to his friend, Lucilius, on the subject of masters and slaves (*Epistulae Mōrālēs* XLVII.1-5):

Libenter ex iīs, quī ā tē veniunt, cognōvī familiāriter¹ tē cum servis tuīs vīvere. Hoc prūdentiam² tuam, hoc ēruditiōnem³ decet.⁴ "Servī sunt."

¹ familiāriter (adv.), 'in a friendly way' ² prūdentia, -ae, F., 'discretion' ³ ēruditiō, -ōnis, F., 'erudition, knowledge' ⁴ decet, -ēre, decuit, 'it fits, it suits' (impersonal verb)

Immō⁵ hominēs. "Servī sunt." Immō⁵ contubernālēs.⁶ "Servī sunt." Immō⁵ humilēs amīci. "Servī sunt." Immō⁵ cōservī,⁷ sī cōgitāveris tantundem⁸ in utrōsque⁹ licēre fortūnae.¹⁰

Itaque¹¹ rideō istōs, quī turpe¹² existimant¹³ cum servō suō cēnāre.¹⁴ Quārē, nīsī quia superbissima¹⁵ cōsuētūdō¹⁶ cēnāntī¹⁴ dominō stantium servōrum turbam circumdedit?¹⁷ Ēst¹⁸ ille plūs quam capit, et ingenti aviditātē¹⁹ onerat²⁰ distentum²¹ ventrem²² ac dēsuētūm²³ iam ventris²² officiō,²⁴ ut maiōre operā²⁵ omnia ēgerat²⁶ quam ingessit;²⁷ at²⁸ infēlīcībus servīs movēre labra²⁹ nē in hōc³⁰ quidem, ut loquantur, licet. Virgā³¹ murmur³² omne compescit,³³ et nē fortuita³⁴ quidem verberibus³⁵ excepta sunt,³⁶ tussis,³⁷ sternūmenta,³⁸ singultūs.³⁹ Magnō malō ūllā vōce interpellātūm⁴⁰ silentium⁴¹ luitur.⁴² Nocte tōtā iēiūnī⁴³ mūtique⁴⁴ perstant.⁴⁵

Sic fit, ut isti dē dominō loquantur, quibus cōram⁴⁶ dominō loqui nōn licet. At²⁸ illi, quibus nōn tantum⁴⁷ cōram⁴⁶ dominis, sed cum ipsis erat sermō,⁴⁸ quōrum ōs nōn cōsuēbātūr,⁴⁹ parātī erant prō dominō porrīgere cervīcem,⁵¹ periculum imminēns⁵² in caput⁵³ suum āvertere;⁵⁴ in convīvīm⁵⁵ loquēbāntur, sed in tormentis⁵⁶ tacēbānt. Deinde⁵⁷ eiusdem arrogantiae⁵⁸ prōverbium⁵⁹ iactātur, tot hostēs esse quot servōs. Nōn habēmus illōs hostēs, sed facimus.

5 immō (adv.), 'no, but . . .' 6 contubernālis, -is, M. & F., 'comrade' 7 cōservus, -ī, M., 'fellow slave' 8 tantusdem, tantadem, tantundem, 'just so much' 9 uterque, utraque, utrumque, 'each (of two), both'; in utrōsque, 'to (for) both (of you)' 10 fortūna, -ae, F., 'fortune' 11 itaque (adv.), 'and so' 12 turpis, -e, 'foul, ugly' 13 existimō (1), 'think' 14 cēnō (1), 'dine' 15 superbūs, -a, -um, 'haughty' 16 cōsuētūdō, -tūdīnīs, F., 'habit, custom' 17 circumdō (circum + dō), 'put around' 18 ēst, 3rd person sing. of edō, edere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus, 'eat' 19 aviditās, -tātīs, F., 'greed' 20 onerō (1), 'burden, load down' 21 distentus, -a, -um, 'full, distended' 22 venter, ventris, M., 'belly' 23 dēsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, 'become unaccustomed' 24 officiū, -ī, N., 'duty, task' 25 opera, -ae, F., 'effort' 26 ēgerō (ē + gerō), here, 'vomit' (lit., 'carry out') 27 ingerō (in + gerō), 'throw in, heap on' 28 at (conj.), 'but' 29 labrum, -ī, N., 'lip' 30 in hōc (understand tempore) 31 virga, -ae, F., 'rod, whip' 32 murmur, murmuris, N., 'murmur' 33 compescō, -ere, -pescui, --, 'restrain, check' 34 fortuitus, -a, -um, 'casual, accidental' 35 verber, verberis, N., 'lash' 36 excipiō (ex + capiō), 'except' 37 tussis, -is (acc. -im), F., 'cough' 38 sternūmentum, -ī, N., 'sneeze' 39 singultus, -ūs, M., 'sobbing' 40 interpellō (1), 'interrupt' 41 silentium, -ī, N., 'silence' 42 luō, -ere, lui, luiturus, 'atone for' 43 iēiūnūs, -a, -um, 'hungry, thirsty' 44 mūtūs, -a, -um, 'mute' 45 perstō, -āre, -stītī, -stātūs, 'stand firm' 46 cōram (prep. + abl.), 'in the presence of, facing' 47 nōn tantum . . . sed, 'not only . . . but' 48 sermō, -ōnis, M., 'conversation' 49 cōsuō, -ere, -sūi, -sūtus, 'sew (stitch) together' 50 porrīgō, -ere, porrēxi, porrēctus, 'offer' 51 cervīx, -īcis, F., 'neck' 52 immineō, -ere, --, --, 'threaten' 53 caput, capitīs, N., 'head' 54 āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, 'turn off, divert' 55 convīvīum, -ī, N., 'banquet' 56 tormentum, -ī, N., 'torture' 57 deinde (adv.), 'finally' 58 arrogantia, -ae, F., 'arrogance' 59 prōverbium, -ī, N., 'proverb'

UNIT SEVENTEEN

A. Clauses of Fearing

Verbs or expressions of fearing take subjunctive clauses introduced by *nē* for the positive and *ut* for the negative. While this may seem a curious reversal, it is a logical construction. In the earliest stages of the language, the constructions were *paratactic*; *parataxis* is the absence of subordination and the arrangement of several clauses side by side.

Timeō. I fear. Ut veniat! I wish he would come!

Timeō. I fear. Nē veniat! I wish he would not come!

(*Veniat* is an optative subjunctive; see Unit Twelve.)

As the language developed, the constructions became *hypotactic*; *hypotaxis* is the subordination of one clause to another. Thus:

Timeō *ut* veniat. I fear that he is *not* coming; I fear that he will *not* come.
(It is logical that one would fear that the *opposite* of his wish might come about.)

Timeō *nē* veniat. I fear that he *is* coming (*will* come).

Clauses of fearing follow the normal rules for sequence of tenses. While the present subjunctive may refer to an act that is either contemporaneous with or subsequent to the action of the main verb, when stress is laid on the subsequence (futurity) of the action, the active periphrastic is occasionally used:

Timeō *ut* veniat. I fear that he *is not* coming; I fear that he *will not* come.
Timeō *ut* ventūrus sit. I fear that he *will not* come (emphasis on futurity).

Sometimes, *nē...nōn* are found instead of *ut* to introduce a negative clause of fearing:

Timeō *nē nōn* veniat. I fear that he *is not* coming (*will not* come).

B. Clauses of Doubting

When *dubitō* (1) means 'hesitate', it takes an infinitive:

Hoc facere dubitō. I hesitate *to do* this.

When it means 'doubt', it takes the following constructions which are regularly used with words or expressions of doubting:

- When the word or expression of doubting is positive (as opposed to negative), it introduces an indirect question.

Dubitō num abitūrus sit. I doubt whether (that) he will go away.

Dubitō an abeat. I doubt whether (that) he is going away.

- When the word or expression of doubting is negative, a subjunctive clause introduced by quīn (translated literally 'but that') is used.

Nōn dubitō quīn abeat. I don't doubt (but) that he is going away.

Nōn dubitō quīn abitūrus sit. I don't doubt (but) that he will go away.

Nōn dubium est quīn abeat. It is not doubtful (but) that he is going away.

Quis dubitat quīn abeat? Who doubts (but) that he is going away?

In the last sentence, *quis dubitat* is an example of a *virtual negative*; that is, the implication is that *no one doubts* that he is going away.

C. Clauses of Prevention

To express prohibition or prevention, the following constructions are used:

- Vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, 'forbid', and prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 'prohibit', take a simple infinitive.

Tē vetō abire. I forbid you to go away.

Tē prohibeō abire. I prohibit you to go (from going) away.

- The following verbs are among those which take a subjunctive construction:

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus deter, prevent

impediō, -ire, -iī (-ii), -itus prevent

obstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātus hinder, stand in the way of

If the verb of prevention is *positive*, the subjunctive clause will be introduced by quōminus (= quō minus, 'by which the less') or nē, 'in order that not'. These clauses are analogous to relative clauses of purpose introduced by quō (see Unit Fourteen), and quōminus in effect is standing for *ut eō minus*, 'in order that by this the less'.

(Tē) dēterreō quōminus I deter you by which the less you go away; I
abeās. deter you from going away.

(Tē) dēterreō nē abeās. I deter you in order that you not go away; I
deter (prevent) you from going away.

When the verb of prevention is *negative*, the subjunctive clause is introduced by **quōminus**, 'by which the less', or **quīn**, 'but that'.

Nōn (tē) dēterreō I don't deter you *by which the less you go away*; I
quōminus abeās. don't deter you *from going away*.

Nōn (tē) dēterreō I don't deter you *but that you go away*; I don't deter
quīn abeās. you *from going away*.

D. The Supine

The gerund is a verbal noun. There is another variety of verbal noun in Latin called the *supine*. As we might expect, it is neuter singular, but it has only two cases, the accusative and the ablative, each of which has a specific use. The supine, then, is not nearly as versatile as the gerund and, in fact, occurs infrequently. It is formed on the fourth principal part of the verb.

	I	II	III	IV
ACCUSATIVE	optātum	implētum	inceptum	sēnsūm
ABLATIVE	optātū	implētū	inceptū	sēnsū

The *accusative* of the supine is used without a preposition after verbs of motion to express *purpose*.

It urbēm captū. He goes *to capture* the city.

The *ablative* of the supine is used with some adjectives as an *ablative of respect*.

Hic liber facilis est lēctū. This book is easy *with respect to reading*; this book is easy *to read*.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — VOCABULARY

aētās, aētātis, F.	time of life, age, life
celeritās, -tātis, F.	speed, swiftness
dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus	defend
dēnique (adv.)	finally, at last
dēsistō, -ere, -stītū, -stītus	stop, desist
dēterreō, -ēre, -ūi, -itus	deter, prevent, hinder, keep from
dubius, -a, -um	doubtful
dubium, -i, N.	doubt, hesitation
dubitō (1)	hesitate (with inf.); doubt (with indirect question or quīn + subjunctive)
impediō, -ire, -ivī (-īi), -itus	deter, impede, prevent
metuō, -ere, metuī, --	fear

nemus, nemoris, N.	grove, wood
obitus, -ūs, M.	a going down, setting; downfall, ruin
obstō, -āre, -stītī, -stātūs	stand in the way of, hinder (+ dat.)
orior, -īrī, ortus sum	rise, arise, begin
ortus, -ūs, M.	rising, source
perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus	arrive (at) (+ ad)
prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	keep from, prohibit, prevent
quīn (conj.)	but that, that not (used after expressions of prevention, negative doubting, etc.)
quōminus (conj.)	by which the less, that not, from (used in positive or negative clauses of prevention)
radius, -ī, M.	rod, ray
religiō, -ōnis, F.	religious awe, reverence, integrity, sanctity
relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus	leave behind, abandon
reliquus, -a, -um	remaining; rest of
retegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus	uncover, reveal
tergum, -ī, N.	back
turpis, -e	foul, ugly
ūnā (adv.)	together, at the same time
vēnor, -ārī, -ātūs sum	hunt, go hunting
vertō, -ere, vertī, versus	turn
animadvertisō, -ere, -vertī, -versus	turn one's attention to, notice
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus	forbid

UNIT SEVENTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Aetās, aetātis, F., is 'time of life, age, life'; do not confuse it with **aestās, aestātis, F.**, 'summer'.

Celeritās, celeritātis, F., is 'the state of being swift', thus, 'speed, swiftness'.

Dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, has the same stem in the present and perfect active; and so **dēfendimus** is 'we defend' or 'we have defended'.

Dēterreō, a compound of **dē** and **terreō**, means 'frighten from', and so 'deter, prevent, hinder, keep from'.

Dubius, -a, -um is the adjective 'doubtful'. Its stem comes from **duo** and **habeō**, 'hold two'; its primary meaning is 'moving in two directions alternately, fluctuating'. It then gets to mean 'vacillating in mind, uncertain, doubting, doubtful'.

Another adjective, **anceps, ancipitis**, has a similar history of meaning. Literally, it means 'two-headed' (**ambi-**, shortened to **an-**, 'both', + **ceps** from **caput**,

capitis, N., ‘head’); the meaning then expands to ‘that extends on two opposite sides’, and then, ‘fluctuating, doubtful’.

The neuter adjective **dubium** used substantively is ‘doubt, hesitation’. The verb **dubitō** with an infinitive is ‘hesitate’; without an infinitive it means ‘doubt’ and takes a construction using the subjunctive. **Dubitō** has **habeō** hidden in its stem as **dēbeō** does (**dē** + **habeō**). **Dēbeō** means literally ‘hold from’; if one holds something from someone, he owes it to him, or he is under obligation to give it back. From there, the two meanings of **dēbeō** emerge: ‘owe’ and ‘be bound to, ought’. **Dubitō** is a contraction of **duhibitāre** (**duo** + a frequentative of **habeō**), ‘to have or hold as two’.

Impediō is a fourth conjugation denominative verb from **pēs**, **pedis**, ‘foot’. When one gets something in the way of his foot, he becomes hindered and so the verb means ‘deter, impede, prevent’. **Impedimenta**, **impedimentōrum**, N. pl., is the Latin word for ‘baggage’.

Obitus is the fourth declension noun from **obeō**, ‘go to meet, go down, die, travel, perform’; therefore **obitus** means ‘visit, going down, setting, downfall, ruin, death’.

Ortus, ‘rising’, is the fourth declension noun from **orior**, ‘rise’.

Perveniō, a compound of **per** and **veniō**, means ‘arrive at’; **ad** is used with this verb: **Ad Italiam heri pervenimus**, ‘We arrived at Italy yesterday’.

Relinquō, **relinquere**, **reliqui**, **relictus**, ‘leave behind, abandon’, has an **-n-** only in the present stem; the English words “relinquish” and “derelict” might be helpful in remembering the roots of the principal parts of this verb.

Retegō (**re-** + **tegō**) does *not* mean ‘cover again’ but ‘uncover, reveal’.

Unā is an adverb meaning ‘together, at the same time’; often it is used with **cum**: **Ad Italiam unā cum sorore ivi**, ‘I went to Italy together with my sister’. Of course, this same sentence could be translated, ‘I went to Italy with one sister’, but usually this ambiguity does not occur.

Vertō, **vertere**, **verti**, **versus**, has the same stem in the present and perfect active; **vertit** is both ‘he turns’ and ‘he has turned’. Since this verb has many compounds, if one thinks of English derivatives, it is easy to remember the principal parts. For example, consider “convert, conversion; invert, inversion”. **Animadvertisō** means literally ‘turn the mind to’, and so ‘notice’.

Vetō, ‘forbid’, is one of the few verbs of the first conjugation that do not follow the usual pattern of principal parts: **vetō**, **vetāre**, **vetui**, **vetitus**.

FREQUENTATIVE VERBS

Frequentative (sometimes called iterative) verbs are usually first conjugation verbs that are formed from the stem of the perfect passive participle of another verb (of any conjugation) and have the idea of repeated or forcible action, although sometimes this idea is lost.

captō (1), 'strive to seize, lay hold with zeal *or* longing; catch at' (from capiō)

clāmitō* (1), 'cry out violently *or* aloud' (from clāmō)

cursō (1), 'run here and there *or* back and forth' (from currō)

dictō (1), 'say often' (from dicō)

factitō† (1), 'make *or* do frequently; be wont to make *or* do' (from faciō)

fugitō (1), 'flee eagerly *or* in haste; shun' (from fugiō)

habitō (1), 'have frequently, be wont to have; inhabit' (from habeō)

lectitō† (1), 'gather *or* collect eagerly *or* often; read often *or* with eagerness *or* with attention' (from legō)

scriptitō† (1), 'write often, compose' (from scribō)

* Frequentatives made from first conjugation verbs end in -itō rather than -ātō.

† Here -itō has been added to the participial stem.

The following, although frequentatives, have lost the frequentative meaning:

ductō (1), 'lead, draw, conduct; delude' (from dūcō)

inceptō (1), 'begin, undertake, attempt' (from incipiō)

gestō (1), 'bear, carry, have' (from gerō)

Visō, visere, visī, visus, although not a first conjugation verb, is a frequentative meaning 'look at attentively'. From this verb another frequentative is formed, vīsitō (1), 'see, go to see, visit'.

INCHOATIVE VERBS

Inchoative (also called inceptive) verbs add the ending -scō, -scere either to the present stem of another verb or to the stem of a noun or adjective in order to indicate the beginning of an action. The inchoative verb has no perfect tense of its own, but it may use that of the verb on which it is based.

ardēscō, -ere, arsī, --, 'take fire, kindle, be inflamed, gleam'
 (ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsus, 'be on fire, burn')

calēscō, -ere, caluī, --, 'grow warm'
 (caleō, -ēre, caluī, --, 'be hot')

candēscō, -ere, canduī, --, 'become bright'
 (candeō, -ēre, canduī, --, 'glitter, shine')

fervēscō, -ere, --, --, 'become boiling'
 (ferveō, -ēre, ferbuī, --, 'be boiling hot, boil')

liquēscō, -ere, liquī or licuī, --, 'become fluid *or* liquid, melt'
 (liqueō, -ēre, liquī or licuī, --, 'be fluid *or* clear')

lūcēscō, -ere, --, --, 'begin to shine, grow light'
 (lūceō, -ēre, lūxi, --, 'be light, clear; shine')

rubēscō, -ere, rubuī, --, 'grow red'
 (rubeō, -ēre, rubuī, --, 'be red')

valēscō, -ere, valuī, --, 'grow strong'
 (valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 'be strong')
 irāscor,* -ī, irātus sum, 'grow angry'
 (īra, -ae, F., 'anger')
 mitēscō,* -ere, --, --, 'grow mild'
 (mitis, -e, 'mild')

* Note that a connecting vowel is sometimes added between the stem and the inchoative suffix.

Some verbs although inchoative in form have no inchoative force in their meaning:

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, 'grow, spring forth'
 ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtus, 'be forgiving, forgive, pardon'
 oblīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, 'forget'
 proficiscor, -ī, profectus sum, 'set forth, set out, start'

UNIT SEVENTEEN — DRILL

1. Verēmur nē fulgor domūs dēleat.
2. Timuērunt nē hostēs oppidum oppūgnātūrī essent.
3. Veritī sumus ut iuvenēs lēgibus novīs pārērent.
4. Timuistis nē veterēs in prōvinciā novā ūtilēs nōn essent.
5. Dē hōc tibi dicere dubitābam.
6. Quis est quī dubitet quin multō optimus magister sīs?
7. Dubitāvimus an senēs prīmā lūce ventūrī essent.
8. Dubitātis num multum discāmus.
9. Nōn dubitāmus quīn multum discāmus.
10. Ivērunt Rōmam Caesarem vīsum.
11. Dolor erat difficilis lātū.
12. Liber erat facilis lēctū.
13. Nōn est dubium quīn liber facilis lēctū sit.
14. a) Cīvēs verentur ut urbs quam optimē mūniātur.
 b) Lēgātum igitur ad cōnsulem auxilium rogātum mittent.
 c) Dubium est an eis cum veniā respōnsūrus sit.
15. Tē vetō istud facere.
16. a) Dēterrēbō quōminus istud faciās.
 b) Dēterrēbō nē istud faciās.
 c) Nōn dēterrēbō quōminus istud faciās.
 d) Num dēterreō quīn istud faciās?

17. Tuus pater māterque veniunt.

Rewrite this sentence after each of the following introductory words or phrases:

- a) Timeō ut
- b) Timeō nē
- c) Vetō
- d) Dēterreō
- e) Nōn dēterreō

18. Soror frātri dōnum dat.

Rewrite this sentence after the five introductory words or phrases given under 17 above.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Metuō ut ūnā vēnātūrī sīmus.
2. Timuisti nē illō tempore relictus essēs ?
3. Verēmur ut adulēscētēs urbēm nostrām cum celeritātē dēfendant.
4. Metuisne nē facta turpia sociōrum nōn cēlāta sint ?
5. Timeō nē reliqui ad urbēm nōn perveniant.
6. Dubitō num religiō nōbis prōfutūra sit.
7. Dubitāsne an nōs ad hās rēs animadvertāmus ?
8. Dubium nōn est quīn mihi magnus metus sit.
9. Nōn dubitāvērunt quīn ortūm sōlis vidērent.
10. Dubitāre numquam dēsiit num ad āram pervenirēs.
11. Quis dubitat quīn sōl oriātūr ?
12. Dubitāvērunt an hostēs patriam invāsissent.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Vereor ut vincēns tuis parsūrus sit.
2. Ūnum illud timēbam nē quid turpius facerem, vel dicam, iam effēcissem.
3. Nōn dubium est quīn uxōrem nōlit filius. [**uxor**, **uxōris**, F., 'wife']
4. Nōn dubitāri dēbet quīn fuerint ante Homērum poētae. [**Homērus**, -ī, M., 'Homer', a Greek epic poet]
5. Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus reī pūblicae auxiliō sit.
6. Aetās nōn impedit quōminus sapiēns bene vivendī cupidus sit.
7. Adest vir summā auctōritātē et religiōne et fidē quī nōs dēterrēre potest nē plūra loquāmūr.

8. Tū modo nē mē prohibeās accipere, sī quid det mihi, [modo (adv.), 'just']
9. Dēsinite dubitāre utrum sit ūtilius.
10. Honestumne factū sit dubitant.
11. Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae.
12. Metuō quid futūrum dēnique sit.
13. Difficile est mihi omnia dē quibus dubitō ad tē referre.
14. Neque enim dubitandum putō quīn aqua dūcenda sit in illam cīvitātem.
15. Opus est quam pīmūm aliquō quod aquam in cīvitātem cum celeritāte dūcat.
16. Vērē spērō tē eā quā dēbēbis diligentiā hoc opus factūrum.
17. Vēnātum Aenēās ūnāque miserrima Didō in nemus ire parant, ubi pīmōs crāstinus ortūs extulerit Tītān radiīsque retēxerit orbem.

(Vergil, *Aeneid* iv.117–119)

[*Aenēās*, proper name, a Roman hero; *Didō*, proper name, the queen of Carthage; *crāstinus*, -a, -um, 'pertaining to tomorrow, tomorrow's'; *Tītān*, a god, 'the sun']

18. Sapientēs antīquī sōlis et lūnae reliquōrumque sīderum ortūs, obitūs, mōtūsque cognōscere voluērunt.
19. Tū pīo tuā sapientiā quid optimum factū sit vidēbis; omnēs multō prius animadvertiserunt tē intellegentiōrem esse illīs hanc cīvitātem regentibus. [pīo, *here*, 'by virtue of']
20. Omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, nec prius fugere destitērunt, quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt.
21. Lēgātum suum ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque parcat.
22. a) Vōs dēfendere relictam urbem vetāmus.
b) Dubium est an relictam urbem dēfēnsūrus sit.
c) Eis obstat quōminus relictam urbem dēfendant.
23. Ortō sōle, nēmō erat quī dubitāret quīn cōpiae nostrae eō diē omnīnō superārent.
24. Cum tanta scelera fēcissent, omnēs impii metuērunt ut sōl eō diē horridō orīrētur.
25. Nōn vērō periculum erat nē nōn mortem optandam putāret.
26. Num est periculum nē quis putet turpe esse?
27. Veritus est nē vēnārī nōn posset.
28. Nē quod bellum orīrētur metus erat.
29. Vidēsne enim, quae dubia sint, ea crēdī pīo certīs?

II.

1. He was (a man) of such sanctity that he kept the leaders from committing crimes.

2. a) We fear that he will reveal the crimes of this house.
 b) We fear that he revealed the crimes of this house.
 c) We fear that he is revealing the crimes of this house.
 d) We feared that he would reveal the crimes of this house.
3. The honorable men doubted whether his lifetime had been well spent.
4. The honorable men did not doubt that his lifetime had been well spent.
5. Stop hunting! I forbid you to kill more animals.

UNIT SEVENTEEN — CONNECTED READINGS

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.11

Quoniam ad hunc locum¹ perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant² hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvītātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domībus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum pīncipīs sunt qui summam auctōritātēm eōrum³ iūdiciō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitriū iūdiciūque summa omnīum rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.⁴ Idque eius reī causā antiquitus īstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprīmi et circumvenīrī nōn patītūr, neque, aliter sī faciat, ullam inter suōs habeat auctōritātēm. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā⁵ tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvītātēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

aliter (*adv.*), otherwise
 antiquitus (*adv.*), in ancient times, long ago
 arbitrium, -ī, *N.*, decision, judgment
 circumveniō (circum + veniō), surround
 dividō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, divide
 egeō, -ēre, -uī, --, be in need of (+ *gen.*)
 existimō (l.), think, estimate, judge, deem
 factiō, -ōnis, *F.*, faction, (political) party
 nātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, nation

pāgus, -ī, *M.*, district
 potēns, potentis, powerful
 pīncipēs, pīncipis, *M.*, leader, chief
 prōpōnō (prō + pōnō), set forth, report
 ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, plan, reason, rationale
 sēsē, = sē
 singuli, -ae, -a, single, one by one
 summa, -ae, *F.*, control, main point

¹ *hunc locum*: i.e., in his narrative. Caesar has been writing about his conquests in Gaul and Germany and now pauses to speak about the culture of these countries.

² *quō differant*: indirect question dependent on *prōpōnere*; *quō* = *quō modō*

³ *eōrum*: refers to the Gauls

⁴ *redeat*: subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic; translate 'is referred'

⁵ *in summā*: 'generally'

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.12

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis p̄rincipēs erant Aedui,⁶ alterius Sēquani.⁶ Hi cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Aeduīs⁶ magnaēque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum⁷ sibi adiūnixerant eōsque ad sē magnis iactūris pollicitatiōnibusque perdūixerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omni nōbilitātē Aeduōrum⁶ interfectā, tantum⁸ potentia antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs⁶ ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his p̄incipū filiōs acciperent, et p̄ūblicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquānōs⁶ cōnsiliū⁹ initūrōs, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius p̄incipātū obtinērent. Quā necessitātē adductus Diviciācus¹⁰ auxiliī petendi causā Rōmā ad senātū p̄ofectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesariū factā commūtatiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs⁶ redditis, veteribus clientēlis restitūtis, novis per Caesarem comparātis, quod iī qui sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant

accipiō (ad + capiō), take over, receive
 addūcō (ad + dūcō), lead to, influence
 adiungō (ad + iungō), join to, attach
 adventus, -ūs, M., arrival
 aggregō (l), add, adhere; join
 antecēdō (ante + cēdō), go before, excel
 antiquitus (adv.), in ancient times, long ago
 cliēns, clientis, M., dependent
 clientēla, -ae, F., dependent, dependency
 cōgō, -ere, cōgī, coāctus, compel
 commūtatiō, -ōnis, F., change
 comparō (l), acquire
 complūrēs, -a (-ia), several
 dignitās, -tatis, F., dignity
 factiō, -ōnis, F., faction, (political) party
 finitimus, -a, -um, nearby, neighboring
 grātia, -ae, F., grace, favor
 iactūra, -ae, F., loss; expense, cost
 ineō (in + eō), go into, begin
 infectus, -a, -um (in + faciō), not done
 iūrō (l), swear
 necessitās, -tatis, F., need, necessity

nōbilitās, -tatis, F., nobility
 obses, obsidis, M. + F., hostage
 obtineō (ob + teneō), obtain
 occupō (l), occupy
 perdūcō (per + dūcō), lead to, win over, persuade
 pollicitatiō, -ōnis, F., promise
 possideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessus, seize, possess
 potentia, -ae, F., power
 p̄inceps, p̄incipis, M., leader, chief
 p̄incipātū, -ūs, M., leadership
 proelium, -i, N., battle
 p̄ūblicē (adv.), in public
 reddō, -ere, reddidi, redditus, return
 restituō, -ere, restitūi, restitūtus, set up again, restore
 secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable
 senātus, -ūs, M., senate
 trādūcō (trāns + dūcō), lead over, win over
 valeō, -ēre, -ui, valitus, be well, be strong, be influential

⁶ Aeduī, Sēquāni: Gallic tribes

⁷ Ariovistus: a German king

⁸ tantum: *here*, as adverb, 'so much, to such a degree'

⁹ cōnsiliū: the partitive genitive is dependent on nihil

¹⁰ Diviciācus: a chief of the Aeduī who was a friend of Caesar

meliōre condicōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquani⁶ p̄incipātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmi¹¹ successerant; quōs¹² quod adaequāre apud Caesarem¹³ grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimiciās nūllō modō cum Aeduī⁶ coniungi poterant sē Rēmis¹¹ in clientēlam dicābant.¹⁴ Hōs illi diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē p̄incipēs Aeduī⁶ habērentur, secundum locum dignitatis Rēmi¹¹ obtinērent.

adaequō (l), be equal (to)	grātia, -ae, <i>F.</i> , grace, favor
aequus, -a, -um, equal; level; equitable, just	obtineō (ob + teneō), obtain
amplificō (l), make bigger, amplify	princeps, principis, <i>M.</i> , leader, chief
clientēla, -ae, <i>F.</i> , dependent, dependency	p̄incipātus, -ūs, <i>M.</i> , leadership
colligō (com- + legō), gather, collect	repente (<i>adv.</i>), suddenly
condicō, -ōnis, <i>F.</i> , condition, terms	secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable
coniungō (com- + iungō), join, join together	status, -ūs, <i>M.</i> , state, condition, situation
dicō (l), declare, proclaim	succēdō (sub + cēdō), go beneath, approach, advance
dignitās, -tatis, <i>F.</i> , dignity	tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, watch, protect
diligenter (<i>adv.</i>), diligently	
dīmittō (dis- + mittō), dismiss, give up	

¹¹ Rēmi: a Gallic tribe

¹² quōs: subject accusative of the infinitive adaequāre

¹³ apud Caesarem: 'in Caesar's eyes'

¹⁴ Sē... in clientēlam dicābant: i.e., 'they attached themselves (to)'

UNIT EIGHTEEN

A. Subjunctive by Attraction

We have seen earlier (Unit Seven, section J) that relative clauses in indirect statements usually have their verbs in the subjunctive. This is also frequently the case with relative and other subordinate clauses within clauses whose verbs are in the subjunctive, provided that the subordinate clause is an integral part of the idea of the main clause. The verbs in such subordinate clauses are said to be *attracted* into the subjunctive by the sheer force of the verb that governs the larger construction.

Rōmam profectus est ut illam urbem
quō amīci īsſent periculō servāret. He set out for Rome in order that
he might save from danger that
city where his friends *had gone*.

B. *futūrum esse ut; fore ut*

Although Latin has a future passive infinitive, it is not commonly found and consequently its form and use have been omitted from this book. When a future passive idea had to be expressed in indirect statement, a periphrasis was used as follows:

He knows that the citizens *will be conquered*. Scit **futūrum esse ut** cīvēs
He knows that it *will be (with the result) that* **superentur**.
the citizens *be conquered*.

The futurity is expressed in **futūrum esse**; the verbal idea in the English indirect statement is expressed in an **ut** clause of result (**ut...superentur**).

Fore is an alternate way of expressing **futūrum esse**.

Sentit **fore** ut ipse ā cīvibus laudētur. He feels *that it will be* that he (himself) be praised by the citizens; he feels that he (himself) will be praised by the citizens.

Dixit **fore** ut libri ā poētis scriberentur. He said *that it would be* that books be written by the poets; he said that books would be written by the poets.

This construction is also used to stand for an *active* idea in future time when the verb in question has no fourth principal part and therefore can have no future active infinitive.

Putat fore ut ille vir carmen scribere possit. He thinks that it will be that that man be able to write a poem; he thinks that that man will be able to write a poem.

Possum, posse, potui has no fourth principal part and so no future active infinitive; the periphrasis is essential in this case to express the future idea.

C. The Historical Infinitive

Occasionally an infinitive is used in narrative passages instead of a finite verb where the English demands a finite verb. Such infinitives are called *historical* infinitives and emphasize the pure verbal action rather than the agents of that action.

In viis urbis heri **currere, clāmāre, fortiter pūgnāre.** In the streets of the city yesterday (there were) running, shouting, fighting bravely; in the streets of the city yesterday (men/they) were running, shouting, fighting bravely.

The historical infinitive, in which one can most clearly see the function of the infinitive as a pure verbal noun, is one of the earliest uses of the infinitive.

Yesterday in the streets of the city *running* (occurred), *shouting* (occurred), brave *fighting* (occurred).

The subject of an historical infinitive is in the *nominative* case.

Homō āriter pūgnāre. *The man* fought fiercely.

D. Shortened or Syncopated Forms of the Perfect Active System of Verbs

Forms of the perfect tenses which have -vi- or -ve- in them are sometimes shortened or syncopated by dropping the -vi- or -ve-. Observe:

amāsti	FOR	amāvistī
amārunt		amāvērunt
amārim		amāverim
audīsse		audīvisse
audīssem		audīvissem
dēlērunt		dēlēvērunt
dēlēssem		dēlēvissem
laudāssēmus		laudāvissēmus
amāstis		amāvistis

E. *-ēre* for *-ērunt* in the Third Person Plural, Perfect Active Indicative

The ending *-ēre* is sometimes used in poetry and high style prose as an alternate for *-ērunt*:

amāvēre FOR amāvērunt
dixēre dixērunt

F. The Greek Accusative: Accusative of Respect or Accusative After Verbs in the Middle Voice

The ablative case is regularly used in Latin to express *respect* or *specification* (see Unit Eight, section D). Occasionally in poetry and in late Latin the accusative is found with this function. This is really a Greek construction which has been borrowed by the Latin.

Ferrum cingitur. He is girded *with respect to a sword*; he girds on a sword.

The Greek verb has three voices: active, passive, and middle. The middle voice often has the same forms as the passive, but it is used in a reflexive sense; that is, the subject at the same time performs the action and experiences its effect(s). In the example above, **cingitur** may be explained as the equivalent of a Greek middle, meaning literally 'he girds (a sword) on himself'. If we interpret **cingitur** in this way, then **ferrum** may be explained alternatively as the *object* of the middle verb **cingitur**. Whichever way we choose to interpret the grammar, the construction involved is a Greek one.

The accusative of respect is frequently used to express the *part affected*:

Caput vulnerātus est. He was wounded *with respect to his head*; he was wounded *in the head*.

Ōs pallōre suffūsa est. She was suffused *with respect to her face* with pallor; she was suffused with pallor *in her face*.

G. Adverbial Accusative

Closely allied to the accusative of respect is the so-called *adverbial accusative*. What is in fact an accusative of respect functions adverbially:

Maximam partem ille vir sapientissimus est. *With respect to the greatest part*, that man is very wise; *for the most part* that man is very wise.

Id temporis magnus numerus lēgātōrum ad urbē vēnit. *With respect to that* of time, a great number of legates came to the city; *at that* time a great number of legates came to the city.

Multum labōrat ut à cībūs laudētur. He works *with respect to* much in order that he may be praised by the citizens; he works *a lot* in order that he may be praised by the citizens.

H. Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting

The genitive is frequently used with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

Mātris et **patris** bene memini. I remember *my mother* and *father* well.

Dolōris nūper oblitus eram. I had recently forgotten *my grief*.

Virtūtis eōrum nōn obliviscor. I do not forget their *courage*.

Note that the accusative is also found with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

I. Genitive of Indefinite Value

A few neuter adjectives and some nouns implying utter worthlessness, such as **as**, **assis**, M., 'as' (a small denomination of money), **floccus**, -ī, M., 'a lock of wool', and **nihilum**, -ī, N., 'nothing', are sometimes used in the genitive case to express the value of a person, thing, or situation when that value is not specifically determined or is indefinite. This use of the genitive is generally found with verbs meaning 'consider', 'reckon', and 'value'.

Magnī mē hābet. He considers me *of great (value)*.

Parvī suam cīvitātem facit. He reckons (makes) his state *of little (value)*.

Familiam suam **floccī** dūcīt. He considers his family *of a lock of wool*; he doesn't care *at all* for his family; he doesn't give *a damn* for his family.

J. Ablative of Price

The instrumental ablative (ablative of means) is used with some expressions to express the price of something.

Villam suam **magnō** (**pretiō**) vendidit. He sold his country house *by means of a great price*; he sold his country house *at a great price*.

Nēmō est qui **pāce** bellum mūtēt. There is no one who would (ex)change war *by means of peace*; there is no one who would exchange war *for peace*.

K. **quod**, 'the fact that'

A substantive clause introduced by **quod**, 'the fact that', and with its verb in the indicative is sometimes used as the subject or object of another verb, or in apposition to the subject of that other verb.

Quod ille coniugem tantum amat mē movet.	<i>The fact that that man loves (his) wife so much moves me. (subject of main verb)</i>
Alterum est periculum, quod iste plūs imperiī vult.	The other danger is <i>the fact that that man (of yours) wants more power. (in apposition to subject of main verb)</i>
Neglēxērunt quod ego civitāti multōs annōs prōsum.	They have neglected <i>the fact that I have been useful to the state for many years. (object of main verb)</i>

UNIT EIGHTEEN — VOCABULARY

aestimō (1)	estimate, reckon
as, assis, -ium, M.	as (a small denomination of money)
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus	surround, gird
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus	buy
honor, hōnōris, M.	honor, distinction, office
meminī, meminisse (defective verb)	remember
nihilum, -ī, N.	nothing
numerus, -ī, M.	number
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum	forget
pretium, -ī, N.	price; value
pūgna, -ae, F.	battle, fight
quod sī	but if
vendō, -ere, vendidi, venditus	sell
vulnerō (1)	wound

UNIT EIGHTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, 'surround, gird', lengthens the -i- in the perfect active stem since it is followed by -nx- and in the perfect passive stem since it is followed by -nct-.

In the perfect forms of emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, 'buy', the e- is long. Ēmptor, 'buyer', is a well-known word because of the famous expression, Caveat ēmptor, 'Let the buyer beware' (caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, 'be on guard, take care, beware').

Meminī, 'remember', is a defective verb like ōdī; it is found only in the perfect tenses and the perfect tense is translated as present, the pluperfect as past, and the future perfect as future. Often this verb governs the genitive: Patriae meministī? 'Do you remember your native land?'

Numerus, *numerī*, M., is not only 'number' but can also mean 'a group':
Iste in numerō nostrō nōn est, 'That (awful) man is not in our group (crowd)'.

Obliviscor, *oblivisci*, *oblitus sum*, 'forget', often governs the genitive case:
In mediō bellō metūs oblitus est, 'In the midst of the war he forgot his fear'.

Pūgna, *pūgnae*, F., 'battle, fight', is related to **pūgnō**; they both have the same root.

Quod sī means 'but if'. Remember that **quod** has several different meanings: 'because', 'which' (the neuter relative pronoun), 'which ?, what ?' (interrogative adjective), and 'the fact that'.

Vendō, *vendere*, *vendidī*, *venditus*, is a contraction of **vēnum dō**, 'give a sale', and so it means 'sell'.

Vulnerō, a first conjugation verb, 'wound' is a denominative verb from **vulnus**, *vulneris*, N., 'wound'.

COMPOUND WORDS

In addition to using prefixes and suffixes to compound words, Latin may combine a noun stem with a verb or verb stem, an adverb with a verb, or an adjective with a noun. Other combinations also exist.

manumittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, 'set at liberty, free a slave'

armiger, -a, -um, 'bearing weapons, armed, warlike'

(used substantively, **armiger**, -i, M., 'armor-bearer, shield-bearer')

benedicō, -ere, -dixi, -dictus, 'commend, praise'

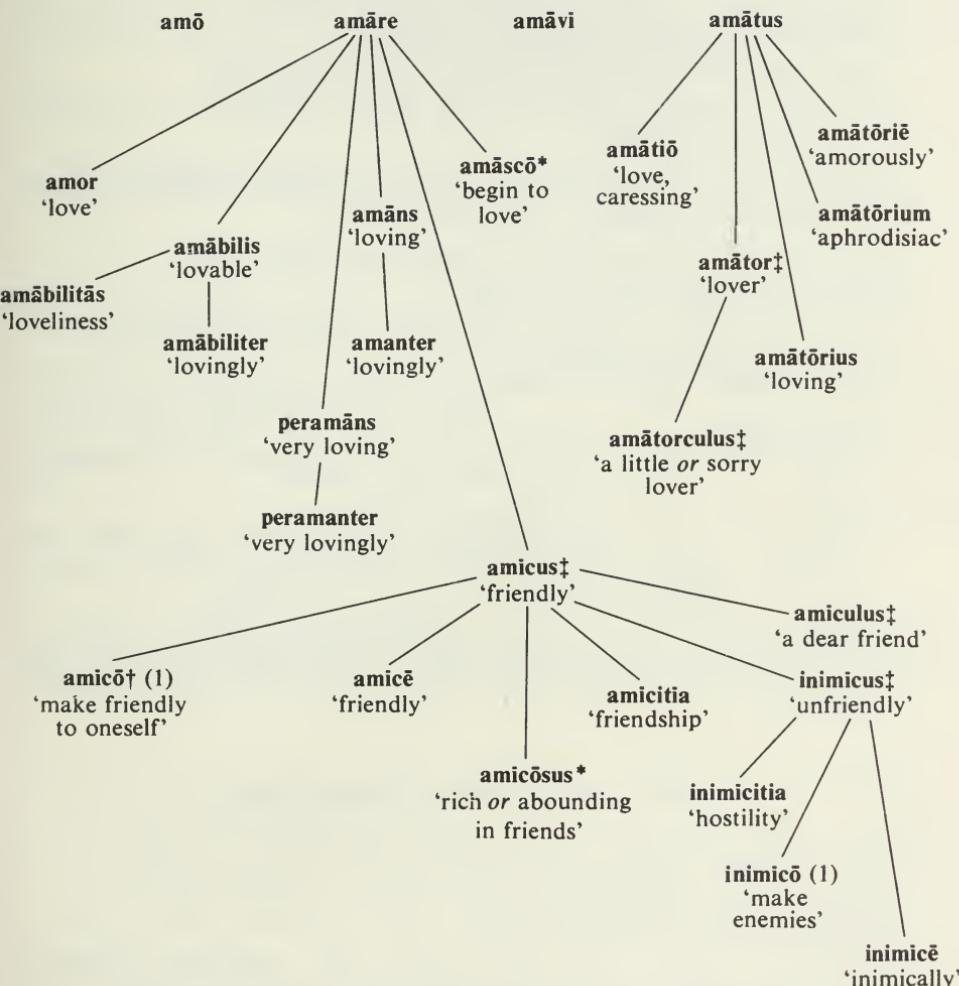
caelicola, -ae, M. (caelum + colō, ere, colui, cultus, 'dwell'), 'god'

magnanimus, -a, -um 'great-souled, magnanimous'

avipēs, -pedis (avis, avis, F., 'bird'), 'bird-footed, swift-footed'

Some of the principles of Latin word formation are illustrated in the accompanying diagram of the verb **amō**.

Latin Word Formation



* Word found only in an old grammarian.

† Word found once.

‡ Feminine forms are also possible, with the addition of feminine suffixes (-a, -trix).

UNIT EIGHTEEN — DRILL

1. Multī hominēs familiā parvī habuēre.
2. Cottidiē multū studēmus ut multa discāmus.
3. Dixit futūrum esse ut dux ā militib⁹ nōn metuerētur.
4. Populus tōtus spērat fore ut hostēs vincantur.
5. Memorēs periculi magnā cum cūrā in nemus ingressī sunt.
6. Remānsit Aeneās clārāque in lūce refulsit ('gleamed') ōs umerōsque ('shoulders') deō similis.
7. Signum Iūnō mōnstrārat; sic nam fore bellō ēgregiam et facilem victū per aetātēs gentem. [*ēgregius*, -a, -um, 'outstanding']
8. Quod populus tōtus eum timet duci saevō magnopere placet.
9. Ōdit quod populus tōtus eum timet.
10. Cum villam amicī relinquere properārent, statuās tamen plūrimā pecūniā ēemptās ('bought') animadvertisēre.
11. Cum multū laudāssent fortiōra facta ducis, omnēs dixērunt eum nōn diū victūrum.
12. Cēlāta corpus umbris, fēmina saeva cui nōn erat fidēs per ardēns oppidum errāvit.
13. Postquam in tēctum ingressī sunt, aliī rēgem quaerere; aliī aliōs visōs interficere; quaerere loca cēlāta; clausa ('closed') aperire; strepitū ('noise') et tumultū ('confusion') omnia miscēre dum rēx inveniētur.
14. Nēmō est cui quotquot ('however much') sit pecūniae placeat.
15. Relinquāmus omnēs terrām quam incolāmus ut libertātem vītamque novam petāmus.

UNIT EIGHTEEN — EXERCISES

I.

1. Ille amicitiam parvī habet, qui pecūniā amicis semper praepōnat.
2. Illud cōnsilium boni faciō.
3. Quīnque librōs duōbus ferrīs ēmi.
4. Postquam domum multā cum pecūniā rediēre, meministīne quantum istae ā civib⁹ suis laudātae sint? Pecūniane eīs tanti (pretii) erat?
5. Fāma Caesaris erat plūris civib⁹ Rōmānis quam aliōrum ducum. Virium ac virtūtis eius numquam obliti sunt. Eārum etiam nunc meminērunt.
6. Cum vidērem fore ut cum nūntiō colloqui nōn possem, cōnstitui mē quam celerrimē domum recipere ubi cognōscerem quid in campō nūper accidisset.
7. Metū mortis neglēctō, cōpiae pericula pūgnae nihili aestimārunt.
8. Ille miser virtūtem honōremque pecūniā vendidit. Cīvēs eum nunc parvī dūcunt. Quod iste sē ita gessit hominēs mōrum bonōrum in omnī orbe ter-rārum taedet.

9. Quis fāmam dīvitīs mūtārit? Nēmō est qui crēdat futūrum esse ut tālis esse miser umquam dēsinat.
10. Putant fore ut nēmō ē cīvībus metuat nē plūs imperīi capere velit.
11. Si carmina illīus poētae audīsset, ea magnī habuisset.
12. Pollicitus est sē Rōmam properātūrum esse; aliōs illūc iam properāsсе.
13. Carmina Paulus emit, recitat sua carmina Paulus.
Nam quod emās possīs iūre vocāre tuum.

(Martial 2.20)

[**Paulus**, -ī, M., proper name; **recitō** (1), 'recite']

14. Quis autem eum magnī dūcat quem multum metuat vel ā quō sē metuī putet?
15. Ab aliō exspectēs alterī quod fēceris.
16. Mors tam mihi grāta est ut, quō propius ad eam accēdam, quasi terram vidēre videar post longum in nāve iter.
17. Quod sī quem socium caput vulnerātūm in urbe vidistī, mōnstrā eum mihi sine morā! [**caput**, **capitis**, N., 'head']
18. Mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, obliviscere timōris atque dubiī!
19. Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum
omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis.

(Catullus 5.1–3)

[**sevērus**, -a, -um, 'stern, severe']

20. Istōs hominēs, ferra cīctōs, populus maximē timet. Nam imperātor omnēs rēs horridās per eōs agere, in amīcis habēre, eōs maximī aestimat.

II.

1. Although the man was wounded in the foot, he forgot his pain and, for the most part, fought courageously.
2. He said that he would not be able to sell his sword for much money; in times of peace, others don't value such weapons highly.
3. The fact that he bought his own safety at the price of the freedom of his people disgusts me.
4. I wanted to gird myself with a sword in order that I might drive back the soldiers who were rushing into the city.

UNIT EIGHTEEN — CONNECTED READINGS

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.14 (For an adaptation of the content of *Gallic War* vi.13, which provides the link between the connected reading in Unit Seventeen and that which follows, see the exercises of Unit Thirteen.)

Druidēs¹ à bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantis excitātī praemiis et suā sponte multi in disciplinam convenient et à parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūlli XX in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquis ferē rēbus, pūblicis privātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint, neque eōs qui discunt litteris cōfisiōs minus memoriae studēre² — quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In prīmis hoc volunt persuādēre, nōn interire animās,³ sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī⁴ putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūti trādunt.

cōfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, trust fully (+ dat.)
cōsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, be accustomed
conveniō (com- + veniō), gather, come together

disciplina, -ae, *F.*, training

disputō (l), dispute

ēdiscō (ē + discō), learn thoroughly, learn by heart

excitō (l), arouse, excite

existimō (l), think, judge, deem

fās, *N.* (*indeclinable*), right, divine right

ferē (adv.), almost

interēō (inter + eō), die

iuventūs, -tūtis, *F.*, young manhood, youth

magnitūdō, -tūdīnīs, *F.*, size, magnitude

mandō (l), entrust

mundus, -ī, *M.*, world

nōnnūllus, -ā, -um, not none, *i.e.*, some

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, weigh out, pay

perdiscō (per + discō), learn thoroughly

permaneō (per + maneō), stay through, continue, persist

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, most (of), the larger part (of)

potestās, -tātis, *F.*, power

praesidium, -ī, *N.*, help, aid

praetereā (adv.), besides

prīmus, -ā, -um, first

in prīmis, especially, first of all

privātus, -ā, -um, private

propinquus, -ā, -um, near, close by

propinquus, -ī, *M.*, relative

ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, reason, plan; account

remittō (re- + mittō), send back; relax, weaken

sponte (*abl. F.*), of one's own will, voluntarily

trāseō (trāns + eō), cross over

tribūtum, -ī, *N.*, tribute, tax

versus, -ūs, *M.*, a line of poetry, verse

vulgus, -ī, *N.*, common people, crowd

¹ Druidēs, -um, *M.*: the Druids, the priests and wise men of Gaul

² studēre: *here*, 'pay attention to'

³ nōn interire animās, sed...ad aliōs...: The entire clause is in apposition to *hoc*.

⁴ excitārī: Supply *hominēs* as the subject.

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.15

Alterum genus⁵ est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita⁶ plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiām potentiamque nōvērunt.

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.16

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam qui sunt affectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad⁷ ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nī hominis vīta reddātūr,⁸ nōn posse deōrum immortāliū nūmen plācāri arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum qui in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut in aliquā noxā sint comprehēnsi grātiōra dis immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

administer, administrī, *M.*, attendant
admodum (*adv.*), in a high degree, very much
adventus, -ūs, *M.*, arrival
afficiō (ad + faciō), do to, affect
ambactus, -ī, *M.*, dependent, vassal
amplus, -a, -um, great, ample
circumveniō (circum + veniō), surround
cliēns, clientis, *M.*, dependent
compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, fill completely
comprehendō, -ere, -prehēndī, -prehēnsus,
 seize, catch, arrest
contexō, -ere, -texūi, -textus, weave together; plait
dēdō, -ere, dēdīdī, dēdītus, give up, surrender
dēficiō (dē + faciō), fail, give out
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, go down,
 descend; resort
eques, equitis, *M.*, horseman, knight
exanimō (l), exhaust; take breath from, kill
ferē (*adv.*), almost
fūrtum, -ī, *N.*, theft
grātiā, -ae, *F.*, grace, favor
immānīs, -e, great, huge, large
immolō (l), sacrifice, immolate
incidō (in + cadō), fall upon; happen
iniūria, -ae, *F.*, injury, wrong; outrage
innocēns, innocentis, innocent

latrōcinium, -ī, *N.*, robbery
magnitūdō, -tūdīnis, *F.*, size, magnitude
membrum, -ī, *N.*, limb
morbus, -ī, *M.*, disease
nātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, nation
plācō (l), placate, appease
potentia, -ae, *F.*, power, influence
proelium, -ī, *N.*, battle
prōpulsō (l), drive off
pūblicē (*adv.*), in public
quotannīs (*adv.*), yearly
reddō, -ere, reddīdī, redditus, return, give back, give in return
religiō, -ōnis, *F.*, here, religion
sacrificium, -ī, *N.*, sacrifice
simulācru, -ī, *N.*, image, statue
succendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, ignite from below, burn
supplicium, -ī, *N.*, punishment
utī, = ut
versō (l), keep turning; in passive, be engaged, be busy
victima, -ae, *F.*, victim, sacrificial animal
vimen, -inis, *N.*, pliant twig
vīvus, -a, -um, living, alive
vōveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow

⁵ alterum genus: The first class of people mentioned in Gaul was the Druids; now Caesar turns his attention to the knights. See sentence 51 in Unit Thirteen.

⁶ ut...ita: used correlatively (e.g., 'As' Maine goes, 'so' goes the nation.)

⁷ ad: here, 'for'

⁸ reddātūr: present subjunctive representing the indicative in a present general condition in indirect statement. See *Appendix*, pp. 397-399.

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.17

Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,⁹ hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad¹⁰ quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in cīvitatībus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locis cōsacrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēcta quispiam religiōrie aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitūtum est.

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.18

Galli sē omnēs ab Dite¹¹ patre prōgnātōs praedican idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vitae institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisī cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerilī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

adēō (ad + eō), approach
 adulēscō, -ere, adulēvī, adultus, grow up
 artificium, -i, N., handicraft
 assistō, -ere, -stītī, --, stand near
 caelestis, -e, heavenly
 colō, -ere, -uī, cultus, cultivate, worship
 cōsacrō (l), consecrate
 cōspectus, -ūs, M., view, sight
 cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, observe, see
 cruciātus, -ūs, M., torture
 dēpellō (dē + pellō), drive away
 dēvoeō, -ere, -vōvī, vōtus, vow, dedicate
 dimicō (l), fight
 exstrūō, -ere, -trūxī, -trūctus, pile up
 ferē (adv.), almost
 finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, set limits to
 immolō (l), sacrifice, immolate
 initium, -i, N., beginning
 institūtum, -i, N., practice, custom
 inventor, -ōris, M., inventor, founder
 liberi, -ōrum, M. pl., children
 mēnsis, -is, -ium, F., month
 mercātūra, -ae, F., trade
 militia, -ae, F., warfare, military service

morbus, -ī, M., disease
 mūnus, -eris, N., gift; duty, task
 nātālis, -e, pertaining to birth, of birth
 observō (l), observe
 occultō (l), hide
 palam (adv.), openly
 plērumque (adv.), generally, for the most part
 praedicō (l), proclaim
 prōdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus, give forth; hand down
 proelium, -ī, N., battle
 prōgnātus, -a, -um, descended
 puerilis, -e, of a boy, boyish, childish
 quaestus, -ūs, M., profit, gain
 quispiam, quidpiam (indef. pron.), anyone, anything
 simulācrum, -i, N., image, statue
 spatium, -i, N., space, distance, period
 subsequor (sub + sequor), follow closely
 supplicium, -i, N., punishment
 sustineō (sub + teneō), sustain, endure
 tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, take away, remove
 tumulus, -i, M., mound, tomb

⁹ ferunt: here, 'they say, they call'

¹⁰ ad: here, 'for, in regard to'

¹¹ Dis, Dītis, M.: Dis, Pluto, Hades (god of the underworld)

Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.19

Viri, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimatiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniunctim ratiō habētur frūctusque¹² servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit,¹³ ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus¹² superiōrum temporum pervenit. Viri in¹⁴ uxōrēs, sicuti in¹⁴ liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī convenient et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum¹⁵ quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est,¹⁶ igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō¹⁷ cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī fuisse¹⁸ arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam¹⁹ servi et clientēs quōs ab iis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis fūnebris cōflectis, ūnā cremābantur.

aestimatiō, -ōnis, *F.*, value, appraisal
 cliēns, clientis, *M.*, dependent
 commūnicō (l), join to an equal part, unite
 comperiō, -ire, comperi, compertus, find out, discover
 coniunctim (*adv.*), jointly
 cōnstat (*impersonal verb*), it is evident, it is agreed (+ subject acc. and inf.)
 conveniō (com- + veniō), gather, come together
 cor, cordis, *N.*, heart
 cremō (l), burn, cremate
 cultus, -ūs, *M.*, cultivation, refinement
 dēcēdō (dē + cēdō), go away from, withdraw; die
 diligō, -ere, dilēxi, dilēctus, esteem highly, love
 dōs, dōtis, *F.*, dowry
 excruciatō (l), torment, afflict, vex
 fūnebris, -e, pertaining to a funeral (*neuter plural as noun*, funeral rites)
 fūnus, -eris, *N.*, funeral
 illūstris, -e, illustrious, distinguished
 iūstus, -a, -um, just

liberi, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, children
 magnificus, -a, -um, magnificent
 nex, necis, *F.*, death
 perveniō (per + veniō), arrive at, reach
 potestās, -tatis, *F.*, power, influence
 prō (prep. + abl.), in consideration of, in accordance with
 propinquus, -a, -um, near, close by
 propinquus, -i, *M.*, relative
 quaestiō, -ōnis, *F.*, inquiry
 ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, account
 servilis, -e, pertaining to a slave, servile
 scūti (adv.), just as
 sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, sumptuous
 superior, superius, former, past
 suprā (prep. + acc.), above, beyond
 suspiciō, -ōnis, *F.*, suspicion
 tormentum, -i, *N.*, torment, torture, anguish, pain
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, both
 uxor, uxōris, *F.*, wife
 vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living

12 frūctus: 'profit, interest'

13 uter eōrum vitā superāvit: i.e., whichever one survives the other

14 in: here, 'over'

15 in servilem modum: 'as in the case of slaves'. According to Roman custom, freeborn people could not be tortured; slaves could.

16 sī compertum est: i.e., that the death of the father of the household was not natural

17 prō: here, 'in keeping with'

18 vīvīs cordī fuisse: double dative construction; translate 'to have been dear to the heart of the living'

19 suprā...memoriam: 'shortly before our own time'

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.20

Quae civites commodius suam rem publicam administrre existimantur habent legibus sanctum,²⁰ si quis quid de re publica a finitimi sumore ac fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat neve cum quod²¹ ali communicet, quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis sumori bus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus quae visa sunt²² occultant, quae esse ex usu²³ iudicaverunt multitudi ni produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.21

Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student.²⁴ Deorum numero eos solos ducunt quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam; reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt.²⁵ Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; a parvis²⁶ laboi ac duritiae student.

administr (I), serve, provide for; execute
 cern (I), -ere, crevi, cretus, see, perceive
 commodus, -a, -um, suitable
 communic (I), communicate
 conced (com- + ced), yield, allow
 concilium, -i, N., assembly
 consist (I), -ere, constiti, --, depend upon
 consuetud, consuetudinis, F., custom
 divinus, -a, -um, divine
 duritiae, -ae, F., harshness
 existim (I), estimate, judge, deem
 facinus, -oris, N., crime
 falsus, -a, -um, false
 finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, close by
 impell (in + pell), drive on, impel
 imperitus, -a, -um, inexperienced
 iudic (I), judge

iuv, -re, iuvi, iutus, help; delight
 labor, -oris, M., labor, toil, hardship
 magistratus, -us, M., magistracy; public
 officer
 militaris, -e, pertaining to the military,
 military
 multitud, -tudinis, F., crowd, multitude
 neve (conj.), and not, and lest
 occult (I), hide
 prod, -ere, prodid, proditus, give forth;
 hand down; reveal
 sacrificium, -i, N., sacrifice
 sanc, -ire, sancxi, sanctus, guarantee,
 arrange
 temerarius, -a, -um, rash, reckless
 uti, = ut
 venati, -onis, F., hunting

20 sanctum: explained by uti...communicet

21 quod = aliquod

22 visa sunt: here, 'seemed best'

23 ex usu: 'of advantage'

24 student: here, 'attach importance to'

25 acceperunt: accipi here has the force 'hear of'

26 a parvis: 'from childhood'

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.22

Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac p̄incipēs in annōs singulōs²⁷ gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominū,²⁸ quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō visum est²⁹ agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine capti studium belli gerendi agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius quam ad frigora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificant; nē qua oriātūr pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animi aequitātē plēbēm contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

accūrātē (adv.), carefully
 aedificō (I), build
 aequitās, -tātis, F., fairness, equality
 aequō (I), make equal
 aestus, -ūs, M., heat
 agricultūra, -ae, F., agriculture
 aliō (adv.), to another place
 assiduus, -a, -um, continual
 attribuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, allot
 carō, carnis, F., meat
 cāseus, -ī, M., cheese
 coēō (com- + eō), go together, unite
 cognātiō, -ōnis, F., blood relationship,
 association, affinity
 cōgō, -ere, coēgi, coāctus, bring together;
 compel
 commūtō (com- + mūtō), cf. mūtō (I)
 cōsistō, -ere, cōstītū, --, depend upon
 cōnsuētūdō, -tūdīnis, F., custom, habit

contineō (com- + teneō), keep together,
 hem in; restrain
 cupiditās, -tātis, F., desire
 dissēnsiō, -ōnis, F., dissension
 factiō, -ōnis, F., faction, (political) party
 frigus, -oris, N., cold
 lac, lactis, N., milk
 lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide
 magistrātūs, -ūs, M., magistracy, public
 officer
 possēsiō, possēsiōnis, F., possession
 potēns, potentis, powerful
 princeps, principis, M., leader, chief
 proprius, -a, -um, special, particular, proper;
 one's own
 singulī, -ae, -a, one by one, single
 trānseō (trāns + eō), go across, cross
 vīctus, -ūs, M., food, nourishment
 vītō (I), avoid

²⁷ in annōs singulōs: 'each year'

²⁸ cognātiōnibus hominū: 'groups of relatives'

²⁹ visum est: 'it seemed best'

Caesar, *Gallic War* vi.23

Civitatis maxima laus est quam latissimē circum sē vastatis finibus solitudinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quemquam prope sē audere cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōres arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timore sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut illātum dēfendit³⁰ aut infert, magistratūs qui eī bellō praeſint et vitae necisque habeant potestatē dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistratūs, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgorum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac dēsidiae minuendae causā fieri praedican. Atque ubi quis³¹ ex principib⁹ in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, qui sequi velint³² profiteantur,³³ cōsurgunt ii qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque à multitūdine collaudantur; qui ex his secūti nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violare fās nōn putant; qui³⁴ quācumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibit sāctōsque habent, hisque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātūr.

collaudō (com- + laudō), cf. laudō
 commūnicō (I), share, communicate
 commūnis, -e, common
 concilium, -i, N., assembly
 cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstiti, --, take a stand, halt
 cōsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctus, rise up
 together
 contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy
 dērogō (I), take away from
 dēsērtor, -ōris, M., deserter
 dēsidia, -ae, F., sloth, laziness
 exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, train, exercise
 existimō (I), estimate, judge, deem
 extrā (prep. + acc.), outside of
 fās, N. (indeclinable), right, divinely right
 finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, close by
 incursiō, -ōnis, F., incursion, attack
 infāmia, -ae, F., ill repute
 iniūria, -ae, F., wrong, injury; injustice
 iuventūs, -tūtis, F., youth, young manhood
 latrōcinium, -i, N., robbery
 lātūs, -a, -um, broad, wide
 magistratūs, -ūs, M., public office; public
 officer; magistrate
 minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus, lessen, diminish

multitūdō, -tūdinis, F., crowd, multitude
 nex, necis, F., death
 pāgus, -i, M., district
 pateō, -ēre, -ui, --, lie open
 posteā (adv.), afterwards
 potestās, -tātis, F., power
 praedicō (I), proclaim
 princeps, principis, M., leader, chief
 probō (I), approve
 prōdītor, -ōris, M., traitor
 profiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, declare publicly,
 acknowledge
 prope (prep. + acc.), near, close to
 proprius, -a, -um, special, particular, one's
 own
 quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (in-
 definite pron.), whoever, whatever
 regiō, -ōnis, F., region
 repentinus, -a, -um, sudden
 sāctus, -a, -um, holy, sacred
 simul (adv.), at the same time
 solitudō, -tūdinis, F., solitude; empty space
 tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātus, remove
 vastō (I), devastate, lay waste
 vīctus, -ūs, M., food

30 dēfendit: here, 'ward off'

31 quis = aliquis

32 velint: subjunctive by attraction

33 profiteantur: subjunctive in an indirect command, dependent on **dīxit**; assume the ellipsis of *et ut* after *fore*.

34 qui: assume the ellipsis of *eōs* as the antecedent of *qui*

Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.24

Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Galli virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum³⁵ colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam,³⁶ quam Eratostheni³⁷ et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae³⁸ Tectosagēs³⁹ occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā ante Germāni permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallis autem prōvinciārum⁴⁰ propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtia multa⁴¹ ad⁴² cōpiam atque ūsūs lārgitūr, paulātim assuēfacti superārī multisque vīcti proeliis nē sē quidem ipsi cum illis virtūte comparant.

anteā (*adv.*), beforehand, formerly

appellō (*l.*), call, name

assuēfaciō, -ere, -fēci, -factus, accustom
bellicus, -a, -um, warlike, pertaining to war

colōnia, -ae, *F.*, settlement

comparō (*l.*), compare

cōsīdō, -ere, -sēdi, -sessus, sit, settle

contineō (*com-* + *teneō*), keep together, keep
in, contain

cultus, -ūs, *M.*, cultivation

egestās, -tātis, *F.*, lack, poverty

fertilis, -e, fertile

inopia, -ae, *F.*, lack, need

iūstitia, -ae, *F.*, justice

lārgior, -irī, -itus sum, bestow generously

multitūdō, -tūdīnis, *F.*, crowd, multitude

nōtia, -ae, *F.*, knowledge

occupō (*l.*), seize

patientia, -ae, *F.*, patience, endurance

paulātim (*adv.*), little by little

permaneō (*per* + *maneō*), cf. *maneō*

proelium, -i, *N.*, battle

propinquitās, -tātis, *F.*, nearness, proximity

sēdēs, -is, *F.*, seat; settlement

sēsē, = sē

silva, -ae, *F.*, forest

trānsmarinus, -a, -um, pertaining to across
the sea; overseas

ultrō (*adv.*), of one's own accord

vīctus, -ūs, *M.*, living, way of life

35 Rhēnus, -ī, *M.*: the Rhine river

36 Hercyniam silvam: the Hercynian forest, a forest in southern Germany

37 Eratosthenēs, -is, *M.*: a Greek scholar in the Hellenistic period

38 Volcae: a tribe in southern Gaul

39 Tectosagēs, -um, *M.*: a branch of the Volcae tribe in southern Gaul

40 prōvinciārum: the Roman provinces which were considered civilizing factors in Gaul

41 multa: object of lārgitūr

42 ad: *here*, 'for the purpose of'

REVIEW—UNITS TWELVE TO EIGHTEEN

Review of Syntax

1. Nē offerāmus nōs periculis sine causā.
(hortatory subjunctive; dative with compound verb)
2. Cōgitat quantum in illō sceleris fuerit.
(indirect question)
3. Accēdere senectūte, quidam irātiōrēs fiunt quod multis ante annis plūra agere potuerint: plūs est adulēscētibus virium quam senibus. [senectūs, -tūs, F., 'old age']
(quod clause of alleged reason)
4. Nescit plēbs quō modō comitēs servet; numquam ūlli pauperi ab imperātōre parsum est.
(indirect question; impersonal passive with an intransitive verb governing the dative)
5. Eis diēbus nēmō erat qui divitiās virtūti praeferret.
(relative clause of characteristic; dative with compound verb)
6. Quid dē ūsū pācis cōnstituāmus? Utrum aliquid nunc cōnstituāmus an morēmur dum lēgātus adveniat?
(deliberative subjunctives; double direct question; dum with subjunctive expressing anticipation)
7. Magni est iūdicis cōnstituere quid quemque cuique praeſtāre oporteat.
[praeſtō, -āre, -ſtī, -ſtītus, 'excel, be superior to']
(adverbial accusative; dative with compound verb; impersonal verb; indirect question)
8. Faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē sentiant.
(substantive clause of result after faciam ut; indirect question)
9. Exiguum enim tempus aetātis satis longum est ad bene honestēque vivendum.
(ad + gerund expressing purpose)
10. Quō dē genere mortis difficile dictū est.
(ablative of supine — ablative of respect)

11. *Exclūsi* eōs quōs tū ad mē salūtātum miserās. [*exclūdō*, -ere, -*clūsi*, -*clūsus*, 'shut out'; *salūtō* (1), 'greet']
(accusative of supine expressing purpose)
12. *Vīvis*, et *vīvis* nōn ad dēpōnēdam sed ad cōnfirmandam audāciam. [*cōfirmō* (1), 'confirm, strengthen'; *dēpōnō* (*dē* + *pōnō*), 'set aside']
(ad + accusative + gerundive expressing purpose)
13. Ō deōs immortālēs! Multōs dolōrēs ipse sufferam, dum modo ā vōbis huius horridi belli periculum dēpellātur. [*dēpellō* (*dē* + *pellō*), 'drive away, off, from']
(accusative of exclamation; subjunctive clause of proviso)
14. Nūllum est dubium quīn nōs omnēs multa prius mala sufferāmus quam iste ex urbe dēnique pellātur.
(negative clause of doubting with *quīn*; *priusquam* with subjunctive expressing anticipation)
15. Timēmus ut multi ē pūgnantibus superfutūri sint. Nēmō autem dēterrēti poterit quōminus agat quid putet rei pūblicae prōfutūrum esse.
(clause of fearing introduced by **ut**; clause of prevention introduced by **quōminus**; indirect question; dative with compound verb)
16. Rogantī melius quam imperantī pārēās.
(dative with intransitive verb; potential subjunctive)
17. Lēgātūm mittit qui petat ut vōbiscum loquī liceat.
(relative clause of purpose; impersonal verb)
18. Tamne parvi animi videāmur omnēs qui rei pūblicae atque his vītae periculis intersumus ut nōbiscum peritūra omnia arbitrēmur? Anima enim immortālis est; numquam peribit. [*intersum* (*inter* + *sum*), 'be engaged in, be involved in']
(deliberative subjunctive; dative with compound verb; clause of result)
19. Cum vita sine amicīs multōs metūs habeat, amīcītiās maximī aestimāre dēbēmus. Verbōrum illius sapientis nōlī oblīvisci: Tālis igitur inter virōs amīcītia tantās opportūnitātēs habet, quantās vix possum dicere. [*opportūnitās*, -*tātis*, F., 'opportunity']
(cum causal clause; genitive of indefinite value; genitive with expressions of remembering or forgetting)
20. Cum illi ipsi vēnissent quōs ego ad mē id temporis ventūrōs esse praedixeram, maximē timēbam. [*praedīcō* (*prae* + *dīcō*), 'foretell, predict'] (cum circumstantial clause; adverbial accusative)
21. Nōn dubitat quīn sit māter peritūra.
(*quīn* in clause of negative doubting)
22. Ipse negat fore ut villam multā pecūniā vendere possit.
(the periphrasis **fore** (*futūrum*) **ut** + subjunctive to make up for the lack of the future active infinitive in some verbs; ablative of price)

23. Quamdiū quisquam erit qui tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs, et vivēs ita ut nunc vivis, multis custōdibus circumdatus, nē commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam possis. [circumdō (circum + dō), 'surround'; commoveō (com- + moveō), 'move thoroughly, excite']
 (relative clause of characteristic or purpose)

24. Quid enim mali vel sceleris fieri vel cōgitāri potest?

25. His et tālibus pūgnis inter nōs discessum est.
 (impersonal use of the passive)

26. Beneficiū dandō accēpit, qui dignō dedit. [beneficiū, -ī, N., 'good deed']
 (ablative of gerund)

27. Sed quam multōs fuisse putātis qui quae ego dēferrem nōn crēderent!
 [quam, adv., 'how' — in exclamations]
 (relative clause of characteristic; subjunctive by attraction)

28. Quamvīs turpis qui monet nūllī nocet. [quamvīs [adv.], 'no matter how']
 (dative with special intransitive verb)

29. Haec habui dē amicitiā quae dicerem.
 (relative clause of purpose)

30. Num quid mali aut sceleris cōgitāri potest quod nōn iste fēcerit?
 (direct question with num; relative clause of characteristic)

31. Quis rēx umquam fuit, quis populus, qui nōn ūterētur signis à dis datis?
 neque sōlum in pāce, sed in bellō multō etiam magis, quō maius erat periculum.
 (relative clause of characteristic)

32. Fac ut veniās.
 (substantive clause of result)

33. Ō tempora mala! Ō rem pūblicam perditam!
 (accusatives of exclamation)

34. Illō tempore omnia in peius ruere, omnēs hominēs maiōribus peiōrēs fieri.
 (historical infinitives)

35. Quid nunc rogēm tē ut veniās? Nōn rogēm! Sine tē igitur sim!
 (adverbial accusative; deliberative subjunctive; potential subjunctive; hortatory subjunctive)

36. Postquam labōrantēs mūnīvēre moenia oppidi, ūnus pedem vulnerātus est.
 (accusative of respect)

37. Cum incolae cōnsulem laudāssent, nihil tamen prō eōrum salūte cōnstituere potuit.
 (cum concessive clause)

38. Cucurrit quō celerius Caesarem vidēret; cucurrit quō Caesarem vidēret; cucurrit Caesaris vidēndī causā.
 (relative clause of purpose; purpose clause introduced by an adverb; genitive plus gerundive followed by causā to express purpose)

39. Hoc amō, quod possum quā mihi placet ire viā.
 (quod, 'the fact that')

40. Quīn loquar haec, numquam mē potest dēterrēre.
(negative clause of prevention introduced by **quīn**)

41. Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē homini sit nihil bonum aliud.
(adverbial accusative; substantive clause of result after **tantum abest ut**;
clause of result; positive clause of fearing introduced by **nē**)

42. Cum loqui incēpi, vereor nē dum dēfendam meōs, nōn parcam tuis.
(**cum** meaning 'whenever'; negative clause of fearing introduced by **nē**...
nōn; subjunctive by attraction)

43. Dubitāvī hōs hominēs multā pecūniā emerem an nōn emerem.
(positive clause of doubting with alternative indirect question; ablative of
price)

44. Maximō sum gaudiō affectus cum audivī cōsulem tē factum esse. [**afficiō**
(**ad + faciō**), 'affect']
(**cum** temporal clause)

45. Nōnne verētur nē rogātūrī sīmus cūr iūdex sē dāmnāverit?
(direct question with **nōnne**; positive clause of fearing; indirect question;
indirect reflexive)

46. Meā rēfert ut idem duo hominēs veniant.
(impersonal verb)

47. Utinam ille omnīs sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset!
(optative subjunctive)

48. Aeneas replies to Dido's reproaches for leaving her by expressing his
concern for her and, afterwards, by stating that he is not leaving of his
own accord but out of necessity. (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.333–6)

Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō
ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, rēgīna, negābō
prōmeritam,¹ nec mē meminisse pigēbit Elissae
dum memor² ipse meī, dum spiritus hōs regit artūs.

¹ supply **esse** ² supply **sum**

[**artus**, -ūs, M., 'joint, limb'; **Elissa**, -ae, F., 'Dido'; **ēnumerō** (1), 'e-count'; **for**, **fāri**, **fātus sum**, 'speak, tell'; **prōmereor**, -ērī, -itus sum, 'deserve, earn'; **spiritus**, -ūs, M., 'breath, soul, life'; **valeō**, -ēre, **valuī**, **valitus**, 'be able']

(ablative of gerund; impersonal verb; genitives with verb and expression
of remembering, **dum** + indicative)

49. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs qui erant in agrīs reliqui
discessērunt. [**occupō** (1), 'occupy']
(**dum** with present indicative to denote continued action in past time)

UNITS 12–18: Self-Review

I.

Translate the following passage; the words in boldface type relate to questions in part II.

NOTE: While serving as provincial governor in Cilicia (Asia Minor), Cicero wrote this letter to Marcus Caelius Rufus, an orator and friend who was in Rome serving as an **aedile**, a public official in charge of public works and recreation. Caelius had written repeatedly to Cicero, keeping him abreast of political news from Rome and also requesting that Cicero be on the lookout for exotic animals that he could import and use for sports events. (It has been slightly adapted.)

Putaresne umquam fieri posse ut mihi verba omnino **deessent**? Non careo solum istā tuā¹ oratoriā,² sed illo etiam ingenio exiguo quo nuper ad litteras **scribendas** utebar. Cum senatus³ **muneris**⁴ mei oblitus sit, vereor ut Romam multos annos redditurus sim et — quod peius est — ne te absente in hāc terrā alienā peream.

Magnum desiderium⁵ — mirabile **dictu** — urbis me tenet, desiderium meorum atque in primis⁶ tui. Rogitant legati comitesque, quoniam provinciae me tantopere taedet, quam ob rem diutius hic **maneam**. Tanta onera⁷ in re publicā sustinere potui et solitus sum ut totum negotium⁸ in hoc ultimo⁹ loco viribus meis indignum omnibus arbitrandum sit.

Desine quaerere de pantheris;¹⁰ iussu meo diligenter **agitatur** ab eis qui venari solent; sed permagna paucitas est, et eae, quae vere sunt, dicuntur queri¹¹ quod nihil cuiquam insidiarum in meā provinciā nisi sibi fiat. Itaque plurimae, ut quidam credunt, in Carian¹² ex hac regione¹³ horridā se recipere constituerunt. Quicquid¹⁴ erit, tibi erit, sed quot futurae sint plane¹⁵ nescio.

Mihi mehercle¹⁶ magnae curae est aedilitas¹⁷ tua. Meā maxime refert ut ludos¹⁸ quam gratissimos facias.¹⁸ Tu velim ad me de omni rei publicae casu quam celerrime perscribas; ea enim certissima putabo quae ex te **cognoro**.

¹ **istā tuā**: tuā added for emphasis ² **ōrātōriā**, -ae, F., ‘oratory, oratorical skill’
³ **senātus**, -ūs, M., ‘the senate’ ⁴ **mūnus**, **mūneris**, N., ‘duty, office, service’ ⁵ **dēsiderium**, **dēsiderii**, N., ‘ardent desire, longing’ ⁶ **in primis**, ‘especially’ ⁷ **onus**, **oneris**, N., ‘load, burden’ ⁸ **negōtium**, **negōtii**, N., ‘business’ ⁹ **ultimus**, -a, -um, ‘farthest, most distant’ ¹⁰ **panthēra**, -ae, F., ‘panther’ ¹¹ **queror**, **queri**, **questus sum**, ‘lament, complain’ ¹² **Cārian** (acc. sing. of **Cāria**, -ae, F.), ‘Caria’, a province in Asia Minor
¹³ **regiō**, **regiōnis**, F., ‘district, territory’ ¹⁴ **quisquis**, **quidquid** or **quicquid** (indefinite pron.), ‘whoever, whatever’ ¹⁵ **plānē** (adv.), ‘plainly, clearly’ ¹⁶ **mehercle** (an oath), ‘by Hercules!’ ¹⁷ **aedilitās**, **aedilitatis**, F., ‘the office of an aedile, aedileship’ ¹⁸ **lūdus**, **lūdi**, M., ‘game, exhibition’; **lūdōs facere**, ‘to stage games’

II.

The questions below refer to the words and phrases in boldface type in the passage you have just translated.

1. Identify the tense and mood of **putares**. How is it used here?
2. Explain the reason for the mood of **deessent**.
3. a) What part of speech is **scribendas**?
b) What idea does the phrase **ad litteras scribendas** express?
4. What is the case and reason for the case of **muneris**?
5. What is the syntax of **peream**?
6. Identify the form and give the syntax of **dictu**.
7. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **maneam**.
8. Comment on the use of the word **agitatur**.
9. **Cognoro** is a syncopated form. What would the full form be?

III.

Translate the following sentences. The words in boldface type relate to questions on syntax and form in Part IV.

1. Num metus tibi obstitit quominus **meminisses** quid fieret?
2. Pollicemur fore ut foedus quam primum fiat.
3. Aliquis **videat** utrum consilium de civitatibus instituendis invenire possimus necne.
4. Odioso imperatum est ne **cui** armigerorum in urbe viventium parcatur.
5. His intellectis, erant tamen qui pugnare **desinerent** priusquam amicis proderant.
6. Ipsi non dubitemus quin domum vendendo multam pecuniam capere possit.
7. Non dubitavere exspectare dum dux **adveniret**. Idem vero **omnibus** praefectus erat quo manus militum **esset** tutior.
8. Cum nuntiassent quid vellent, legati tamen efficere non poterant ut omnes **sibi** parerent.
9. Quod quidam cupidi divitiarum sunt nos non **movet**; speramus autem eos divitiarum tam cupidos non fore ut honoris obliviscantur.
10. **Nihil** metuerunt ne iudices salutem **parvi** aestimaturi sint.

IV.

The questions below refer to the words in boldface type in the sentences in part III.

1. Explain the tense and mood of **meminisses** (sentence 1).
2. Identify the mood and use of **videat** (sentence 3).

3. What does the form **cui** stand for in sentence 4?
4. What is the mood and the reason for the mood of **desinerent** (sentence 5)?
5. What is the mood and the reason for the mood of **proderant** (sentence 5)?
6. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **possit** (sentence 6).
7. What is the syntax of **adveniret** (sentence 7)?
8. Give the case and the reason for the case of **omnibus** (sentence 7).
9. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **esset** (sentence 7).
10. Write a brief commentary on the use of the reflexive **sibi** in sentence 8.
11. What is the subject of **movet** (sentence 9)?
12. What is the syntax of **nihil** (sentence 10)?
13. Identify the case and give the reason for the case of **parvi** (sentence 10).

Answer Key — UNITS 12–18: Self-Review

I.

Would you have thought that it was ever possible that words entirely failed me? I lack not only that oratorical skill of yours, but also that small talent which I recently used (enjoyed) for writing a letter. Since the senate has forgotten my service, I fear that I will not return to Rome for many years and — what is worse — that, in your absence, I will perish in this foreign land.

A great longing for the city holds me — remarkable (wonderful, able to be wondered at) to say — a longing for my friends and family (my people) and especially for you. Legates and companions keep on asking why I remain here (any) longer, since the province bores me so greatly. I have been able to endure (support) and have been accustomed to so many responsibilities (burdens) in the state that the whole business in this most distant place must be judged by everyone (all) unworthy of my strength.

Stop asking about the panthers; by my order, there is diligent activity (there is a stirring up diligently) by those men who are accustomed to hunt; but there is a very great scarcity (fewness) [of panthers] and those which are actually here (which truly exist) are said to be complaining because (allegedly) no treachery happens to anyone in my province except (if not) to them. And so most, as certain men believe, have decided to withdraw into Caria from this horrible district. Whatever there is (will be), will be for you, but I clearly don't know how many there will be.

By Hercules, your aedileship is a great concern to me. It especially interests me that you stage as pleasing games as possible. I should wish that you write to me thoroughly about every occurrence with reference to the state as quickly as possible; indeed, I shall consider (think) those things which I know (I'll have learned) from you most reliable (most certain).

II.

1. Imperfect subjunctive as the main verb in the sentence (an independent usage of the subjunctive) expressing a potential idea in past time
2. Subjunctive in a substantive clause of result
3. a) Gerundive (adjective)
 - b) *ad* is used with a noun and a gerundive to express purpose
4. Genitive case with an expression of forgetting
5. Present subjunctive in primary sequence in a clause expressing positive fearing
6. Ablative form of the supine of **dicere** functioning as an ablative of respect
7. Subjunctive in an indirect question in primary sequence
8. Impersonal passive usage stressing verbal action
9. *cognōverō*

III.

1. Fear did not keep (hinder, stand in your way) you (did it) from remembering what was happening (did it)?
2. We promise that a treaty will be made as soon as possible (that it will be that a treaty be made...).
3. Let someone see whether we can find (discover) a plan about establishing states or not.
4. The hateful man has been ordered (It has been ordered to the hateful man) that no one of the arm bearers living (who live) in the city be spared (that it not be spared to anyone of the arm bearers...).
5. With these things understood (although these things had been understood), there were nevertheless those who (men of the sort who) stopped fighting before they profited (did good to) (their) friends.
6. We ourselves would (could, might) not doubt (but) that by selling (his) home he is able to take (get) much money.

7. They did not hesitate to wait

{ until the leader (guide) should (could) arrive.
 for the leader (guide) to arrive.
 } provided that the leader (guide) arrive.

The same one (man), truly (indeed), had been put in command of all (the men) by which (in order that) the band of soldiers might be safer (rather safe).

8. Although they had reported (announced) what they were wanting (wanted), the legates nevertheless were not able to (could not) bring it about (effect) that all (men) obey(ed) them.
9. (The fact) that certain men are desirous of wealth (riches) does not move us; we hope, moreover (however), that they (these/those men) will not be so desirous of wealth (riches) that they are forgetful of (forget) honor (distinction).

10. They have feared not at all that the judges (jurymen) will (are going to) estimate (reckon) health (safety) of small value (worth).

IV.

1. Pluperfect subjunctive of a defective verb; thus the pluperfect = imperfect.
It is in a relative clause of prevention in secondary sequence.
2. Subjunctive; independent use, either jussive, potential, or optative
3. alicui
4. Subjunctive; relative clause of characteristic (secondary sequence)
5. Indicative; to state a fact (temporal clause referring strictly to time)
6. Subjunctive in a negative clause of doubting (primary sequence)
7. Imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence in a **dum** clause expressing anticipation (The king hasn't arrived yet; there is no certainty that he will ever arrive.) Also possible as a proviso clause
8. Dative with a compound verb
9. Subjunctive; relative clause of purpose (secondary sequence)
10. **Sibi** is dative case because the intransitive verb **pāreō** governs the dative.
It is an indirect reflexive since it does not refer to the subject of the clause in which it occurs (**omnēs**), but rather to the subject of the main verb of the sentence (**lēgāti**).
11. The whole clause **quod...sunt**
12. Adverbial accusative
13. Genitive of indefinite value

APPENDIX

This appendix will be useful as a reference for complete paradigms, explanations, and examples of syntactical structures and as a comprehensive review of the forms and syntax of Latin. In many cases, a greater number of illustrative sentences is provided in the appendix than in the actual text.

In order to enhance the value of the book as a tool for the reading of a wide variety of Latin authors, the appendix also contains some syntactical explanations which have not been included in the main body of the text.

Refer to the alphabetical index for cross-referencing between the text and the appendix.

NOUNS

Declension Endings

SINGULAR

I	II	III	IV	V			
F.*	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.†
Nom. -a	-us (-er, -r)	-um	--	--	-us	-ū	-ēs
Gen. -ae	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-ūs	-ūs	-ēī
Dat. -ae	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-ūī	-ū	-ēī
Acc. -am	-um	-um	-em	--	-um	-ū	-em
Abl. -ā	-ō	-ō	-e	-e (-ī)	-ū	-ū	-ē

PLURAL

I	II	III	IV	V			
F.*	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.†
Nom. -ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a(-ia)	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Gen. -ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um(-ium)	-um(-ium)	-uum	-uum	-ērum
Dat. -īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus
Acc. -ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs(-īs)	-a(-ia)	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
Abl. -īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus

* Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except for those that denote males, such as *nauta*, 'sailor'.

† Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except for *diēs*, which is generally masculine.

Note that the *vocative* case is the same as the nominative except in nouns of the second declension whose nominative singular ends in *-us*; their vocative ends in *-e*. If such a noun has a stem ending in *-i* (before the *-us* ending), the vocative form ends in a single *-ī*: **Marcus**, vocative **Marce**; **Rōmānus**, vocative **Rōmāne**; **filius**, vocative **fili**; **gladius**, vocative **gladi**.

The *locative* case endings for the first two declensions are the same as the genitive singular if the word is singular, or the ablative plural if the word is plural: **Rōma**, locative **Rōmae**; **Athēnae**, locative **Athēnīs**. For nouns of the third declension, the locative ends in *-e* or *-ī* in the singular: **Carthāgō**, locative **Carthāgīne**; **rūs**, locative **rūrī**. In the plural the ending *-ibus* is used.

First Declension

SINGULAR

Nom.	fēmina	(the/a) woman (subject)
Gen.	fēminae	of the (a) woman, (the/a) woman's
Dat.	fēminae	to/for (the/a) woman
Acc.	fēminam	(the/a) woman (object)
Abl.	fēminā	from/with/in/by (the/a) woman

PLURAL

Nom.	fēminae	(the) women (subject)
Gen.	fēminārum	of (the) women, women's
Dat.	fēminis	to/for (the) women
Acc.	fēminās	(the) women (object)
Abl.	fēminīs	from/with/in/by (the) women

Masculine nouns in the first declension are declined like **fēmina**.

Second Declension

SINGULAR

M.	M.	M.	N.
Nom.	nātus	puer	liber
Gen.	nātī	puerī	librī
Dat.	nātō	puerō	librō
Acc.	nātūm	puerum	librum
Abl.	nātō	puerō	librō

PLURAL

M.	M.	M.	N.
Nom.	nātī	puerī	librī
Gen.	nātōrum	puerōrum	librōrum
Dat.	nātīs	puerīs	librīs
Acc.	nātōs	puerōs	librōs
Abl.	nātīs	puerīs	librīs

Although none are included in this book, feminine nouns ending in **-us** in the second declension are declined like **nātus** (except for **domus** which, although primarily fourth declension, has alternate second declension endings in cases other than the nominative, dative, and ablative plural).

Third Declension

SINGULAR

	M.	M.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	rūmor	homō	miles	servitūs	sidus
Gen.	rūmōris	hominis	militis	servitūtis	sideris
Dat.	rūmōrī	hominī	militi	servitūtī	siderī
Acc.	rūmōrem	hominem	militem	servitūtem	sidus
Abl.	rūmōre	homine	militē	servitūtē	sidere

PLURAL

	M.	M.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	rūmōrēs	hominēs	militēs	servitūtēs	sidera
Gen.	rūmōrum	hominum	militum	servitūtum	siderum
Dat.	rūmōribus	hominibus	militibus	servitūtibus	sideribus
Acc.	rūmōrēs	hominēs	militēs	servitūtēs	sidera
Abl.	rūmōribus	hominibus	militibus	servitūtibus	sideribus

Nouns of this declension are i-stem if:

1. the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables.
2. the stem ends in a double consonant or **-x** (exceptions: **māter**, **frāter**, **pater**, even though the first rule also applies).
3. they are neuter nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.

Third Declension: i-Stems

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ignis	nox	mare
Gen.	ignis	noctis	maris
Dat.	igni	nocti	marī
Acc.	ignem	noctem	mare
Abl.	igne (or ignī)	nocte	marī

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ignēs	noctēs	maria
Gen.	ignium	noctium	[marium]
Dat.	ignibus	noctibus	maribus
Acc.	ignēs, ignis	noctēs, noctis	maria
Abl.	ignibus	noctibus	maribus

SINGULAR

	N.	N.	N.
Nom.	animal	[moene	exemplar
Gen.	animālis	moenis	exemplāris
Dat.	animāli	moenī	exemplāri
Acc.	animal	moene	exemplar
Abl.	animāli	moenī]	exemplāri

PLURAL

	N.	N.	N.
Nom.	animālia	moenia	exemplāria
Gen.	animālium	moenium	exemplārium
Dat.	animālibus	moenibus	exemplāribus
Acc.	animālia	moenia	exemplāria
Abl.	animālibus	moenibus	exemplāribus

Third Declension: Irregular Noun *vis*

SINGULAR PLURAL

	F.	F.
Nom.	vis	virēs
Gen.	--	virium
Dat.	--	viribus
Acc.	vim	virēs, viris
Abl.	vī	viribus

Fourth Declension

SINGULAR

PLURAL

	M.	N.	M.	N.
Nom.	frūctus	genū*	frūctūs	genua
Gen.	frūctūs	genūs	frūctuum	genuum
Dat.	frūctui	genū	frūctibus	genibus
Acc.	frūctum	genū	frūctūs	genua
Abl.	frūctū	genū	frūctibus	genibus

* genū, 'knee' (not included in this book).

Although none are included in this book (with the exception of *domus*), feminine nouns in the fourth declension are declined like *frūctus*.

Fifth Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	F.	F.
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	reī	rērum
Dat.	reī	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

First-Second Declension

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō
	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnis	magnis	magnis
Acc.	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnis	magnis	magnis
	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dexter	dextra	dextrum
Gen.	dextrī	dextrae	dextrī
Dat.	dextrō	dextrae	dextrō
Acc.	dextrum	dextram	dextrum
Abl.	dextrō	dextrā	dextrō
	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dextrī	dextrae	dextra
Gen.	dextrōrum	dextrārum	dextrōrum
Dat.	dextris	dextris	dextris
Acc.	dextrōs	dextrās	dextra
Abl.	dextris	dextris	dextris

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE SINGULAR IN **-ius**

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	alius	alia	aliud
Gen.	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	alterius*	alterius*	alterius*
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	aliī	aliī	aliī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	alium	aliām	aliud
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	aliō	aliā	aliō

* The genitive of **alter** is generally used for the genitive of **alius** in order to avoid confusion between **alius** (nominative) and **alius** (genitive).

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtī	tōtae	tōta	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	tōtōrum	tōtārum	tōtōrum	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	tōtīs	tōtīs	tōtīs	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	tōtōs	tōtās	tōta	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	tōtīs	tōtīs	tōtīs	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

The other adjectives in this category are: **alter**, **ūllus**, **nūllus**, **uter**, **neuter**, **sōlus**, **ūnus**.

Third Declension

ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācī	ācī	ācī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (ācris)	ācrēs (ācris)	ācria
Abl.	ācī	ācī	ācī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS

ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION

	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	omnis	omne		ingēns
Gen.	omnis	omnis		ingentis
Dat.	omnī	omnī		ingenti
Acc.	omnem	omne	ingentem	ingēns
Abl.	omnī	omnī		ingentī

PLURAL			PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.		M. & F.	N.
Nom.	omnēs	omnia	ingentēs	ingentia	
Gen.	omnium	omnium		ingentium	
Dat.	omnibus	omnibus		ingentibus	
Acc.	omnēs (-is)	omnia	ingentēs (-is)	ingentia	
Abl.	omnibus	omnibus		ingentibus	

Present Participles

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.		M. & F.	N.
Nom.	optāns		optantēs	optantia	
Gen.	optantis			optantium	
Dat.	optanti			optantibus	
Acc.	optantem	optāns	optantēs (-is)	optantia	
Abl.	optantī (-e)			optantibus	

Comparative Degree of Adjectives

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. & F.	N.		M. & F.	N.
Nom.	fortiōr	fortiōs	fortiōrēs	fortiōra	
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum	
Dat.	fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortiōs	fortiōrēs (-is)	fortiōra	
Abl.	fortiōre (-i)	fortiōre (-i)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus	

Other Adjectives

THE NUMERICAL ADJECTIVE **duo**

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs (-o)	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE **hic**

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE **ille**

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
	PLURAL			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	his	hīs	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	his	hīs	illis	illis	illis

THE INTENSIVE
ADJECTIVE *ipse*

THE DEMONSTRATIVE
ADJECTIVE *iste*

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	iste	ista	istud
Gen.	ipsius	ipsiūs	ipsius	istius	istius	istius
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	istī	istī	istī
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	istum	istam	istud
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	istō	istā	istō
	PLURAL			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	ipsis	ipsīs	ipsis	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	ipsis	ipsīs	ipsis	istīs	istīs	istīs

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE *is*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	ei, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

THE ADJECTIVE **idem**

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	idem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	eīdem (idem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

THE INTERROGATIVE
ADJECTIVE **qui**THE INDEFINITE
ADJECTIVE **aliquī**

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quod
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

FIRST PERSON

SECOND PERSON

THIRD PERSON

SINGULAR

Nom. ego, I

tū, you

The adjective **is**, **ea**,

Gen. meī, of me

tui, of you

id is used for the

FIRST PERSON

SECOND PERSON

THIRD PERSON

Dat. mihi, to/for me

SINGULAR

Acc. mē, me

tibi, to/for you

personal pronoun
of the third person.

Abl. mē, from/with/in/by me

tē, you

tē, from/with/in/by you

PLURAL

Nom. nōs, we

vōs, you

Gen. nostrum, nostri*, of us

vestrum, vestri*, of you

Dat. nōbis, to/for us

vōbis, to/for you

Acc. nōs, us

vōs, you

Abl. nōbis, from/with/in/by us

vōbis, from/with/in/by you

* **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as partitive genitives, **nostri** and **vestri** as objective genitives.

Reflexive Pronoun

Nom. --

Gen. sui, of himself, herself, itself, themselves

Dat. sibi, to/for himself, herself, itself, themselves

Acc. sē (sēsē), himself, herself, itself, themselves

Abl. sē (sēsē), from/with/in/by himself, herself, itself, themselves

THE INTERROGATIVE
PRONOUN **quis**THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN **quidam**

SINGULAR

SINGULAR

	M. & F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid	quidam	quaedam	quiddam
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cui	cui	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quem	quid	quendam	quandam	quiddam
Abl.	quō	quō	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	qui	quae	quae	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

VERBS

Personal Endings

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE
SINGULAR	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1st -ō or -m	1st -or or -r	1st -i
2nd -s	2nd -ris and -re	2nd -istī
3rd -t	3rd -tur	3rd -it
PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL
1st -mus	1st -mur	1st -imus
2nd -tis	2nd -minī	2nd -istis
3rd -nt	3rd -ntur	3rd -ērunt (-ēre)

First Conjugation: optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus, 'desire, wish (for), choose'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
optō, I desire, I am desiring, I do desire, I always desire	optor, I am (being) desired
optās, you desire, etc.	optāris, optāre, you are (being) desired
optat, he/she/it desires, etc.	optātūr, he/she/it is (being) desired
optāmus, we desire, etc.	optāmūr, we are (being) desired
optātis, you desire, etc.	optāmīni, you are (being) desired
optant, they desire, etc.	optāntūr, they are (being) desired

IMPERFECT

optābam, I was desiring, I used to desire, I kept on desiring, I desired (habitually)	optābar, I was (being) desired
optābās, you were desiring, etc.	optābāris, optābāre, you were (being) desired
optābat, he/she/it was desiring, etc.	optābātūr, he/she/it was (being) desired
optābāmus, we were desiring, etc.	optābāmūr, we were (being) desired
optābātis, you were desiring, etc.	optābāmīni, you were (being) desired
optābānt, they were desiring, etc.	optābāntūr, they were (being) desired

ACTIVE

optābō, I shall desire, I shall be desiring

optābis, you will desire, etc.

optābit, he/she/it will desire, etc.

optābimus, we shall desire, etc.

optābitis, you will desire, etc.

optābunt, they will desire, etc.

PASSIVE

FUTURE

optābor, I shall be desired

optāberis, optābere, you will be desired

optābitur, he/she/it will be desired

optābimus, we shall be desired

optābjmini, you will be desired

optābuntur, they will be desired

PERFECT

optāvī, I have desired, I desired, I did desire

optāvistī, you have desired, etc.

optāvit, he/she/it has desired, etc.

optāvimus, we have desired, etc.

optāvistis, you have desired, etc.

optāvērunt, optāvēre, they have desired, etc.

optātus (-a, -um) sum, I have been desired, I was desired

optātus (-a, -um) es, you have been desired, etc.

optātus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it has been desired, etc.

optātī (-ae, -a) sumus, we have been desired, etc.

optātī (-ae, -a) estis, you have been desired, etc.

optātī (-ae, -a) sunt, they have been desired, etc.

PLUPERFECT

optāveram, I had desired

optāverās, you had desired

optāverat, he/she/it had desired

optāverāmus, we had desired

optāverātis, you had desired

optāverant, they had desired

optātus (-a, -um) eram, I had been desired

optātus (-a, -um) erās, you had been desired

optātus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it had been desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erāmus, we had been desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erātis, you had been desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erant, they had been desired

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

optāverō, I shall have desired	optātus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have been desired
optāveris, you will have desired	optātus (-a, -um) eris, you will have been desired
optāverit, he/she/it will have desired	optātus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it will have been desired
optāverimus, we shall have desired	optāti (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall have been desired
optāveritis, you will have desired	optāti (-ae, -a) eritis, you will have been desired
optāverint, they will have desired	optāti (-ae, -a) erunt, they will have been desired

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

optem	opter
optēs	optēris, optēre
optet	optētur
optēmus	optēmur
optētis	optēmini
optent	optentur

IMPERFECT

optārem	optārer
optārēs	optārēris, optārēre
optāret	optārētur
optārēmus	optārēmur
optārētis	optārēmini
optārent	optārentur

PERFECT

optāverim	optātus (-a, -um) sim
optāveris	optātus (-a, -um) sīs
optāverit	optātus (-a, -um) sit
optāverimus	optāti (-ae, -a) sīmus
optāveritis	optāti (-ae, -a) sītis
optāverint	optāti (-ae, -a) sint

ACTIVE	PASSIVE		
PLUPERFECT			
optāvissem	optātus (-a, -um) essem		
optāvissēs	optātus (-a, -um) essēs		
optāvisset	optātus (-a, -um) esset		
optāvissēmus	optātī (-ae, -a) essēmus		
optāvissētis	optātī (-ae, -a) essētis		
optāvissent	optātī (-ae, -a) essent		
PARTICIPLES			
ACTIVE	PASSIVE		
PRESENT			
optāns, desiring	--		
PERFECT			
--	optātus, -a, -um, (having been) desired		
FUTURE			
optātūrus, -a, -um, about to desire, going to desire, ready to desire	optandus, -a, -um, to be desired, having to be desired		
INFINITIVES			
ACTIVE	PASSIVE		
PRESENT			
optāre, to desire	optārī, to be desired		
PERFECT			
optāvisse, to have desired	optātus, -a, -um esse, to have been desired		
FUTURE			
optātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about to desire, to be going to desire, to be ready to desire	optātum irī, to be about to be desired, to be going to be desired, to be ready to be desired		
IMPERATIVES			
ACTIVE	PASSIVE		
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
optā, desire!	optāte, desire!	optāre, be desired!	optāminī, be desired!

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE*

2nd optātō, you shall desire!	optātōte, you shall desire!	optātō, you shall be desired!	--
3rd optatō, he/she/it shall desire!	optāntō, they shall desire!	optātō, he/she/it shall be desired!	optantor, they shall be desired!

* The formation and use of the future imperative are discussed on pages 362 and 381-382.

Periphrastic Conjugations

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to desire, I am going to desire, I am ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) sum, I am having-to-be desired, I should be desired, I ought to be desired, I must be desired, I have to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) es, you are about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) es, you are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it is about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it is having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūri (-ae, -a) sumus, we are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) sumus, we are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūri (-ae, -a) estis, you are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) estis, you are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūri (-ae, -a) sunt, they are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) sunt, they are having-to-be desired, etc.

IMPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) eram, I was about to desire, I was going to desire, I was ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) erās, you had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) erās, you were about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) erās, you had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it was about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it had to be desired
optātūri (-ae, -a) erāmus, we were about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) erāmus, we had to be desired

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	IMPERFECT
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erātis, you were about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) erātis, you had to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erant, they were about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) erant, they had to be desired
	FUTURE
optātūrus (-a, -um) erō, I shall be about to desire, I shall be going to desire, I shall be ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) eris, you will be about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) eris, you will have to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it will be about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it will have to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall be about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall have to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) eritis, you will be about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) eritis, you will have to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erunt, they will be about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) erunt, they will have to be desired
	PERFECT
optātūrus (-a, -um) fui, I have been (I was) about to desire, going to desire, ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) fui, I had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) fuistī, you have been about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) fuistī, you had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) fuit, he/she/it has been about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) fuit, he/she/it had to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuimus, we have been about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) fuimus, we had to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuistis, you have been about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) fuistis, you had to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuērunt, fuēre, they have been about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) fuērunt, fuēre, they had to be desired
	PLUPERFECT
optātūrus (-a, -um) fueram, I had been about to desire, I had been going to desire, I had been ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) fueram, I had had to be desired

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerās, you had
been about to desire, etc.

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerat, he/she/it
had been about to desire, etc.

optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerāmus, we had
been about to desire, etc.

optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerātis, you had
been about to desire, etc.

optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerant, they had
been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuerās, you had
had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fuerat, he/she/it
had had to be desired

optandi (-ae, -a) fuerāmus, we had
had to be desired

optandi (-ae, -a) fuerātis, you had
had to be desired

optandi (-ae, -a) fuerant, they had
had to be desired

FUTURE PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerō, I shall
have been about to desire, I shall
have been going to desire, I shall
have been ready to desire

optātūrus (-a, -um) fueris, you will
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerit, he/she/it
will have been about to desire,
etc.

optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerimus, we shall
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūri (-ae, -a) fueritis, you will
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerint, they will
have been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuerō, I shall
have had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fueris, you will
have had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fuerit, he/she/it
will have had to be desired

optandi (-ae, -a) fuerimus, we shall
have had to be desired

optandi (-ae, -a) fueritis, you will
have had to be desired

optandi (-ae, -a) fuerint, they will
have had to be desired

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) sim

optātūrus (-a, -um) sis

optātūrus (-a, -um) sit

optātūri (-ae, -a) sīmus

optātūri (-ae, -a) sītis

optātūri (-ae, -a) sint

optandus (-a, -um) sim

optandus (-a, -um) sis

optandus (-a, -um) sit

optandi (-ae, -a) sīmus

optandi (-ae, -a) sītis

optandi (-ae, -a) sint

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

IMPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) essem
 optātūrus (-a, -um) essēs
 optātūrus (-a, -um) esset
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essēmus
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essētis
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essent

optandus (-a, -um) essem
 optandus (-a, -um) essēs
 optandus (-a, -um) esset
 optandi (-ae, -a) essēmus
 optandi (-ae, -a) essētis
 optandi (-ae, -a) essent

PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerim
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fueris
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerit
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerimus
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fueritis
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerint

optandus (-a, -um) fuerim
 optandus (-a, -um) fueris
 optandus (-a, -um) fuerit
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuerimus
 optandi (-ae, -a) fueritis
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuerint

PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisse
 optatūrus (-a, -um) fuissēs
 optatūrus (-a, -um) fuisset
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissēmus
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissētis
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissent

optandus (-a, -um) fuisse
 optandus (-a, -um) fuissēs
 optandus (-a, -um) fuisset
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuissēmus
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuissētis
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuissent

(Periphrastics have no participles.)

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) esse, to be about
 to desire, to be going to desire,
 to be ready to desire

optandus (-a, -um) esse, to have to
 be desired

PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisse, to have
 been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuisse, to have
 had to be desired

FUTURE

--

--

(Periphrastics have no imperatives.)

Second Conjugation: impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus, 'fill, fill up'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

impleō	impleor
implēs	implēris, implēre
implet	implētur
implēmus	implēmur
implētis	implēminī
implent	implentur

IMPERFECT

implēbam	implēbar
implēbās	implēbāris, implēbāre
implēbat	implēbātur
implēbāmus	implēbāmur
implēbātis	implēbāminī
implēbant	implēbantur

FUTURE

implēbō	implēbor
implēbis	implēberis, implēbere
implēbit	implēbitur
implēbimus	implēbimur
implēbitis	implēbiminī
implēbunt	implēbuntur

PERFECT

implēvī	implētus (-a, -um) sum
implēvistī	implētus (-a, -um) es
implēvit	implētus (-a, -um) est
implēvimus	implētī (-ae, -a) sumus
implēvistis	implētī (-ae, -a) estis
implēvērunt, implēvēre	implētī (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

implēveram	implētus (-a, -um) eram
implēverās	implētus (-a, -um) erās
implēverat	implētus (-a, -um) erat
implēverāmus	implētī (-ae, -a) erāmus
implēverātis	implētī (-ae, -a) erātis
implēverant	implētī (-ae, -a) erant

ACTIVE

implēverō
implēveris
implēverit
implēverimus
implēveritis
implēverint

PASSIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

implētus (-a, -um) erō
implētus (-a, -um) eris
implētus (-a, -um) erit
implētī (-ae, -a) erimus
implētī (-ae, -a) eritis
implētī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

impleam
impleās
impleat
impleāmus
impleātis
impleant

PASSIVE

PRESENT

implear
impleāris, impleāre
impleātur
impleāmur
impleāminī
impleantur

IMPERFECT

implērem
implērēs
implēret
implērēmus
implērētis
implērent

implērer
implērēris, implērēre
implērētur
implērēmur
implērēminī
implērentur

PERFECT

implēverim
implēveris
implēverit
implēverimus
implēveritis
implēverint

implētus (-a, -um) sim
implētus (-a, -um) sis
implētus (-a, -um) sit
implētī (-ae, -a) sīmus
implētī (-ae, -a) sitis
implētī (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

implēvissem
implēvissēs
implēvisset
implēvissēmus
implēvissētis
implēvissent

implētus (-a, -um) essem
implētus (-a, -um) essēs
implētus (-a, -um) esset
implētī (-ae, -a) essēmus
implētī (-ae, -a) essētis
implētī (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

implēns

PERFECT

--

implētus, -a, -um

FUTURE

implētūrus, -a, -um

implendus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

implēre

implēri

PERFECT

implēvisse

implētus, -a, -um esse

FUTURE

implētūrus, -a, -um esse

implētum iri

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

PRESENT

implē

implēte

implēre

implēmini

FUTURE

2nd implētō

implētōte

implētor

--

3rd implētō

implētō

implētor

implēntor

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See *optō* for examples.

Third Conjugation: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 'lead; consider'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

dūcō

dūcor

dūcīs

dūceris, dūcere

dūcīt

dūcitur

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

dūcimus	dūcimur
dūcitis	dūcimini
dūcunt	dūcuntur

IMPERFECT

dūcēbam	dūcēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris, dūcēbāre
dūcēbat	dūcēbātūr
dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmūr
dūcēbātis	dūcēbāmīnī
dūcēbant	dūcēbāntūr

FUTURE

dūcam	dūcar
dūcēs	dūcēris, dūcēre
dūcet	dūcētūr
dūcēmus	dūcēmūr
dūcētis	dūcēmīnī
dūcent	dūcēntūr

PERFECT

dūxi	ductus (-a, -um) sum
dūxistī	ductus (-a, -um) es
dūxit	ductus (-a, -um) est
dūximus	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus
dūxistis	ductī (-ae, -a) estis
dūxērunt, dūxēre	ductī (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

dūxeram	ductus (-a, -um) eram
dūxerās	ductus (-a, -um) erās
dūxerat	ductus (-a, -um) erat
dūxerāmus	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus
dūxerātis	ductī (-ae, -a) erātis
dūxerant	ductī (-ae, -a) erant

FUTURE PERFECT

dūxerō	ductus (-a, -um) erō
dūxeris	ductus (-a, -um) eris
dūxerit	ductus (-a, -um) erit

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE PERFECT

dūxerimus	ducti (-ae, -a) erimus
dūxeritis	ducti (-ae, -a) eritis
dūxerint	ducti (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

dūcam	dūcar
dūcās	dūcāris, dūcāre
dūcat	dūcātur
dūcāmus	dūcāmur
dūcātis	dūcāmini
dūcant	dūcantur

IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerer
dūcerēs	dūcerēris, dūcerēre
dūceret	dūcerētur
dūcerēmus	dūcerēmur
dūcerētis	dūcerēmini
dūcerent	dūcerentur

PERFECT

dūxerim	ductus (-a, -um) sim
dūxeris	ductus (-a, -um) sis
dūxerit	ductus (-a, -um) sit
dūxerimus	ducti (-ae, -a) simus
dūxeritis	ducti (-ae, -a) sitis
dūxerint	ducti (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

dūxissem	ductus (-a, -um) essem
dūxisſēs	ductus (-a, -um) essēs
dūxisſet	ductus (-a, -um) esſet
dūxisſēmus	ducti (-ae, -a) essēmus
dūxisſētis	ducti (-ae, -a) essētis
dūxisſent	ducti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

dūcēns

--

PERFECT

--

ductus, -a, -um

FUTURE

ductūrus, -a, -um

dūcendus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

dūcere

dūci

PERFECT

dūxisse

ductus, -a, -um esse

FUTURE

ductūrus, -a, -um esse

ductum iri

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

PRESENT

dūc*

dūcite

dūcere

dūcimini

FUTURE

2nd dūcītō

dūcītōte

dūcītor

--

3rd dūcītō

dūcūntō

dūcītor

dūcūntor

* dūcō, dicō, faciō, and ferō drop the final -e.

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See optō for examples.

Third Conjugation i-Stems: incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, 'begin'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

incipiō

incipior

incipis

inciperis, incipere

incipit

incipitur

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

incipimus	incipimur
incipitis	incipimini
incipiunt	incipiuntur

IMPERFECT

incipiēbam	incipiēbar
incipiēbās	incipiēbāris, incipiēbāre
incipiēbat	incipiēbātur
incipiēbāmus	incipiēbāmur
incipiēbātis	incipiēbāmini
incipiēbant	incipiēbantur

FUTURE

incipiam	incipiar
incipiēs	incipiēris, incipiēre
incipiet	incipiētur
incipiēmus	incipiēmur
incipiētis	incipiēmini
incipient	incipientur

PERFECT

incēpī	inceptus (-a, -um) sum
incēpistī	inceptus (-a, -um) es
incēpit	inceptus (-a, -um) est
incēpimus	inceptī (-ae, -a) sumus
incēpistis	inceptī (-ae, -a) estis
incēpērunt, incēpēre	inceptī (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

incēperam	inceptus (-a, -um) eram
incēperās	inceptus (-a, -um) erās
incēperat	inceptus (-a, -um) erat
incēperāmus	inceptī (-ae, -a) erāmus
incēperātis	inceptī (-ae, -a) erātis
incēperant	inceptī (-ae, -a) erant

FUTURE PERFECT

incēperō	inceptus (-a, -um) erō
incēperis	inceptus (-a, -um) eris
incēperit	inceptus (-a, -um) erit
incēperimus	inceptī (-ae, -a) erimus
incēperitis	inceptī (-ae, -a) eritis
incēperint	inceptī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

incipiam	incipiar
incipiās	incipiāris, incipiāre
incipiat	incipiātur
incipiāmus	incipiāmur
incipiātis	incipiāminī
incipiant	incipiantur

IMPERFECT

inciperem	inciperer
inciperēs	inciperēris, inciperēre
inciperet	inciperētur
inciperēmus	inciperēmur
inciperētis	inciperēminī
inciperent	inciperentur

PERFECT

incēperim	inceptus (-a, -um) sim
incēperis	inceptus (-a, -um) sis
incēperit	inceptus (-a, -um) sit
incēperimus	incepti (-ae, -a) simus
incēperitis	incepti (-ae, -a) sitis
incēperint	incepti (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

incēpissem	inceptus (-a, -um) essem
incēpissēs	inceptus (-a, -um) essēs
incēpisset	inceptus (-a, -um) esset
incēpissēmus	incepti (-ae, -a) essēmus
incēpissētis	incepti (-ae, -a) essētis
incēpissent	incepti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

incipiēns	--
-----------	----

PERFECT

--	inceptus, -a, -um
----	-------------------

FUTURE

inceptūrus, -a, -um	incipiendus, -a -um
---------------------	---------------------

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE PASSIVE

PRESENT

incipere incipi

PERFECT

incēpisse inceptus, -a, -um esse

FUTURE

inceptūrus, -a, -um esse inceptum iri

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE PASSIVE

SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL

PRESENT

incipe incipite incipere incipimini

FUTURE

2nd incipitō incipitōte incipitor --
3rd incipitō incipiuntō incipitor incipiuntor

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See *optō* for examples.

Fourth Conjugation: sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, 'feel, perceive'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE PASSIVE

PRESENT

sentiō	sentior
sentis	sentīris, sentīre
sentit	sentītur
sentīmus	sentīmur
sentītis	sentīmīni
sentīunt	sentīuntur

IMPERFECT

sentiēbam	sentiēbar
sentiēbās	sentiēbāris, sentiēbāre
sentiēbat	sentiēbātur

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

IMPERFECT

sentiēbāmus	sentiēbāmur
sentiēbātis	sentiēbāmīni
sentiēbant	sentiēbantur

FUTURE

sentiam	sentiar
sentiēs	sentiēris, sentiēre
sentiet	sentiētūr
sentiēmus	sentiēmūr
sentiētis	sentiēmīni
sentient	sentientur

PERFECT

sēnsi	sēnsus (-a, -um) sum
sēnsistī	sēnsus (-a, -um) es
sēnsit	sēnsus (-a, -um) est
sēnsimus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sumus
sēnsistis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) estis
sēnsērunt, sēnsēre	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

sēnsēram	sēnsus (-a, -um) eram
sēnsērās	sēnsus (-a, -um) erās
sēnsērat	sēnsus (-a, -um) erat
sēnsērāmus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erāmus
sēnsērātis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erātis
sēnsērant	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erant

FUTURE PERFECT

sēnsērō	sēnsus (-a, -um) erō
sēnsēris	sēnsus (-a, -um) eris
sēnsērit	sēnsus (-a, -um) erit
sēnsērimus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erimus
sēnsēritis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) eritis
sēnsērint	sēnsi (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

sentiam	sentiar
sentiās	sentiāris, sentiāre
sentiat	sentiātūr

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

sentiāmus	sentiāmur
sentiātis	sentiāminī
sentiant	sentiantur

IMPERFECT

sentīrem	sentīrer
sentīrēs	sentīrēris, sentīrēre
sentīret	sentīrētur
sentīrēmus	sentīrēmur
sentīrētis	sentīrēminī
sentīrent	sentīrentur

PERFECT

sēnserim	sēnsus (-a, -um) sim
sēnseris	sēnsus (-a, -um) sis
sēnserit	sēnsus (-a, -um) sit
sēnserimus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sīmus
sēnseritis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sītis
sēnserint	sēnsi (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

sēnsissem	sēnsus (-a, -um) essem
sēnsissēs	sēnsus (-a, -um) essēs
sēnsisset	sēnsus (-a, -um) esset
sēnsissēmus	sēnsi (-ae, -a) essēmus
sēnsissētis	sēnsi (-ae, -a) essētis
sēnsissent	sēnsi (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
sentiēns	--

PERFECT

--	sēnsus, -a, -um
----	-----------------

FUTURE

sēnsūrus, -a, -um	sentiēndus, -a, -um
-------------------	---------------------

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	PRESENT
sentire	sentiri
	PERFECT
sēnsisse	sēnsus, -a, -um esse
	FUTURE
sēnsūrus, -a, -um esse	sēnsum iri

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE		
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
PRESENT				
senti	sentite	sentire	sentimini	
FUTURE				
2nd	sentitō	sentitōte	sentitor	--
3rd	sentitō	sentiuuntō	sentitor	sentiuuntor

PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb “to be” make up the periphrastic conjugations. See *optō* for examples.

Deponent Verbs

precōr, precārī, precātus sum, 'beg, request'
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, 'fear'
ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum, 'enter, proceed'
experior, experīrī, expertus sum, 'try, experience'

First Conjugation

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT
precor, I beg, I am begging, I do beg, I (always) beg	precābar, I was begging, etc.
precāris, precāre, you beg, etc.	precābāris, precābāre, you were begging, etc.
precātur, he/she/it begs, etc.	precābātur, he/she/it was begging, etc.

PRESENT

precāmur, we beg, etc.
 precāmini, you beg, etc.
 precantur, they beg, etc.

FUTURE

precābor, I shall beg, etc.

precāberis, precābere, you will
 beg, etc.

precābitur, he/she/it will beg, etc.

precābimur, we shall beg, etc.

precābimini, you will beg, etc.

precābuntur, they will beg, etc.

PLUPERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) eram, I had begged

precātus (-a, -um) erās

precātus (-a, -um) erat

precātī (-ae, -a) erāmus

precātī (-ae, -a) erātis

precātī (-ae, -a) erant

IMPERFECT

precābāmur, we were begging, etc.
 precābāmini, you were begging, etc.
 precābāntur, they were begging,
 etc.

PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) sum, I have
 begged, etc.

precātus (-a, -um) es

precātus (-a, -um) est

precātī (-ae, -a) sumus

precātī (-ae, -a) estis

precātī (-ae, -a) sunt

FUTURE PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have
 begged

precātus (-a, -um) eris

precātus (-a, -um) erit

precātī (-ae, -a) erimus

precātī (-ae, -a) eritis

precātī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

precēr
 precēris, precēre
 precētūr
 precēmur
 precēminī
 precentur

PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) sim
 precātus (-a, -um) sīs
 precātus (-a, -um) sit
 precātī (-ae, -a) sīmus
 precātī (-ae, -a) sitis
 precātī (-ae, -a) sint

IMPERFECT

precārer
 precārēris, precārēre
 precārētūr
 precārēmur
 precārēminī
 precārentur

PLUPERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) essem
 precātus (-a, -um) essēs
 precātus (-a, -um) esset
 precātī (-ae, -a) essēmus
 precātī (-ae, -a) essētis
 precātī (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

precāns, begging

PERFECT

precātus, -a, -um, having begged

FUTURE ACTIVE

precātūrus, -a, -um, about to beg, going to beg, ready to beg

FUTURE PASSIVE

precandus, -a, -um, to be begged, having to be begged

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

precāri, to beg

PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) esse, to have begged

FUTURE

precātūrus (-a, -um) esse, to be about to beg, to be going to beg, to be ready to beg

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

precāre, beg!

precāmini, beg!

FUTURE

2nd precātor, you shall beg! --

3rd precātor, he/she/it shall beg! precantor, they shall beg!

Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

vereor	ingredior	experior
verēris, verēre	ingrederis, ingredere	experīris, experire
verētur	ingreditur	experītur
verēmur	ingredimur	experīmur
verēmini	ingredimini	experīmini
verentur	ingrediuntur	experiuntur

IMPERFECT

verēbar	ingrediēbar	experiēbar
verēbāris, verēbāre	*ingrediēbāris, ingrediēbāre	experiēbāris, experiēbāre
verēbātūr	ingrediēbātūr	experiēbātūr
verēbāmūr	ingrediēbāmūr	experiēbāmūr
verēbāmīnī	ingrediēbāmīnī	experiēbāmīnī
verēbāntūr	ingrediēbāntūr	experiēbāntūr

FUTURE

verēbor	ingrediar	experiar
verēberis, verēbere	ingrediēris, ingrediēre	experiēris, experiēre
verēbitūr	ingrediētūr	experiētūr
verēbimūr	ingrediēmūr	experiēmūr
verēbimīnī	ingrediēmīnī	experiēmīnī
verēbūntūr	ingredientur	experientur

PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) sum	ingressus (-a, -um) sum	expertus (-a, -um) sum
veritus (-a, -um) es	ingressus (-a, -um) es	expertus (-a, -um) es
veritus (-a, -um) est	ingressus (-a, -um) est	expertus (-a, -um) est
veritī (-ae, -a) sumus	ingressī (-ae, -a) sumus	expertī (-ae, -a) sumus
veritī (-ae, -a) estis	ingressī (-ae, -a) estis	expertī (-ae, -a) estis
veritī (-ae, -a) sunt	ingressī (-ae, -a) sunt	expertī (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) eram	ingressus (-a, -um) eram	expertus (-a, -um) eram
veritus (-a, -um) erās	ingressus (-a, -um) erās	expertus (-a, -um) erās
veritus (-a, -um) erat	ingressus (-a, -um) erat	expertus (-a, -um) erat
veritī (-ae, -a) erāmus	ingressī (-ae, -a) erāmus	expertī (-ae, -a) erāmus
veritī (-ae, -a) erātis	ingressī (-ae, -a) erātis	expertī (-ae, -a) erātis
veritī (-ae, -a) erant	ingressī (-ae, -a) erant	expertī (-ae, -a) erant

FUTURE PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) erō	ingressus (-a, -um) erō	expertus (-a, -um) erō
veritus (-a, -um) eris	ingressus (-a, -um) eris	expertus (-a, -um) eris
veritus (-a, -um) erit	ingressus (-a, -um) erit	expertus (-a, -um) erit
veritī (-ae, -a) erimus	ingressī (-ae, -a) erimus	expertī (-ae, -a) erimus
veritī (-ae, -a) eritis	ingressī (-ae, -a) eritis	expertī (-ae, -a) eritis
veritī (-ae, -a) erunt	ingressī (-ae, -a) erunt	expertī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

verear	ingrediar	experiar
vereāris, vereāre	ingrediāris, ingrediāre	experiāris, experiāre
vereātur	ingrediātur	experiātur
vereāmur	ingrediāmur	experiāmur
vereāmini	ingrediāmini	experiāmini
vereantur	ingrediantur	expiantur

IMPERFECT

verērer	ingrederer	experirer
verērēris, verērēre	ingrederēris, ingrederēre	experirēris, experirēre
verērētur	ingrederētur	experirētur
verērēmur	ingrederēmur	experirēmur
verērēmini	ingrederēmini	experirēmini
verērentur	ingrederentur	experirentur

PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) sim	ingressus (-a, -um) sim	expertus (-a, -um) sim
veritus (-a, -um) sis	ingressus (-a, -um) sis	expertus (-a, -um) sis
veritus (-a, -um) sit	ingressus (-a, -um) sit	expertus (-a, -um) sit
veriti (-ae, -a) simus	ingressi (-ae, -a) simus	experti (-ae, -a) simus
veriti (-ae, -a) sitis	ingressi (-ae, -a) sitis	experti (-ae, -a) sitis
veriti (-ae, -a) sint	ingressi (-ae, -a) sint	experti (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) essem	ingressus (-a, -um) essem	expertus (-a, -um) essem
veritus (-a, -um) essēs	ingressus (-a, -um) essēs	expertus (-a, -um) essēs
veritus (-a, -um) esset	ingressus (-a, -um) esset	expertus (-a, -um) esset
veriti (-ae, -a) essēmus	ingressi (-ae, -a) essēmus	experti (-ae, -a) essēmus
veriti (-ae, -a) essētis	ingressi (-ae, -a) essētis	experti (-ae, -a) essētis
veriti (-ae, -a) essent	ingressi (-ae, -a) essent	experti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

verēns	ingrediēns	experiēns
veritus, -a, -um	ingressus, -a, -um	expertus, -a, -um
veritūrus, -a, -um	ingressūrus, -a, -um	expertūrus, -a, -um
verendus, -a, -um	ingrediendus, -a, -um	experiendus, -a, -um

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

verēri	ingredī	experiri
PERFECT		
veritus (-a, -um) esse	ingressus (-a, -um) esse	expertus (-a, -um) esse
FUTURE		
veritūrus (-a, -um) esse	ingressūrus (-a, -um) esse	expertūrus (-a, -um) esse

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR PLURAL		SINGULAR PLURAL		SINGULAR PLURAL	
PRESENT					
verēre	verēminī	ingredere	ingredimini	experire	experimini
FUTURE					
2nd verētor	--	ingreditor	--	experitor	--
3rd verētor	verentor	ingreditor	ingrediuntor	experitor	experiuntor

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, 'be'
possum, posse, potuī, --, 'be able'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

sum, I am	possum, I am able, I can
es, you are	potes, you are able, etc.
est, he/she/it/there is	potest, he/she/it is able, etc.
sumus, we are	possumus, we are able, etc.
estis, you are	potestis, you are able, etc.
sunt, they/there are	possunt, they are able, etc.

IMPERFECT

eram, I was	poteram, I was able, I could
erās, you were	poterās, you were able, etc.
erat, he/she/it/there was	poterat, he/she/it was able, etc.
erāmus, we were	poterāmus, we were able, etc.
erātis, you were	poterātis, you were able, etc.
erant, they/there were	poterant, they were able, etc.

FUTURE

erō, I shall be	poterō, I shall be able
eris, you will be	poteris, you will be able
erit, he/she/it/there will be	poterit, he/she/it will be able

FUTURE

erimus, we shall be
 eritis, you will be
 erunt, they/there will be

poterimus, we shall be able
 poteritis, you will be able
 poterunt, they will be able

PERFECT

fui, I have been, I was
 fuistī, you have been, etc.
 fuit, he/she/it/there has been, etc.
 fuimus, we have been, etc.
 fuistis, you have been, etc.
 fuērunt, fuēre, they/there have been,
 etc.

potui, I have been (was) able, I
 could
 potuisti, you have been (were)
 able, etc.
 potuit, he/she/it has been (was)
 able, etc.
 potuimus, we have been (were)
 able, etc.
 potuistis, you have been (were)
 able, etc.
 potuērunt, potuēre, they have been
 (were) able, etc.

PLUPERFECT

fueram, I had been
 fuerās, you had been
 fuerat, he/she/it/there had been
 fuerāmus, we had been
 fuerātis, you had been
 fuerant, they/there had been

potueram I had been able
 potuerās, you had been able
 potuerat, he/she/it had been able
 potuerāmus, we had been able
 potuerātis, you had been able
 potuerant, they had been able

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been
 fueris, you will have been
 fuerit, he/she/it/there will have been
 fuerimus, we shall have been
 fueritis, you will have been
 fuerint, they/there will have been

potuerō, I shall have been able
 potueris, you will have been able
 potuerit, he/she/it will have been
 able
 potuerimus, we shall have been able
 potueritis, you will have been able
 potuerint, they will have been able

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sim	sīmus	possim	possimus
sis	sītis	possīs	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

IMPERFECT

essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

PERFECT

fuerim	fuerimus	potuerim	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

PLUPERFECT

fuissem	fuissēmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis	potuissēs	potuissētis
fuisset	fuissent	potuisset	potuissent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

---	potēns, (being) able, powerful
---	---

PERFECT

---	---
---	---

FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be, going to be, ready to be	---

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

esse, to be	posse, to be able

PERFECT

fuisse, to have been	potuisse, to have been able

FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um esse (fore), to be about to be, to be going to be, to be ready to be	---

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

es, be!

este, be!

--

--

FUTURE

2nd estō,
you shall be!

estōte,

--

--

3rd estō,
he/she/it shall be!

suntō,

--

--

they shall be!

eō, īre, ī (īvī), itus, 'go'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
eō	ībam	ībō
īs	ībās	ībis
it	ībat	ībit
īmus	ībāmus	ībimus
ītis	ībātis	ībitis
eunt	ībant	ībunt
PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
īi (īvī)	ieram (iveram)	ierō (iverō)
īsti (īvistī)	ierās (iverās)	ieris (iveris)
īit (īvit)	ierat (iverat)	ierit (iverit)
īimus (īvimus)	ierāmus (iverāmus)	ierimus (iverimus)
ītis (īvistis)	ierātis (iverātis)	ieritis (iveritis)
īerunt, īre	ierant (iverant)	ierint (iverint)
(īvērunt, īvēre)		

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
eam	īrem	ierim (iverim)	īssem (īvissēm)
eās	īrēs	ieris (iveris)	īssēs (īvissēs)
eat	īret	ierit (iverit)	īsset (ivisset)
ēāmus	īrēmus	ierimus (iverimus)	īssēmus (īvissēmus)
ēātis	īrētis	ieritis (iveritis)	īssētis (ivissētis)
eant	īrent	ierint (iverint)	īscent (ivissent)

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
īēns, gen. euntis	--
PERFECT	
--	ītum
FUTURE	
ītūrus, -a, -um	eundum

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

ire

PERFECT

isse (ivisse)

FUTURE

itūrus (-a, -um) esse

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

i

ite

FUTURE

2nd itō itōte

3rd itō euntō

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, 'bring, carry, bear, endure'

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

ferō	feror
fers	ferris, ferre
fert	fertur
ferimus	ferimur
fertis	feriminī
ferunt	feruntur

IMPERFECT

ferēbam	ferēbar
ferēbās	ferēbāris, ferēbāre
ferēbat	ferēbātūr
ferēbāmus	ferēbāmūr
ferēbātis	ferēbāmīnī
ferēbānt	ferēbāntūr

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

FUTURE

feram	ferar
ferēs	ferēris, ferēre
feret	ferētur
ferēmus	ferēmur
ferētis	ferēmini
ferent	ferentur

PERFECT

tulī	lātus (-a, -um) sum
tulistī	lātus (-a, -um) es
tulit	lātus (-a, -um) est
tulimus	lātī (-ae, -a) sumus
tulistis	lātī (-ae, -a) estis
tulērunt, tulēre	lātī (-ae, -a) sunt

PLUPERFECT

tuleram	lātus (-a, -um) eram
tulerās	lātus (-a, -um) erās
tulerat	lātus (-a, -um) erat
tulerāmus	lātī (-ae, -a) erāmus
tulerātis	lātī (-ae, -a) erātis
tulerant	lātī (-ae, -a) erant

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	lātus (-a, -um) erō
tuleris	lātus (-a, -um) eris
tulerit	lātus (-a, -um) erit
tulerimus	lātī (-ae, -a) erimus
tuleritis	lātī (-ae, -a) eritis
tulerint	lātī (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

feram	ferar
ferās	ferāris, ferāre
ferat	ferātur
ferāmus	ferāmur
ferātis	ferāmini
ferant	ferantur

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

IMPERFECT

ferrem	ferrer
ferrēs	ferrēris, ferrēre
ferret	ferrētur
ferrēmus	ferrēmur
ferrētis	ferrēminī
ferrent	ferrentur

PERFECT

tulerim	lātus (-a, -um) sim
tuleris	lātus (-a, -um) sis
tulerit	lātus (-a, -um) sit
tulerimus	lāti (-ae, -a) sīmus
tuleritis	lāti (-ae, -a) sītis
tulerint	lāti (-ae, -a) sint

PLUPERFECT

tulissem	lātus (-a, -um) essem
tulissēs	lātus (-a, -um) essēs
tulisset	lātus (-a, -um) esset
tulissēmus	lāti (-ae, -a) essēmus
tulissētis	lāti (-ae, -a) essētis
tulissent	lāti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

ferēns	--
--------	----

PERFECT

--	lātus, -a, -um
----	----------------

FUTURE

lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um
------------------	-------------------

INFINITIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PRESENT

ferre	ferri
-------	-------

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

PERFECT

tulisse lātus (-a, -um) esse

FUTURE

lātūrus (-a, -um) esse lātum irī

IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

PRESENT

fer ferte ferre ferimini

FUTURE

2nd fertō fertōte fertor --
3rd fertō feruntō fertor ferunctor

volō, velle, volūi, --, 'wish, want, be willing'

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, --, 'be unwilling'

mālō, mālle, mālui, --, 'prefer'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nōlūmus	mālūmus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt

IMPERFECT

volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant

FUTURE

volam	nōlam	mālam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
volet	nōlet	mālet

volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
volent	nōlēnt	mālēnt

PERFECT

voluī	nōluī	māluī
voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
voluit	nōluuit	māluuit
voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
voluērunt, voluēre	nōluērunt, nōluēre	māluērunt, māluēre

PLUPERFECT

volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
velint	nōlint	mālint

IMPERFECT

vellem	nōllem	māllem
vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
vellet	nōllet	māllet
vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
vellent	nōllent	māllent

PERFECT

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

PLUPERFECT

voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
voluissēs	nōluiissēs	māluiissēs
voluisset	nōluiisset	māluiisset
voluissēmus	nōluiissēmus	māluiissēmus
voluissētis	nōluiissētis	māluiissētis
voluisserent	nōluiisset	māluiisset

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

volēns	nōlēns	--
--	--	--

PERFECT

--	--	--
--	--	--

FUTURE

--	--	--
--	--	--

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

velle	nōlle	mālle
voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PERFECT

voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
--	--	--

FUTURE

--	--	--
--	--	--

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

--	nōlī	nōlīte	--
2nd	nōlitō	nōlitōte	--

FUTURE

2nd	nōlitō	nōlitōte	--
3rd	nōlitō	nōluntō	

fiō, fieri, factus sum, 'be made, be done, happen, become'

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
fiō, I am made, I become	fiēbam, I was made, I became	fiam, I shall be made, I shall become
fis	fiēbās	fiēs
fit	fiēbat	fiet
fimus	fiēbāmus	fiēmus
fitis	fiēbātis	fiētis
fiant	fiēbant	fient
PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
factus (-a, -um) sum	factus (-a, -um) eram	factus (-a, -um) erō
factus (-a, -um) es	factus (-a, -um) erās	factus (-a, -um) eris
factus (-a, -um) est	factus (-a, -um) erat	factus (-a, -um) erit
facti (-ae, -a) sumus	facti (-ae, -a) erāmus	facti (-ae, -a) erimus
facti (-ae, -a) estis	facti (-ae, -a) erātis	facti (-ae, -a) eritis
facti (-ae, -a) sunt	facti (-ae, -a) erant	facti (-ae, -a) erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
fiam	fierem	factus (-a, -um) sim	factus (-a, -um) essem
fiās	fierēs	factus (-a, -um) sis	factus (-a, -um) essēs
fiat	fieret	factus (-a, -um) sit	factus (-a, -um) esset
fiāmus	fierēmus	facti (-ae, -a) sīmus	facti (-ae, -a) essēmus
fiātis	fierētis	facti (-ae, -a) sitis	facti (-ae, -a) essētis
fiant	fierent	facti (-ae, -a) sint	facti (-ae, -a) essent

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

--

PERFECT

factus, -a, -um, having been made, having become

FUTURE

faciendus, -a, -um, having to be made, having to become

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

fieri, to be made, to become

PERFECT

factus (-a, -um) esse, to have been made, to have become

FUTURE

factum iri, to be about (going, ready) to be made, to be about (going, ready) to become

IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR

PLURAL

PRESENT

fī, be made, become! fite, be made, become!

FUTURE

2nd fitō, you shall be made, --
you shall become!

3rd fitō, he/she/it shall be made, --
he/she/it shall become!

Formation of the Future Imperative

The future imperative is a rare form in Latin. It exists in the second and third persons, singular and plural. To form the future *active* imperative, take the present stem and for the second and third persons singular, add the ending -tō. For the second person plural, add -tōtē to the present stem, and for the third person plural, add -ntō to the stem.

The future *passive* imperative lacks a second person plural. The endings which are added to the present stem are -tor for the second and third persons singular and -ntor for the third person plural.

In the third conjugation, the -e- of the present stem is changed to -i-, but in the third person plural to -u-. In i-stems of the third conjugation and in the fourth conjugation, an -i- appears before the -u-.

Thus:

ACTIVE

SINGULAR	2nd	optātō	implētō	dūcītō	incipitō	sentitō
	3rd	optātō	implētō	dūcītō	incipitō	sentitō
PLURAL	2nd	optātōtē	implētōtē	dūcītōtē	incipitōtē	sentitōtē
	3rd	optantō	implentō	dūcuntō	incipiuntō	sentiuntō

PASSIVE

SINGULAR	2nd	optātor	implētor	dūcitor	incipitor	sentitor
	3rd	optātor	implētor	dūcitor	incipitor	sentitor
PLURAL	2nd	--	--	--	--	--
	3rd	optantor	implentor	dūcuntor	incipiuntor	sentiuntor

REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Apposition

Apposition may occur in all cases in Latin.

NOMINATIVE: 1. *Marcus, bonus vir, in agris labōrat.* Marcus, *a good man*, is working in the fields.

2. *Nūntiī ad insulam ivimus.* We went *as messengers* to the island; We, *messengers*, went to the island.

3. *Amīcus tuus tibi loquor.* I speak to you *as your friend*; I, *your friend*, speak to you.

GENITIVE: *Memorēs invidiae tuae, culpae magnae, ex urbe ibimus.* Mindful of your envy, *a great fault*, we shall go out of the city.

DATIVE: *Sorōrī Annae dōnum dedit.* He gave a gift to his sister *Anna*.

ACCUSATIVE: *Marcum ducem cōpiārum in Italiam misērunt.* They sent Marcus, *the leader* of the troops, into Italy; They sent Marcus into Italy *as leader* of the troops.

ABLATIVE: *Socii in patriā Asiā visi sunt.* The allies were seen in their native land *of Asia* (literally, *their native land, Asia*).

Nominative Case

The nominative case is used for the subject of a finite verb and for the predicate nominative.

1. *Nautae vēla ad insulam dedērunt.* *The sailors* set sail to the island.
2. *Marcus est vir honestus.* Marcus is a distinguished *man*. (predicate nominative)
3. *Marcus vir honestus vidētur.* Marcus seems a distinguished *man*. (predicate nominative)
4. *Marcus honestus vidēbātur.* Marcus seemed *distinguished*. (predicate adjective)
5. *Pueri pueriæque in tēctum missi sunt.* *The boys and girls* were sent into the house. (For the masculine verb, see *Additional Rules*, p. 400)
6. *Mare, sīdera, animālia, terraque à dis immortālibus facta est.* *The sea, stars, animals* and *land* were made by the immortal gods. (For the singular verb, see *Additional Rules*, p. 400)

Genitive Case

The genitive case, in general, is used for a noun which is dependent upon another noun. In addition, it may depend upon a verb or an adjective. Thus:

GENITIVE OF POSSESSION (not discussed in the text)

1. *Tēctum meī amīci igni dēlētum est.* *My friend's* house was destroyed by fire.

2. Māter ducis ab incolis laudāta est. The mother of *the leader* was praised by the inhabitants.
3. Iuvenis frātrem gladiō patris interfēcit. The young man killed his brother with his *father's* sword.
4. Poēta cuius liber est nōtus auxilium à rēge petivit. The poet *whose* book is well known sought aid from the king.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE (GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE) (Unit 9G)

The genitive is sometimes used in Latin to express the *whole* group or unit of which the word on which the genitive depends expresses the *part*.

1. Quid malī in nostrō oppidō est? What *evil* is in our town?
2. Pars oppidī flammis dēlēta erat. Part of *the town* had been destroyed by flames.
3. Nihil bonī in hāc urbe vidēre possumus. We are able to see nothing *good* in this city.
4. Plūs pecūniae nōs habēmus quam vōs. We have more *money* than you (do).

BUT:

1. Unus ē librīs ad nōs missus est. One of *the books* was sent to us.
2. Quīnque ē mīlitibūs interfecti sunt. Five of *the soldiers* were killed.
3. Quidam ex hominibūs in viā ambulābat. A certain one of *the men* was walking in the street.

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION (QUALITY) (Unit 10D)

A noun in the genitive case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

1. Vir magnae sapientiae ab omnibus laudātur. A man of *great wisdom* is praised by all.
2. Verba eius modī à populō omni audita sunt. Words of *this kind* have been heard by all the people.
3. Cicerō fuit homō magnae fāmae. Cicero was a man of *great reputation*.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL (not discussed in the text)

The genitive is used to express the material of which something is composed.

1. Urna aurī à nātīs inventa est. An urn of *gold* was found by the children.
2. Tēlane ferri habēs? Do you have weapons of *iron*?
3. Magnum agrum frūmentī vidimus. We have seen a large field of *grain*. [frūmentum, -ī, N., 'grain']
4. Turba fēmīnārum in viā visa est. A crowd of *women* was seen in the street.

APPOSITIONAL GENITIVE (not discussed in the text)

The genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition.

1. Nōmen rēgis à populō Rōmānō nōn dilēctum est. The name *of king* was not esteemed by the Roman people. [diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, 'esteem']
2. Difficile est artem reī militāris docēre. It is difficult to teach the art *of warfare*. [rēs militāris, reī militāris, F., 'warfare']
3. Opportūnitās librī legendī nōbis nōn offertur. The opportunity *of reading a book* is not offered to us. [opportūnitās, -tātis, F., 'opportunity']

PREDICATE GENITIVE (GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC) (Unit 11D)

A noun in the genitive case which stands alone (or modified by an adjective) in the predicate denotes a characteristic or a class.

1. Est bonī imperātōris bene dūcere. It is *the mark of a good commander* to lead well.
2. Digni cīvis est dē cūris patriae cōgitāre. It is *the mark of a worthy citizen* to think about the cares of his native land.
3. Sapienter regere est honesti rēgis. Ruling wisely is *the mark of a respected king*.

The genitive serves as the object of a verbal idea of nouns, adjectives, and is used with some verbs. Thus:

GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF ACCUSING AND CONDEMNING (Unit 2F)

The genitive is used with verbs of accusing and condemning to express the charge or penalty.

1. Hostēs gravium scelerum dāmnāvērunt. They condemned the enemy *for serious crimes*.
2. Fēminās īrae dāmnāmus. We condemn the women *for their anger*.
3. Nautās īsidiārum dāmnābitis. You will condemn the sailors *for their treachery*.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Unit 11C)

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the *object* of this verbal idea is called the objective genitive.

1. Dux belli hortātus est ut militēs quam fortissimē pūgnārent. The leader *of the war* urged that the soldiers fight as bravely as possible.
2. Incolae oppidi ruīnam tēctōrum timuērunt. The inhabitants *of the town* feared the destruction *of the houses*.
3. Erant multi rūmōrēs dē spē pācis. There were many rumors about the hope *of peace*.
4. Multa pecūnia saepe est invidiae causa. A lot of money is often the cause of *envy*.
5. Iūnō dē Iovis amōre pulchrārum fēminārum monēbātur. Juno was warned about Jupiter's love *of beautiful women*.

6. *Iuvenis studiōsus legendī* multa didicit. The young man, fond of reading, learned many things.

BUT NOTE also, in contrast, the SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Unit 11C):

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the *subject* of this verbal idea is called the subjective genitive.

1. *Iūnō dē Iovis* amōre pulchrārum fēminārum monēbātur. Juno was warned about *Jupiter's* love of beautiful women.
2. *Ira rēgīnae* populum terret. The *queen's* anger is frightening the people.
3. *Militēs insidiīs hostiū* superātī sunt. The soldiers were conquered by the treachery of the *enemy*.
4. *Ob rēgis cūram dē salūte* populī urbs quam optimē mūnita est. On account of the *king's* concern about the safety of the people, the city has been fortified as well as possible.
5. *Facta fortissima mīlitūm* ā ducibūs laudāta sunt. The very brave deeds of the *soldiers* were praised by the leaders.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS (Unit 16D4)

Some impersonal verbs take the genitive of the thing which arouses the feeling and the accusative of the person concerned.

1. *Mē invidiae pudet*. I am ashamed of my jealousy.
2. *Vōs bellī longī* piget? Are you disgusted with the long war?
3. *Quōs superātōrum* miseret? Who pities the conquered?
4. *Ducis* interest inimicōs interfici. It is in the *leader's* interest that his enemies be killed.

GENITIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING (Unit 18H)

The genitive is frequently used with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

1. *Factōrum fortium* ducum nostrōrum semper meminerimus. We shall always remember the brave deeds of our leaders.
2. *Veniae nostrae* oblivisceris? Are you forgetting our kindness?
3. *Memorēs patriae magnō* cum studiō pūgnābimus. Mindful of our native land we shall fight with great zeal.

Note that the accusative may also be used in these constructions.

GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE (Unit 18I)

A few neuter adjectives and some nouns implying utter worthlessness, such as *as*, *floccus*, and *nihilum*, are sometimes used in the genitive case to express the value of a person, thing, or situation when that value is not specifically determined or is indefinite. This use of the genitive is generally found with verbs meaning 'consider', 'reckon', and 'value'.

1. Tēctum magnī habeō. I have a house of *great value*.
2. Inimicōs parvī facimus. We reckon our enemies of *little worth*.
3. Quid tantī aestimāmus? What do we estimate of *such great value*?
4. Tē floccī dūcō. I don't give a *damn* for you.

GENITIVE OF FULLNESS AND WANT (not discussed in the text)

Words expressing fullness and emptiness often govern the genitive.

1. Servi urnam {plēnam aquae} in mēnsā posuērunt. The slaves placed on the table the urn {full of water}. [plēnus, -a, -um, 'full'; inānis, -e, 'empty']
2. Militēs fortēs timōris semper nōn egent. Brave soldiers do not always lack fear. [egeō, -ēre, -uī, --, 'lack, be without']
3. Marcus agrum pauperem aquae coluit. Marcus tilled a field poor *in water*. [colō, -ere, -uī, cultus, 'till']

GREEK GENITIVE (EPEXEGETICAL GENITIVE) (not discussed in the text)

Following Greek usage, adjectives meaning 'skilled in, having knowledge of' may govern the genitive.

1. Puerum perītū legendī laudābāmus. We kept on praising the boy skilled in *reading*. [perītus, -a, -um, 'skilled in']
2. Vir doctus litterārum fuit. He was a man learned in *literature*. [doctus, -a, -um, 'learned']
3. Dux belli gerendī scitus ā cīvibus factus est. A leader skilled in *waging war* was chosen (*literally*, 'made') by the citizens. [scitus, -a, -um, 'skilled in']

The genitive is sometimes governed by other words, e.g., causā and grātiā. Thus:

GENITIVE WITH causā AND grātiā

Causā and grātiā, both meaning 'for the sake of', govern the genitive and are placed *after* it.

1. Glōriae causā (grātiā), bellum gessimus. We waged war *for the sake of glory*.
2. Gēns hostilis bella gerēbat vincendī causā (grātiā). The hostile people used to wage wars *for the sake of conquering* (i.e., *in order to conquer*).
3. Nātōs ad prōvinciam misērunt auxiliī petendī causā (grātiā). They sent their sons to the province *for the sake of seeking* (i.e., *in order to seek*) *aid*.

Dative Case

The basic use of the dative case is referential. The person or thing to whom or which the action or idea refers, is of advantage, or disadvantage, is put into the dative case. Thus:

1. **Vōbis** Rōmam ire licet. *You* are permitted to go to Rome.
2. Librum **nautae** ēmī. I bought a book *for the sailor*.
3. Dōnum **mātrī nostrae** invēnimus. We have found a gift *for our mother*.
4. Tua facta fortia in **mihi** mentem vēnērunt. Your brave deeds came into mind *for my advantage*; Your brave deeds came into *my* mind.
5. Hoc **mihi** āctum est. This was done *for me* (i.e., *for my advantage* or *for my disadvantage*).
6. Cōnsulem **tibi** laudāvisti. You praised the consul *for your advantage*.
7. Pontem **hostibus** dēlēvimus. We destroyed the bridge *for the enemy's disadvantage*. [pōns, pontis, M., 'bridge']

The following specialized uses of the referential dative also occur:

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT (Unit 1H3)

The indirect object occurs with verbs of *giving*, *telling*, and *showing*. The person to whom something is given, told, or shown is put into the dative case.

1. Librum **magistrō** mōnstrāvimus. We showed the book *to the teacher*.
2. Liber **magistrō** datus est. The book was given *to the teacher*.
3. Rēgina **poētae** multa respondit. The queen answered many things *to the poet*.
Or: The queen gave many answers *to the poet*.
4. Quid **rēgīnae** dictum est? What was said *to the queen*?
5. Nōli **timōrī** cēdere. Don't yield *to fear*.

DATIVE WITH CERTAIN ADJECTIVES (not discussed in the text)

Adjectives meaning 'near (to)', 'fit (for)', 'friendly (to)', 'pleasing (to)', 'similar (to)', etc., and their opposites take the dative case.

1. Servus **dominō** cārus fuit. The slave was dear *to his master*.
2. Hostēs proximī **oppidō** iam erunt. The enemy by this time will be very near *the town*.
3. Cōnsul amīcus **plēbī** factus est. A consul friendly *to the common people* was chosen.
4. Filius simillimus **patri** vidētur. The son seems very like *his father*.

DATIVE WITH CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS (Unit 13B)

Certain intransitive verbs in Latin govern the dative case. Some common examples are: crēdō, faveō, ignōscō, imperō, noceō, parcō, pāreō, placeō, persuādeō, studeō.

1. **Quibus** crēdis? *Whom* do you believe?
2. Magister **puellī** fāvit. The teacher favored *the girls*.
3. Dōnum **frātri** placuit? Did the gift please *your brother*?
4. Servī **dominō** pārent. The slaves obey *their master*.

5. Imperātor cōpiis imperāvit ut pūgnārent. The commander ordered *the troops* to fight.

DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR (Unit 5E)

With forms of the verb **sum**, the dative is sometimes used to show possession. The *possessor* is put into the dative case.

1. **Incolis** multa tēcta erant. *The inhabitants* had many houses.
2. Cōnsilium bonum fuerat **ducibus**. *The leaders* had had a good plan.
3. **Vōbisne** est magna cōpia pecūniae? Do *you* have a large supply of money?

DATIVE OF AGENT (Unit 5D)

With the passive periphrastic the personal agent is normally expressed by the dative case without a preposition.

1. Quid **puellae** agendum est? What must *the girl* do? (*Literally*, What must be done *by the girl*?)
2. Oppidum **militibus** oppūgnandum erat. The town had to be attacked *by the soldiers*.
3. Aliquid magni **civibus** agendum erit. *The citizens* will have to do something great.

DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS (Unit 13D)

Many verbs compounded with such prefixes as **ad-**, **ante-**, **circum-**, **con-**, **in-**, **inter-**, **ob-**, **post-**, **prae-**, **prō-**, **sub-**, **super-** govern the dative case. When the original verb is transitive, the compounded form governs an accusative as well.

1. Hostēs bellum **prōvinciae** inferunt. The enemies inflict a war on *the province*.
2. Vir **amicō** in viā occurrit. The man met *his friend* in the street. [occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus, 'meet']
3. Dux optimōs nāvibus praefēcit. The leader put the best men in command of *the ships*.
4. Marcus **cōpiis** praeerit. Marcus will be in command of *the troops*.

ETHICAL DATIVE (not discussed in the text)

The ethical dative is a personal pronoun in the dative case not closely connected with the rest of the sentence; it does not depend on any one word.

1. Nihil boni **mīhi** hic invenīrī potest. Nothing good can be found here *in my opinion*.
2. Illud **mīhi** scelus non est. That is not a crime *as far as I'm concerned*.
3. Quod cōnsilium **tībi** à ducibus legētur? What plan will be chosen by the leaders *in your opinion*?
4. Illud **tībi** est fortis viri factum! That is the deed of a brave man *for you*!
5. Vita **mīhi** sine spē est mors. Life without hope, *for me* (i.e., *as far as I'm concerned*), is death.

In addition to these basic referential uses, a noun in the dative case can express the purpose for which an action is performed or for which something exists. This is often used in conjunction with another noun in the dative case which is purely referential in nature. Thus:

DATIVE OF PURPOSE (SERVICE) (Unit 8H)

1. Aurum **auxiliō** oppidō missum est. The gold was sent *as an aid* to the town.
2. Magna cōpia pecūniae est **magnae cūrae**. A large supply of money is *a great concern* (i.e., it serves *as a great concern*).
3. Hostēs fūerunt **timōrī** populō. The enemy were *a fear* to the people (i.e., they served *as a source of fear* for the people).
4. Amicō librum dōnō dedit. He gave his friend a book *for a gift* (i.e., to serve *as a gift*).
5. **Magnō auxiliō** nostrīs amicīs fuimus. We were *a great aid* to our friends.

Accusative Case

The accusative case is used as the direct object of a verb or as the object of certain prepositions.

ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT (Unit 1H4)

1. Multōsne maiōrēs frātrēs habēs? Do you have *many older brothers*?
2. Impiōs nōn laudābimus. We shall not praise *wicked men*.
3. Mōtūs siderum nōn intellēxit. He did not understand *the movements* of the stars.

COGNATE ACCUSATIVE (not discussed in the text)

The direct object whose meaning is very closely related to that of the verb is called a cognate accusative (e.g., to dream a dream, dance a dance, sing a song).

1. **Vitam** bonam et fēlicem vivit. He lives a good and happy *life*.
2. **Somnium** longum et grātūm somniāvī. I dreamed a long and pleasing *dream*.
[*somnium*, -ī, N., 'dream'; *somniō* (1), 'dream']
3. Militēs multa **facta** fortia fēcērunt. The soldiers did many brave *deeds*.

DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (not discussed in the text)

Some verbs take two accusatives.

1. Nōs litterās docēre volunt. They want to teach *us literature*.
2. Amicī nōs pecūniām ūrāvērunt. Our friends asked *us* for *money*.
3. Vōs auxiliūm rogāmus. We ask *you* for *aid*.
4. Factum tē cēlāvī. I have hidden the *deed* from *you*.

GREEK ACCUSATIVE: ACCUSATIVE OF RESPECT OR ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS IN THE MIDDLE VOICE (Unit 18F)

Occasionally in poetry and late Latin the accusative is used to express *respect* or *specification*. It is frequently used to express the *part affected*. The accusative is used as the object of a verb which looks passive, but which may be considered the equivalent of a Greek middle voice.

1. **Multi oculōs** vulnerāti sunt. Many men were wounded *in their eyes*.
2. **Fēmina caput tēcta** per viās oppidi sine servis ambulāvit. The woman having covered *her head* walked through the streets of the town without slaves. [**caput, capitis**, N., 'head']
3. **Caput cinctus laurō** deus magnum amōrem puellae cecinit. Having bound *his head* with laurel, the god sang of his great love for the girl. [**caput, capitis**, N., 'head'; **laurus, -ī**, F., 'laurel']

SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (not discussed in the text; but see Unit 6C)

The subject of the infinitive is put into the accusative case.

1. **Nōs** ire nōlunt. They are unwilling *for us* to go.
2. **Fēminās** ē tēctis expulsās esse dicit. He says that *the women* were driven out of the houses.
3. Dux mīlitēs oppidum oppūgnāre iussit. The leader ordered *the soldiers* to attack the town.

BUT: the subject of an historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

4. **Servī** libenter fugere. *The slaves* fled gladly.

ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE (Unit 7I)

The accusative, usually without a preposition, is used to express duration of time or extent of space. It answers the question "for how long?", whether it be of time or distance.

1. In insulā **quīnque diēs** manēbimus. We shall remain on the island *for five days*.
2. **Nōs duās hōrās** exspectāvērunt. They waited for us *for two hours*.
3. Rōmam **multōs annōs** incoluērunt. They lived in Rome *for many years*.
4. Pueri parvi saxum magnum **quīnque pedēs** portāvērunt. The small boys carried the large rock *for five feet*.

ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION (Unit 15F)

The accusative case is sometimes used in exclamations.

1. **Ō impiās fēminās!** Oh wicked women!
2. **Mē miserū!** Unhappy me!
3. **Infēlicem diem!** Unfortunate day!

ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE (Unit 18G)

A word in the accusative case may be used adverbially.

1. **Quid** hoc tibi vidētur? *In what way* does this seem best to you? [videor, 'seem (best)']
2. **Nihil** hoc meā interest. This is *in no way* of interest to me.
3. **Maximam partem** id mihi nōn placet. *For the most part* this does not please me.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE (Unit 1H4)

The prepositions **per**, **trāns**, **inter**, **post**, **intrā** ('within'), **apud**, **contrā**, **super** ('above'), etc., govern the accusative case.

1. **Ob/Propter nostram culpam** patria dēlēta est. *Because of our fault* our native land has been destroyed.
2. **Militēs post bellum** ad patriam redibunt. The soldiers will return to their native land *after the war*.
3. **Pueri per multās viās** oppidi cucurrērunt. The boys ran *through many streets* of the town.
4. **Trāns flūmen** fūgimus. We fled *across the river*.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH (Unit 6F)

Place to which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **ad**. With names of cities, small islands, towns, and the words **domus** and **rūs**, no preposition is used.

1. Nautae vēla **ad insulam** dabunt. The sailors will set sail *to the island*.
2. **Ad Italiam** imus. We are going *to Italy*.

BUT:

3. **Rōmam** imus. We are going *to Rome*.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE INTO WHICH (not discussed in the text)

Place into which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **in**, 'into'.

1. Fēminaē **in viam** ambulant. The women are walking *into the street*.
2. Incolae **in patriam** rediērunt. The inhabitants went back *into their native land*.
3. Nautae **in aquam** ibunt. The sailors will go *into the water*.

BUT:

4. **In viā** ambulant. They are walking *in the street*. (place where)

Ablative Case

The basic function of the ablative case is to answer the questions "from?", "where?", "how?", "when?", "by?"; it can frequently be rendered literally by the

prepositions “from, with, in, by”. For convenience, the uses are arranged below according to whether or not they require prepositions in Latin.

WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

ABLATIVE OF MEANS (INSTRUMENT) (Unit 3E)

The ablative without a preposition is used to express the *means* or *instrument* by which something is done.

1. Tēcta prōvinciae ignī dēlēta sunt. The houses of the province were destroyed *by fire*.
2. Nāti gladiis militum territi erant. The children had been frightened *by the swords* of the soldiers.
3. Urna pulchra aquā implētur. The beautiful urn is being filled *with water*.
4. Cōnsul populum spē salūtis hortātus est. The consul encouraged the people *with the hope of safety*.

Some additional uses of the ablative of means are:

ABLATIVE OF ROUTE (not discussed in the text)

Ibam forte Viā Sacrā. I was walking by chance *along the Sacred Way*.
[sacer, sacra, sacrum, ‘sacred’]

ABLATIVE OF PRICE (Unit 18J)

The instrumental ablative (ablative of means) is used with some expressions to indicate the price of something.

1. Domum multā pecūniā ēmimus. We bought a house *for a lot of money*.
2. Patriam aurō trādedit. He handed over his native land *for gold*.
3. Iuvenem duce seniōre mūtāre nōlumus. We do not want to exchange a young leader *for an older one*.
4. Servōs magnō pretiō vendidit. He sold the slaves *for a great price*.

ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEONENT VERBS (not discussed in the text)

Ūtor ‘use’, fruor ‘enjoy’, fungor ‘perform’, potior ‘gain possession of’, and vēscor ‘eat’ take the ablative case.

1. Auxiliō amicōrum ūtitur. He makes use of his friends’ *aid*.
2. Dōnō frātris frūctus es? Did you enjoy your brother’s *gift*? [fruor, -i, frūctus sum, ‘enjoy’]
3. Miseri animālibus mortuīs vēscuntur. The wretched men are eating *dead animals*. [vēscor, -i, --, ‘eat’]

opus est + ABLATIVE (Vocabulary, Unit 7)

1. Nōbis bonō amicō opus est. We need *a good friend*.

This idea may also be expressed:

2. **Bonus amicus** nōbis opus est. (i.e., with the nominative)

or less frequently:

3. Nōbis **boni amici** opus est. (i.e., with the genitive)

ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION (Unit 10D)

A noun in the ablative case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

1. **Virum** ūnō oculō vidimus. We saw a man *with one eye*.

2. **Fēmina manibus pulchrīs** litterās longās scripsit. The woman *with the beautiful hands* wrote a long letter.

3. **Patria maximā fāmā** erat pulcherrima. The country *with a very great reputation* was very beautiful.

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH (Unit 7H)

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative. A preposition is not regularly used.

1. **Paucis annīs** patriam novam incolēmus. We shall inhabit a new land *in a few years*.

2. **Eō tempore** multōs amicōs vidimus. We saw many friends *at that time*.

3. **Proximō mēnse** sociī ad tēctum ducis venient. *Next month* the allies will come to the leader's house. [mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, M., 'month']

4. **Proximā nocte** sociī ad tēctum ducis vēnērunt. *Last night* the allies came to the leader's house. [proximus, -a, -um, here, 'last']

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (Unit 9C)

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree to denote comparison.

1. **Iuvenēs** facta fortiōra **patribus** fēcērunt. The young men did braver deeds *than their fathers* (did).

2. **Tū fēlicior** mē es. You are happier *than I*.

3. **Puella** pulchrior mātre pulchrā est. The girl is more beautiful *than her beautiful mother*.

Note that the same idea may be expressed using **quam**:

4. **Iuvenēs** facta fortiōra **quam patrēs** fēcērunt.

5. **Tū fēlicior** **quam** ego es.

6. **Puella** pulchrior **quam māter** pulchra est.

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE (Unit 9D)

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with comparatives to express the degree in which the two things being compared differ. Less frequently, this

kind of ablative is also found with a superlative in statements in which there is an implicit comparative judgment made.

1. **Puella multō** pulchrior mātre pulchrā est. The girl is *much* more beautiful than her beautiful mother.
2. **Marcus duōbus pedibus** altior quam frāter est. Marcus is *two feet* taller than his brother.
3. **Hic nūntius Rōmam quīnque diēbus** post missus est. This messenger was sent to Rome *five days* later.
4. Is **multō** pulcherrimus hīc est. He is *by far* the most handsome man here.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE (Unit 10C)

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is sometimes used to express *cause*.

1. **Rēginam irā crūdēli** timēmus. We fear the queen *because of her cruel anger*.
2. **Militēs metū pūgnāre** nōn potuērunt. The soldiers were not able to fight *because of fear*.
3. **Imperātor lēgātum virtūte** laudāvit. The commander praised the legate *because of his courage*.

ABLATIVE OF RESPECT (SPECIFICATION) (Unit 8D)

The *respect* in which a statement is true is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

1. **Puella erat pulchra vīsū.** The girl was beautiful *to see*.
2. **Illa erat pulchra corpore et animō.** She was beautiful *in body and mind*.
3. **Hostēs nōs virtūte** vicērunt. The enemy excelled us *in courage*.

ABLATIVE OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE (not discussed in the text)

The ablative case, without a preposition, may be used to express the circumstances in which the action of the sentence occurs.

1. **Ventīs secundīs** multōs diēs nāvigāvimus. We sailed for many days *with favorable winds*. [secundus, -a, -um, 'favorable'; nāvigō (1), 'sail']
2. **Sacrificiūm bonīs ūminibus** fit. The sacrifice is being made *under good omens*. [sacrificiūm, -i, N., 'sacrifice'; ūmen, ūminis, N., 'omen']
3. **Flūmen ad lītūs magnō strepītū** ruit. The river rushes to the shore *with a great noise*. [strepitus, -ūs, M., 'noise']

Note that the ablative absolute may be used to express attendant circumstance:

4. **Dis grātiās manībus ad caelū sublātīs** agēmus. We shall give thanks to the gods *with hands raised* to heaven. [grātiās agere, 'to give thanks' + dative; tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātus, 'lift, raise']
5. **Ōrātor turbāe fulgōre** ad dextrām vīsō locūtus est. The speaker spoke to the crowd *with lightning seen* toward the right.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (Unit 10A)

The ablative absolute composed of a noun and participle in the ablative case (or two nouns, or a noun and adjective, or pronoun and adjective with the participle of the verb “to be” understood) has no close syntactical connection with the rest of the sentence. It functions as an adverb giving the circumstances, time, cause, condition, or concession in which the action of the main verb occurs.

1. **Lēgātō auxilium ferente, cōpiae hostēs superant.** *With the legate bringing aid, the troops overcome the enemy.*
2. **Cicerōne cōnsule, multi fuērunt laeti.** *When Cicero was consul, many men were happy.* [Cicerō, -ōnis, M., ‘Cicero’]
3. **Fulgōre visō plēbs territa fūgit.** *When the lightning had been seen, the terrified (common) people fled.*
4. **Multis nāvibus dēlētis, hostēs victi sunt.** *The enemy were conquered after many of their ships had been destroyed.*
5. **Hōc factō, laeti tamen fuimus.** *Although this had happened, nevertheless we were happy.*
6. **Marcō laetō, laeti tamen nōn fuimus.** *Although Marcus was happy, nevertheless we were not happy.*

ADJECTIVES WITH THE ABLATIVE (not discussed in the text)

Frētus, -a, -um, ‘relying upon, dependent upon’, and **dignus, -a, -um**, ‘worthy’, govern the ablative.

1. **Senex frētus nātis vivit.** *The old man lives dependent upon his sons.*
2. **Frēti fidē tuā nōn timēbimus.** *Relying upon your trustworthiness, we shall not fear.*
3. **Ille est dignus multis bonis.** *That man is worthy of many good things.*

WITH PREPOSITIONS

ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT (Unit 4E)

The *agent* or *person* who performs the action of a passive verb is regularly expressed in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **ā** or **ab**, ‘by’.

1. **Illi ab omnibus in oppidō visi sunt.** *Those men were seen by everyone in town.*
2. **Rēx ā populō timētur.** *The king is feared by the people.*
3. **Bellum ab incolis prōvinciae gestum est.** *War was waged by the inhabitants of the province.*

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

The prepositions **cum**, **in**, **ā (ab)**, **ē (ex)**, **dē**, **sine**, **prō**, **sub**, **super** (‘above’), etc., govern the ablative case.

1. **Sociī cum hostibus** pūgnāvērunt. The allies fought *with the enemy*.
2. **Ducēs dē multis** cōgitābant. The leaders thought *about many things*.
3. **Nihil sine pecūniā** emere potest. He can buy nothing *without money*.
4. **Hostēs prō moenibus** pūgnāvērunt. The enemy fought *in front of the city walls*.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT (Unit 7G)

The ablative is used with the preposition **cum** to denote accompaniment.

1. **Fēminaē cum nautīs** ambulābant. The women were walking *with the sailors*.
2. **Nautae cum multis** sociīs vēla dabunt. The sailors will set sail *with many allies*.
3. **Incolae prōvinciae cum amicīs** ex oppidō discessērunt. The inhabitants of the province left the town *with their friends*.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH (PLACE WHERE) (Unit 6G)

Place where is expressed by **in** with the ablative, except for the names of small islands, towns and cities, and with the words **domus** and **rūs**.

1. **Erant multi montēs in īsulā**. There were many mountains *on the island*.
2. **Pecūnia in cellīs** cēlāta est. The money was hidden *in the storerooms*.
3. **Plūrimi in pāce** vivere volunt. Most men want to live *in peace*.

BUT:

4. **Rōmae esse** volunt. They want to be *in Rome*.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE AWAY FROM WHICH (Unit 6E2)

Ā (ab) with the ablative expresses the direction away from a place; however, no preposition is used with the names of small islands, towns and cities, and with the words **domus** and **rūs**.

1. **Ab īsulā** quam celerrimē discessimus. We went *away from the island* as quickly as possible.
2. **Animālia ab āris** pepulimus. We drove the animals *away from the altars*.
3. **Turbamne ā tēctō** cōnsulis dūcēs? Will you lead the crowd *away from the consul's house*?

BUT:

4. **Rōmā ad Asiam** vēnimus. We came *from Rome to Asia*.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE OUT OF WHICH (Unit 6E2)

Ē (ex) with the ablative expresses the direction out of a place.

1. **Parva animālia ē marī** in terram vēnērunt. Small animals came *out of the sea* onto land.
2. **Servi qui ex Āfricā** vēnerant in multis urbibus visi sunt. Slaves who had come *out of Africa* were seen in many cities.

3. *Puerōs ē tēctō in viam mittis?* Are you sending the boys *out of the house* into the street?

ABLATIVE OF PLACE DOWN FROM WHICH (Unit 6E2)

Dē with the ablative expresses the direction down from a place.

1. *Incolae saxa dē moenibus iēcērunt.* The inhabitants threw rocks *down from the city walls.*
2. *Dē monte magnā cum cūrā ambulāvērunt.* They walked *down the mountain with great care.*
3. *Quidam dē monte ad mortem cecidit.* A certain man fell *down the mountain to his death.*

WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

ABLATIVE OF MANNER (MODAL ABLATIVE) (Unit 3F)

The ablative case may be used *with* or *without* the preposition **cum** to denote the *way* or *manner* in which something is done. **Cum** is required when the noun in the ablative is *not* modified by an adjective; when it is modified, **cum** is optional.

1. *Militēs magnō (cum) studiō pūgnāvērunt.* The soldiers fought *with great zeal (very zealously).*
2. *Nāti litterās longās magnā (cum) cūrā scripsērunt.* The children wrote a long letter *with great care (very carefully).*
3. *Nūntii cum virtūte locūtī sunt.* The messengers spoke *with courage (courageously).*
4. *Socii cōnsilia cum dīlēgentiā fēcērunt.* The allies made plans *with diligence (diligently).*

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION (Unit 6E)

Some verbs which express or imply separation or deprivation are accompanied by the ablative case. The prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **ē** (**ex**), or **dē** are sometimes used with this construction, but more usually the ablative occurs alone.

1. *Multi miseri spē carent.* Many unhappy men lack *hope.*
2. *Virī (ā) cūrīs liberātī vitam fēlicem ēgērunt.* The men freed *from their cares* lived a happy life.
3. *Fāma imperātōrem ā noxā nōn solvit.* His reputation did not free the commander *from harm.*

ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL (not discussed in text)

The ablative case may be used, sometimes with the prepositions **dē** or **ex**, to show the material from which an object is made.

1. *Urnā ex aurō numquam vīdīmus.* We have never seen an urn *of gold.*

2. **Statua dē marmore** in forō posita est. A statue (made) of *marble* was placed in the forum. [marmor, -oris, M., 'marble']
3. Mēnsa minima ex aurō facta mihi mōnstrāta est. A very small table made of *gold* was shown to me.
4. Agri multis flōribus pulcherrimis cōnstant. The fields consist of *many very beautiful flowers*. [flōs, flōris, M., 'flower'; cōnstō, -āre, cōnstiti, -stātus, 'consist of']

ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN (ALLIED WITH ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION) (Unit 6E1)

The ablative, with or without a preposition, expresses the origin or descent of a person or thing.

1. Cōnsul gente clārā nātus est. The consul was descended *from a famous race*.
2. Hic ē mātre pulchrā nātus est. This man was born *of a beautiful mother*.
3. Flūmen ā marī oritur. The river rises *from the sea*.

Locative Case (Unit 6G)

The names of towns, cities, and small islands and the words **domus** and **rūs** use the locative case to express *place where*, which for other nouns is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**.

1. Aenēas Carthāgine nōn diū remānsit. Aeneas did not remain *in Carthage* for a long time.
2. Servi vitam fēlicem Rōmae nōn semper vixērunt. Slaves did not always live a happy life *in Rome*.
3. Multa aedificia pulchra Athēnis fuērunt. There were many beautiful buildings *in Athens*. [aedificium, -i, N., 'building']

Vocative Case (Unit 8G)

The vocative is the case of *direct address*.

1. Puerī, nōlite id facere. *Boys*, don't do this.
2. Librum novum, scriptor clāre, mihi lege. Read me your new book, *famous writer*.
3. Veni, filī mī, mēcum. Come with me, *my son*.

REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS

Infinitives

The infinitive is an abstract verbal noun. (Unit 1C)

COMPLEMENTARY (Unit 5G)

There are verbs in Latin which frequently require an infinitive to complete

their meaning. Some of these are verbs which express ability, will, desire, and the like. The infinitive completes the idea of the verb.

1. Ad Italiam **ire** solēmus. We are accustomed *to go* to Italy.
2. Clārissimum virum **vidēre** potes? Can you *see* the very famous man?
3. Honestus vir **esse** vidētur. He seems *to be* an honorable man.
4. Parentēs et amicōs nōlī **relinquere**. Don't *abandon* your parents and friends.

INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT (Unit 11E)

The infinitive is, in fact, a neuter noun and thus can be the subject of a verb.

1. **Vidēre** est crēdere. *Seeing* is believing. (Literally, 'To see is to believe'. **Crēdere** is a predicate nominative.)
2. Difficile nōn est vitam bene **agere**. It is not difficult *to conduct* life well.
3. Hoc est bonum: bene **agere** et multōs amicōs **habēre**. This is good: *to do* well and *to have* many friends.
4. Facta fortia **perficere** optimum vidētur. *To accomplish* brave deeds seems best.
5. Est nāti omnibus dictis parentis **crēdere**. It is the mark of a child *to believe* all the sayings of his parent.
6. Bene **vīvere** oportet. It is proper *to live* well. (This also occurs with other impersonal verbs.)

OBJECT INFINITIVE (Unit 5G)

An infinitive (sometimes with subject accusative) may be used as the object of another verb.

1. Rōmam **ire** volumus. We want *to go* to Rome.
2. Dux militēs oppidum **oppūgnāre** iussit. The leader ordered the soldiers *to attack* the town.
3. Vōs hoc **facere** vetat. He forbids you *to do* this.
4. Dux militēs sē **recipere** prohibuit. The leader prevented the soldiers from *withdrawing*.

A further use of the object infinitive is:

THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (Unit 6C)

After words which express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, and the like, statements are made indirectly. The verb of this indirect statement is in the infinitive and the subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

1. Nōs fēlicēs mox **futūrōs esse** (fore) spērat. He hopes that we *will* soon *be happy*.
2. Tē hoc **fēcisse** pūtāvimus. We thought that you *had done* this.
3. Nōs rūs **ire** scīvit. He knew that we *were going* to the country.

HISTORICAL INFINITIVE (Unit 18C)

The infinitive is used in narrative passages instead of a finite verb to emphasize the pure verbal action rather than the agents of that action. The subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

1. **Multi in oppidō clāmāre.** Many men in the town *shouted*.
2. **Militēs multā cum vi pūgnāre.** Soldiers *fought* with a lot of force.
3. **Alii per viās oppidi currere, alii apertē plōrāre, alii manūs ad deōs tollere.** Some *ran* through the streets of the town, others *wept* openly, others *raised* their hands to the gods. [apertē, adv., ‘openly’; plōrō (1), ‘weep’; tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, ‘raise, lift’]

EPEGETICAL INFINITIVE (not discussed in the text)

An infinitive may be dependent upon an adjective, as happens in Greek.

1. **Poēta carmen dignum legī fēcit.** The poet composed a poem worthy *to be read*.
2. **Servus erat peritus docēre.** The slave was skilled in *teaching*. [peritus, -a, -um, ‘skilled’]
3. **Hic vir aptus erat regere.** This man was fit *to rule*. [aptus, -a, -um, ‘fit’]

INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS (not discussed in the text)

The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a main verb in exclamations.

1. **Tālem scelerātūm imperium obtinuisse!** (To think) that such a scoundrel *has obtained* power!; Such a scoundrel *has obtained* power?! [scelerātus, -ī, M., ‘scoundrel’; obtineō (ob + teneō), ‘get hold of, obtain’]
2. **Mē ut hunc diem vidērem vīxisse!** (To think) that I *have lived* to see this day!; I *have lived* to see this day?!
3. **Mē tē facere hoc nōn dare!** I not *grant* you to do this?!

Sometimes the enclitic -ne is added to the emphatic word to lay stress on the interrogative nature of the exclamation:

4. **Mēnē ā tē victum esse!** I *beaten* by you?!

Imperatives (Units 1A5, 8F)

The imperative mood expresses the action as a command.

1. **Timōrem mortis superā!** *Overcome* your fear of death!
2. **Librum hūc fer!** *Bring* the book here!
3. **Verba sapientis audite!** *Listen to* the words of the wise man!
4. **Noxam patere!** *Endure* the injury!

The future imperative is used to stress the futurity of the command (particularly when another verb in the sentence is in the future or future perfect tense). It is also used in legal terms.

1. Cum tē vidēbō, respōnsum mihi dīcītō. When I see you, *you shall tell me your answer.* [respōnsum, -i, N., 'answer']
2. Mox veniet; poenās datō. He will come soon; *he shall pay the penalty.*
3. Rēs pūblica ā duōbus cōnsulibus rēgitor. The republic *shall be ruled* by two consuls.

Some verbs, like **meminī**, 'remember', regularly use the future imperative instead of the present:

4. Mementōtē hōrum factōrum fortium! *Remember* (pl.) these brave deeds!

Indicative Mood

The indicative mood is the mood of fact and is used for making direct statements and asking direct questions. (Unit 1A5)

1. Hās litterās ad amicum mittēs? *Will you send* this letter to your friend?
2. Liber qui ā clārissimō auctōre scriptus erat omnibus praeſentibus lēctus est. The book which *had been written* by the very famous author *was read* to all who were present. [praeſens, praeſentis, 'present']
3. Servus ad poenās trāditus scelus negāvit. The slave handed over to punishment *denied* his crime.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (quamquam and etsī) (Unit 15C3)

1. Quamquam rūs incolimus, fēlicēs nōn sumus. *Although we live* in the country, we are not happy.
2. Etsī rūs urbe māluērunt, tamen Rōmam incoluērunt. *Although they preferred* the country to the city, nevertheless they lived in Rome.
3. Quamquam eōs vīderāmus, tamen loqui nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.

BUT:

4. Cum eōs vīdissēmus, tamen loqui nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.
5. Quamvis eōs vīdissēmus, tamen loqui nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.
6. Eīs ā nōbis vīsīs, tamen loqui nōluimus. *Although they had been seen* by us, nevertheless we did not want to speak. (Ablative Absolute)

CAUSAL CLAUSES (quoniam/quandō, quod/quia take the indicative to express actual fact) (Unit 15C2)

1. Quoniam } sumus amīci, amicitiam nōn negābimus. *Since we are friends, we*
Quandō } shall not deny our friendship.

2. **Quoniam**} **Quandō**} *labōrāverant, fēlicēs erant. Since they had worked, they were happy.*

3. **Quod**} **Quia**} *sumus amīcī, amīcitiam nōn negābimus. Because we (actually) are friends, we shall not deny our friendship.*

BUT:

4. **Cum** *sīmus amīcī, amīcitiam nōn negābimus. Since we are friends, we shall not deny our friendship.*

5. **Quod**} **Quia**} *labōrāvissent, fēlicēs erant. Because they (allegedly) had worked, they were happy.*

6. **Amīcō meō fēlicī, fēlix sum. Since my friend is happy, I am happy. (Ablative Absolute)**

CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES (Unit 15A1)

1. **Cum** *parentēs vidēmus, fēlicēs sumus. When we see our parents, we are happy.*

2. **Cum** *parentēs vidēbimus, fēlicēs erimus. When we (shall) see our parents, we shall be happy.*

3. **Cum** *parentēs vīderimus, fēlicēs erimus. When we shall have seen our parents, we shall be happy.*

BUT:

4. **Cum** *parentēs vidērēmus, fēlicēs erāmus. When we saw our parents, we were happy. (In past time, the subjunctive is used.)*

TEMPORAL CLAUSES (Unit 15A1 and C1)

1. **Ut**
Ubi
Quandō
Cum (stresses time)} *tē rīdeō, mē ipsum rīdeō. When I laugh at you, I laugh at my very self.*

2. **Ut**
Ubi
Quandō
Cum (stresses time)} *in viā ambulābam, Marcō occurrī. When I was walking in the street, I met Marcus. [occurrō, -ere, occurrī, occursus, 'meet']*

3. **Ut**
Ubi
Quandō
Cum (stresses time)} *amicōs vīdērunt, fēlicēs visī sunt. When they saw their friends, they seemed happy.*

4. **Postquam** *amicōs vīdērunt, fēlicēs visī sunt. After they saw their friends, they seemed happy.*

BUT:

5. **Amicis vīsīs, fēlīcēs vīsī sunt.** *When their friends had been seen, they seemed happy.* (Ablative Absolute)
6. **Cum amīcōs vīdērent, fēlīcēs vīsī sunt.** *When they saw their friends, they seemed happy.* (stresses circumstances)

dum, dōnec, 'while, until'; **simul ac (atque)**, 'as soon as'; **quōad**, 'as long as, as far as, until' (Unit 15D2)

1. **Simul ac eum vīdī, eum dīlēxi.** *As soon as I saw him, I liked him.* [**dīlīgō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus**, 'esteem, like']

Quōad
 2. **Dum** **Dōnec** **venti secundi fuērunt, nautae vēla dedērunt.** *While the winds were favorable, the sailors set sail.* [**secundus, -a, -um**, 'favorable']

Quōad
 3. **Dum** **Dōnec** **rēx vīxit, populus liber nōn erat.** *While the king lived, the people were not free.*

4. **Dum paucōs diēs in urbe morāmur, amīcī nostrī rūs ivērunt.** *While we delayed in the city for a few days, our friends went to the country.*

BUT:

5. **Cōnsilia nostra perficere nōn possumus, **dum** **dōnec** **quōad** adveniās.** *We are not able to complete our plans until you arrive.* (subjunctive stresses anticipation)

antequam, priusquam, 'before' (Unit 15D3)

1. **Antequam urbē reliquimus, eum vidimus.** *Before we abandoned the city, we saw him.*
2. **Multa cōnsilia prius fēcērunt quam librum scripsērunt.** *They made many plans before they wrote the book.*
3. **Cum cūrā ante audi quam rīdēs.** *Listen carefully before you laugh.*
4. **Eum vidēre volō antequam perierit.** *I want to see him before he dies.*

BUT:

5. **Mortuus est antequam eum vidērem.** *He died before I could see him.*

quod, 'the fact that' (Unit 18K)

A substantive clause introduced by **quod**, 'the fact that', and with its verb in the indicative is sometimes used as the subject or object of another verb, or in apposition to the subject of that other verb.

1. **Quod fēlix es, negāre nōn possumus.** *The fact that you are happy we cannot deny.*
2. **Quod tē amō mē fēlicem facit.** *The fact that I love you makes me happy.*
3. **Alia causa timōris est quod nōs ūdit.** *Another cause of fear is the fact that he hates us.*

cum, 'whenever' (perfect indicative when the main verb is present; pluperfect indicative when the main verb is imperfect) (Unit 15A4)

1. **Cum plēbs ducibus pāruit, pāx in rē pūblicā est.** *Whenever the common people obey their leaders, there is peace in the republic.*
2. **Nautae vēla dabant cum ventī secundi fuerant.** *The sailors used to set sail whenever the winds were favorable. [secundus, -a, -um, 'favorable']*
3. **Cum parentēs vīderāmus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *Whenever we saw our parents, we were happy.*

BUT:

4. **Cum parentēs vīdimus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *When we saw our parents, we were happy. (stresses time — a single action)*
5. **Cum parentēs vidērēmus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *When we saw our parents, we were happy. (stresses circumstances — a single action)*

CONDITIONS

SIMPLE OR GENERAL CONDITIONS (indicative in both clauses) (Unit 2E1)

1. **Si in agrō es, labōrās.** *If you are in the field, you are working.*
2. **Si in agrō fuistī, labōrāvistī.** *If you were in the field, you worked.*
3. **Si in agrō fuerās, labōrāverās.** *If you had been in the field, you had worked.*

FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONS (future indicative in both clauses; for emphasis, future perfect indicative in protasis) (Unit 2E2a)

1. **Si in agrō eris, labōrābis.** *If you are (will be) in the field, you will work.*
2. **Si in agrō fueris, labōrābis.** *If you are (will have been) in the field, you will work. (emphatic)*
3. **Si domum veniet, statuam vidēbit.** *If he comes (will come) home, he will see the statue.*
4. **Si deōs precātus erit, impetrābit.** *If he begs (will have begged) the gods, he will gain his request. (emphatic) [impetrō (1), 'gain one's request']*

IMPERSONAL PASSIVES (Unit 13C)

1. **In oppidō agitātum est.** *There was a disturbance in the town.*
2. **Domō discēditur.** *There is a departure from the house; they are leaving the house.*

3. Hostibus à duce **parcētur**. The enemy *will be spared* by the leader.
4. Puellis à magistrō **favēbātur**. The girls *were favored* by the teacher.

NOTE that this construction may be used with the subjunctive also:

5. In oppidō **agitētur**. *Let there be a disturbance* in the town.
6. Si puellis à magistrō **faveātur**, infēlix sim. If the girls *should be favored* by the teacher, I would be unhappy.

Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive mood is the mood used to express idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, or anticipation. (Unit 1A5)

INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A1)

The present subjunctive is used to express an exhortation in the first person. The negative is introduced by **nē**.

1. Tēcum **veniam**. *Let me come* with you.
2. Nē rūs **relinquāmus**. *Let us not abandon* the country.
3. Auxilium ad miserōs **ferāmus**. *Let us bring* aid to the wretched men.

JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A1)

The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the second and third persons. The negative is introduced by **nē**.

1. Crūdēlis senem **nē interficiat**. *Let the cruel man not kill* the old man.
2. Iram rēginae **timeant**. *Let them fear* the queen's anger.
3. Pecūniām oblātam **capiās**. *Take* the offered money.
4. Rēs meliōrēs **nē spērētis**. *Don't hope for* better matters.

In the second person, occasionally, when the verb is negative, the perfect subjunctive is found instead of the present:

5. Rēs meliōrēs **nē spērāveritis**. *Don't hope for* better matters.

DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A3)

The present and imperfect subjunctive may be used to deliberate about a course of action. This is frequently found in a rhetorical question. The negative is introduced by **nōn**.

1. Rūs **redeam**? *Should I go back* to the country? *Am I to return* to the country?
2. Eum iterum **nōn videam**? *Should I not see* him again? [iterum, adv., 'again']
3. Dōnum frātri eius **darem**? *Should I have given* a gift to his brother?

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A4)

A wish for the future which is capable of fulfillment is expressed by the present subjunctive alone or is introduced by **utinam** or **ut**. The negative is introduced by **utinam nē** or **nē**.

Wishes incapable of fulfillment utilize the imperfect subjunctive for present time and the pluperfect for past time.

1. (Utinam) meliōrēs rēs mihi sint! *If only affairs will be better for me!*
2. (Ut) diūtius vivere possēmus! *If only we could live longer!*
3. (Utinam) sapientior fuisset! *If only he had been wiser!*
4. (Utinam) nē adesset! *If only he were not present!*

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A2)

The subjunctive may be used independently to express an action which might possibly or conceivably occur. For present or future potentiality, the present subjunctive is used. For past potentiality, the imperfect subjunctive is used. The negative is expressed by **nōn**.

1. Hoc nōn faciās. *You wouldn't do this.*
2. Servi in bellō pūgnent. *The slaves might fight in the war.*
3. Tēcum irēmus. *We would have gone with you; we might have gone with you.*

USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Primary Tenses	Present	Present (<i>same time as or subsequent to the action of the main verb</i>)
	Future	Perfect (<i>prior to the action of the main verb</i>)
	Perfect ("have" or "has")	
	Future Perfect	
Secondary Tenses	Imperfect	Imperfect (<i>same time as or subsequent to the action of the main verb</i>)
	Perfect	Pluperfect (<i>prior to the action of the main verb</i>)
	(English past)	
	Pluperfect	

PURPOSE CLAUSES (ut + subjunctive; negative nē) (Unit 3G)

1. Multō cum vigōre lābōrāvimus ut magna praemia acciperēmus. *We worked with much vigor in order that we might receive great rewards.*
2. Nē inimīcī vidērentur, dōna pulchra accēpērunt. *In order that they might not seem unfriendly, they accepted the beautiful gifts.*
3. Magistrōs laudat ut sibi (ipsī) faveant. *He praises his superiors in order that they will favor him.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (Unit 14E)

Quō introduces a purpose clause which contains a comparative. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun when its antecedent, usually not the subject of the main verb, is clearly expressed in the main clause.

1. **Quō** melius **intellegās**, tōtam rem tibi expōnam. In order *that you may understand* better, I shall explain the whole matter for you.
2. Eum hīs cōsiliīs praefēcimus, **qui** multam fāmam **obtinēret**. We put him in charge of these plans in order *that he might gain* much fame. [**obtineō** (**ob** + **teneō**), ‘get hold of, obtain’]
3. Poēta carmen scripsit **quod** rēgīnae **placēret**. The poet wrote a poem *in order that he might please* the queen.

PURPOSE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY ADVERBS (Unit 14E)

Purpose clauses may be introduced by an adverb (**ubi**, **unde**, **quō**).

1. In tēctō sē cēlāvit **ubi** tūtus esset. He hid in the house in order *that he might be safe there*.
2. Nāvēs in portū parant **unde** vēla dent. They are preparing the ships in the harbor in order *that they may set sail from there*. [**portus**, -ūs, M., ‘harbor’]
3. Eunt **quō** tūtī sint. They are going *where they may be safe*.

By way of review, note the following seven ways of expressing purpose. There is no difference in the meaning of the sentences below:

1. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ut** multa **vidērent**.
2. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **qui** multa **vidērent**.
3. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ad** **videndum** multa.
4. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ad** **multa** **videnda**.
5. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **videndī** multa **causā** (**grātiā**). [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., ‘for the sake of’]
6. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **multōrum** **videndōrum** **causā** (**grātiā**). [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., ‘for the sake of’]
7. Amicōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus multa **viſum**.

We sent our friends to Rome to see many things.

KEY: (1) **ut** + subjunctive; (2) relative clause of purpose; (3) **ad** + accusative of the gerund; (4) **ad** + accusative + gerundive; (5) **causā** or **grātiā** + genitive of the gerund; (6) **causā** or **grātiā** + genitive + gerundive; (7) supine in **-um** with a verb of motion

INDIRECT COMMANDS (Unit 3H)

1. Servōs monet nē verba **rīdeant**. He is warning the slaves that they not *laugh* at his words.

2. Amīcōs hortātī sumus **nē** opera **neglegant**. We have urged our friends that they *not neglect* their works.
3. Nōbīs imperātūm est **ut** vīribus ac virtūtē **ūterēmur**. We were ordered that we *use* our strength and courage.

RESULT CLAUSES (Unit 14A)

Clauses expressing the result of an action are introduced by **ut** for the positive, **ut nōn** (**nēmō**, **nihil**, **nūmquam**, etc.) for the negative, and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

1. Tam crūdēlis est **ut** ab omnibus **timeātur**. He is so cruel *that he is feared by all*.
2. Tantō vigōre discipulī respondent **ut** magistrō **placeant**. The students answer with such great liveliness *that they please the teacher*. [discipulus, -ī, M., 'student']
3. Nōn satis celeriter cucurrērunt **ut** periculum **nōn fugerent** (**fūgerint**). They did not run quickly enough *with the result that they did not flee the danger*.
4. Venti ita validī erant **ut** **nēmō** vēla dare **posset** (**potuerit**). The winds were so strong *that no one could set sail*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT (Unit 14B)

Certain verbs and expressions have result clauses either as their object or subject.

1. Effēcērunt **ut** pāx fieret (**facta sit**). They brought it about *that peace was made*.
2. Fit **ut** nōs sīmus amici. It happens *that we are friends*.
3. Fac **ut** hoc quam celerrimē **fiat**. See to it *that this is done as quickly as possible*.

With **faciō** and **efficiō**, the negative is often expressed by **nē**, particularly when there is an implicit notion of command in the sentence:

4. Fac **nē** sit mora. See to it *that there isn't a delay*.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT (Unit 14D)

A relative clause of characteristic may be fused with a result clause to produce a relative clause of result. The relative pronoun is standing for the **ut** which would normally introduce the clause of result.

1. Quod factum tantum fuit **quod** omnēs **mīrarentur**? What deed was so great *that all (people) admired it*?
2. Tam clārus est **quem** omnēs **sciant**. He is so famous *that all (people) know him*.
3. Tam senex est **qui** morī **velit**. He is so old *that he wants to die*.

fore **ut** + SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 18B)

Fore ut is used with the subjunctive often in place of a future *passive* infinitive in indirect statement or in place of a future *active* infinitive when the verb lacks a fourth principal part.

1. Spērat fore ut impii ex urbe expellantur. He hopes that the wicked men *will be driven* out of the city.
2. Scivit fore ut multum ab eis libris discerēmus. He knew that *we would learn* a lot from those books.
3. Tibi diximus fore ut id accideret. We told you that this *would happen*.
4. Putās fore ut eī adsint? Do you think that they *will be present*?

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (GENERIC RELATIVE CLAUSES) (Unit 14C)

The relative pronoun **qui**, **quae**, **quod** plus the subjunctive can be used to describe the antecedent of the pronoun in terms of the general qualities or characteristics of the group to which the antecedent belongs. The negative clause is often introduced by **quīn**.

1. Sunt quī eum laudent. *There are those who praise him; There are those who would praise him.*
2. Nēmō est quī eum tē mālit. *There is no one who prefers him to you; There is no one who would prefer him to you.*
3. Quid erat quod nōbīs timendum esset? *What was there which we had to fear?*
4. Sōlus erit quīn hoc faciat. *He will be the only one who doesn't do this; He will be the only one who won't do this; He will be the only one who wouldn't do this.*

CLAUSES OF FEARING (Unit 17A)

Clauses of fearing are introduced by **nē** for the positive and **ut** (occasionally, **nē...nōn**) for the negative.

1. Metuunt ut hostēs urbem reliquerint. *They fear that the enemy has not abandoned the city.*
2. Veriti sumus nē nōs ōdissent. *We feared that they hated us.*
3. Timet ut cōpiis praeſit. *He is afraid that he will not be in charge of the troops.*
4. Timent nē nōn vēritātem sibi dictūrus sīs. *They fear that you will not tell them the truth.*

INDIRECT QUESTIONS (Unit 12C)

Indirect questions are subordinate noun clauses which serve as the object (and, less frequently, the subject) of the words on which they depend. These words usually, but not always, express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, asking, and the like. Indirect questions are introduced by an interrogative word and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

1. Nōn intellegit quō modō hoc fīat. *He does not understand *how* this is done.*
2. Quid sciat incertum est. *It is uncertain *what he knows*.*
3. Nōn exposuisti cūr hūc venīrēs. *You did not explain *why you were coming here*.*

4. **Quā dē causā hoc factūrus sīs** manifestum est. It is clear *for what reason you will do this.* [manifestus, -a, -um, 'evident, clear']

CONDITIONS

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS (imperfect subjunctive in both clauses) (Unit 2E3a)

1. **Si rēx essem**, imperium mihi **esset**. If *I were* king, *I would have* power.
2. **Nisi frāter meus essēs**, poenās **darēs**. If *you were* not my brother, *you would pay* the penalty.
3. **Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent**, cōnsul eōs **opprimeret**. If *they were making* a plot against the state, the consul *would suppress* them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS (pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses) (Unit 2E3b)

1. **Si dē nōbis cōgitāvissētis**, hoc numquam **fēcissētis**. If *you had thought* about us, *you would never have done* this.
2. **Si oppidum moenibus dēfēnsum esset**, hostēs nōn **invāsissent**. If the town *had been defended* by walls, the enemy *would not have invaded* it.
3. **Nisi auxilium tulissētis**, mortuī **essēmus**. If *you had not brought* aid, *we would have died*.

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONS (present subjunctive in both clauses; occasionally perfect subjunctive in protasis) (Unit 2E2b)

1. **Si iuvenem laudēs**, fēlix **sit**. If *you should praise* the young man, *he would be happy*.
2. **Si oppidum ab hostibus vincātur**, incolae servī **fiant**. If the town *should be conquered* by the enemy, the inhabitants *would become* slaves.
3. **Nisi auxilium ad incolās ferātur**, patiantur. If aid *should not be brought* to the inhabitants, *they would suffer*.

Note that conditions can be mixed as logic requires (Unit 2E4):

1. **Si eum vīdisset**, fēlix **esset**. If *she had seen* him, *she would be happy*.
2. **Si periculum sit**, clāmābō. If *there should be* danger, *I shall shout*.
3. **Si Rōmae essem**, iter longum **fēcissem**. If *I were* in Rome, *I would have made* a long journey.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (Unit 7J)

Subordinate clauses within an indirect statement normally have their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by the verb or phrase of the head introducing the indirect statement.

1. **Virum quem vidērēmus esse frātrem poētae dixērunt**. They said that the man whom *we saw* was the poet's brother.

2. Deōs praemia populō cui **faveant** datūrōs esse sentit. He feels that the gods will give rewards to the people whom *they favor*.
3. Sē ducibus qui rei pūblicae **praeessent** crēditūrōs esse arbitrātī sunt. They thought that they would believe the leaders who *were in charge of* the state.

CAUSAL CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive) (Unit 15A2 and D1)

Quod or **quia** is used with the subjunctive to give an *alleged* reason.

1. **Cum** cōnsilia eōrum **ridērēmus**, magistri nōs ūderant. *Since we laughed at* their plans, our superiors hated us.
2. Haec facere scivimus, **cum** nōbīs ā tē **exposita essent**. We knew how to do these things, *since they had been explained* to us by you. [sciō, here, 'know how']
3. **Cum** in Italiā sīmus, Rōmam ibimus. *Since we are in* Italy, we shall go to Rome.
4. Rōmam vēnērunt **{quod quia}** nōs vidēre vellent. They came to Rome *because they (allegedly) wanted* to see us.

BUT:

5. Quid faciat nescit **{quoniam quandō}** haec nōn **exposita sunt**. He does not know what to do *since these things have not been explained*.
6. Quid faciat nescit **{quod quia}** haec nōn **exposita sunt**. He does not know what to do *because these things (actually) have not been explained*.
7. Quid faciat nescit, **hīs nōn expositīs**. He does not know what to do *since these things have not been explained*. (Ablative Absolute)

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive; **quamvis** + subjunctive; **ut** + subjunctive) (Unit 15A3 and C3; **ut** + subj. not discussed in the text)

1. **Cum** in Italiā sīmus, Rōmam tamen nōn ibimus. *Although we are in* Italy, nevertheless we shall not go to Rome.
2. **Cum** ad rēgem **missī essent**, eum vidēre nōn potuērunt. *Although they had been sent* to the king, they were not able to see him.
3. Tē vidēre volō, **cum** tē hōc tempore nōn **amem**. I want to see you, *although I do not love* you at this time.
4. **Quamvis** mē ad tē venire volueris, tamen hoc nōn faciam. *Although you wanted* me to come to you, nevertheless I shall not do it.
5. Illūc ivī **ut nōllem**. I went there **{even though granted that}** *I did not want* to.

BUT:

6. **Quamquam** } mē ad tē venire voluistī, tamen hoc nōn faciam. *Although you
Etsī* wanted me to come to you, nevertheless I shall not do it.

7. **His expositīs**, tamen quid facerēmus nescivimus. *Although these things had
been explained*, nevertheless we did not know what to do. (Ablative
Absolute)

CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES (cum + subjunctive when the action is in past time;
cum + indicative when the action is in present or future time) (Unit 15A1)

1. **Cum fulgor vīsus esset**, multi timuērunt. *When the lightning had been seen*, many feared.
2. **Cum tēctum ardēret**, omnēs clāmāvērunt. *When the house was burning*, all (people) shouted.
3. **Cum hunc cōpiis praefēcissent**, mīlitēs vīcērunt. *When they had put this
man in charge of the troops*, the soldiers conquered the enemy.

BUT:

4. **Hōc cōpiis praefectō**, mīlitēs hostēs vicērunt. *When this man had been put
in charge of the troops*, the soldiers conquered the enemy. (Ablative Absolute)
5. **Cum fulgor vīsus erat**, multi timuērunt. *When the lightning had been seen*, many feared. (The indicative is used to stress time.)

ANTICIPATION (Unit 15D2 and D3)

One of the basic uses of the subjunctive is to express anticipation.

Dōnec

1. **Dum** } hoc faciās, infēlix erō. *Until you do this*, I shall be unhappy.
Quōad

2. **Labōrem neglēxērunt** **dōnec** } litterās tuās acciperent. They neglected their
dum } work until they could receive your letter. [labor, -ōris, M., 'work']
quōad
3. **Hoc faciēmus antequam tē videāmus**. We shall do this before we see you.
4. **Ante aderō quam adveniās**. I shall be present before you arrive.
5. **Prius eum laudāvērunt quam eum scīrent**. They praised him before they
could know him.

BUT:

1. **Labōrem neglēxērunt dum litterās tuās accēpērunt**. They neglected their work
until they received your letter. (The indicative is used to express fact, not
anticipation.)

2. **Prius** eum laudāvērunt **quam** eum **scivērunt**. They praised him *before they (actually) knew him.*

AND:

3. **Ante** aderō **quam** **advenīs** (**advēneris**). I shall be present *before you arrive.* (The present or future perfect indicative frequently is used with **antequam** and **priusquam** in primary sequence even when there is a notion of anticipation.)

CLAUSES OF PROVISO (dum, modo, and **dummodo** + present or imperfect subjunctive; the negative uses **nē**) (Unit 15E)

1. **Hoc faciēmus** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dummodo} \\ \text{dum} \\ \text{modo} \end{array} \right\}$ auxilium **offerās**. We shall do this *provided that you offer help.*

2. **Auxilium offerēmus** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dum} \\ \text{modo} \\ \text{dummodo} \end{array} \right\}$ **quaerātur**. We shall offer help *provided it is sought.*

3. **Nautae vēla dabunt** $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{modo} \\ \text{dum} \\ \text{dummodo} \end{array} \right\}$ **venti secundi sint**. The sailors will set sail *provided that the winds are favorable.* [secundus, -a, -um, 'favorable']

Dum $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Dummodo} \\ \text{modo} \end{array} \right\}$ **nē tibi noceam**, **faciam quid dēbeam**. *Provided that I do not harm you, I shall do what I must.*

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION (Unit 18A)

Frequently relative and other subordinate clauses within clauses whose verbs are in the subjunctive have verbs which are attracted into the subjunctive provided that the subordinate clause is an integral part of the idea of the main clause.

1. **Rōmam ire volō ut tēctum in quō vīxerit** poēta clārissimus videam. I want to go to Rome to see the house in which the very famous poet *lived.*
2. **Tam crūdēlis erat ut omnis populus dum vīveret eum timēret**. He was so cruel that all the people while *he lived* feared him.
3. **Quis est qui tēctum in quō vīvat** poēta clārissimus vidēre velit? Who is there who wants to see the house in which the very famous poet *lives?*

CLAUSES OF DOUBTING (Unit 17B)

Num or **an** + subjunctive is used after a positive expression of doubting; **quīn** + subjunctive after a negative one.

1. **Dubitō num veniat.** I doubt *whether (that) he is coming (he will come).*
2. **Dubitāvērunt an hoc facerēmus.** They doubted *whether (that) we were doing (would do) this.*
3. **Dubitāsne num diē cōnstitūtā adventūrī sint?** Do you doubt *whether (that) they will arrive on the day which has been decided?*
4. **Nōn est dubium quīn tē timeat.** There isn't a doubt *(but) that he fears you.*
5. **Quis dubitet quīn impius sit?** Who would doubt *(but) that he is wicked?*

CLAUSES OF PREVENTION (Unit 17C)

If the verb of prevention is positive, the subjunctive clause will be introduced by **quōminus** or **nē**; if negative, by **quōminus** or **quīn**.

1. **Hostēs cōpiās nostrās dēterrūerunt {quōminus} nē** advenīrent. The enemy prevented our troops *from arriving.*
2. **Ignis nōn impedit {quīn} quōminus** in tēctum ingrediāmūr. The fire will not hinder *us from entering* the house.
3. **Puerī obstant {nē} quōminus** opus tuum perficiās? Are the children hindering *you from completing* your work?

SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS (ut or nē expressed or implied + subjunctive) (Unit 16D3 and E)

1. **Necesse est (ut) Marcus nāvibus praeſit.** It is necessary *that Marcus be in charge of* the ships.
2. **Licet (ut) rēgem videāmūs.** It is permitted *for us to see* the king. OR: *We are permitted to see* the king.
3. **Patriae interest ut hostēs discēdant.** It is in the interest of the country *that the enemy withdraw.*
4. **Tuā rēfert nē illūc eās.** It is to (in) your interest *not to go* there.

Participles (Unit 5B)

A participle is a verbal adjective.

PARTICIPLES AS ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

1. **Virum ā periculō fugientem vīdimus.** We saw the man *fleeing* from danger.
2. **Oppidum ab hostibus captū incēnsum est.** The town *captured* by the enemy was set on fire. [incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnſus, 'set on fire']
3. **Servus ā tēctō dominī fugitūrus timuit.** The slave, *about to flee* from his master's house, was afraid.

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

See page 376.

Gerunds (Unit 16A)

The gerund is a verbal noun found only in the singular. It lacks a nominative case which is supplied by the infinitive.

1. Timor **scribendi** multōs scribere prohibet. The fear of *writing* keeps many people from writing.

2. Rūs ivimus **venandi** {causā
grātiā}. We went to the country for the sake of *hunting*.

OR: We went to the country to *hunt*. [grātiā, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']

3. Marcum **canendō** praefēcimus. We put Marcus in charge of *the singing*.

4. Ad **venandum** rūs ivimus. We went to the country to *hunt*.

5. Eundō rūs patri placuimus. *By going* to the country we pleased our father.

BUT: Rūs ivimus **venandōrum** animālium {causā
grātiā}. We went to the country to *hunt animals*. [grātiā, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of'] (The gerundive is used instead of a gerund with an object.)

Gerundives (Unit 16B)

The gerundive is a verbal adjective. It is frequently used instead of a gerund which governs an object except when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun.

1. Timor librōrum **scribendōrum** multōs scribere prohibet. The fear of *writing books* keeps many people from writing.

2. Multi linguam antiquam **discendam** ōdērunt. Many people hate *learning an ancient language*. [lingua, -ae, F., 'tongue, language']

3. Linguā antiquā **discendā** ūtimur. We enjoy *learning an ancient language*. [lingua, -ae, F., 'tongue, language']

4. Rōmam ad Caesarem **videndum** ivimus. We went to Rome to *see Caesar*. [Caesar, -aris, M., 'Caesar']

5. Rōmam Caesaris **videndi** {causā
grātiā} ivimus. We went to Rome for the sake of *seeing (to see) Caesar*. [Caesar, -aris, M., 'Caesar'; grātiā, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']

Supines (Unit 17D)

The supine is a verbal noun which occurs only in the accusative and ablative singular. The accusative case is used, without a preposition, to express purpose after a verb of motion, and the ablative, with certain adjectives, expresses respect.

1. Rōmam Caesarem **vīsum** ivimus. We went to Rome *to see* Caesar. [Caesar, -aris, M., 'Caesar']
2. Ā periculō **fugitum** cucurrimus. We ran *to flee* from danger.
3. Librum — mirābile **dictū!** — perfēcimus. We have finished the book — wonderful *to say!* [mirabilis, -e, 'wonderful, marvelous']

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT STATEMENT

In order to put a conditional statement into the indirect form after a verb or expression of the head, the apodosis is recast in the subject accusative and infinitive construction; the protasis will have its verb in the subjunctive, regardless of its mood in the direct statement. Observe the following:

Simple (General) Conditions

APODOSIS: The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the tense of the infinitive is relative to that of the main verb of the head.

PROTASIS: The verb is in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

Si īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciunt, cōnsul eōs opprimit.

If they plot against the state, the consul oppresses them.

Dicit (dicit) si īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciant, cōnsulem eōs opprimere.

He says (will say) that, if they plot against the state, the consul oppresses them.

Dixit si īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōnsulem eōs opprimere.

He said that, if they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Si īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciēbant, cōnsul eōs opprimēbat.

If they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Dicit (dicit) si īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcerint, cōnsulem eōs oppressisse.

He says (will say) that, if they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Dixit si īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōnsulem eōs oppressisse.

He said that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul had oppressed them.

Future More Vivid Conditions and Future Less Vivid Conditions

Note that no distinction is made between these two kinds of conditions in indirect statement.

APODOSIS: The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the tense of the infinitive will always be future.

PROTASIS: The verb is always in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

MORE VIVID:

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {*facient* } *, cōnsul eōs opprimet.*
fēcerint

If {*they plot*
plot (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul will oppress them.

LESS VIVID:

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam {*faciant* } *, cōnsul eōs opprimat.*
fēcerint

If {*they should plot*
should plot (should have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

MORE VIVID:

Dicit (*dicet*) *sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*faciant* } *, cōnsulem eōs oppres-*
sūrum esse.

He says (will say) that, if {*they plot*
plot (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul will oppress them.

LESS VIVID:

Dicit (*dicet*) *sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*faciant* } *, cōnsulem eōs oppres-*
sūrum esse.

He says (will say) that, if {*they should plot*
should plot (should have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

MORE VIVID:

Dixit *sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*facerent* } *, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum*
esse.

He said that, if {*they plotted*
plotted (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

LESS VIVID:

Dixit *sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*facerent* } *, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum*
esse.

He said that, if {*they should plot*
should plot (should have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

Present and Past Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

APODOSIS: The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the infinitive is always composed of the future active participle plus *fuisse*.

PROTASIS: The verb is always in the subjunctive, the tense of which is the same as it would have been in the direct statement, *regardless* of the tense sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōnsul eōs opprimeret.

If they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōnsul eōs oppressisset.

If they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dicit (dicet) si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He says (will say) that, if they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dicit (dicet) si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He says (will say) that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dixit si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He said that, if they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

Dixit si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.

He said that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

CONDITIONS IN OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

In order to put a conditional statement into the indirect form after a verb of commanding, fearing, or the like, the observations made above about the protasis of each type of condition will apply, but the apodosis will be recast in

the appropriate construction dependent on the verb of commanding, fearing, or the like.

Si Caesar veniet, vincet. If Caesar comes, he will conquer.

Timeō, si Caesar **veniat**, nē **vincat** (victūrus sit). I fear that, if Caesar *comes, he will conquer*.

ADDITIONAL RULES

A collective noun usually takes a verb in the singular, but the plural is found when individuals are thought of: **Quisque domum ire voluerunt**, ‘Each one wanted to go home’.

A compound subject, even when the subjects are singular, takes a verb in the plural: **Māterne et pater tuus venient**? ‘Will your mother and father come?’ When the compound subject is in different persons, the verb is usually in the first person rather than the second person and in the second person rather than the third person: **Si tū et tuus frāter domum ibitis, ego et mea soror illūc ibimus**, ‘If you and your brother go home, my sister and I will go there’. When there is a compound subject in the third person, the verb may agree with the nearest one: **Multi pueri parvi et ūna puella parva aderat**, ‘Many little boys and one little girl were present’.

Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: **nōn numquam**, ‘sometimes’; **nōn nullī**, ‘some’; **Nēmō nōn veniet**, ‘Everyone will come’; **Nōn possum nōn venire**, ‘I must come’.

When several nouns of different gender are described by one adjective, the masculine gender predominates over the feminine if *persons* are being described; if *things* of different genders are described by one adjective, the adjective will be neuter: **Meus frāter sororque sunt pīi**, ‘My brother and sister are pious’; **Virtūs et vigor sunt bona**, ‘Courage and vigor are good’. Sometimes the adjective will agree with the nearest noun: **Virtūs et vigor sunt bonus**, ‘Courage and vigor are good’.

There is no one word in Latin for “yes” or for “no”. Sometimes the verb is repeated for “yes” or repeated with **nōn** for “no”: **Venisne?**, ‘Are you coming?’ **Veniō**, ‘Yes’. **Nōn veniō**, ‘No’. There are other ways of saying “yes” including: **aiō**, **etiam**, **ita**, **vērō**, **certē**. Some ways of saying “no” are: **negō**, **nōn**, **minimē**, **nulllō modō**, **nōn quidem**.

Nescio quis is used as an indefinite pronoun meaning ‘someone or other’ and **nescio quid**, ‘something or other’. **Quis** and **quid** are declined, but **nescio** remains the same: **Nescio quis clāmābat**, ‘Someone or other kept shouting’; **Nescio quem dāmnāvērunt**, ‘They condemned someone or other’; **Nescio quid dixit**, ‘He said something or other’. Note that this phrase does not introduce an indirect question.

ROMAN NAMES

Roman citizens usually had three names: the **praenōmen** (or personal name), the **nōmen** (or family name), the **cōgnōmen** (the name designating the branch of the family).

e.g. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Gaius Julius Caesar

Publius Vergilius Maro

The **praenōmina** were relatively few in number and were customarily abbreviated in the following way:

A.	= Aulus	P.	= Publius
App.	= Appius	Q.	= Quintus
C.	= Gaius	Ser.	= Servius
Cn.	= Gnaeus	Sex.	= Sextus
D.	= Decimus	Sp.	= Spurius
L.	= Lucius	T.	= Titus
M.	= Marcus	Ti.	= Tiberius
M'.	= Manius		

A NOTE ON QUANTITATIVE RHYTHM

Accentual or *qualitative* rhythm in poetry is based on a sequence of stressed and unstressed syllables.

By brooks too broad for leaping

The light-foot lads are laid.

And rose-lipt girls are sleeping

In fields where roses fade.

(A. E. Housman)

The rhythm of classical Latin poetry is *quantitative*, not qualitative. It is based on a sequence of syllables which are *temporally* long or short; that is, a long syllable takes more time to pronounce than a short one. To give a rough illustration, one might say that a long syllable is equivalent to a half note while the short syllable is equivalent to a quarter note. On the most basic level, this rhythmic scheme admits of no stress, although one syllable in each foot does in practice receive a *slight* accent which is called **ictus** [*ictus*, -ūs, M., 'blow, beat'].

In order to *scan* or construct a schematic representation of a line of verse, the quantitative length of each of the syllables in that line must be determined. In working this out, division into words is disregarded and the entire line is considered as one cluster of sounds. The rules for syllabification and for determining the quantitative length of syllables are the same as those given in the Introduction (pp. 2-3): A syllable is *long by nature* if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; a syllable is *long by position* if it contains a vowel which is followed by two consonants. The letter **x** (= ks) is said to be a double consonant. The letters **qu** (= kw) function as one sound cluster; the **u** is not a separate syllable. The combination **qu** does not make for length by position. EXCEPTION: When the two consonants following a vowel are a mute (plosive) (**p, b, t, d, c(k), g**) followed by **l** or **r**, the poet has the license to regard the syllable as either long or short.

According to this scheme, the following verses are scanned as shown:

— — ˘ — — ˘ — ˘ — — ˘ —
Quem bāsiābis ? Cui labella mordēbis ?
(Catullus 8.19; p. 124)

— ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — — — — ˘ —
Quem recitās meus est, Ō Fidentine, libellus:
— ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ — ˘ ˘ —
sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus.
(Martial 1.38; p. 124)

— — — ˘ ˘ — ˘ — ˘ — — ˘ —
Ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque finem.
(Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.199; p. 191)

Note that the symbol — is used for long syllables, and ˘ is used for short syllables. Do not confuse the symbol for long syllables with the macron, which is used to mark long vowels.

Occasionally, *elision*, or the full or partial suppression of a final syllable, occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry. Elision is found in the following instances:

1. When a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word which begins with a vowel or diphthong:

˘ ˘ — ˘ — — — — ˘ —
... revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem
(Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.202; p. 191)

Note that the quantity of the full syllable formed by elision is determined by the length (natural or positional) of the second of the two original syllables. In the example above, the syllable is short because the first syllable of **animōs** is short.

2. When a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word which begins with a vowel preceded by **h**:

Adeste, hendecasyllabi, quot estis

(Catullus 42.1)

3. When a word ending in a vowel followed by **m** is followed by a word which begins with a vowel or a vowel preceded by **h**:

Nulla fidēs ullō fuit unquam in foedere tanta

(Catullus 87.3; p. 174)

There is some dispute as to whether elision means the total omission in pronunciation of the first of the two syllables or a more rapid combination of the two sounds in order to fit them into the reduced temporal allotment. In order to acquaint himself or herself with the rules for elision and also to acquire some sense of Latin rhythm, the beginner would do well to omit the first of the two syllables when reading the line aloud. Once some degree of security has been acquired, the reader may, if desired, experiment with the rapid combination of the sounds.

In addition to scanning the lines as we have done, it is possible to divide them into smaller measures of time called "feet". A "foot" is a measure composed of a sequence of long and short syllables. The type or types of feet employed in a given line of verse determine the rhythm of that verse. The following feet are basic and appear in some of the selections in this book:

— <u>u</u>	dactyl
— —	spondee
<u>u</u> —	anapest
<u>u</u> —	iamb
— <u>u</u>	trochee
— <u>u</u> —	choriamb

The scansion of the following lines of verse shows the quantities of the various syllables as well as the division into feet (indicated by |):

— —|u—|— | u—|u —| —
Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
— —|— u|—u u|— u| — u u|—u
Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus his quoque fīnem.

The rhythmic analysis of Latin poetry is both intricate and fascinating. Although the observations offered above have been necessarily simplified, they should

help to give at least an initial impression of the rhythm and the music of the selections of poetry encountered at this early stage in one's study of the Latin language and literature. By applying these rules, it will be possible to read the selections in this book with some attention to their rhythm and so with greater appreciation.

NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
I	ūnus, -a, -um 'one'	primus, -a, -um 'first'	singuli, -ae, -a 'one by one, one each'	semel 'once'
II	duo, duae, duo 'two'	secundus, -a, -um (alter, altera, alterum) 'second'	bini, -ae, -a 'two by two, two each'	bis 'twice'
III	trēs, tria 'three'	tertius, -a, -um 'third'	terni, -ae, -a (trini, -ae, -a) 'three by three, three each'	ter 'three times'
IV (III)	quattuor ¹ 'four'	quārtus, -a, -um 'fourth'	quaterni, -ae, -a 'four by four, four each'	quater 'four times'
V	quīnque	quīntus, -a, -um	quīni, -ae, -a	quīnquiē(n)s
VI	sex	sextus, -a, -um	sēni, -ae, -a	sexiē(n)s
VII	septem	septimus, -a, -um	septēni, -ae, -a	septiē(n)s
VIII	octo	octāvus, -a, -um	octōni, -ae, -a	octiē(n)s
IX (VIII)	novem	nōnus, -a, -um	nōvēni, -ae, -a	nōvī(n)s
X	decem	decimus, -a, -um	dēni, -ae, -a	deciē(n)s

¹ Unless otherwise specified, the numbers are indeclinable.

NUMERALS—*cont.*

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
XI	ündecim	ündecimus, -a, -um	ünddēnī, -ae, -a	ündeciē(n)s
XII	duodecim	duodecimus, -a, -um	duodēnī, -ae, -a	duodeciē(n)s
XIII	tredecim (decem [et] tres)	tertius, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um (decimus, -a, -um [et] tertius, -a, -um)	ternī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	ter deciē(n)s
XIV (XIII)	quattuordecim	quārtus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	quaternī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	quater deciē(n)s
XV	quindecim	quintus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	quintī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	quinqūiē(n)s deciē(n)s (quindeciē[n]s)
XVI	sēdecim	sextus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	sēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	sexiē(n)s deciē(n)s (sēdeciē[n]s)
XVII	septendecim	septimus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	septēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	septiē(n)s deciē(n)s
XVIII	duodēviginti (octōdecim)	duodēvīcē(n)simus, -a, -um (octāvus, -a, -um)	octōnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a (duodēvicēnī, -ae, -a)	duodēvīcē(n)s (octēi[n]s deciē[n]s)

XIX (XVIII)	ündēvīgintā (novendecim)	ündēvīcē(n)simus, -a, -um (nōnus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um)	novēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a (ündēvīcēnī, -ae, -a)	ündēvīcē(n)s (noviēnīs deciēnīs)
XX	vīgintī	vīcē(n)simus, -a, -um (vīgensimus, -a, -um)	vīcēnī, -ae, -a	vīcē(n)s
XXI	vīgintī ūnus, -a, -um (ūnus, -a, -um et vīgintī)	vīcē(n)simus, -a, -um prīmus, -a, -um (ūnus, -a, -um et vīcēnīsimus, -a, -um)	vīcēnī, -ae, -a singulī, -ae, -a	semel et vīcē(n)s (vīcēnīs semel)
XXX	trīgintā	trīcē(n)simus, -a, -um	trīcēnī, -ae, -a	trīcē(n)s
XL (XXXX)	quadrāgintā	quadrāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a	quadrāgīe(n)s
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	quīnquāgēnī, -ae, -a	quīnquāgīe(n)s
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	sexāgēnī, -ae, -a	sexāgīe(n)s
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	septuāgēnī, -ae, -a	septuāgīe(n)s
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgē(n)simus, -a, -um	octōgēnī, -ae, -a	octōgīe(n)s
XC (LXXXX)	nōnāgintā	nōnāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	nōnāgēnī, -ae, -a	nōnāgīe(n)s
C	centūm	centē(n)simus, -a, -um	centēnī, -ae, -a	centīe(n)s

NUMERALS—*cont.*

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentē(n)simus, -a, -um	ducēnī, -ae, -a	ducentiē(n)s
CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentē(n)simus, -a, -um	trecēnī, -ae, -a	trecentiē(n)s
CCCC	quadringenitī, -ae, -a	quadringenētē(n)simus, -a, -um	quadriringēnī, -ae, -a	quadriringentiē(n)s
D	quingentī, -ae, -a	quīngentē(n)simus, -a, -um	quīngēnī, -ae, -a	quīngentiē(n)s
DC	sēscentī, -ae, -a	sēscēntē(n)simus, -a, -um	sēscēnī, -ae, -a	sēscēntiē(n)s
DCC	septingenitī, -ae, -a	septingenētē(n)simus, -a, -um	septingēnī, -ae, -a	septingentiē(n)s
DCCC	octingenitī, -ae, -a	octingenētē(n)simus, -a, -um	octingēnī, -ae, -a	octingentiē(n)s
DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentē(n)simus, -a, -um	nōngēnī, -ae, -a	nōningentiē(n)s (nōngentiē[n]s)
M	mille ²	millē(n)simus, -a, -um	millēnī, -ae, -a (singula millē[n]ja) ³	miliē(n)s (miliē[n]s)

² The singular is indeclinable; the plural is *milia*, -iūm (third declension i-stem).

³ Both parts decline.

VOCABULARIES

These lists (Latin-English and English-Latin) contain all the words necessary to do the exercises in this book. Words that are glossed in the main body of the text and that do not appear in the formal Unit Vocabularies are not included.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The entry (1) after a verb form indicates that the verb belongs to the first conjugation and has the regular principal parts in **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**. The numbers in the left-hand column refer to the Unit in which the word or phrase first appears.

UNIT

A

2	ā, ab (<i>prep. + abl.</i>), (away) from; by (<i>only with living beings</i>)
16	abeō, abire, abiī (abivī), abitus, go away, depart
15	absēns, absentis, absent
15	absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, be away, be absent
6	ac <i>or</i> atque (<i>conj.</i>), and
5	accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessus, go to, approach
14	accidō, accidere, accidī, --, fall upon; happen, occur
12	accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, receive, accept; hear
8	ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, fierce
3	acerbus, acerba, acerbum, bitter, harsh
2	ad (<i>prep. + acc.</i>), to, toward
14	adēō (<i>adv.</i>), so, so much, so far
13	admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis, <i>F.</i> , admiration
15	adsum, adesse, adfui, --, be present
13	adulēscēns, adulēscēntis, young, youthful
14	adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventus, come to, arrive
16	adversus, adversa, adversum, opposite, hostile, adverse
18	aestimō (1), estimate, reckon
17	aetās, aetātis, <i>F.</i> , time of life, age, life
4	aeternus, aeterna, aeternum, eternal; in aeternum , forever
10	afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, bring to, present
3	ager, agrī, <i>M.</i> , field
11	aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum, go to, approach

UNIT

15 **agitō** (1), disturb, stir up

4 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**, do, drive, discuss, spend (*time*), conduct

9 **aiō** (*defective verb*), say, affirm (*present aiō, ais, ait, --, --, aiunt; imperfect aiēbam, etc., complete; present subjunctive --, aiās, aiat, --, --, aiant*)

16 **aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum**, belonging to another, strange, out of place

13 **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** (*adj.*), some, any

13 **aliquis, aliquid** (*pron.*), someone, something; anyone, anything

10 **alius, alia, aliud**, other, another; **alius...alius**, one...another; **aliī...aliī**, some...others

10 **alter, altera, alterum**, the other (*of two*)

4 **altus, alta, altum**, high, tall, deep

1 **ambulō** (1), walk

9 **amīctia, amīctiae, F.**, friendship

4 **amicus, amīca, amīcum**, friendly (+ *dat.*)

16 **āmittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus**, let go, lose

7 **amō** (1), love

7 **amor, amōris, M.**, love

12 **an** (*conj.*), or (*introducing the second part of a double question*); whether (*introducing a single indirect question*); --...an, whether...or; --...an nōn, whether...or not (*in direct double questions*)

2 **anima, animae, F.**, soul, spirit, life force

17 **animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus**, turn one's attention to, notice

6 **animal, animālis, animālium, N.**, animal

14 **animus, animī, M.**, mind, rational spirit, soul

7 **annus, anni, M.**, year

5 **ante** (*prep. + acc. ; adv.*), before, in front of; *as adverb* before, previously

15 **antequam** (*conj.*), before

5 **antīquus, antiqua, antīquum**, ancient

16 **aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus**, open

15 **appārēō, appārēre, appārui, appāritus**, appear, come in sight, be apparent

10 **apud** (*prep. + acc.*), at, near, among; at the house of

1 **aqua, aquae, F.**, water

2 **āra, ārae, F.**, altar

11 **arbitrō, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**, think, believe, judge

5 **ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsus**, burn, be on fire; desire

5 **arma, armōrum, N. pl.**, arms, weapons

10 **ars, artis, artium, F.**, skill, art

UNIT

18 as, assis, assium, *M.*, as (*a small denomination of money*)
 7 Asia, *Asiae*, *F.*, Asia
 6 Athēnae, *Athēnārum*, *F. pl.*, Athens
 6 atque or ac (*conj.*), and
 7 auctor, *auctōris*, *M.*, producer, founder, author
 14 auctōritās, *auctōritatis*, *F.*, authority
 10 audācia, *audāiae*, *F.*, boldness, courage
 10 audāx, *audācis*, bold, courageous
 11 audeō, *audēre*, *ausus sum*, dare
 3 audiō, *audīre*, *audīvī*, *audītus*, hear, listen (to)
 10 auferō, *auferre*, *abstulī*, *ablātus*, carry away
 12 aura, *aurae*, *F.*, breeze, wind, air
 5 aureus, *aurea*, *aureum*, golden, of gold
 6 aurōra, *aurōrae*, *F.*, dawn
 5 aurum, *aurī*, *N.*, gold
 14 aut (*conj.*), or; aut...aut, either...or
 5 autem (*postpositive conj.*), however, moreover
 10 auxilium, *auxiliū*, *N.*, aid

B

3 bellum, *bellī*, *N.*, war
 5 bene (*adv.*), well
 3 bonus, *bona*, *bonum*, good

C

9 cadō, *cadere*, *cecidi*, *cāsus*, fall
 3 caecus, *caeca*, *caecum*, blind, hidden, secret
 4 caelum, *caeli*, *N.*, heaven, sky
 15 calamitās, *calamitatis*, *F.*, disaster, calamity
 3 campus, *campī*, *M.*, plain, level surface
 5 canō, *canere*, *cecini*, *cantus*, sing (of)
 2 capiō, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captus*, take, capture
 6 careō, *carēre*, *caruī*, *caritus*, lack, be without (+ *abl.*)
 8 carmen, *carminis*, *N.*, song, poem, incantation
 14 Carthāgō, *Carthāginis*, *F.*, Carthage (*a city on the coast of North Africa*)
 4 cārus, *cāra*, *cārum*, dear (+ *dat.*)
 9 cāsus, *cāsūs*, *M.*, fall, accident, occurrence, chance
 16 causa, *causae*, *F.*, cause, reason; causā (*preceded by gen.*), for the sake of

UNIT

5 **cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessus**, go, move, yield
 13 **celer, celeris, celere**, swift
 17 **celeritās, celeritātis**, *F.*, speed, swiftness
 2 **cella, cellae, F.**, storeroom, (small) room
 2 **cēlō** (1), hide, conceal
 11 **cēna, cēnae, F.**, dinner
 10 **certus, certa, certum**, certain, sure
 4 **cibus, cibī, M.**, food
 18 **cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus**, surround, gird
 4 **circum** (*prep. + acc.*), around
 7 **cīvis, cīvis, cīvium, M. or F.**, citizen
 8 **cīvitās, cīvitātis**, *F.*, citizenship; state
 1 **clāmō** (1), shout
 3 **clārus, clāra, clārum**, bright, clear, famous
 10 **coepī, coepisse, coeptus**, began (*defective verb; it occurs only in the perfect system*)
 2 **cōgītō** (1), think, ponder, consider
 5 **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus**, learn; *in perfect know*
 14 **colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum**, speak, talk, converse with
 12 **comes, comitis, M. or F.**, companion
 10 **cōferō, cōferre, contulī, collātus**, bring together, collect; compare; *reflexive sē cōferre*, take oneself (*i.e., to a place*), go
 7 **cōficiō, cōficiere, cōfīcētī, cōfictus**, complete
 11 **cōfiteor, cōfītērī, cōfessus sum**, confess
 10 **coniūnx, coniugis, M. or F.**, husband, wife, spouse
 11 **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum**, try, attempt
 9 **cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, N.**, counsel, plan, advice
 13 **cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus**, set, establish, decide
 11 **cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.**, consul
 15 **contrā** (*prep. + acc.; adv.*), against, facing; opposite, in opposition, in turn
 12 **cōpia, cōpiae, F.**, abundance, supply; *pl. troops*
 1 **corōna, corōnae, F.**, crown, wreath
 1 **corōnō** (1), crown
 6 **corpus, corporis, N.**, body
 16 **cottīdiē or cotīdiē** (*adv.*), daily
 11 **crēdō, crēdere, crēdītī, crēdītus**, be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust (+ *dat.*)
 9 **crūdēlīs, crūdēlē**, cruel

UNIT

2 **culpa, culpae**, *F.*, guilt, fault
 1 **cum** (*prep. + abl.*), with
 15 **cum** (*conj.*), when, since, although
 11 **cupidus, cupida, cupidum**, desirous, eager, fond of (+ *gen.*)
 12 **cūr** (*adv.*), why, for what reason
 1 **cūra, cūrae**, *F.*, care, concern, anxiety
 13 **currō, currere, cucurri, cursus**, run
 10 **custōs, custōdis**, *M.*, guardian

D

2 **dāmnō** (1), condemn, sentence
 1 **dē** (*prep. + abl.*), concerning, about; (down) from
 4 **dea, deae**, *F.*, goddess
 5 **dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus**, owe, ought
 16 **decōrus, decōra, decōrum**, fitting, suitable; handsome
 17 **dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus**, defend
 10 **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**, bring away, bring down, offer; report
 4 **dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus**, destroy
 12 **dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus**, select, choose, gather
 9 **dēmēns, dēmentis**, mad, raving
 17 **dēnique** (*adv.*), finally, at last
 15 **dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsīū, --, stop, cease** (*frequently with infinitive or ablative*)
 17 **dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitus**, stop, desist
 16 **dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, --, be missing, fail** (*often + dat.*)
 17 **dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterrūī, dēterritus**, deter, prevent, hinder, keep from
 4 **deus, dei**, *M.*, god, deity (*nom. pl. dī; gen. pl. deōrum or deum; dat. & abl. pl. dīs*)
 3 **dexter, dextra, dextrum**, right (*as opposed to left*), favorable
 3 **dextra, dextrae**, *F.*, right hand; **ad dextram**, to the right
 6 **dicō, dicere, dīxī, dictus**, say, tell, speak
 8 **diēs, diēī**, *M.*, day
 10 **differō, differre, distulī, dilātus**, differ
 9 **difficilis, difficile**, difficult
 14 **dignus, digna, dignum**, worthy, deserving, suitable (+ *abl.*)
 3 **dīlēgentia, dīlēgentiae**, *F.*, diligence
 5 **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus**, go from, depart, leave
 16 **discō, discere, didicī, --, learn**
 9 **dissimilis, dissimile**, dissimilar, unlike (+ *gen. or dat.*)

UNIT

6 **diū** (*adv.*), for a long time
diūtius (*adv.*), comparative of **diū**
11 **dīvitiae, divitiārum**, *F. pl.*, riches, wealth
1 **dō, dare, dedī, datus**, give, grant
10 **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus**, teach
doctus, -a, -um, learned
14 **dolor, dolōris**, *M.*, pain, grief, sorrow
5 **dominus, dominī**, *M.*, master, lord
6; 8 **domus, domūs/domi**, *F.*, house, home
15 **dōnec** (*conj.*), while, until, as long as
1 **dōnō** (1), give, present, reward
3 **dōnum, dōnī**, *N.*, gift
2; 18 **dubitō** (1), hesitate (*with infinitive*); doubt (*with indirect question or quin + subjunctive*)
17 **dubium, dubiī**, *N.*, doubt, hesitation
17 **dubius, dubia, dubium**, doubtful
4 **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus**, lead; consider
8 **dulcis, dulce**, sweet, pleasant
15 **dum** (*conj.*), while, until, as long as; if only, provided that
15 **dummodo** (*conj.*), if only, provided that
13 **duo, duae, duo**, two
5 **dūrus, dūra, dūrum**, hard, harsh
11 **dux, ducis**, *M. or F.*, leader, guide

E

1 **ē, ex** (*prep. + abl.*), out of, from
10 **efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus**, carry out; bring forth
14 **efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus**, effect, bring about
7 **ego, meī** (*pron.*), I
11 **ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum**, go out, go away
18 **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus**, buy
1 **enim** (*postpositive conj.*), indeed, of course
8 **eō, īre, īī (īvī), itus**, go
10 **errō** (1), wander, err
1 **et** (*conj.*), and; *adv.* even; **et...et**, both...and
14 **etiam** (*adv.*), even
15 **etsī** (*conj.*), although, even if (+ *indicative*)
ex, see ē
6 **exemplar, exemplāris, exemplārium**, *N.*, copy, model, example
6 **exemplum, exemplī**, *N.*, example

UNIT

15 **exiguus, exigua, exiguum**, small
 12 **exorior, exorīrī, exortus sum**, rise, arise, appear, start
 2 **expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus**, push out, drive out
 11 **experior, experīrī, expertus sum**, try, put to the test, experience
 12 **expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus**, set forth, expose, explain
 15 **exspectō** (1), wait (for), expect

F

9 **facilis, facile** (*adj.*), easy; **facile** (*adv.*), easily
 4; 18; 14 **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus**, make, do; *with gen. of indefinite value*
 reckon, consider; **facere ut**, to see to it that (+ *subjunctive*)
 4 **factum, factī, N.**, deed
 1 **fāma, fāmae, F.**, talk, report, rumor, fame, reputation
 11 **familia, familiae, F.**, household, family
 11 **fateor, fatērī, fassus sum**, confess
 13 **faveō, favērē, fāvī, fautus**, be favorable, favor (+ *dat.*)
 8 **fēlix, fēlicis**, happy, fortunate
 1 **fēmina, fēminae, F.**, woman
 10 **ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus**, bring, carry, bear, endure
 5 **ferrum, ferri, N.**, iron, sword
 8 **fidēs, fideī, F.**, faith, trust, trustworthiness
 10 **figūra, figūrae, F.**, figure, form, shape
 4 **filia, filiae, F.**, daughter
 4 **filius, filiī, M.**, son
 7 **finis, finis, fīnium, M.**, end, boundary, limit
 13 **fiō, fierī, factus sum**, be made, be done, happen, become (*serves as the*
 passive for faciō, -ere)
 5 **flamma, flammae, F.**, flame, fire
 11 **flūmen, flūminis, N.**, river, running water
 10 **foedus, foederis, N.**, pact, treaty, agreement
 15 **fore** = **futūrus** (-a, -um) **esse** (*future infinitive of sum*)
 1 **fōrma, fōrmae, F.**, form, shape, figure, beauty
 15 **fors, fortis, fortium, F.**, chance
 8 **fortis, forte**, strong, brave
 11 **forum, forī, N.**, open space, market place, public square
 6 **frāter, frātris, M.**, brother
 8 **frigidus, frīgida, frigidum**, cold
 8 **frūctus, frūctūs, M.**, enjoyment; fruit; profit; **frūctū esse** to be (for
 [the purpose of]) a profit, be an asset to (+ *dat.*)
 16 **frūstrā** (*adv.*), in vain

UNIT

10 **fuga, fugae, F.**, flight
 10 **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus**, flee
 8 **fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, --**, flash, shine
 15 **fulgor, fulgōris, M.**, lightning, flash, brightness

G

Gallus, **Gallī, M.**, a Gaul
 10 **gaudium, gaudiī, N.**, joy
 10 **gēns, gentis, gentium, F.**, race, people
 7 **genus, generis, N.**, descent, origin, race, sort
 3 **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**, conduct, manage, wage
 3 **gladius, gladiī, M.**, sword
 2 **glōria, glōriae, F.**, glory, renown
 9 **gracilis, gracile**, slender, unadorned, simple
 11 **gradior, gradī, gressus sum**, step, walk
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek
 15 **grātus, grāta, grātum**, pleasing (+dat.)
 8 **gravis, grave**, heavy, severe, important

H

1 **habeō, habēre, habui, habitus**, have, hold, possess, consider
 13 **heri (adv.)**, yesterday
 13 **hic (adv.)**, here
 7 **hic, haec, hoc**, this, the latter
 6 **homō, hominis, M.**, human being, man
 4 **honestus, honesta, honestum**, respected, honorable, distinguished
 18 **honor, honōris, M.**, honor, distinction, office
 7 **hōra, hōrae, F.**, hour, season
 12 **horridus, horrida, horridum**, horrible, rough
 11 **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, urge, encourage (+ut or nē and sub-junctive)
 9 **hospes, hospitis, M.**, guest, host
 12 **hostilis**, hostile, of an enemy, hostile
 7 **hostis, hostis, hostium, M.**, enemy, public enemy (the plural is frequently translated collectively as 'enemy')
 14 **hūc (adv.)**, to this place
 9 **humilis, humile**, humble, lowly

UNIT

8 **iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw

8 **iactō** (1), throw, scatter, shake; boast

10 **iam** (adv.), now, by this time, already, soon

12 **ibi** (adv.), there; then

12 **idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, same

15 **igitur** (*postpositive conj.*), therefore

6 **ignis**, **ignis**, **ignium**, *M.*, fire (*abl. sing. igne or ignī*)

13 **īgnōscō**, **īgnōscere**, **īgnōvī**, **īgnōtus**, be forgiving, forgive, pardon (+ *dat.*)

7 **ille**, **illa**, **illud**, that, the former

13 **illic** (adv.), there

14 **illūc** (adv.), to that place, up to that time

12 **immortālis**, **immortāle**, immortal, everlasting

17 **impediō**, **impedire**, **impedivī** (**impedīi**), **impedītus**, deter, impede, prevent

11 **imperātor**, **imperātōris**, *M.*, commander, general

5 **imperium**, **imperīi**, *N.*, authority, power, empire

5 **imperō** (1), give (an) order(s), give (a) command(s). (*The person ordered is in the dative case; the thing ordered is expressed by *ut* or *nē* with the subjunctive.*)

5 **impius**, **impia**, **impium**, irreverent, wicked, impious

1 **impleō**, **implēre**, **implēvī**, **implētus**, fill, fill up

1 **in** (prep. + acc. or abl.), into, onto (*motion toward—requires accusative*); in, on (*place where—requires ablative*)

10 **incertus**, **incerta**, **incertum**, uncertain, unsure

2 **incipiō**, **incipere**, **incēpī**, **inceptus**, begin

2 **incola**, **incolae**, *M.* (*occasionally F.*), inhabitant

2 **incolō**, **incolere**, **incoluī**, --, inhabit

14 **indīgnus**, **indīgna**, **indīgnūm**, unworthy, unsuitable (+ *abl.*)

8 **infēlix**, **infēlicis**, unhappy, unfortunate

10 **inferō**, **inferre**, **intulī**, **illātus**, carry into; inflict

16 **infīrmus**, **infīrma**, **infīrmūm**, weak, unhealthy

15 **ingenium**, **ingenīi**, *N.*, nature, talent, disposition, natural quality

8 **ingēns**, **ingentis**, huge

11 **ingredīor**, **ingredī**, **ingressus sum**, go into, enter, advance, begin

15 **inimīcitia**, **inimīcitiae**, *F.*, hostility

4 **inimīcus**, **inimīca**, **inimīcum**, unfriendly, hostile (+ *dat.*)

2 **īnsidiae**, **īnsidiārum**, *F.* (*used only in pl.*), ambush, plot, treachery

16 **īnstituō**, **īnstituere**, **īnstituī**, **īnstitūtus**, set (up), establish, arrange

1 **īnsula**, **īnsulae**, *F.*, island

UNIT

4 **intelligō, intelligere, intellēxī, intellēctus**, understand
 14 **intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus**, stretch out, extend, aim, exert
 14 **inter (prep. + acc.)**, between, among
 15 **interdum (adv.)**, sometimes
 16 **interest, interesse, interfuit**, —, it is of importance, it concerns, it is of interest
 5 **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus**, kill
 5 **invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus**, go into, invade, attack
 7 **inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus**, come upon, discover, find
 2 **invidia, invidiae, F.**, envy, jealousy
 12 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, self, very
 8 **īra, īrae, F.**, wrath, anger
 13 **īrātus, īrāta, īrātum**, angry
 7 **is, ea, id**, this, that; he, she, it
 12 **iste, ista, istud**, that (of yours), that (with pejorative sense)
 14 **ita (adv.)**, so, in this way
 6 **Italia, Italiae, F.**, Italy
 10 **iter, itineris, N.**, journey, route
 8 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus**, order, command (+infinitive, not with an ut
 • clause of indirect command)
 15 **iūdex, iūdicis, M.**, judge, jury
 15 **iūdiciū, iūdiciī, N.**, trial, judgment, decision
 10 **iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus**, join
 6 **Iūnō, Iūnōnis, F.**, Juno (sister and wife of Jupiter)
 6 **Iuppiter, Iovis, M.**, Jupiter (god of the sky)
 13 **iūs, iūris, N.**, right, law
 12 **iussū, iussū, N.**, command, order (the abl. sing. is iussū, by order)
 11 **iuvenis, iuvenis, M. or F.** (not i-stem), youth, young person

L

16 **lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum**, slip, glide, fall
 2 **labōrō (1)**, work
 2 **lacrima, lacrimae, F.**, tear
 3 **laetus, laeta, laetum**, happy
 9 **laudō (1)**, praise
 9 **laus, laudis, F.**, praise
 13 **lēgātus, lēgātī, M.**, legate, envoy
 4 **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus**, choose, select; read
 16 **lēx, lēgis, F.**, law

UNIT

16 libenter (*adv.*), freely, willingly, gladly
 3 liber, libera, liberum, free
 4 liber, libri, *M.*, book
 6 liberō (1), free
 8 libertās, libertatis, *F.*, freedom
 16 licet, licēre, licuit (*licitum est*), it is permitted
 4 littera, litterae, *F.*, letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.* letter (*epistle*)
 8 lītus, litoris, *N.*, shore, beach
 7 locus, loci, *M.*, place, spot
 8 longus, longa, longum, long; longē (*adv.*), far off, at a distance, far and wide
 11 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk
 6 lūmen, lūminis, *N.*, light
 2 lūna, lūnae, *F.*, moon, moonlight
 8 lūx, lūcis, *F.*, light; prīmā lūce, at the first light, at daybreak

M

magis, *comparative of magnopere*
 5 magister, magistrī, *M.*, superior, director, master, teacher
 9 magnopere (*adv.*), greatly
 3 magnus, magna, magnum, large, big, great
 9 maior, maius, *comparative of magnus, magna, magnum*; maiōrēs, maiōrum, *M. pl.*, ancestors
 9 male (*adv.*), badly
 11 mālō, mālle, mālū, --, prefer, choose rather
 3 malus, mala, malum, evil, bad, wicked
 12 maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus, remain
 8 manus, manūs, *F.*, hand; band, troop
 3 Marcus, Marcī, *M.*, Marcus (*proper name*)
 6 mare, maris, marium, *N.*, sea
 9 Mārs, Mārtis, *M.*, Mars (*god of war*)
 6 māter, mātris, *F.*, mother
 maximus, maxima, maximum, *superlative of magnus, magna, magnum*
 5 medius, media, medium, middle of, middle
 melior, melius, *comparative of bonus, bona, bonum*
 18 meminī, meminisse (*defective verb*), remember
 8 memor, memoris, mindful, remembering (+*gen.*)
 15 memoria, memoriae, *F.*, memory
 6 mēns, mentis, mentium, *F.*, mind, disposition, intellect

UNIT

4 mēnsa, mēnsae, *F.*, table
 17 metuō, metuere, metuī, --, fear
 8 metus, metūs, *M.*, fear, dread
 7 meus, mea, meum, my, mine, my own
 6 miles, militis, *M.*, soldier
 minimus, minima, minimum, *superlative of parvus, parva, parvum*
 11 minor, minārī, minātus sum, jut forth, threaten
 minor, minus, *comparative of parvus, parva, parvum*
 13 mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire
 15 misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus, mix, intermingle, blend
 3 miser, misera, miserum, miserable, unhappy, wretched
 12 misereor, miserērī, miseritus sum, pity (+gen.)
 16 miseret, miserēre, miseruit (miseritum est), it pities, it moves to pity
 4 mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, send
 12 modus, modī, *M.*, way, manner, limit; kind; quō modō, in what way,
 how
 14; 15 modo (*adv.*; *conj.*), only; just, just now; if only, provided that
 6 moenia, moenium, *N. pl.*, (city) walls
 2 moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, warn, remind
 6 mōns, montis, montium, *M.*, mountain
 4 mōnstrō (1), show, point out, demonstrate
 2 mora, morae, *F.*, delay
 11 morior, morī, mortuus sum, die
 13 moror, morārī, morātus sum, delay, stay, hinder
 7 mors, mortis, mortium, *F.*, death
 10 mōs, mōris, *M.*, custom; *pl.* character
 8 mōtus, mōtūs, *M.*, motion, movement
 5 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, move
 5 mox (*adv.*), soon
 9 multum (*adv.*), much, very
 3 multus, multa, multum, much, many
 9 mūniō, mūnire, mūnīvī, mūnītus, fortify
 2 mūtō (1), change, exchange

N

9 nam (*conj.*), for
 11 nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born, descend from
 2 nātūra, nātūrae, *F.*, nature

UNIT

3 **nātus, nātī, M.**, son, child

1 **nauta, nautae, M.**, sailor

11 **nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, F.**, ship

3; 18 **nē (conj.)**, in order that... not; that (*after expressions of fearing*)

12; 15 **nē (adv.)**, not; **nē...quidem**, not even (*enclosing the word or words they emphasize*)

1 **-ne (enclitic)**, added to the first word of an interrogative sentence or clause; it indicates a question

12 **-ne...an**, whether... or

12 **-ne...an nōn**, whether... or not (*in direct double questions*)

12 **-ne...necne**, whether... or not (*in indirect double questions*)

16 **necesse (indeclinable adj.)**, necessary

12 **necne (conj.)**, or not (*generally used as the second part of a double indirect question, representing an nōn in the direct question*); **--...necne**, whether... or not (*in indirect double questions*)

11 **neglegō, neglegere, neglēxi, neglēctus**, disregard, neglect

10 **negō (1)**, deny, say no

13 **nēmō, nēminis, M. or F.**, no one

17 **nemus, nemoris, N.**, grove, wood

2 **neque or nec (conj.)**, and not, nor; **neque (nec)...neque (nec)**, neither... nor

12 **nesciō, nescire, nesciū (nesciī)**, nescitus, not know, be ignorant

10 **neuter, neutra, neutrum**, neither

2 **nihil or nil (indeclinable noun)**, nothing

18 **nihilum, nihilī, N.**, nothing

2 **nisi (conj.)**, unless, if... not; except

13 **noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus**, be harmful, harm (+dat.)

11 **nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, --**, be unwilling, wish... not

8 **nōmen, nōminis, N.**, name

1; 6 **nōn (adv.)**, not; **nōn sōlum...sed etiam**, not only... but also

12 **nōnne (adv.)**, in a direct question, anticipates the answer "yes"; if not, whether not (*in an indirect question*)

5 **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus**, learn; *in perfect* know

7 **noster, nostra, nostrum**, our, ours, our own

14 **nōtus, nōta, nōtum**, known, well-known, customary

5 **novus, nova, novum**, new, strange

6 **nox, noctis, noctium, F.**, night

2 **noxa, noxae, F.**, harm, injury

10 **nūllus, nūlla, nūllum**, no, none

UNIT

12 **num** (*adv.*), *in a direct question, anticipates the answer “no”*; *whether (in an indirect question)*
 8 **nūmen, nūminis**, *N.*, divinity, divine spirit
 18 **numerus, numerī**, *M.*, number
 5 **numquam or nunquam** (*adv.*), *never*
 2 **nunc** (*adv.*), *now*
 14 **nūntiō** (1), *report, announce*
 14 **nūntius, nūntiū**, *M.*, messenger, message
 14 **nūper** (*adv.*), *recently*
 15 **nusquam** (*adv.*), *nowhere*
 15 **nūtrix, nūtricis**, *F.*, *nurse*

O

8 **ob** (*prep. + acc.*), *on account of*
 17 **obitus, obitūs**, *M.*, *a going down, setting; downfall, ruin*
 18 **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum**, *forget*
 17 **obstō, obstāre, obstītū, obstātus**, *stand in the way of, hinder (+dat.)*
 15 **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsus**, *fall, set, die*
 12 **occultē** (*adv.*), *secretly*
 3 **oculus, oculi**, *M.*, *eye*
 7 **ōdi, ōdisse** (*defective verb lacking in the present system; perfect forms have present meanings*), *hate*
 9 **odium, odii**, *N.*, *hatred*
 10 **offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus**, *bring before; offer; expose*
 15 **omnīnō** (*adv.*), *all in all, as a whole, entirely*
 8 **omnis, omne, every, all**
 8 **opīniō, opīniōnis**, *F.*, *opinion*
 16 **oportet, oportēre, oportuit, --**, *it is necessary, it is proper*
 4 **oppidum, oppidi**, *N.*, *town*
 7 **oppīmō, oppīmēre, oppīsē**, *oppressus*, *press upon, overwhelm, suppress, oppress*
 6 **oppūgnō** (1), *attack, fight against*
 12 **ops, opis**, *F.*, *power, strength; pl. resources, wealth*
 1 **optimus, optima, optimum**, *superlative of bonus, bona, bonum*
 1 **optō** (1), *desire, wish (for), choose*
 7 **opus, operis**, *N.*, *work; opus est, there is need of (+nom. or abl. [instrumental] of thing needed; less frequently gen.)*
 13 **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis**, *F.*, *oration, speech*
 11 **ōrātor, ōrātōris**, *M.*, *speaker*

UNIT

10 **orbis, orbis, orbium, M.**, ring, orb, circle; **orbis terrārum**, circle of lands; the world
 17 **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, rise, arise, begin
 3 **ōrō** (1), beg (for)
 17 **ortus, ortūs, M.**, rising, source
 14 **ōs, ūris, N.**, mouth, expression
 14 **ostendō, ostendere, ostendi, ostentus**, show, expose, make plain

P

13 **paene (adv.)**, almost
 16 **paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, --, it repents**
 13 **parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus**, be sparing, spare (+dat.)
 11 **parēns, parentis, M. or F.**, parent
 13 **pārēō, pārēre, pārūi, pārūtus**, be obedient, obey (+dat.)
 14 **parō (1)**, prepare, make ready, provide, get
 10 **pars, partis, partium, F.**, part
 9 **parum (adv. and indeclinable adj.)** too little, not enough
 9 **parvus, parva, parvum**, little, small
 6 **pater, patris, M.**, father
 11 **patior, patī, passus sum**, suffer, endure, allow
 1 **patria, patriae, F.**, native land, country
 12 **pauci, paucae, pauca**, few
 14 **paulus, paula, paulum**, little, small (compares irregularly: **minor**, minus; **minimus**, -a, -um)
 11 **pauper, pauperis**, poor
 14 **pāx, pācis, F.**, peace
 8 **pectus, pectoris, N.**, heart, breast
 1 **pecūnia, pecūniae, F.**, money
 1 **peior, peius**, *comparative of malus, mala, malum*
 2 **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus**, push, drive (off)
 2 **per (prep. + acc.)**, through
 4 **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus**, destroy, lose, waste
 15 **pereō, perire, perī (perīvī), peritus**, die, perish
 7 **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī**, perfectus, accomplish, complete, finish
 4 **perīculum, perīculi, N.**, danger
 13 **persuādēō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus**, be persuasive, persuade (+dat.)
 17 **perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus**, arrive (at) (+ad)

UNIT

7 **pēs, pedis, M.**, foot
 pessimus, pessima, pessimum, *superlative of malus, mala, malum, worst*

3 **petō, petere, petivī, petitus**, seek (*with a + abl.*), ask (for)

15 **piger, pigra, pigrum**, lazy, slow

16 **piget, pigēre, piguit (pigitum est)**, it disgusts

5 **pius, pia, piūm**, loyal, dutiful, pious

7 **placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus**, be pleasing to, please (+dat.)

13 **plēbs, plēbis, F.**, common people
 plūrimus, plūrima, plūrimum, *superlative of multus, multa, multum plūs, neuter comparative of multum*; *pl. plūrēs, plūra*

1 **poena, poenae, F.**, penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, to pay a penalty

1 **poēta, poētae, M.**, poet

14 **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**, promise

4 **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, put, place, set aside

5 **populus, populī, M.**, people

1 **porta, portae, F.**, gate

3 **portō (1)**, carry

12 **poscō, poscere, poposcī, --**, beg, demand

5 **possum, posse, potui, --**, be able, can

5 **post (prep. + acc.; adv.)**, after, behind (*prep.*); afterwards, after, behind (*adv.*)

5 **postquam (conj.)**, after (+indicative)

13 **praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus**, bring (place) before, prefer

13 **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus**, make before (at the head of), put in command of

11 **praemium, praemīi, N.**, reward

13 **praesum, praeesse, praefui, --**, be before (at the head of), be in command of

11 **precōr, precārī, precātus sum**, beg, request

7 **premō, premere, pressī, pressus**, press, press upon, press hard

18 **pretium, pretiī, N.**, price; value

9 **prīmus, prīma, prīmum**, first; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible

9 **prius (adv.)**, before, previously

15 **priusquam (conj.)**, before

8 **prō (prep. + abl.)**, in front of, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for

11 **proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum**, set forth, set out, start

8 **profugus, profuga, profugum**, fugitive, banished, exiled

11 **prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum**, go forth, advance, proceed

17 **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibui, prohibitus**, keep from, prohibit, prevent

UNIT

9 **prope** (*adv.*), near
 14 **properō** (1), hasten
 propius (*adv.*), *comparative of prope*
 10 **propter** (*prep. + acc.*), on account of, because of
 15 **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, --, be useful, do good, benefit, profit**
 (+ *dat.*)
 2 **prōvincia, prōvinciae, F.**, province
 9 **proximus, proxima, proximum, nearest, next**
 8 **pūblicus, pūblica, pūblicum, public**
 16 **pudet, pudēre, puduit (puditum est), it shames**
 2 **puella, puellae, F.**, girl
 3 **puer, pueri, M.**, boy; child
 18 **pūgna, pūgnae, F.**, battle, fight
 3 **pūgnō** (1), fight; (*with cum + abl.*), fight with (*i.e., against*)
 3 **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful**
 15 **putō** (1), think

Q

8 **quaerō, quaerere, quaeſīvī, quaeſitus**, look for, search for, seek, ask
 14 **quālis, quāle**, (of) what kind (of)
 9 **quam** (*conj.*), than (*used in comparisons*)
 8 **quam ob rem**, on account of which thing, for what reason, why
 9 **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible
 12 **quamdiū** (*adv.*), how long
 5 **quamquam** (*conj.*), although (+ *indicative*)
 15 **quamvis** (*conj.*), although (+ *subjunctive*)
 12 **quandō** (*conj. and adv.*), when; since
 10 **quantus, quanta, quantum**, how much, how great
 12 **quārē** (*adv.*), by what means, why; and therefore
 15 **quasi** (*adv.*), as if, as it were
 1 **-que** (*enclitic*), and
 13 **qui, qua, quod** (*adj.*), some, any
 7 **qui, quae, quod** (*relative pron. and interrogative adj.*) who, which, that
 (*relative*); which, what (*interrogative*)
 12 **quia** (*conj.*), because
 12 **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** (*pron.*), a certain one *or* thing
 12 **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (*adj.*), certain
 15 **quidem** (*adv.*), indeed; **nē...quidem**, not even (*enclosing the word or*
 words they emphasize)

UNIT

17 **quīn** (*conj.*), but that, that not (*used after expressions of prevention, negative doubting, etc.*)

7 **quīnque** (*indeclinable adj.*), five

13 **quīque, quaeque, quodque** (*adj.*), each, every

7; 13 **quis, quid** (*interrogative and indefinite pron.*), who, what; someone, something; anyone, anything

13 **quisquam, quidquam or quicquam** (*pron.*), someone, anyone, something, anything (*used with a negative or a virtual negative*)

13 **quisque, quidque or quicque** (*pron.*), each one, everyone, each thing, everything

13 **quō** (*adv.*), (to) where

15 **quōad** (*conj.*), as long as, as far as, until (*takes same construction as dum and dōnec*)

4; 18 **quod** (*conj.*), because; the fact that; **quod sī**, but if

17 **quōminus** (*conj.*), by which the less, that not, from (*used in positive or negative clauses of prevention*)

15 **quoniam** (*conj.*), since (+*indicative*)

10 **quot** (*indeclinable adj.*), how many

R

17 **radius, radiī, M.**, rod, ray

12 **recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus**, take back, regain, recover; **sē recipere**, withdraw, take oneself

15 **redeō, redire, rediī, redditus**, return, go back

10 **referō, referre, rettuli, relātus**, bring back, report

16 **rēfert, rēferre, rētulit**, --, it is of importance

1 **rēgina, rēginae, F.**, queen

4 **rēgnum, rēgnī, N.**, realm, kingdom

6 **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**, rule

17 **religiō, religiōnis, F.**, religious awe, reverence, integrity, sanctity

17 **relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relictus**, leave behind, abandon

17 **reliquus, reliqua, reliquum**, remaining, rest of

12 **remaneō, remanēre, remānsi, remānsus**, remain

5 **removeō, removēre, remōvi, remōtus**, remove, take away, set aside

8 **rēs, reī, F.**, thing, matter, affair, situation; **rēs pūblica**, state, republic

4 **respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus**, answer

17 **retegō, retegere, retēxi, retēctus**, uncover, reveal

6 **rēx, rēgis, M.**, king

14 **rideō, ridēre, risī, risus**, laugh (at)

UNIT

12 **rogō** (1), ask (for)
 6 **Rōma, Rōmae, F.**, Rome
 3 **Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum**, Roman
 5 **ruīna, ruīnae, F.**, fall, downfall, ruin, destruction
 6 **rūmor, rūmōris, M.**, rumor, gossip
 5 **ruō, ruere, ruī, rutus**, fall, go to ruin, rush
 6 **rūs, rūris, N.**, country (*as opposed to city*)

S

9 **saepe** (*adv.*), often
 8 **saevus, saeva, saevum**, cruel
 7 **salūs, salūtis, F.**, health, safety; **salūtem dicere**, say hello, greet
 6 **sānus, sāna, sānum**, sound, healthy, sane
 9 **sapiēns, sapientis**, wise
 9 **sapientia, sapientiae, F.**, wisdom
 9 **satis** (*adv. and indeclinable adj.*), enough
 3 **saxum, saxī, N.**, rock, stone
 11 **scelus, sceleris, N.**, wicked deed, crime
 6 **sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus**, know
 3 **scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus**, write
 16 **scriptor, scriptōris, M.**, writer
 1 **sed** (*conj.*), but
 2 **semper** (*adv.*), always
 14 **senex, senis**, old
 8 **sēnsus, sēnsūs, M.**, sensation, feeling
 2 **sententia, sententiae, F.**, feeling, thought, opinion
 2 **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, feel, perceive
 11 **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, follow
 9 **serēnus, serēna, serēnum**, serene, calm
 6 **servitūs, servitūtis, F.**, slavery
 11 **servō** (1), save, preserve, rescue, keep
 3 **servus, servī, M.**, slave
 2 **sī** (*conj.*), if
 14 **sīc** (*adv.*), so, in this way
 6 **sīdus, sīderis, N.**, constellation, star; heaven
 10 **signum, signī, N.**, signal, sign
 9 **similis, simile**, like, similar (to) (+*gen. or dat.*)
 15 **simul ac (or atque) (conj.)**, as soon as (+*indicative*)
 5 **sine** (*prep. + abl.*), without

UNIT

5 **socius, socia, socium**, allied; **socius, socii, M.**, ally
 10 **sōl, sōlis, M.**, sun
 11 **soleō, solēre, solitus sum**, be accustomed; be customary
 13 **sollers, sollertis**, skilled, expert
 10 **sōlus, sōla, sōlum**, alone, only
 9 **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus**, loosen, free, untie
 15 **somnus, somnī, M.**, sleep, dream
 6 **soror, sorōris, F.**, sister
 12 **sors, sortis, sortium, F.**, lot, destiny
 6 **spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsus**, scatter, sprinkle, distribute
 8 **speciēs, speciēi, F.**, appearance
 3 **spectō (1)**, look at
 7 **spērō (1)**, hope (for)
 8 **spēs, spei, F.**, hope
 11 **statua, statuae, F.**, statue
 16 **stō, stāre, stetī, stātus**, stand
 13 **studeō, studēre, studiū, --**, be zealous, study, pay attention to (+dat.)
 16 **studiōsus, studiōsa, studiōsum**, fond of, partial to, studious (+gen.)
 4 **studium, studiī, N.**, enthusiasm, zeal
 2 **sub (prep. + acc.)**, under (i.e., going to a place under); (prep. + abl.),
 under (i.e., at or in a place under)
 10 **sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sublātus**, undergo, endure
 7 **--, sui (reflexive pron.)**, himself, herself, itself, themselves
 1 **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**, be, exist
 9 **summus, summa, summum**, highest, top (of)
 2 **superō (1)**, overcome, conquer
 15 **supersum, superesse, superfui, --**, be left over, survive
 8 **superus, supera, superum**, above, upper; **superī, superōrum, M. pl.**, the
 gods above
 9 **supplex, supplicis**, suppliant, humble
 16 **sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus**, support, maintain
 7 **suus, sua, suum**, his own, her own, its own, their own

T

2 **taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus**, be (or keep) silent
 1 **taeda, taedae, F.**, torch
 16 **taedet, taedēre, taeduit (taesum est)**, it bores; it disgusts
 14 **tālis, tāle**, such, of such a sort; **tālis...quālis**, such...as
 9 **tam (adv.)**, so; **tam...quam**, so...as, as...as

UNIT

5 **tamen** (*adv.*), nevertheless
 12 **tamquam** (*adv.*), as if, as, as it were
 12 **tandem** (*adv.*), at last, at length
 10 **tantus, tanta, tantum**, so much, so great; **tantus . . . quantus or quantus . . . tantus**, as (so) much . . . as; as (so) great . . . as
 4 **tēctum, tēcti, N.**, roof, house
 4 **tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus**, cover, conceal
 14 **tempestās, tempestātis, F.**, weather, storm, season
 9 **templum, templi, N.**, temple
 10 **temptō** (1), try, attempt
 7 **tempus, temporis, N.**, time, period, season
 2 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus**, hold, keep, possess
 17 **tergum, tergi, N.**, back
 2 **terra, terrae, F.**, earth, land
 1 **terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus**, frighten, alarm, terrify
 1 **timeō, timēre, timuī, —**, fear, be afraid (of)
 6 **timor, timōris, M.**, fear, dread
 10 **tot** (*indeclinable adj.*), so many; **tot . . . quot or quot . . . tot**, as many . . . as
 10 **tōtus, tōta, tōtum**, all, whole
 4 **trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus**, hand over, betray
 14 **trāns** (*prep. + acc.*), across, on the other side of
 7 **tū, tuī** (*pron.*), you
 14 **tum** (*adv.*), then, at that time
 14 **tunc** (*adv.*), then, at that time
 1 **turba, turbae, F.**, crowd, uproar
 17 **turpis, turpe**, foul, ugly
 9 **tūtus, tūta, tūtum**, safe
 7 **tuus, tua, tuum**, your, yours, your own (*sing.*)

U

12; 15 **ubi** (*adv. ; conj.*), where, when
 14 **ubique** (*adv.*), everywhere, anywhere, wherever
 10 **ūllus, ūlla, ūllum**, any
 4 **umbra, umbrae, F.**, shadow
 5 **umquam or unquam** (*adv.*), ever
 17 **ūnā** (*adv.*), together, at the same time
 2 **unda, undae, F.**, wave
 12 **unde** (*adv.*), from where
 10 **ūnus, ūna, ūnum**, one, alone

UNIT

6 **urbs, urbis, urbium, F.**, city
 4 **urna, urnae, F.**, urn
 13 **ūsus, ūsūs, M.**, use, advantage, enjoyment
 3; 11 **ut (adv.; conj.)**, as, when (+*indicative*); in order that (+*subjunctive in purpose clauses*); that...not (+*subjunctive after expressions of fearing*); that (+*subjunctive in result clauses*)
 10 **uter, utra, utrum**, which (of two)
 16 **ūtilis, ūtile**, useful, beneficial
 12 **utinam (adv.)**, I wish! Would that! If only!
 11 **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**, use, enjoy, experience (+*abl.*)
 12 **utrum (conj.)**, whether
 12 **utrum...an**, whether...or
 12 **utrum...an nōn**, whether...or not (*in direct double questions*)
 12 **utrum...necne**, whether...or not (*in indirect double questions*)

V

3 **validus, valida, validum**, strong, healthy
 16 **vel (conj.)**, or; **vel...vel**, either...or
 3 **vēlum, vēlī, N.**, cloth, covering, sail; **vēla dare**, to set sail
 18 **vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus**, sell
 3 **venia, veniae, F.**, indulgence, favor, kindness, (obliging) disposition
 2 **veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus**, come
 17 **vēnor, vēnārī, vēnātus sum**, hunt, go hunting
 3 **ventus, ventī, M.**, wind
 3 **verbum, verbī, N.**, word
 11 **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**, reverence, fear, dread
 14 **vēritās, vēritatis, F.**, truth
 8 **vertex, verticis, M.**, head, top, summit; whirlpool, whirlwind
 17 **vertō, vertere, vertī, versus**, turn
 4 **vērus, vēra, vērum**, true, real; **vērē or vērō (adv.)**, truly, indeed
 7 **vester, vestra, vestrum**, your, yours, your own (*pl.*)
 17 **vetō, vetāre, vetūi, vetitus**, forbid
 16 **vetus, veteris**, old; **veterēs, veterum, M. pl.**, the ancients; **vetera, veterum, N. pl.**, antiquity
 1 **via, viae, F.**, way, road, path, street
 1; 4 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus**, see; *in passive seem as well as be seen*
 6 **vigor, vigōris, M.**, liveliness, activity, vigor
 4 **villa, villae, F.**, country house, farmhouse
 14 **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus**, conquer, beat, overcome

UNIT

16 **violō** (1), do violence to, break (an agreement, the law)
3 **vir, virī**, *M.*, man
10 **virtūs, virtūtis**, *F.*, manliness, courage, excellence, virtue
6 **vis; pl. virēs, virium**, *F.*, force, power; *pl.* strength
2 **vīta, vitae**, *F.*, life
5 **vīvō, vivere, vīxi, vīctus**, be alive, live
13 **vix** (*adv.*), hardly, scarcely
5 **vocō** (1), call
11 **volō, velle, voluī, --**, wish, want, be willing
7 **vōx, vōcis**, *F.*, voice
18 **vulnerō** (1), wound

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able: be able, possum, posse, potui, --
about, dē (*prep. + abl.*)

account: on account of, propter (*prep. + acc.*); ob (*prep. + acc.*)

across, trāns (*prep. + acc.*)

after, post (*prep. + acc. ; adv.*); postquam (*conj.*); or use ablative absolute

aid, auxilium, -ī, *N.*

all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um

ally, socius, -ī, *M.*

alone, sōlus, -a, -um

already, iam (*adv.*)

altar, āra, -ae, *F.*

although, quamquam (*conj.*); etsi (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); or use ablative absolute
always, semper (*adv.*)

ancient, antiquus, -a, -um

and, et (*conj.*)

animal, animal, -ālis, -ium, *N.*

any, ūllus, -a, -um

anyone, aliquis, aliquid; quis, quid

appearance, speciēs, -ēi, *F.*

approach, aggredior, -ī, aggressus sum; accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus

arms, arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*

around, circum (*prep. + acc.*)

arrive (at), adveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus (+ad); perveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus
(+ad)

art, ars, artis, -ium, *F.*

as...as possible, quam + *superlative*; as soon as possible, quam primum

ask (for), petō, -ere, petīvi, petitus; quaerō, -ere, quaeſīvi, quaeſitus

ashamed, use *impersonal verb* pudet, it shames

attack, oppūgnō (1)

attempt, temptō (1); cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum

author, auctor, -ōris, *M.*

B

be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 be in charge of, praesum, praeesse, -fui, -- (+dat.)
 bear, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
 beautiful, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
 because, quod (*conj.*); quia (*conj.*)
 because of, propter (*prep.* + *acc.*)
 beg, ōrō (1)
 begin, incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus
 believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidi, crēditus (+dat.)
 betray, trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditus
 big, magnus, -a, -um
 body, corpus, corporis, *N.*
 bold, audāx, -ācis
 boldness, audācia, -ae, *F.*
 book, liber, libri, *M.*
 bore, use impersonal verb taedet, it bores
 both... and, et... et
 boy, puer, -i, *M.*
 brave, fortis, forte
 breast, pectus, pectoris, *N.*
 bright, clārus, -a, -um
 bring (it) about, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus + ut (+subjunctive)
 brother, frāter, frātris, *M.*
 burn, ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsus
 but, sed (*conj.*)
 buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus
 by, ā, ab (*prep.* + *abl.*)

C

can, possum, posse, potui, --
 capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus
 care, cūra, -ae, *F.*
 carry, portō (1); ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
 change, mūtō (1)
 character, mōs, mōris, *M.* (*in pl.*)
 charge: be in charge of, praesum, praeesse, -fui, -- (+dat.)
 child, nātus, -i, *M.*; puer, pueri, *M.*
 choose, optō (1); legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus
 citizen, cīvis, cīvis, -ium, *M. or F.*
 city, urbs, urbis, -ium, *F.*
 city walls, moenia, -ium, *N. pl.*

come, *veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventus*
 command: *put (place) in command of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus*
 commander, *imperātor, -ōris, M.*
 commit, *faciō, -ere, fēci, factus*
 complete, *cōnficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus; perficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus*
 condemn, *dāmnō (1)*
 confess, *fateor, fatēri, fassus sum; cōnfiteor, cōnfitēri, cōfessus sum*
 conquer, *superō (1); vincō, -ere, vici, victus*
 consider, *habeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus; dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus*
 constellation, *sidus, sideris, N.*
 consul, *cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.*
 country, *patria, -ae, F.*
 courage, *virtūs, virtūtis, F.*
 cover, *tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus*
 crime, *scelus, sceleris, N.*
 crowd, *turba, -ae, F.*
 crown, *corōnō (1)*
 cruel, *saevus, -a, -um; crūdēlis, -e*

D

danger, *periculum, -i, N.*
 dare, *audeō, -ēre, ausus sum*
 daughter, *filia, -ae, F.*
 day, *diēs, -ēi, M.; (at) daybreak, prīmā lūce*
 delay, *moror, -āri, -ātus sum*
 demonstrate, *mōnstrō (1)*
 desire, *optō (1)*
 desirous, *cupidus, -a, -um (+gen.)*
 destroy, *dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus*
 destruction, *ruina, -ae, F.*
 die, *morior, mori, mortuus sum; pereō, -ire, -ii (-īvi), -itus*
 difficult, *difficilis, -e*
 diligence, *diligentia, -ae, F.*
 disgust, *use impersonal verb piget, it disgusts*
 distinguished, *honestus, -a, -um*
 do, *faciō, -ere, fēci, factus; agō, -ere, ēgi, āctus*
 doubt, *dubitō (1)*
 drive, *pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsus*
 drive back, *repellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus*
 drive out, *expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus*
 dutiful, *pius, -a, -um*

E

each, quisque, quidque (*pron.*); quīque, quaeque, quodque (*adj.*)
easy, facilis, -e
empire, imperium, -i, *N.*
enemy, inimicus, -i, *M.*; hostis, hostis, -ium, *M.*
enter, ingredior, -i, ingressus sum
even, etiam (*adv.*); et (*adv.*); **not even**, nē . . . quidem
everyone, quisque
evil (*adj.*), malus, -a, -um; (*noun*) malum, -i, *N.*
explain, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus
eye, oculus, -i, *M.*

F

fact: the fact that, quod
faith, fidēs, -ei, *F.*
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus
fame, fāma, -ae, *F.*
famous, clārus, -a, -um
far and wide, longē (*adv.*)
fast, celeriter (*adv.*)
father, pater, patris, *M.*
fear, (*verb*) timeō, -ēre, -ui, --; vereor, -ēri, -itus sum; metuō, -ere, metui, --;
 (*noun*) timor, timōris, *M.*; metus, -ūs, *M.*
feel, sentiō, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsus
few, pauci, -ae, -a
field, ager, agri, *M.*
fight, pūgnō (1); **fight with** (*i.e.*, *against*), pūgnō cum (+ *abl.*)
fill, impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētus
find, inveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventus
fire, ignis, ignis, -ium, *M.* (*abl. sing.* igne or ignī)
five, quīnque (*indeclinable adj.*)
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitus
food, cibus, -i, *M.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *M.*
for, (*on behalf of*) prō (*prep.* + *abl.*)
forbid, vetō, -āre, -ui, -itus
force, vis, *F.*
forget, obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum (+ *gen.*)
fortify, mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus
forum, forum, -i, *N.*
free, liber, libera, liberum

freedom, libertās, -tātis, *F.*

friend, amīcus, -i, *M.*

frighten, terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus

from, (*out of*) ē, ex (*prep.* + *abl.*); (*away*) ā, ab (*prep.* + *abl.*)

fugitive, profugus, -i, *M.*

G

gate (*of a city*), porta, -ae, *F.*

general, imperātor, -ōris, *M.*

get, parō (1)

gift, dōnum, -i, *N.*

gird, cingō, -ere, cīnxi, cīnctus

girl, puella, -ae, *F.*

give, dō, dare, dedi, datus; dōnō (1)

glory, glōria, -ae, *F.*

go, eō, īre, īi (īvi), itus

god, deus, -i, *M.*

golden, aureus, -a, -um

good, bonus, -a, -um

gossip, rūmor, rūmōris, *M.*

great, magnus, -a, -um; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um

grievous, gravis, -e

guardian, custōs, custōdis, *M.*

guest, hospes, hospitis, *M.*

H

hand, manus, -ūs, *F.*

handsome, decōrus, -a, -um

happen, fīō, fieri, factus sum

happy, laetus, -a, -um

harm, noceō, -ēre, -ui, -itus (+ *dat.*)

hate, īdi, īdisse (*defective verb lacking in the present system; perfect forms have present meanings*)

have, habeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus; *or dative of the possessor with sum*

he, supplied by is

healthy, validus, -a, -um; sānus, -a, -um

hear, audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus

heavy, gravis, -e

help, auxilium, -i, *N.*

her (own), suus, -a, -um

here, hic (*adv.*); **be here**, **be present**, adsum, adesse, adfui, --

hide, cēlō (1)

his (own), suus, -a, -um

home, domus, -ūs (-i), *F.*

honorable, honestus, -a, -um

hope, (*verb*) spērō (1); (*noun*) spēs, speī, *F.*

hostile, inimicus, -a, -um

house, tēctum, -i, *N.*; domus, -ūs (-i), *F.*; **country house**, villa, -ae, *F.*

how, quō modō

how many, quot

humble, humilis, -e

hunt, vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum

husband, coniūnx, coniugis, *M.*

I

I, ego; *pl.* nōs

if, si (*conj.*)

if . . . not, nisi (*conj.*)

if only, utinam (*adv.*)

impious, impius, -a, -um

in, in (*prep.* + *abl.*)

indeed, enim (*postpositive conj.*)

inhabitant, incola, -ae, *M.*

in order (that, to), ut (+*subjunctive*)

in order not to, nē (+*subjunctive*)

into, in (*prep.* + *acc.*)

invade, invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus

island, insula, -ae, *F.*

it, supplied by id

J

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxi, iūnctus

Juno, Iūnō, Iūnōnis, *F.*

Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *M.*

K

keep from, prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+*infinitive*); dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus
(+*subjunctive clause of prevention*)

kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

kindness, venia, -ae, *F.*

king, rēx, rēgis, *M.*

know, sciō, -ire, -iū, -itus; **not know**, nesciō, -ire, -iū (-ii), -itus

L

land, terra, -ae, *F.*

large, magnus, -a, -um

law, lēx, lēgis, *F.*

lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus

leader, dux, ducis, *M.*

learn, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus; discō, -ere, didicī, --

legate, lēgātus, -i, *M.*

liberty, libertās, -tātis, *F.*

life, vīta, -ae, *F.*

lifetime, aetās, -tātis, *F.*

light, lūmen, lūminis, *N.*; lūx, lūcis, *F.*

listen (to), audiō, -ire, -iū, -itus

live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus

lofty, altus, -a, -um

long, longus, -a, -um; **for a long time**, diū (*adv.*)

look (at), spectō (1)

love, (*verb*) amō (1); (*noun*) amor, amōris, *M.*

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus

man, vir, viri, *M.*; homō, hominis, *M.*; **old man**, senex, senis, *M.*; **young man**, iuvenis, -is, *M.* (*not i-stem*)

many, multus, -a, -um

Marcus, Marcus, -i, *M.*

master, dominus, -i, *M.*; magister, magistri, *M.*

middle (of), medius, -a, -um

mindful, memor, memoris

model, exemplar, -āris, -ium, *N.*

money, pecūnia, -ae, *F.*

moon, lūna, -ae, *F.*

more, plūs

mother, māter, mātris, *F.*

mountain, mōns, montis, -ium, *M.*

move, moveō, -ere, mōvī, mōtus

much, multus, -a, -um

must, dēbeō, -ere, -ui, -itus; *or use passive periphrastic conjugation expressing obligation*

my, meus, -a, -um

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *N.*
native land, patria, -ae, *F.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *F.*
neglect, neglegō, -ere, neglēxi, neglēctus
neither...nor, neque...neque *or* nec...nec
never, numquam (*adv.*)
no, nūllus, -a, -um
no one, nēmō, nēminis, *M. or F.*
nor, nec; neque
not, nōn; nē
not even, nē...quidem
not only...but also, nōn sōlum...sed etiam
now, nunc (*adv.*)
nurse, nūtrix, -īcis, *F.*

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus (+dat.)
offer, offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus
old, senex, senis
old man, senex, senis, *M.*
on, in (*prep. + abl.*)
only, sōlus, -a, -um
opinion, sententia, -ae, *F.*; opīniō, -ōnis, *F.*
oppress, opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressus
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussi, iussus (+infinitive); imperō (1) (+ut *or* nē *and the subjunctive*); **in order to**, ut (*conj.*)
other, alius, -a, -ud; **other people's**, aliēnus, -a, -um
our, noster, nostra, nostrum
out (of), ē, ex (*prep. + abl.*)
overcome, superō (1)

P

pain, dolor, dolōris, *M.*
pardon, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus (+dat.)
part, pars, partis, -ium, *F.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *F.*
people, populus, -i, *M.* (*use in singular*)
place, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus
please, placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itus (+dat.)
poem, carmen, carminis, *N.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *M.*

possible: it is possible, fieri potest ut (+*noun clause of result*)

praise, laudō (1)

prefer, praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus

previously, ante (*adv.*)

price, pretium, -i, *N.*

profit, prōsum, prōdēsse, prōfui, --

prohibit, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus

provided that, dum (*conj.*); dummodo (*conj.*); modo (*conj.*)

province, prōvinciā, -ae, *F.*

punishment, poena, -ae, *F.*

put (place) in command (of), praeficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectus

Q

queen, rēgina, -ae, *F.*

quick, celer, celeris, celere

R

raving, dēmēns, dēmentis

read, legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus

realm, rēgnūm, -i, *N.*

remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus; remaneō, -ēre, -mānsi, -mānsus

republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblicae, *F.*

reputation, fāma, -ae, *F.*

reveal, retegō, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus

right: to the right, ad dextram

rock, saxum, -i, *N.*

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *F.*

ruler, regēns, regentis, *M.* (*present participle of regō, -ere*)

rumor, fāma, -ae, *F.*; rūmor, rūmōris, *M.*

run, currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus

rush, ruō, -ere, rui, rutus

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um

safety, salūs, salūtis, *F.*

sail, vēlum, -i, *N.*; set sail, vēla dare

sailor, nauta, -ae, *M.*

sanctity, religiō, -ōnis, *F.*

save, servō (1)

say, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus

sea, mare, maris, -ium, *N.*

see, videō, -ere, vidi, visus

seek, petō, -ere, petivi, petitus; quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus

sell, vendō, -ere, vendidi, venditus

send, mittō, -ere, misi, missus

serve (as), use dative of service (*purpose*) in double dative construction

set out, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum

set sail, vēla dare

severe, gravis, grave

she, supplied by ea

shine, fulgeō, -ere, fulsi, --

ship, nāvis, -is, -ium, *F.*

shore, litus, litoris, *N.*

should, dēbeō, -ere, -ui, -itus; or use passive periphrastic conjugation expressing obligation

shout, clāmō (1)

show, mōnstrō (1)

silent: be or keep silent, taceō, -ere, tacui, tacitus

since, quoniam (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); or use ablative absolute

sing (of), canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus

sister, soror, sorōris, *F.*

skill, ars, artis, -ium, *F.*

slave, servus, -i, *M.*

so, tam (*adv.*); ita (*adv.*); adeō (*adv.*); sic (*adv.*)

so great, tantus, -a, -um

so that, ut

soldier, miles, mīlitis, *M.*

someone, aliquis

soon, mox (*adv.*); as soon as possible, quam prīmum

son, filius, -i, *M.*; nātus, -i, *M.*

sorrow, dolor, dolōris, *M.*

sort, kind, genus, -eris, *N.*

soul, anima, -ae, *F.*

spend (a lifetime), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus

state, cīvitās, -tātis, *F.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *F.*

statue, statua, -ae, *F.*

stop, dēsinō, -ere, dēsīi, --

storm, tempestās, -tātis, *F.*

street, via, -ae, *F.*

strength, virēs, virium, *F. pl.*

strong, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e

such, tālis, -e

such (so) great, tantus, -a, -um

such great...as, tantus...quantus

suffer, patior, pati, passus sum; sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sublātus

summit, vertex, verticis, *M.*

sword, gladius, -i, *M.*

T

tall, altus, -a, -um

tear, lacrima, -ae, *F.*

tell, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus

temple, templum, -i, *N.*

terrify, terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus

than, quam (*conj.*)

that, ille, illa, illud (*adj.*); is, ea, id (*adj.*); ut (*conj.*; *introducing a clause of result*)

their (own), suus, -a, -um

think, cōgitō (1)

this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id

threaten, minor, -ārī, -ātus sum

through, per (*prep. + acc.*)

throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus

time, tempus, temporis, *N.*; **for a long time**, diū (*adv.*)

to, toward, ad (*prep. + acc.*)

torch, taeda, -ae, *F.*

town, oppidum, -i, *N.*

treachery, insidiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

treaty, foedus, foederis, *N.*

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

try, temptō (1)

U

understand, intellegō, -ere, intellēxi, intellēctus

unfortunate, infēlix, infēlicis

unlike, dissimilis, -e

urn, urna, -ae, *F.*

use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum (+*abl.*)

V

value highly, maximi faciō (-ere, fēci, factus)

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus

wait (for), exspectō (1)

walk, ambulō (1)

walls (*of a city*), moenia, -ium, *N. pl.*

want, volō, velle, voluī, --

war, bellum, -i, *N.*

warn, moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus

wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

weapons, arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*

well, bene (*adv.*)

what, quid (*pron.*); quod (*adj.*)

when, ubi (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); or use ablative absolute

where, ubi (*adv.*); (**to**) **where**, quō (*adv.*)

whether, num (*adv.*); utrum (*adv.*); both can be used as adverbial conjunctions

which, qui, quae, quod (*relative pron.*)

who, qui, quae, quod (*relative pron.*)

whole, tōtus, -a, -um

why, cūr (*adv.*)

wicked, malus, -a, -um

willing, volēns, volentis (*present participle of* volō, velle, voluī, --)

wind, ventus, -i, *M.*

wish, optō (1)

with, cum (*prep. + abl.*)

withdraw, sē recipere (recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus)

without, sine (*prep. + abl.*)

woman, fēmina, -ae, *F.*

wonder, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum

word, verbum, -i, *N.*

work, (*verb*) labōrō (1); (*noun*) opus, operis, *N.*

world, orbis terrārum (orbis, orbis, -ium, *M.*)

wound, vulnerō (1)

wretched, miser, misera, miserum

write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptus

Y

year, annus, -i, *M.*

yesterday, heri (*adv.*)

you, tū (*sing.*); vōs (*pl.*)

young man, iuvenis, iuvenis, *M.* (*not i-stem*)

your, tuus, -a, -um (*sing.*); vester, vestra, vestrum (*pl.*)

Z

zeal, studium, -i, *N.*

INDEX

INDEX

Abbreviations used in this book, 7

Ablative: definition, 27

- absolute, 162–164, 376
- of accompaniment, 116, 377
- adjectives with, 376
- of attendant circumstance, 375
- of cause, 164, 375
- with certain deponent verbs, 373
- of comparison, 152, 374
- of degree of difference, 152, 374–375
- of description, 165, 374
- of manner, 50, 378
- of material, 378–379
- of means (instrument), 50, 373
- opus est** with, 373–374
- of origin, 102, 379
- of personal agent, 65, 376
- place in which (place where), 103, 377
- place from which, 102–103
 - away from which, 377
 - down from which, 378
 - out of which, 377
- prepositions with, 376–377
- of price, 294, 373
- of respect (specification), 128, 375
- of route, 373
- of separation, 102, 378
- of supine, ablative of respect, 281, 396–397
- of time when or within which, 116, 374

Accentuation, 3

Accusative, definition, 27

- adverbial, 293–294, 372
- cognate, 370
- direct object, 370
- double accusative, 370
- of duration of time and extent of space, 116, 371
- of exclamation, 252, 371
- Greek: accusative of respect, 293, 371
- place into which, 372
- place to which, 103, 372
- prepositions with, 372
- of respect, *see under* Accusative, Greek
- subject accusative and infinitive, 100–102, 371
- after verbs in the middle voice, *see under* Accusative, Greek

Additional rules, 400

Adjectives

comparative degree, declension, 150, 323

formation, 150

comparison of, 150–151

irregular comparisons, 151

demonstrative, 110–111

hic, haec, hoc, paradigm, 110, 323–324

ille, illa, illud, paradigm, 110, 323–324

is, ea, id, paradigm, 110, 324

iste, -a, -ud, 206

paradigm, 324

first-second declension, 48

paradigm, 48, 321

with genitive singular in *-ius*, 164

paradigm, 164, 322

idem, eadem, idem, 205

paradigm, 205, 325

indefinite

aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, 217

paradigm, 325

qui, qua, quod, 217

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, 205

quique, quaeque, quodque, 218

intensive, definition, 16

ipse, -a, -um, 205–206

paradigm, 206, 324

interrogative, 115

paradigm, 325

noun-adjective agreement, 49, 400

numerical: *duo, duae, duo*, paradigm, 221, 323

possessive, 113–114

in English, definition, 17

superlative degree: formation, 150–151

quam plus superlative, 151

third declension, 126–127

of one termination, paradigm, 127, 322–323

of three terminations, paradigm, 126, 322

of two terminations, paradigm, 127, 322–323

used as nouns, 49–50

Adverbs

comparative: formation, 153

comparison of, 153

irregular comparisons, 153–154

formation of, 152–153

superlative: formation, 153

Agreement, definition, 12

adjective with noun, 49, 400

subject with verb, 400

aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: *aliqui, aliqua, aliquod*

aliquis, aliquid, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: *aliquis, aliquid*

Alphabet, 1–2

Antecedent, definition, 12

antequam, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

Apodosis, definition, 12

Apposition, 363

definition, 12

Article, lack of, 10

Aspect, 21–22

- definition, 13
- frequentative, 15
- inchoative, 15

- Cases, English, 9
- Causal clauses, *see under Clause, causal*
- Circumstantial clauses, *see under Clause, circumstantial*
- Clause, definition, 13
 - causal, 248–249, 250, 382–383, 392
 - definition, 13
 - circumstantial, 248, 383, 393
 - definition, 13
 - concessive, 249, 250, 382, 392–393
 - definition, 13
 - dependent, definition, 14
 - of doubting, *see under Subjunctive, syntax: doubting, clauses of*
 - of fearing, *see under Subjunctive, syntax: fearing, clauses of*
 - independent, definition, 15
 - of prevention, 280–281, 395
 - of proviso, *see under Subjunctive, syntax: proviso, clauses of*
 - purpose, *see under Subjunctive, syntax: purpose, clauses of*
 - of result, *see under Subjunctive, syntax: result*
 - subordinate, definition, 18
 - temporal, 248, 250, 383–384
 - definition, 13
- Comparative degree, definition, 13
- Comparison with *quam*, 152
 - ablative of comparison, 152
- Compound words, 296
- Concessive clauses, *see under Clause, concessive*
- Conditional sentences, 38–39; definition, 14
 - future, more vivid, 38, 385; less vivid, 38, 391
 - mixed, 39, 391
 - simple (general), 38, 385
 - unreal (contrary-to-fact), present, 39, 391; past, 39, 391
 - contradictory, definition, 14
 - in indirect statement, 397–399
 - in other subordinate clauses, 399–400
- Conjugation, definition, 20
- Conjugations, 23
 - first, paradigm, 327–331
 - fourth, paradigm, 343–346
 - second, paradigm, 335–337
 - third, paradigm, 337–340
 - i-stem, paradigm, 340–343
 - of deponent verbs
 - first, paradigm, 346–348
 - fourth, paradigm, 348–351
 - second, paradigm, 348–351
 - third, paradigm, 348–351
 - of periphrastics: paradigm, 331–334
- Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive, 250–252
 - coordinating conjunction, definition, 14
 - subordinating conjunction, definition, 18
- Correlatives, definition, 14
- cum*, 'whenever', *see under Indicative, syntax: cum, 'whenever'*
- cum* clauses, *see under Subjunctive, syntax: cum clauses*
- cum* clauses and ablatives absolute, 249–250

Dative, definition, 26
 of agent, 88, 369
 with certain adjectives, 368
 with certain intransitive verbs, 218–219, 368–369
 with compound verbs, 220, 369
 double dative construction, 131
 ethical, 369
 indirect object, 368
 of the possessor, 88, 369
 of purpose (service), 131, 370
 of reference, 131, 367–368

Declension, definition, 26, 27
 endings, 317

Declensions

- fifth, 128
 - paradigm, 128, 321
- first, 27–28
 - endings, 28
 - paradigm, 28, 318
- fourth, 128
 - paradigm, 128, 320
- how distinguished from one another, 27
- second, 47–48
 - endings, 47
 - paradigms, 48, 318
- third, 97–99
 - endings, 97
 - i-stems, paradigms, 98, 319–320
 - paradigms, 98, 319–320
 - rules for i-stems, 98–99, 319

Demonstrative, definition, 14

Denominative verbs, *see under* Verbs, denominative

Deponent verbs, *see under* Verbs, deponent

Diminutives, definition, 14

dōnec, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

Drills

Unit 1, 31–32	Unit 7, 120–121	Unit 13, 225–226
Unit 2, 43	Unit 8, 134–135	Unit 14, 241–243
Unit 3, 55–56	Unit 9, 157–158	Unit 15, 257–259
Unit 4, 70–71	Unit 10, 169–170	Unit 16, 272–273
Unit 5, 92–94	Unit 11, 185–186	Unit 17, 285–286
Unit 6, 105–107	Unit 12, 210–211	Unit 18, 298

dum, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

duo, duae, duo, *see under* Adjectives, numerical: **duo, duae, duo**

Ellipsis, definition, 14

Enclitic, definition, 14

Endings

- personal: present active system, 24, 327
 perfect active indicative, 35, 327
 -ēre for -ērunt, 293
 present passive system, 62, 327

eō, ire, 129, 354–355

-ēre for -ērunt, *see under* Endings, personal: perfect active indicative, -ēre for -ērunt

Exercises

Unit 1, 33–34	Unit 4, 72–73	Unit 7, 121–125
Unit 2, 44–46	Unit 5, 94–96	Unit 8, 136–139
Unit 3, 57–58	Unit 6, 107–109	Unit 9, 159–161

Exercises, cont.

Unit 10, 171–175	Unit 13, 226–231	Unit 16, 274–278
Unit 11, 187–191	Unit 14, 244–247	Unit 17, 286–290
Unit 12, 212–216	Unit 15, 259–264	Unit 18, 298–307

Exercises, preliminary

Unit 1 (Sections A–G), 32–33	Unit 10 (Sections A–B), 170–171
Unit 2 (Sections A–D), 44	Unit 11 (Sections A–B), 187
Unit 3 (Sections A–F), 56–57	Unit 12 (Sections A–B), 211–212
Unit 4 (Section A), 71	Unit 13 (Sections A–B), 226
Unit 5 (Sections A–B), 94	Unit 14 (Sections A–B), 243–244
Unit 6 (Section A), 107	Unit 15 (Sections A–B), 259
Unit 7 (Sections A–C), 121	Unit 16 (Sections A–C), 273
Unit 8 (Sections A–C), 135–136	Unit 17 (Sections A–B), 286
Unit 9 (Sections A–D), 158	

Expletive, definition, 15

ferō and compounds, 165; paradigm, 355–358

fiō, **fieri**, 220–221, 361–362

fore ut, 291–292

 with subjunctive, 389–390

Frequentative verbs, *see under* Verbs, frequentative

Future imperative, *see under* Imperative, future

futūrum esse ut, 291–292

Gender, English, 8–9

 of nouns, 26

Genitive, definition, 26

 appositional, 364–365

 of description, 165, 364

 with expressions of remembering and forgetting, 294, 366

 followed by **causā**, 267, 367

 of fullness and want, 367

 Greek, 367

 of indefinite value, 294, 366–367

 of material, 364

 objective, 178–179, 365–366

 with impersonal verbs, 366

 partitive (genitive of the whole), 154, 364

 of possession, 363–364

 predicate (of characteristic), 179, 365

 subjective, 178–179, 366

 with verbs of accusing and condemning, 39–40, 365

Gerund, 265–266, 396

 definition, 15

Gerund and gerundive

 to express purpose, 266–267

Gerundive, 266

 syntax, 396

Glossary, 12

Grammatical review, 8

hic, **haec**, **hoc**, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **hic**, **haec**, **hoc**

Hypotaxis, definition, 15

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, *see under* Adjectives, **idem**, **eadem**, **idem**

Idiom, definition, 15

ille, **-a**, **-ud**, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **ille**, **-a**, **-ud**

Imperative, definition, 10, 20, 129

 future, 130–131, 362

 syntax, 381–382

- negative, 130
- present active, formation, 129–130
 - passive, formation, 130
 - syntax, 381
- Impersonal passives, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: passives
- Impersonal verbs, *see under* Verbs, impersonal
- Inchoative verbs, *see under* Verbs, inchoative
- Indicative, definition, 10, 20
 - syntax, 382–386
 - cum*, 'whenever', 249, 385
 - quod*, 'the fact that', 294–295, 384–385
 - tenses, 20–22
 - chart of uses, 22
 - future, definition, 21
 - active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 61
 - first two conjugations: formation and paradigms, 24–25
 - passive, all conjugations: paradigms, 63–64
 - future perfect, definition, 21
 - active, formation and paradigm, 36
 - passive, formation and paradigm, 65
 - imperfect, definition, 21
 - active, all conjugations, formation and paradigms, 60–61
 - first two conjugations, formation and paradigms, 24
 - passive, all conjugations, paradigms, 63
 - perfect, definition, 21
 - active: endings, 35; formation and paradigm, 35–36
 - stem, formation, 35
 - system of all verbs, 35–36
 - passive: formation and paradigm, 64–65; system, all conjugations, 64
 - pluperfect, definition, 21
 - active: formation and paradigm, 35–36
 - passive: formation and paradigm, 65
 - present, definition, 20
 - active: all conjugations, paradigms, 59–60
 - first two conjugations, formation and paradigms, 23–25
 - system of first two conjugations, 23–25
 - passive, all conjugations, paradigms, 62–63
 - system, all conjugations, endings, 62
 - primary, 22
 - secondary, 22
 - Indirect discourse, definition, 16
 - indirect commands, 52–53, 388–389
 - definition, 16
 - indirect questions, 202–204, 390–391
 - definition, 16
 - indirect statement, 100–102
 - conditions in, 397–399
 - definition, 16
 - infinitive in, 101–102, 380
 - Indirect object, definition, 15
 - Indirect reflexives, *see under* Pronouns, reflexive: indirect
 - Infinitives, definition, 16, 22
 - formation, 99–100
 - periphrastic, 100
 - syntax, 379–381
 - complementary, 89, 379–380; definition, 13
 - epexegetical, 381; definition, 15
 - in exclamations, 381

- historical, 292, 381
- in indirect statement, 101–102, 380
- object, 89, 380
 - as subject, 179, 380
- Inflection, definition, 10, 16
 - in English, 10–11
 - of nouns, 26
 - of verbs, 20
- interest, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: **interest** and **refert**
- Interrogative, definition, 16
- ipse, -a, -um, *see under* Adjectives, intensive: **ipse**, -a, -um
- is, ea, id, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **is**, **ea**, **id**
- iste, -a, -ud, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **iste**, -a, -ud
- Locative case, 103, 318, 379
- Macron, definition, 16
- mālō, 179–180
 - paradigm, 358–360
- Middle voice, *see under* Accusative, Greek
- Mood, definition, 20
 - in English, 10
- Morphology, definition, 16
- Names, Roman, 401
- Negatives
 - double making affirmative, 400
 - “no”, 400
- nōlō, 179–180
 - paradigm, 358–360
- Nominative, definition, 26
 - absolute (in English), 12, 162
 - syntax, 363
- Nouns
 - abstract, definition, 12
 - suffixes, 224–225, 240
 - collective, definition, 13
 - verb with, 400
 - formation of stem, 27
 - suffixes pertaining to, *see under* Suffixes, added to produce; adjectival added to the stems of; noun
- Number, 9, 20
- Numerals, 405–408
- Object, definition, 16
- Paradigm, definition, 17
- Parataxis, definition, 17
- Participles, definition, 17, 83
 - formation, 83–84
 - future active: formation, 84; use, 86
 - passive: formation, 84; use, 86
 - perfect passive: formation, 84; use, 85
 - present active: formation, 83–84; use, 84–85
 - paradigm, 127, 323
 - syntax, 395–396
 - uses, 84–86
- Parts of speech, 8
- Periphrasis, definition, 17

Periphrastic Conjugations
 active, synopsis, 87
 infinitives, 100
 paradigms, 331–334
 passive, synopsis, 87

Person, definition, 9, 20

Phonology, definition, 17

Phrase, definition, 17

possum, 88
 paradigm, 88–89, 351–353

Postpositive, definition, 30

Predicate, definition, 17
 predicate adjective, definition, 17
 predicate nominative, definition, 17

Prefixes
 from prepositions, 255–257
 not from prepositions, 271–272

priusquam, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

Pronouns
 indefinite, definition, 15, 217
aliquis, aliquid, 217
 as indefinite, *nescio quis, quid*, 400
quidam, quaedam, quiddam, 205
 paradigm, 205, 326
quis, quid, 217–218
quisquam, quidquam, 218
quisque, quidque, 218
 interrogative, 115–116
 paradigm, 115, 326
 personal, 111–113, 325–326
ego, 112
tu, 112
 possessive, *in English*: definition, 17
 reflexive, 112–113
 definition, 18
 indirect, 237
 third person: paradigm, 113, 326
 relative, 114–115
 definition, 18
 paradigm, 114

Protasis, definition, 17

Proviso, definition, 18. *Also see under* Clauses of proviso

Purpose, *see under* Gerund and Gerundive, to express purpose; Subjunctive, syntax: purpose, clauses of; Supine, syntax

quam plus superlative, 151

Quantitative rhythm, *see under* Rhythm, quantitative

Questions
 direct, 201–202
 double, 202
 indirect, 202–204

qui, qua, quod, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: *qui, qua, quod*

quia, 'because', *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

quidam, quaedam, quiddam, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: *quidam, quaedam, quiddam*

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: *quidam, quaedam, quoddam*

quique, quaeque, quodque, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: *quique, quaeque, quodque*

quis, quid, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: *quis, quid*

quisquam, quidquam, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: *quisquam, quidquam*

quisque, quidque, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: *quisque, quidque*

quod, 'because', *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
quod, 'the fact that', *see under* Indicative, **quod**, 'the fact that'

rēfert, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: interest and **rēfert**

Relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses), *see under* Subjunctive, syntax:
 relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses)

Relative clauses of purpose, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: relative clauses of purpose

Relative clauses of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: relative clauses of result

Result, after **futūrum ut** (fore), 291–292. *Also see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result

Review of verb conjugations, 66

Review

Units 1–4, 74–75

5–8, 140–142

9–11, 192–193

12–18, 308–311

Rhythm, quantitative, 401–404

Root, definition, 18

Self Review A

Units 1–4, 75–77

answer key, 77–79

Units 5–8, 142–144

answer key, 144–145

Units 9–11, 193–195

answer key, 195–196

Units 12–18, 312–314

answer key, 314–316

Self Review B

Units 1–4, 79–80

answer key, 81–82

Units 5–8, 146–147

answer key, 147–149

Units 9–11, 196–197

answer key, 198–199

Sentence, definition, 18

complex, definition, 13

compound, definition, 13

Sequence of tenses, *see under* Subjunctive, sequence of tenses

Stem, definition, 18

Subject, definition, 18

verbs with compound, 400

Subjunctive, definition, 10, 20, 36

imperfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 36–37

passive, formation, 64

perfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 37

passive, formation and paradigm, 65

pluperfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 37

passive, formation and paradigm, 65

present active, all conjugations, formation and paradigm, 60

first conjugation, formation and paradigm, 36

passive, formation, 64

sequence of tenses, 51, 387

syntax, 386–395

anticipation, 393–394

by attraction, 291, 394

causal clauses, *see under* Clause, causal

circumstantial clauses, *see under* Clause, circumstantial

concessive clauses, *see under* Clause, concessive

conditions, *see under* Conditional sentences

cum clauses, 248–250

deliberative, 201, 386

doubting, clauses of, 279–280, 394–395

fearing, clauses of, 279, 390

hortatory, 200, 386

with impersonal verbs, 395

independent uses, 200–201

indirect commands, *see under* Indirect discourse, indirect commands

indirect questions, *see under* Indirect discourse, indirect questions
 jussive, 200, 386
 optative, 201, 387
 potential, 200, 387
 prevention, clauses of, *see under* Clauses, of prevention
 proviso, clauses of, 252, 394
 purpose, clauses of: definition, 50
 illustrated, 52, 387–388
 introduced by adverbs, 236, 388
 relative clauses of, 236, 388
 relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses), 234–235, 390
 result, 232–233, 389
 relative clauses of, 235–236, 389
 substantive clauses of, 233, 389
 in subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 116–117, 391–392
 Substantive, definition, 10, 18
 Substantive clauses of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result, substantive clauses of
 Suffixes
 -ālis, -āris, -ilis, 185
 -ārium, 240
 -ārius, 240
 -āx, -idus, -ulus, -īvus, 209–210
 -bundus, -cundus, 210
 -eus, -iūs, -ānus, -ēnus, -īnus, -ēius, -eūs, -tūs, -tīcūs, 184
 -fer and -ger, 224
 -ia, -iēs, -tia, -tiēs, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, 224–225
 -ilis, -bilis, 210
 -iō, -tiō, -tūra, -tūs, 240
 -ium and -tium, 225
 -men, -mentum, -mōnium, -mōnia, 240
 -ōsus and -lentus, 224
 -ter, -ester, -timus, -nus, -urnus, -ternus, 185
 -tor, -trix, 183–184
 -tōrium, 240
 -ulus, -a, -um, etc., 184
 abstract noun, 224–225, 240
 added to produce nouns, 240
 adjectival added to the stems of nouns, 184–185; of verbs, 209–210
 noun, 183–184
 sum, complete paradigm, 351–353
 indicative future, 25
 imperfect, 25
 present, 25
 subjunctive: present, 37
 Superlative degree, definition, 18
 Supine, 281
 syntax, 281, 396–397
 Syllabification, 2
 Syncopated forms of perfect active system of verbs, 292
 Synopsis, definition, 19, 44, 74
 illustrated, 44, 75, 142
 Syntax, definition, 19
 of nouns, review, 363–379
 ablative, 372–379
 accusative, 370–372
 apposition, 363
 dative, 367–370
 genitive, 363–367
 locative, 379

nominative, 363
 vocative, 379
 of verbs, review, 379–397
 gerunds, 396
 gerundives, 396
 indicatives, 382–386
 infinitives, 379–381
 imperatives, 381–382
 participles, 395–396
 subjunctives, 386–395
 supines, 396–397

Temporal clauses, *see under* Clause, temporal

Tense, 9, 20

Tmesis, 92, 252, 254

Verbs

adjectival suffixes added to the stems of, 209–210
 denominative, 14, 29, 272
 deponent, 176–178; semi-deponent, 178
 finite, definition, 15
 frequentative, 134, 283–284
 impersonal, 267–269; definition, 15
interest and rēfert, 269
 passives, 219–220, 385–386
 inchoative, 284–285
 intransitive, definition, 16
 personal endings, present active system, 24, 327
 perfect active indicative, 35, 327
 –ēre for –ērunt, 293
 present passive system, 62, 327

principal parts, 23

transitive, definition, 19

vis, declension, 102, 320

Vocabulary

Unit 1, 28–29	Unit 6, 103–104	Unit 11, 180–181	Unit 16, 269–270
Unit 2, 40–41	Unit 7, 117–119	Unit 12, 206–208	Unit 17, 281–282
Unit 3, 53–54	Unit 8, 131–133	Unit 13, 221–222	Unit 18, 295
Unit 4, 67–68	Unit 9, 154–155	Unit 14, 237–238	
Unit 5, 89–90	Unit 10, 166–167	Unit 15, 252–254	

English to Latin, 435–447

Latin to English, 411–433

Notes on

Unit 1, 29–31	Unit 6, 105	Unit 11, 182–185	Unit 16, 270–272
Unit 2, 41–43	Unit 7, 119–120	Unit 12, 208–210	Unit 17, 282–285
Unit 3, 54–55	Unit 8, 133–134	Unit 13, 222–225	Unit 18, 295–297
Unit 4, 68–70	Unit 9, 156–157	Unit 14, 238–240	
Unit 5, 90–92	Unit 10, 167–168	Unit 15, 254–257	

Vocative case, 131, 318, 379

Voice, 9–10, 20

Middle, *see under* Accusative, Greek

volō, 179–180

paradigm, 358–360

Vowels

lengthened before -ns, 84

long shortened before -m, -t, -nt, 24; before -r, -ntur, 62

Word formation, chart, 297

Word order, 4–6

“yes”, 400

latinintensiveco00more_0

latinintensiveco00more_0



latinintensiveco00more_0

This is a comprehensive introduction to Latin forms and syntax, designed to train the student in reading ancient texts at an early stage. Originally written for the Latin Workshop at Berkeley and the Summer Latin Institute of Brooklyn College, the preliminary edition has been used successfully in intensive, accelerated, and regular courses for several years. The present edition is revised and improved.

All major grammatical constructions are logically explained in eighteen units. For intensive courses, a unit may be covered in one day; for regular courses, a unit may be spread out over a week. The entire Latin verbal system is covered in the first part of the book; the subjunctive is introduced in the second unit; and all four conjugations are discussed in close proximity, so the student can discern the similarities and distinctions among them. Throughout the book related topics are arranged together, such as the independent uses of the subjunctive or the third declension.

Connected readings, illustrating grammatical points, are included in every unit, with accompanying vocabularies. The student is soon introduced to adapted and unadapted selections from Martial, Cicero, Catullus, Seneca, Vergil, and Pliny. Long portions from Book Six of Caesar's *Gallic Wars* comprise the readings for the last two units.

The many sentences for drill and review in each unit will challenge the student and provide variety for the teacher. Separate review sections, with illustrative sentences and two model examinations (with answer keys), are interspersed. Paradigms and examples of the uses of each case and mood are in an appendix. Complete English-Latin and Latin-English vocabularies at the end of the book are keyed to the units where the words are first used.

"The best Latin text now available and I very much doubt that a better one will appear for a long time." —Ralph W. Johnson, Cornell University

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
Berkeley 94720

